OBSERVATIONS

ON THE

Language of Chaucer's Troilus
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO., LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
Observations
on the
Language of Chaucer's Troilus.

BY
GEORGE LYMAN KITTREDGE,
ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.
1891.
Second Series, 28.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.
TO

Professor Francis James Child

IN

GRATITUDE AND AFFECTION
PREFACE.

The following Observations are intended to furnish some materials for the large induction necessary to reasonable certainty in the matter of Chaucer's language, particularly his use of final -e. Other matters than final -e are of course dealt with from time to time; but to this in particular the Observations are directed. In other words, the study here presented to members of the Chaucer Society is a study in forms, not in phonology. This study was begun in August 1887, and has been frequently interrupted. The printing has of necessity extended over an unconscionable length of time. It is hoped that these facts may serve as the excuse for some trifling inconsistencies of typography, and perhaps even for some slight vacillations in plan and method. For actual blunders no excuse is offered; but it is hoped that the work may contain enough that is useful to make scholars indulgent for such errors as they may observe. Corrections will be gratefully received.

A paper by Professor John M. Manly, of Brown University, extending the method of inquiry here followed to The Legend of Good Women, will be found in vol. ii. of the Harvard Studies and Notes in Philology and Literature (Boston, 1893), pp. 1 ff. The relations of Professor Manly's paper to the present study are explained in his Introductory Note. Both papers, it will be observed, are under special obligations to Professor Child's Observations on the Language of Chaucer.

My acknowledgments are due to Professor E. S. Sheldon and Professor J. M. Manly for a number of valuable suggestions. Dr. Furnivall, with his usual kindness, has furnished me with indispensable copies and collations. To Professor Child, who suggested the investigation, and has furthered it by his counsel and encouragement throughout, my obligations of every kind are innumerable.

G. L. K.

Cambridge, March 17th, 1894.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTRODUCTORY NOTE</strong></td>
<td>XV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMPARATIVE TABLES OF LINE-NUMBERS</strong></td>
<td>XIX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ABBREVIATIONS AND SIGNS</strong></td>
<td>XXIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I. GRAMMATICAL CHAPTER.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOUNS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 1—5. Nouns of the n-declension</td>
<td>1—9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 2. Masculines</td>
<td>1—5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 3. Feminines</td>
<td>5—8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 4. Neuters</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5. Lady, play, fo, feldefare</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 6, 7. Masculine and neuter nouns with A.S. nominative in -e or -u</td>
<td>9—12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 6. Ending in -e in the Troilus</td>
<td>9—11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 7. Exceptions to § 6</td>
<td>11—12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 8. Feminine nouns with A.S. nominative in -u</td>
<td>12—15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 9—11. Monosyllabic feminine nouns with long stem-syllable in A.S.</td>
<td>15—34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 9. Ending in -e in the Troilus</td>
<td>15—27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 10. Nouns in -yng, -yngge</td>
<td>27—31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 11. Ending in a consonant in the Troilus</td>
<td>31—34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 12. Apocope of A.S. -n in nouns</td>
<td>34—35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 13. Hond, honde</td>
<td>35—36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 14. Masculine and neuter nouns ending in a consonant in A.S. but in -e in the Troilus (including so-called dative -e's)</td>
<td>36—47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 15. Germanic nouns, not A.S., ending in -e in the Troilus</td>
<td>47—51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 16. Gle, se, stre, tre</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 17. Body, day, iuy, very</td>
<td>51—52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 18. Masculine and neuter A.S. nouns ending in a consonant in the Troilus</td>
<td>52—63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 19. Other Germanic nouns ending in a consonant</td>
<td>63—64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table of Contents.

§§ 20—31. Romance nouns in -e mute ........................................... 64—87
  § 21. Miscellaneous nouns : -e retained ..................................... 64—74
  § 22. Exceptions to § 21 ..................................................... 74—75
  § 23. Nouns in -aunce ....................................................... 75—77
  § 24. Nouns in -ene .......................................................... 77—78
  § 25. i. Abstract nouns in -esse .......................................... 78—79
      ii. Feminine nomina agentis in -esse ................................ 79
  § 26. Nouns in -yce, -yse ................................................... 80—81
  § 27. Nouns in -ure .......................................................... 81—83
  § 28. Nouns in -ere .......................................................... 83—84
  § 29. Nouns in consonant + re ............................................. 84—86
  § 30. Nouns in -ye, -ye ..................................................... 86—87
  § 31. Nouns in -ye (unaccented) .......................................... 87—88
  § 32. Romance nouns that end in a consonant in French
       but take -e in the Troilus .......................................... 88—97
  § 33. Nouns ending in Old French in -é, -ée ................................ 89—97
  § 34. Romance (and Latin) nouns without final -e
      i. Nouns in -er ........................................................... 90
      ii. Nouns in -our ....................................................... 90—91
      iii. Nouns in -ent, -ment ............................................ 91—92
      iv. Nouns in -aunt ..................................................... 92
      v. Nouns in -s .......................................................... 92—93
      vi. Nouns ending in a vowel (not -e) ................................ 93—94
      vii. Miscellaneous ..................................................... 94—97
  §§ 35—37. Genitive singular of nouns ...................................... 97—100
  § 35. Genitive singular in -es ............................................. 97—98
  § 36. Genitive identical in form with nominative
       (lady, brother, etc.) ................................................ 98—99
  § 37. Proper names in -s ................................................... 99—100
  §§ 38—45. Plural of nouns ................................................ 100—110
  § 38. Plurals in -és, -ís, -ys (after consonants), -s
       (after -e) ............................................................. 100—103
  § 39. Exceptions to § 38 : words in -aunt, -ent, -ioun,
       -en, -on, -an, -r ; monosyllables in -e ......................... 104—106
  § 40. Plurals in -en ........................................................ 106—107
  § 41. Plurals in -en by imitation ........................................ 107
  § 42. Plurals with umlaut .................................................. 107
  § 43. Plural identical with singular ..................................... 108—109
  § 44. Genitive plural ...................................................... 109—110
  § 45. Dative plural ........................................................ 110

ADJECTIVES.

§§ 46—52. Singular adjectives in the indefinite use ...................... 110—122
  § 46. A.S. adjectives in -e, -a .......................................... 110—113
  § 47. Allone, lame .......................................................... 113—114
  § 48. Lyte, muche ........................................................... 114—115
Table of Contents.

§ 49. A.S. adjectives ending in a consonant that take -e in the Troilus ........................................... 115–118
§ 50. Germanic (not A.S.) adjectives that show -e in the Troilus ..................................................... 119–120
§ 51. Romance adjectives in -e ............................................ 120–121
§ 52. Romance adjectives with -e in the Troilus but none in French .............................................. 121–122

§§ 53—54. Monosyllabic singular adjectives in the definite use

§ 53. Taking -e
   i. Ordinals .................................................... 122–126
   ii. Superlatives ............................................ 123
   iii. Miscellaneous ......................................... 123–124
   iv. Words sometimes showing -e in the indefinite use (cf. § 49) .................................................... 125–126
   v. owene, owen, owne .................................. 126

§ 54. -e dropped .................................................. 126–127

§ 55. Vocative singular of monosyllabic adjectives .................................................. 127–128

§§ 56—62. Adjectives singular of more than one syllable in definite and vocative constructions ........................................ 128–134

§ 56. Rules .......................................................... 128–129

§ 57. i. Dissyllabic paroxytones (following word accented on first syllable) ..................................... 129–132

§ 58. ii. Dissyllabic oxytones (following word accented on second syllable) .................................... 132

§ 59. iii. Trisyllabic proparoxytones (following word not accented on second syllable) ........................ 132–133

§ 60. iv. Trisyllabic proparoxytones (following word accented on second syllable) .......................... 133

§ 61. v. Trisyllabic paroxytones (following word accented on first syllable) ..................................... 133

§ 62. Vocative of adjectives of more than one syllable ............................................................................. 133–134

§ 63. French inflection of adjectives ........................................................................................................... 134–135

§ 64. Comparative degree
   (a) -er (-ere) .................................................... 135–137
   (b) lenger ......................................................... 135
   (c) bettre, bet; lasse, lesse; more, mo, moo; worse, wers .................................................. 135–137

§ 65. Comparative and superlative with more and most ............................................................................. 137–138

§ 66. Superlative (-est) .............................................. 138

§§ 67—71. Plural of adjectives ............................................ 138–149

§ 67. Monosyllabic adjectives: plural in -e
   (a) Miscellaneous ............................................. 138–142
   (b) fele, feue ..................................................... 142
   (c) Monosyllabic superlatives ................................ 142
   (d) Cardinal numerals ........................................ 142–144

§ 68. Monosyllabic perfect participles standing in the predicate ................................................................. 144–145
Table of Contents.

§ 69. Monosyllabic adjectives standing in the predicate: e sometimes omitted ... ... 145—146
Other exceptions to § 67 ... ... 146
§ 70. Adjectives of more than one syllable (in the interior of the verse) ... ... 146—148
§ 71. Adjectives of more than one syllable at the end of the verse ... ... 148—149
§ 72. Adjectives in A.S. -lic (-lic), O.N. -ligr ... ... 149—150

PRONOUNS.

§ 73. Personal pronouns ... ... ... ... ... 150—154
§ 74. Possessive pronouns ... ... ... ... ... 154—157
§ 75. Reflexive and intensive pronouns ... ... ... ... ... 157—160
§ 76. Demonstrative pronouns ... ... ... ... ... 160—161
§ 77. Interrogative pronouns ... ... ... ... ... 161
§ 78. Relative pronouns (and pronominal adjectives), and the interrogative (etc.) which ... ... 161—164
§ 79. Other pronominal words (same, som, somewhat, other, ech, every, everychon, any, eyther, bothe, men, oon (o), noon (no), ought, nought ... ... 164—169
§§ 80, 81. The adjective al ... ... ... ... ... 169—175
§ 80. i. Adjective use, singular; al ... ... ... ... ... 169
ii. Substantive uses, singular; al ... ... ... ... ... 169—170
iii. Singular alls ... ... ... ... ... 170—171
iv. Plural of al ... ... ... ... ... 171—175
§ 81. The genitive plural of al ... ... ... ... ... 175

ADVERBS AND OTHER PARTICLES.

§ 82. Adverbs in A.S. -e which preserve their termination ... ... ... ... ... 175—180
§ 83. Exceptions to § 82 ... ... ... ... ... 175
§ 84. Adverbs in -liche, -lich, -ly ... ... ... ... ... 180—187
§ 85. Adverbs without vowel-ending ... ... ... ... ... 187—190
§§ 86, 87. Comparison of adverbs ... ... ... ... ... 190—193
§ 86. Comparative degree ... ... ... ... ... 190—192
§ 87. Superlative degree ... ... ... ... ... 193
§ 88. Miscellaneous particles which sometimes or always have -e in the Troilus ... ... 193—201
§ 89. Atwixen, -e, bytwyexen, -e, aweye, eke, often, -e, same; here, there, where ... ... 201—206
§ 90. Ever and never ... ... ... ... ... ... 206—208
§ 91. Particles in -es ... ... ... ... ... ... 208—211
Table of Contents

VERBS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§§ 92-98</td>
<td>Present indicative</td>
<td>212-231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 92</td>
<td>First person singular</td>
<td>212-215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 93</td>
<td>Second person singular</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 94</td>
<td>Third person singular in -eth, -eth, -th</td>
<td>217-220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 95</td>
<td>Third person singular in -t (abit, halt, stant, etc.)</td>
<td>220-222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 96-98</td>
<td>Plural in -en, -e</td>
<td>222-229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 99-105</td>
<td>Preterite indicative (first and third persons) of weak verbs</td>
<td>231-252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 99</td>
<td>First conjugation (Anglo-Saxon)</td>
<td>231-240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 100</td>
<td>First conjugation (Old Norse, etc.)</td>
<td>240-242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 101</td>
<td>Second conjugation (Anglo-Saxon and other Germanic languages)</td>
<td>242-246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 102</td>
<td>Third conjugation (Anglo-Saxon)</td>
<td>246-248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 103</td>
<td>Verbs strong in Anglo-Saxon</td>
<td>248-250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 104</td>
<td>Romance verbs with syncopated preterites (aspyde, caughte, etc.)</td>
<td>250-251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 105</td>
<td>Romance verbs with unsyncopated preterites</td>
<td>251-252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 106</td>
<td>Preterite indicative, second person singular, of weak formations</td>
<td>252-253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 107</td>
<td>Preterite indicative, second person singular, of strong verbs</td>
<td>253-254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 108</td>
<td>Preterite indicative (first and third persons) singular of strong verbs</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 109</td>
<td>Preterite indicative plural of strong and of weak verbs</td>
<td>255-260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 110, 111</td>
<td>Present subjunctive singular of strong and of weak verbs</td>
<td>260-266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 110</td>
<td>Ending in -e</td>
<td>260-265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 111</td>
<td>Exceptions to § 110</td>
<td>265-266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 112</td>
<td>Present subjunctive plural of strong and of weak verbs</td>
<td>266-268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 113</td>
<td>Preterite subjunctive singular</td>
<td>268-272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ⅰ. Strong verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>268-270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ⅱ. Weak verbs</td>
<td></td>
<td>270-272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 114</td>
<td>Preterite subjunctive plural of strong and of weak verbs</td>
<td>272-273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§§ 115-117</td>
<td>Imperative second person singular</td>
<td>273-280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 115</td>
<td>Weak verbs (Germanic)</td>
<td>273-276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 116</td>
<td>Latin and Romance verbs</td>
<td>276-277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 117</td>
<td>Strong verbs</td>
<td>277-280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§118. Imperative second person plural of strong and of weak verbs .......................... 280—286
§119. Infinitive ................................................................. 286—301
§120. Present participle ....................................................... 301—303
§121. Perfect participle of weak verbs .................................... 303—311
§122. Perfect participle of strong verbs ................................... 311—317
§123. Praeterito-present verbs ............................................... 317—331
   I. wot ................................................................. 317—319
   II. not ............................................................... 319—320
   III. oughte .......................................................... 320—321
   IV. kan ............................................................... 321—323
   V. dar ................................................................. 323—324
   VI. thar ............................................................... 324
   VII. shal .............................................................. 324—326
   VIII. may ............................................................. 326—329
   IX. mot ............................................................... 329—331
§124. Other irregular verbs .................................................. 331—345
   I. to be ............................................................... 331—334
   II. will ............................................................... 335—338
   III. nyl ............................................................... 339—340
   IV. do ................................................................. 340—341
   v. go ................................................................. 341—343
   VI. haue .............................................................. 343—345

II. METRICAL CHAPTER.

§125. Elision of weak -e .................................................... 345—347
§126. Hiatus (exceptions to § 125) ....................................... 347—352
§127. Elision before strong h ................................................ 352—353
§128. Elision of weak -e in monosyllables (thë, më) ................. 353—355
§129. Elision of close -e (me, we, etc.) ................................ 355—359
§130. Elision (or slurring) of -o and -a ................................ 359—361
§131. Slurring of -y (-ye) .................................................. 362—363
§132. Weak e in two successive syllables (syncope or apocope) .... 364—365
§133. Apocope or syncope of weak e after an unaccented syllable which is capable of bearing an accent 365—366
§134. Apocope of weak -e after a syllable bearing a secondary accent .......................................................... 366
§135. Apocope of weak -e immediately after the syllable bearing the main accent ................................. 366—372
§136. Syncope or slurring of e in final syllables when the noun-accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding .......................................................... 372—377
   (a) -es .............................................................. 372
   (b) -est ............................................................. 372—373
### Table of Contents

- **(c)** -eth ........................................... 373
- **(d)** -de, -te, -ede, -ed ........................................... 373-374
- **(e)** -en ........................................... 374-375
- **(f)** -er, -ere, -re ........................................... 375-377
- **(g)** -el, -le ........................................... 377
- **(h)** -em (-me) ........................................... 377

**§ 137.** Interior weak -e- ........................................... 377-378

**§ 138.** Other instances of syncope ........................................... 378-381

1-5. Vowels (not weak e) ........................................... 378-380

6. whether, wher; other, or ........................................... 380-381

7. euere, neuere ........................................... 381

8. benedicite ........................................... 381

9. comprehende ........................................... 381

10. desespeir, despeir, etc. ........................................... 381

**§ 139.** Apocope of consonants ........................................... 381-384

1. -n in verb-forms ........................................... 381-382

2. -eth in imperative ........................................... 382

3. -s in proper names ........................................... 382-384

**§ 140.** Synæresis ........................................... 384

**§ 141.** Diæresis ........................................... 384

**§ 142.** Synizesis ........................................... 384-387

**§ 143.** Miscellaneous slurs and contractions ........................................... 387-389

**§§ 144-145.** The "extra syllable" before the caesura ........................................... 389-405

**§ 144.** i. Cases of -e ........................................... 389-398

ii. Cases of unaccented terminations ending in a consonant ........................................... 398-400

**§ 145.** Certain final syllables before the caesura ........................................... 401-405

i. Consonant + -le, -me, -ne, -re ........................................... 402

ii. -ene, -ere ........................................... 403

iii. -el, -en, -er ........................................... 403-404

iv. -we, etc. ........................................... 404

v. -y, -ye ........................................... 404-405

**§ 146.** "Nine-syllable" verses ........................................... 405-421

**Additions and Corrections** ........................................... 422-426
INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

The following Observations on the Language of Chaucer's *Troilus* are based on four MSS. A (Campsall), B (Harl. 2280), C (Camb. Gg. 4. 27), and D (Harl. 3943), as edited by Dr. Furnivall for the Chaucer Society.¹ When there is no indication to the contrary, the forms quoted rest on a consensus of these four MSS. in the verse referred to. Indications to the contrary are of several kinds: (a) an express note, either at the foot of the page or in parentheses immediately after the verse-number; (b) a general note as to disregard of variants; (c) the abbreviation "cf.", which signifies that in the references that follow variants are mostly or altogether neglected; (d) a list of variant spellings (marked "Var.").² In case some word not immediately under discussion has to be emended in order that the line referred to may afford the form registered, the necessary emendation is indicated in a foot-note or elsewhere.³ In case a line falls within a gap or omission of a stanza or more in B, C, or D, the fact is not noted. The following is a list of gaps in B, C, D.

In B one leaf containing (vv. 7708—91) is missing; 5370—6 not in A.

In C the following passages of a stanza or more in length are wanting 1—70 (cut out), 1037—1169 (cut out), 2843—98 (cut out), 4649—4774 (cut out), 5468—95 (omitted), 5615—5740 (omitted), 6329—98 (cut out), 7076—82 (omitted; two stanzas run together), 8065—end (cut out). The following single lines are omitted in C; 86 (no gap in MS.), 1701, 2231 (no gap), 2707 (blank line in MS.), 3799 (blank line), 5752 (blank line), 6550 (no gap), 6557 (blank line), 7244 (no gap), 7285 (blank line after 7286).

After 890 D has a stanza not in ABC.

¹ A, B, and C in *A Parallel-Text Print of Chaucer's Troilus and Criseyde* (1881-82); D in *Chaucer's Troilus and Criseyde* (from the Harl. MS. 3943) compared with *Boccaccio's Filostrato translated by Wm. Michael Rossetti* (1873—83).

² See, for example, wroce (p. 5, 1. 9), note at the end of article sonne (p. 7), tongue (p. 7, 1, ult.), lady, (p. 9), wyte (p. 11).

³ Thus foot-note 1, p. 33, indicates that in 3074 C has wyt was woyed, but that, after the last word has been changed to woyded, the line affords evidence for the form wyght. It will be seen that this is in effect but a means of registering corruptions that are easily emended.
Introductory Note.

In D the following passages of a stanza or more in length are wanting: 484—490, 4131—4270 (two leaves gone), 4586—4613 (omitted), 8170—90 (omitted). The following single lines are omitted in D: 148, 1594 (blank line). Vv. 1—70, 498—567, 4859—end, are in a late hand.

Other MSS. than ABCD have been used for purposes of comparison. Those used most were Cp. (Corpus 61) and John’s, a collation of both of which by Mr. Thomas Austin was furnished me by the kindness of Dr. Furnivall, and G (Additional MS. 12044), of which Dr. Furnivall lent me a copy. Harleian 1239 (E), 2392, 4912, of which I have had specimens and partial collations, and Durham II. 13, Digby 281, Selden B, 24, Phillipps 8252, of which I have had specimens, have been compared occasionally. For all these collations and specimens I am indebted to Dr. Furnivall.

Rhyme-words are given in the form in which they occur in A, without variants. Exceptions to this practice are signified when they occur.

In citing words from Anglo-Saxon and Middle English in illustration of words or forms from the Troilus, no attempt has been made at anything more than a brief and handy reference, and no implication is intended as to the particular dialect of Anglo-Saxon or Middle English of which Chaucer’s word is the descendant or representative. In these references L. means the A-text of Layamon, and does not necessarily imply that the B-text has the same form.

In marking elision, apocope, and syncope in the Grammatical Chapter, it has been assumed that ten syllables (or eleven, when the rhyme is feminine) are the normal number, and elision, syncope, etc., have been taken for granted when the preservation of a final or an interior e would make a trisyllabic foot or an “extra syllable before a pause.” This is merely for conciseness. There is no intention of maintaining that Chaucer never used a trisyllabic foot or that different slurs do not differ in the degree in which a sound is suppressed or modified. Special sections (§§ 144—5) in the Metrical Chapter deals with the so-called “extra syllable before the cæsura.” This renders the marking of the cæsura in the grammatical part unnecessary; yet the sign || has often been added to a form when occasion seemed to require.

In registering forms, the following signs, etc., are made use of to indicate the presence or absence of the final e in writing or in sound.

-e (Roman, without a diacritic sign) indicates a final -e pronounced before a consonant (not h) or -e in rhyme.¹ In the latter case an f is

¹ This statement applies, of course, to -e in the word immediately under discussion in any instance. If a fragment of context is quoted, I have not always taken the superfluous trouble to mark what happens to all the -e’s.
attached to the verse number. In a considerable number of cases a faulty final e in rhyme is registered without remark if the rhyme-word makes it clear that the -e is not pronounced.

-ë indicates a final e pronounced either (1) before a vowel or h (in which case the fact that a vowel or h follows is always made clear), or (2) before a consonant (in which case -ë is used merely for emphasis or out of caution). In the interior of a word the diaeresis indicates that the vowel over which it is placed is pronounced.

-e (Italic) indicates a final e written but elided before a vowel or h (the former unless the contrary is indicated). Hiatus is always carefully and unmistakably marked.

-e indicates a final e written but not sounded before a consonant (not h). When not final, e indicates syncopated e (and so of other vowels).

-(e) indicates an erroneous final e written but not pronounced. When necessary this is distinguished as -(e), -i.e. before a word beginning with a vowel or h,—and -(e),—before a word beginning with a consonant (not h); but this distinction is usually superfluous.

-[e] indicates that the metre requires an -e (pronounced) at the end of a word which is written without -e in the MS.

-[ë] indicates that a grammatically justifiable -o is elided before a vowel or h, and is actually not written. This sign is seldom used.

-[ë] indicates that a grammatically justifiable -o is not pronounced before a consonant (not h) and is actually not written. This sign is seldom used.

When the fact that a word ends in a consonant or any vowel but -e renders it impossible to indicate by any of the signs just explained whether the word that follows begins with a vowel or a consonant, the necessary information is given either in plain terms or by means of the signs (i.) and (ii.). (i.) indicates that the forms that follow occur before a consonant (not h); (ii.) indicates that they occur before a vowel or h (the former, unless the contrary is mentioned). When neither of these signs is used, the forms that follow occur before consonants (not h) or in rhyme (indicated by /) in the places cited. (i.) (ii.) indicates that no distinction as to following vowel or consonant is made in registering the forms. These conventions are used especially in the case of nouns and adjectives that properly or regularly end in a consonant (see §§ 11, 18, 19, 34, 49), and of adverbs without -e (see §§ 85, 86, 88, 91): see also § 14. In the case of forms as to which there is no possible interest in knowing whether a vowel or a consonant follows, no such signs are used (see §§ 35—42, 44, 93, 94, etc.).
The relations of the *Troilus* MSS. are complicated. In general the MSS. seem to fall into two groups, the first represented by ABCpG, the second by CEJ. D₁ (the old hand of D)¹ is closely related to C, D₂ (the late hand of D) has much in common with group i., but shows also some relation to C. Phillipps is closely related to D₁. H has close relations with both D₁ Ph. and D₂. There is excellent evidence for contamination in the case of H, and, in general, it must be said that no genealogy for the MSS. of group ii. can be made out that is free from difficulties. I have made many notes on the relations of the MSS., and have even constructed a scheme which seems to satisfy most of the phenomena; but the material in my possession, though considerable, is not sufficient to warrant definite conclusions. I hope to return to the subject later, when opportunity for a complete collation of the MSS. concerned shall offer.

Of the MSS. of group i., Corpus is the best, though it makes some serious omissions. B is often better than A, but the grammatical forms of A usually deserve the preference. Of group ii., J seems to be the best. C is copied from a bad MS., and is full of errors and of corrections. D₁ and Phillipps have an extraordinary number of corruptions, and were evidently written by scribes who had no feeling for Chaucer's verse. Harl. 2392 is a poor MS. and E is apparently but indifferent. Selden, Durham, and Digby are all poor, and Harl. 4912 is far from good.

¹ There are three hands in D: a late hand (1—70, 498—567, 4859—end), and two earlier hands (one writing 3921—4480, the other writing the rest).
COMPARATIVE TABLE OF LINE-NUMBERS IN THE TROILUS.

References are made by verses, and for this purpose the lines have been numbered throughout the poem from 1 to 8232 without regard to the division into books. The following table exhibits, in parallel columns, the numbering here used and the corresponding book, stanza, and verse numbers in Furnivall (Campsall MS.)¹ and Morris (Aldine ed.).

1—1085 = book i. The numbering used in the Observations follows Furnivall’s numbering (Campsall MS.) exactly. Morris inserts a stanza (not found in A) after st. 127 (i.e. after v. 889). Hence, beginning with v. 890, one must add 7 to Furnivall’s verse-numbers (beginning with st. 128, 1 to his stanza-numbers) to reduce them to Morris’s numbering.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>FURNIVALL.</th>
<th>MORRIS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Book</td>
<td>Stanza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1086</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1150</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1250</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1300</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1350</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1400</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1450</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1500</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1550</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1650</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1700</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1750</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1800</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1850</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1900</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2050</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2100</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2150</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2250</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2300</td>
<td>174</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2350</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2400</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2450</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2500</td>
<td>203</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2550</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2600</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2650</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2700</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2750</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2800</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2812</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Bk. iv, st. 102 [= iv. 98, vv. 650—686 in Morris], though not in AB, is included by Furnivall in his numbering, and accordingly in the numbering adopted for these Observations (vv. 5870—76).
### Comparative Table of Line-Numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Stanza</th>
<th>Verse of Stanza</th>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Proem to III,</th>
<th>Proem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FURNIVALL.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2843</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>III, 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2851</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2882</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2900</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3060</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3000</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3050</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>III, 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3100</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>258</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3150</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>308</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3200</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>358</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3250</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>408</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3300</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>458</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3350</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>508</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3400</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>558</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3450</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>608</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3500</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>658</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3550</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>708</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3600</td>
<td>109</td>
<td>758</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3650</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>808</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3700</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>858</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3750</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>908</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3800</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>958</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3850</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>1008</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3900</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>1058</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3950</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>1108</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MORRIS.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>1158</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4050</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>1208</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4100</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>1258</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4150</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>1308</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4200</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>1358</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4250</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>1408</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4300</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>1458</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4350</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>1508</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4400</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>1558</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4450</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>1608</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4500</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>1658</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4550</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>1708</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4600</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>1758</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4650</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>1808</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4700</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>1820</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4750</td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4800</td>
<td>280</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4850</td>
<td>287</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4900</td>
<td>294</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4950</td>
<td>301</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5000</strong></td>
<td>40, 2</td>
<td>233</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5050</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>388</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5100</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>433</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5150</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>488</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5200</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>533</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Marked 1460 in Morris, but the error is not continued. Morris’s 1470 is right again.
### Comparative Table of Line-Numbers.

| **Furnivall.** |  |  |  |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| **Book** | **Stanza** | **Verse of Stanza** | **Verse** |
| 5250 | IV, 84 | 7 | IV, 588 |
| 5300 | 92 | 1 | 638 |
| 5350 | 99 | 2 | 688 |
| 5400 | 106 | 3 | 738 |
| 5450 | 113 | 4 | 788 |
| 5500 | 120 | 5 | 838 |
| 5550 | 127 | 6 | 888 |
| 5600 | 134 | 7 | 938 |
| 5650 | 142 | 1 | 988 |
| 5700 | 149 | 2 | 1038 |
| 5750 | 156 | 3 | 1088 |
| 5800 | 163 | 4 | 1138 |
| 5850 | 170 | 5 | 1188 |
| 5900 | 177 | 6 | 1238 |
| 5950 | 184 | 7 | 1288 |
| 6000 | 192 | 1 | 1338 |
| 6050 | 199 | 2 | 1388 |
| 6100 | 206 | 3 | 1438 |
| 6150 | 213 | 4 | 1488 |
| 6200 | 220 | 5 | 1538 |
| 6250 | 227 | 6 | 1588 |
| 6300 | 234 | 7 | 1638 |
| 6350 | 242 | 1 | 1688 |
| 6368 | 243 | 7 | 1701 |

| **Morris.** |  |  |  |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| **Book** | **Stanza** | **Verse of Stanza** | **Verse** |
| IV, 80 | 7 | IV, 560 |
| 88 | 1 | 610 |
| 95 | 2 | 660 |
| 102 | 3 | 710 |
| 109 | 4 | 760 |
| 116 | 5 | 810 |
| 123 | 6 | 860 |
| 130 | 7 | 910 |
| 138 | 1 | 960 |
| 145 | 2 | 1010 |
| 152 | 3 | 1060 |
| 159 | 4 | 1110 |
| 166 | 5 | 1160 |
| 173 | 6 | 1210 |
| 180 | 7 | 1260 |
| 188 | 1 | 1310 |
| 195 | 2 | 1360 |
| 202 | 3 | 1410 |
| 209 | 4 | 1460 |
| 216 | 5 | 1510 |
| 223 | 6 | 1560 |
| 230 | 7 | 1610 |
| 238 | 1 | 1660 |
| 239 | 7 | 1673 |

| **6000** | **5** | **1** | **V, 1** |
| 37 | 2 | 58 |
| 87 | 3 | 87 |
| 137 | 4 | 137 |
| 187 | 5 | 187 |
| 237 | 6 | 237 |
| 287 | 7 | 287 |
| 337 | 1 | 337 |
| 387 | 2 | 387 |
| 437 | 3 | 437 |
| 487 | 4 | 487 |
| 537 | 5 | 537 |
| 587 | 6 | 587 |
| 637 | 7 | 637 |
| 687 | 1 | 687 |
| 737 | 2 | 737 |
| 787 | 3 | 787 |
| 837 | 4 | 837 |
| 887 | 5 | 887 |
| 937 | 6 | 937 |
| 987 | 7 | 987 |
| 1037 | 1 | 1037 |
| 1087 | 2 | 1087 |
| 1137 | 3 | 1137 |
| 1187 | 4 | 1187 |
| 1237 | 5 | 1237 |
| 1287 | 6 | 1287 |
| 1337 | 7 | 1337 |
| 1387 | 1 | 1387 |
| 1437 | 2 | 1437 |
| 1487 | 3 | 1487 |
| 1537 | 4 | 1537 |

1. Morris counts the signature *Le vostre T.* as v. 1422; hence the verse-numbers increase by one as indicated.
### Comparative Table of Line-Numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Thebaid argument following v. 7861 is not counted.</th>
<th>not counted.</th>
<th>Here Morris inserts the Latin Thebaid argument as st. 215, vv. 1500—1511.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7862 ... V, 215, 1</td>
<td>V, 1499</td>
<td>V, 216, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7900 ... 220, 4</td>
<td>1537</td>
<td>221, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7950 ... 227, 5</td>
<td>1587</td>
<td>228, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000 ... 234, 6</td>
<td>1637</td>
<td>235, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8050 ... 241, 7</td>
<td>1687</td>
<td>242, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8100 ... 249, 1</td>
<td>1737</td>
<td>250, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8150 ... 256, 2</td>
<td>1787</td>
<td>257, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8200 ... 263, 3</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>264, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8232 ... 267, 7</td>
<td>1869</td>
<td>268, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Morris counts the signature La vosstre C. after v. 7994 (his v. 1644) as v. 1645; hence his verse-numbers after 1644 increase by one.

[Professor Skeat’s edition of the *Troilus* did not appear until this table had been sent to the printers. His numbering corresponds with Dr. Morris’s for Book I., and with Dr. Furnivall’s for the other books.]
ABBREVIATIONS AND SIGNS.

The Manuscripts.

A : Campsall MS.
B : Harleian MS. 2280.
C : Cambridge University Library MS. Gg. 4. 27.
D : Harleian MS. 3943.
Digby : Digby MS. 231, Bodleian Library.
E : Harleian MS. 1239.
G : Additional MS. 12,044, British Museum.
Ill. (Harl.) 2392 : Harleian MS. 2392.
Ill. (Harl.) 4912 : Harleian MS. 4912.
John's : St. John's MS., Cambridge.
Phillips : Phillipps MS. 8252.
Selden : Selden MS. B. 24, Bodleian Library.

Miscellaneous.

e (after the abbreviation for a MS.: as, C°, D°) : by the corrector.
def. adj. : adjective in the definite construction.
-as, -g, -(c), etc. : see explanation, pp. xvi, xvii, above.
f (as in 1643 f) : in rhyme.
n. : neuter in the etymological notes; elsewhere usually nominative.
O. : Ormulum.
P. Pl. : Piers Plowman.
rh. : rhymes with (but a colon is usually employed).
Var. : variant spellings.
9-syl. : a nine-syllable verse (i.e. a verse lacking the unaccented part of the first foot).
(i.), (ii.), (iii.) : see explanation, p. xvii, above.
| indicates the ictus.
\ indicates a word or a verse certainly wrong, either in sense or metre.
* indicates a word or a verse that may be scanned and makes sense but that is shown by comparison of MSS. to be wrong.
A dot under a vowel indicates that it is suppressed in pronunciation by syncope or apocope.
[] indicates that something which is omitted in the MS. should be supplied.
() indicates something which is written in the MS. should be omitted.
A slur or ellipsis different from the ordinary ellipsis of final weak e is often indicated by italicizing the final vowel of the first word and the initial vowel of the second. Thus, lady unto (p. 9), pite on (p. 89), storye it (p. 87).
§ 1. Masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns of the n-declension in Anglo-Saxon end in the Troilus in -e.

§ 2. I. Masculine nouns of the n-declension (Child, § 3).

ape (A.S. apa), 2127 f (: iape n.).
assæ (A.S. assa, O. asse), 731 (-e D).
bane (A.S. bona, bana, L. bone, Lp. bane), 1405 (-ö † it C), 4995, 5436, 5569, 6965 f (ban C) (: the blood Thébâne, -bân C).
bere, beere (A.S. bera), 6115 f (: stere inf. : ledère); -e, 4622 (-ö † or D).

byleue (A.S. ge-léafa, L. i-læfe, O. læfe), 6956 f (beleue BCD) (: greue inf. : leue adj. pl.).
bowe (A.S. boga, L. boze, bowe), 208 (-[e] B, bow † D), 1946 f (bow D) (: knowe ind. 3 pl.), 2620.

crede (A.S. créala), 6452 f (: Diomede : hede n. heed).
drope (A.S. dropa, L. drope), 934 f (: hope ind. 1 sg.); -e, 23.
drynke (A.S. drinca ; but also drin, m., i-stem ; L. a b drench, a drine, b drinke, O. drinnc, drinnc, drinnc), 1736 f (: synke inf.); -[e], 5437 (-e D); drynk and, 4057 (-e BD). [Cf. drynk[e]les, § 49, n. 5.]
fere, feere (A.S. ge-féra, L. i-vere, O. fere), 13 f, 4133 f † B, 4338 f, 5453 f (fer D).

Rhyme words.—cheere (13), dere adj. (4133 B, 4338), spere sphæra (4338), y-fere (5453).
galle (A.S. gealla, galla, O. galle), 5799 f (gall D) (: falle inf.); -e ys, 7095 f (galles = gall is D) (: halles : wallys).
grame (A.S. grama, L. grame), 372 f (gaine † C, game † D) (: shame), 3870 f (: name), 5191 f (game † D) (: blame inf. : shame).
Observations on the Language

hawe (A.S. haga), 3696 f (hawe C) (: i-drawe p.p.).
hale (A.S. hela), 5390 f (hole B) (: fele inf.).

hope (A.S. hopa, L.O. hope), -e, 391 (-e he), 1895, 2392, 2408, 2414,
2418 (hoop D), 2425, 3257, 3268, 5240, 6092 (hope + B, hoope D),
6993, 7048, 7276, 7558, 7561, 7570, 7761 (lone + C), 7763, 7801
(hoope D).—hope || the, 1092; -e hale, 6711. [hope +, 2357 D.]

hosborne (A.S. hősbonde, L. husbonde, Lp. hosebonde, P. Pl. hose-
bonde), 1839 (housebonde B, husbonde C, husband[e] D).—hus-
bonde was, 7893 (hosbande C, husbond[e] D). [Cf. bonde, adj.,
§ 67, n. 2.]
knaue (A.S. cnafa, enapa, L. cnaue, O. napae-child), 3233 AC (scaue
knotte (A.S. cnotta), -e, 4574 B (knot ACD).
lappe (A.S. kœpja, Lp. lappe (= Lœ bærm), P. Pl. lappe), 1533
(lape D), 2901 f (lappe C) (: quappe inf.), 3584 f (: trappe n.).
mone, moone (A.S. móna, L.O. mone), 524 f, 1017 f, 1159 f, 2005,
2397 f, 3391 f, 3466, 6638 f, 6740 f, 7011, 7012; -e hatli, 4598;
-e o, 7552.

Rhyme words.—to done (1017, 1159, 3391, 6638, 6740), soone (524, 1159,
2397, 6638), bone boon (1017).

name (A.S. nomæ, nama, L. nome, name, O. name), 251 f, 542 (Cris-
seide + D), 870, 876, 880 CD, 895 f, 1069 + D, 1847 f, 3108 f,
3109 CD, 3160 f, 3871 f, 5226 f, 6129 f, 6228 f, 6243; -e, 99,
878, 880 AB, 3109 AB, 5819, 7418 (I mene + C), 7458, 8049.

Rhyme words.—shame (251, 895, 1847, 6129, 6228), blame n. (3108), to
blame (3160), game (3871), game (5226, 6129, 6228), defame inf. (5226).

nekke (A.S. hnecca, L. necke), 2071 (nek + D), 5737; -e, 4417 (nek D).
oxæ (A.S. oxæ, O. oxæ), -e, 7832 (ox B).

shawe (A.S. scaga), 3562 f (schawe C, sawe + D) (: shawe p.p.).

skathe (O.N. skaði, cf. A.S. sceā̆a, scaşi, L. scæ̆a, O. skafe-less),
4869 f (schathe C) (: rathe adv. : bathe inf.), 7301 f (: rathe adv.).

stedæ, steeæ (A.S. stêda, stêda, L. stede), 1066, 1709 f (: blede inf.),
6669 f (sted D) (: to glede n. : hede n. heed), 7401 f (: nede n. :
Diomedæ. [stedœ + ire, 4545 C.]

stætr (A.S. stœora gubernator, stëor gubernaculum), 4133 f (fere + I)
(: dere); -e, 7004 (-e- B, ster(id) C, ster D). [Cf. ster[e]les,
§ 49, n. 5.]

Note.—In 4133 stëre = pilot; in 7004 in stëre = astern.

stér (A.S. stëorna, L. stëorræ, stérre, O. sterre), 175 f (: derre comp.);
-e, 7001.—lodë-stërre, 6595 f (lodis s. C, lode-sterr D) (: werre n.),
7755 f (lode sterr D) (: werre n.).


Rhyne words.—grene (814, 1146, 6603), queene (814), kene adj. pl. (1146), to sene (4068), I wene ind. (5458), sustene inf. (5458, 6603), i-sene, sene adj. (6267, 8077), shene def. adj. (6267).

tyme (A.S. tîma, L. tene, O. tene), 814 f, 1146 f, 4068 f, 5458 f (toen B), 6267 f, 6603 f, 8077 f.

1 In this compound som is variously spelt, but always monosyllabic.
2 Apparently we should read: Ek som tyme it is (i.e. it's) a craft to semè fle.
3 Or, Ye woldē som tymē, etc.
th. tymēs more, 5488 A (–e B, -e3 D); a th. tymēs mercy, 6162
(–e B, -ys C); a th. tymēs (before vowels), 2174 (ys C), 3231
(–ys C), so twenty th. t., 3315 (–ys C, –e3 D).—Compare, tymēs
twēs twelue, 6460 (–e D, B † (!), C † (!)). [Cf. sithe, § 14.]

welcome¹ (A.S. wilcuma, L. wilcume, wulcume, L.⁵ wil-, wel-, wol-come,
P. Pl. welcome, welen), he was wel-come, 6436 f (: i-come p.p.);
wel come (as interj), 6555 f (: nome p.p.); wher shall I sey to yow
wel come or no, 5493 A (wel com B; wheder I sey welcume †
or no D).—wel-come my knyght, 4151 (w. myn pes † C). [Var.
welcome, C 6436 and 6555.]

wele (A.S. wela), 5145 (welē knowe A, wele y-knowe BC, wel I
knowe D †); –e, 4, 1951 (D †), 3662, 3678, 4314 (wel B; D †),
5144 (wel BD), 7693 (wel D). [welē for welē, 335 D (wel for wel
AB), = well adv.]

welle (A.S. wella; but also wiell, m., i-stem; L. welle, L.⁵ wel,
O. welle), 873 f, 1263 f, 1593 f, 5807 f, 6215 f, 7693 f (wel H D),
7860 f (wel H D), 7928 f (wel D); –e, 1926 (wel B), 4315.

Rhyme words.—telle inf. (873, 1263, 1593, 7928), dwelle inf. (1593, 5807,
7693, 7928), wnsnelle inf. (5807), helle (873, 6215).

wille, wylle (A.S. willa, L. will, iville, O. wille), 125 f, 1316 f,
2687 (will[le] D),² 2773 (will[le] D), 4769 (willes B, will[le] D),
6950 f (wil H D), 8168 f (wil H D). [His willē hath, 7905 C, is an
error.]

Rhyme words.—stille adj. (125), stille inf. (1316), spille inf. (8950) Achille
(8186).

The form wil (A.S. ge-will, w., quasi jo-stem, common instead of
gewile, n. (prob.), i-stem, see Siev. § 262. 2 and n. 3, Cosijn, AWS.
Gr. II, 12; L. i-will, O. will, P. Pl. wil) is common. Sometimes it
is impossible to decide between wil and wille).—wil, wyl, (i.) 228
(wille B, will CD), 861 (wille B, wil [sche] C), 1355 (wyH A),
1564 (wille D), 3465 (wil H D), 4362 (wille BD), 7720 (wille C, wil

wone (A.S. ge-wuna, L. wune, i-wune, L.⁵ wone), 1403 f (sone
jilius); wone to, 7010 (he was † wont(e) D).

wrecche (A.S. wrecc(e)a, L. wrecche, L.⁵ wreche, wrecch, O. wrecche),
798 f, 889 f, 1425 f, 1518 f, 1975, 4215 f, 5238, 5291 f, 6106 f,
6251 f, 6634 f; –e, 708, 777 (wrecch D, –e † be A), 805, 4933
(wrich B), 5406 (wrecch D), 5500 (–e se CD), 7068 (wrecch D).

¹ Confused, as is well known, with wel, adv., and come, p.p.: cf. Icel. velkominn.
² ABG seem to have yourē willē be; CD read "jif if it joure (jour) willē (wil[le])
be (were)."
§ 3. II. Feminine nouns of the n- declension (Child, § 4).

arwe (A.S. arwe, arewe (mid arewan Chron. 1083; arwan catapultus Aldh. Gl.; see Sweet, p. 281), earlier ærig, earh, L. arwe, L.b. arewe), an arwe, 1726 (a narwe B), 6210.

asce (A.S. asce), 1624 (asshen B, asschin C, assyn D).


blase (A.S. blése, L.P. Pl. blase), -e, 4846.


dokk (A.S. docce), -e, 5123.

erthe (A.S. erðe, L.O. corðe, L.b. O. erpe), -e, 2850 (erhte B), 2863 (erthe and [whom] B), 4586 (erth B, erþe † hath E), 4603 (erth B).—erþe that, 8178 A (erth B). [Cf. erthelés, § 49, n. 5.]

harpe (A.S. hearpe, L. harpe), 731 f (: sharpe adv.), 2116 f (hare † B) (: harpe inf. : sharpe adv.).

herte (A.S. heorte, L. heorte, O. heorrtre, herrte), 307 f, 792 f, 1987 f, 2016 f, 2064 f, 2181 f, 2372 f, 2717 f, 2940 f, 2989 f, 3578 f, 3746 f, 3789 f, 3843 f (C †), 3913 f, 3940 f, 4025 f, 4213 f, 4340 f (-t C), 4757 f, 4902 f, 4908 f, 5089 f, 5802 f, 5846 f, 6071 f (C †), 6111 f, 6161 f, 6282 f, 6426 f (-t C), 6496 f (-t C), 6564 f (-t C), 6618 f, 7085 f, 7413 f, 7588 f (-t C), 7687 f, 7707 f, 7783 f (-t C), 7857 f, 7897 f. (In many of the above cases D has hert.)—hertë (before consonants), 367 ([c] BD), 1693 ([c] BD), 2389 ([c] D), 3881 ([c] BD), 4052, 5338, 6149 ([c] B), 7371, 7563 ([c] B), 7570 ([c] B), 7682; cf. also 228, 502, 599, 606, 749, 1006, 1063, 1664, 1783, 1845, 1894, 1985, 2007, 2016, 2035, 2067, 2193, 2326, 2406, 2411, 2442, 2677, 2885, 2899, 2952, 2969, 3198, 3453 B, 3616, 3642, 3645, 3685, 3730, 3750, 3752, 3830, 3845, 3885, 3911, 3928, 4023, 4120, 4123, 4146, 4191, 4263, 4330, 4391, 4407, 4433, 4486, 4536, 4674, 4981, 5242, 5269, 5361 A, 5871, 5936, 5973, 6079, 6190, 6214, 6252, 6591, 6808, 6816, 7275, 7490, 7552, 7676, 7684, 7694, 7746, 7931, 7934, 8022, 8060. (In some of these cases hert[e] is found in B or D or both. Even A occasionally has hert[e], as in 229, 453, 1652.) [Cf. hertelés, § 49, n. 5.]

herte is occasionally found, but in nearly every case a comparison
of MSS disposes of this apocopated form (so in 1759 C, 1941 C, 3189 C, 8022 C). The same is true of hert before a consonant (see, e.g., D in vv. 599, 2193, 2442, 3750, 4391, 5269; cf. also 278 A). The following lines seem to admit of two scansion:

As muchē ioie as herte (hert D) may (myght D) comprende (hertē . . . complende A), 4529 (-ē may comprende Cp.).

A kynges herte (hert D) semeth bi hires a wreche, 889 (or, hertē semeth). (Cf. 4674, especially CD.)

There are no cases of hiatus except such as a comparison of MSS easily corrects. Thus,—hertē † is, 1957 A; hertē † alle, 1956 B.

herte, 2456 (t BD), 2911 (t D), 2956 (t D), 3849 (t BD); cf. 250, 461, 1561, 2186, 2310, 2951, 2987, 3018, 3235, 3475, 3729, 3835, 3838, 4330 D, 4367 A, 5873, 6672, 6711, 6749, 8209. The spelling hert before a vowel is found in all MSS to some extent: see the above list and cf. the following lines, in which A has hert,—

535, 928, 1954, 2014 (C herte).—hertē he, 2013 AB1; 3645 † C, 5572 AB, 7141, 7937; -e hym, 3857 A; -e hath, 6501 (t D), 7880.—hertē happe, 7159 (D?).

Rhyme words.—conuerte inf. (307, 1987, 6071), peynes, sorwes smerte (792, 3789, 4908, 5089, 5802, 6161, 6504, 7085, 7687, 7783), smerto adv. (4902), smerte pres. and pret. subj. 3 sg. (2181, 2989, 3716, 3843, 5846, 6426, 6496, 7558), pret. ind. 3 sg. (2016) inf. (2372, 4025, 6111, 6282), asterte pres. subj. 3 sg. (7707), sterte, asterto pret. ind. 1, 3 sg. (2181, 2940, 3913, 4757, 6071, 6564, 7857, 7897), sterte inf. (2717, 3789, 4340, 4902, 6618), to-sterte inf. (2064), sherte n. (3578, 3940, 4213, 4757).

howue (A.S. hûfe, P. Pl. howuc,houue, houue), -e, 3617 (houe C, howe D), 6832.2

larke (A.S. lâwerce, P. Pl. larke), 4033 (- [e] B).

[lilie (A.S. lilie), the lilie † (dissyl) wexith, 942 D (rose ABC).]

lyne (A.S. lîne, P. Pl. lyne), 2262 f ( : dyne inf.), 2546 f ( : dyne inf.: fyne inf.), 3070 (blyve † D), 7140 f ( : fyne inf.); -e, 1061, 3346 (lyne C).

Note.—In 2262 and 3346 a line of writing is meant; in the other instances, a cord or the like. In 7844, where lineage is intended, A and B have ligne, D has lyne (lyne + C).

masse (A.S. mæsse, O. messe, P. Pl. masse), 2930 f ( : neuere the lasse : passe inf.) [mes : les : passe D].

more, moore (A.S. more; also moru, f., see Sievers, § 278, n. 1; P. Pl. more), 6388 f (moor D) ( : forlore p.p. : euergmore).

myte (A.S. mîte, P. Pl. myte), 3674 f ( : lyte), 3742 f ( : lyte : white

---

1 herte rente C is doubtless for herte he r. In D, read hert[e] r. (?). But cf. 5572, where hertē seems to have given rise to herte he in AB.

2 A alone preserves the right reading. B has howen, C enny entendit, D ougne, G honie. See Skeat's n. on P. Pl. xxiii, 172, ed. 1886, II, 280.
§ 3. of Chaucer's Troilus.

adj. pl.), 5346 f (: visite inf. : delite inf.). [For myte, 4445 D, read mot (A.S. mot) with A (moote B, mote C).]

netle (A.S. netle, netle), 941 (nettyl C, nettle D); netle in dokke out, 5123 (netle B, nettyl C, nettl D).


owl (A.S. úle), -e, 6682.

pride (A.S. prýte; also pryt, f.; L. prude, prute), -e, 230, 4643, 4647 (!).

rose (A.S. róse), 942 (lilie † dissyl. D), 2341 f (: suppose ind. 1 sg.);
-e  †, 7207 C.

shete (A.S. scéte (M.), scýte (L.W.S.), P. Pl. schete), -e, 3898 (-e hit =it D), 4412 (9-syl.). [Var. B shette; CD schete.]

side, syde (A.S. side, L.O. side, P. Pl. syde-borde, sydbenche, sydtable), 185 f, 321 f, 3818 (-e BCD), 4308 f (byside D), 4577 f, 4826 f, 5354 f, 5486 f, 5740 f, 6012 f, 6053 f, 6128 f (se)yde D), 6947 f, 7062 f, 7115 f; -e, 4896, 7050; -e hym, 3078, 4431; -e here (eam), 3524 (-e [her] D).

Rhyme words.—I. Infinitives: gyde (185), hide (321, 5486), chyde (4308), betide (4577, 6128), byde (4826), abyde (5486, 6012). II. Subjunctives: gyde 3 sg. (5354), bytyde 3 sg. (6053, 7115), aspie (aspie + A, aspie B, aspied D) pret. 3 pl. (sg. † C) (6053). III. Nouns: tyde (5740, 7062), Cupide (6947). [The rhyme with seyde (dixit) in 321 C counts for nothing; seyde is wrong.] (For aside, beside, see § 88.)

sonne (A.S. sunne, L. sunne, Lb. sonne, O. sunne), 1259 f, 1849, 1866 f, 1947, 1990 f, 2054, 2322 f, 2671 f, 3220 f, 3610, 4306 (sonne Tytán A, but omit to and read sonne Tytán), 4446, 5029 ABD, 7024, 7648; -e, 1852, 3950, 5901, 6094, 6105 ABD, 6911 (forme † C), 7249; -e hym, 4549 (-e † hastith D). [sonne, 5029 † C, 6105 † C.]


Note.—Sonne is the spelling of AB, sunne the usual form in C. D has both forms and also sum (2671 f, 3220 f).

swalwe (A.S. swealwe, swalwe), 1149 (-ow † D).

throte (A.S. prote; also protu, f., see Sievers, § 278, n. 1), 1410 (-e † A); -e here (poss. sq.), 4092.

tongue, tunge (A.S. tunge, L.O. tunge), 1315 ([-e] D), 1889 f (-g D, tunge(n) A), 3136 f, 5183, 5463 f, 5543, 6358, 6808, 7167 (C †), 7424 f, 7684 (-e (?) D †), 8157 f, 8159 f; tonge, 1099 AB, 2766 (tung D), 3144 (tong B, tung D), 7926 BD (-ê may C, -ê † A). [tung[ê] it †, 1099 D.]

Rhyme words.—tonge p.p. (1889 [runge(n) A], 7424), sognge, y-songe p.p. (5463, 7424, 8157, 8159), to vs yonge (3136), tone (8157). [AB have usually the spelling tonge; C has usually tunge, D usually tunge or tung.]
Observations on the Language [§§ 3, 4.

trappe (A.S. trappe, O. trapp), 3583 f (lappe n.); trappè dore, 3601 (trap[pe] D).
wodë-bynde (A.S. wudebinde), 4073 f AC (wonbynde þ B, woodbynde D) (: wynde inf.).
wyke, wowke, see § 8, p. 15.

wyse (A.S. wise, L.O. wise, L. b wis, guye), 81 f, 159 CD (pl. AB), 162 f, 275 f, 336 f, 363 f, 697 f, 952 f, 957 f, 985 f, 1114 f, 1359 f, 1471 f, 1764 f, 1806 f, 2001 f (gyse C), 2149 f, 2548 f, 2631 f, 2752 f, 2785 f, 2897 f, 2912 f, 2974 f, 3079 f, 3298 f, 3618 f C, 3693 f, 3785 f, 3811 f, 3889, 4129 f, 4310 f, 4436 f, 4516 f, 4639 f, 4660 f (wyse A), 4899 f, 5056 f, 5174 f, 5495, 5551 f, 6000 f, 6189 f, 7460 f, 7683 f, 7831 f; wyse, 61, 285, 440 ABC, 2006, 2154, 3336 D, 6427 (guise D); -e his, 3797; -e he, 8197.—

wyse || soth, 3197 AB (–e CD).

Rhyme words.—this wyse sopiens (81), wyse adj. pl. (697, 957, 955, 2001, 3693, 3755, 4390), seruice, -ise, -yse (81, 162, 336, 952, 957, 985, 1764, 2974, 4129, 4639, 4660, 5056, 5174, 5472, 5495, 7683), sacrifice n. (7831), denyse inf. (275, 1114, 1471, 2149, 2631, 2897, 3079, 3298, 4436, 4516, 4639, 4660, 4899, 5472, 5551, 7460, 7683), denyse ind. 2 pl. (6189), ryse inf. (275, 697, 2912, 3811, 4310), arye inf. (2752, 3785), arye p.p. (2548), arye inf. (363, 2785, 4436), arye ind. 3 pl. (1359), des-, dispise inf. (1806, 4310, 7831), dispise subj. 3 pl. (6000), suffise inf. (3693, 5056, 7460). [wyse n. (81 D.)]

wydowe (A.S. wiodu (old and rare), wioduwe, woodwue, wuduwe, Ps. widwe, N. widua, Sievers, §§ 71 and n. 1, 156.4, L. widewe, O. widwae, widdwe), wydowe (dissyl.) was, 97 AD (wydew B, wedewe C).

Note.—For love, see § 8; for rynde, rysshe, slwe, § 9; for bore, sherte, § 15.

§ 4. III. Neuters of the n-declension (Child, § 2).

er, eere (A.S. éare, O. ēre), 106 f, 725 f, 767 f, 1280 f, 1536 f, 2722 f, 3301 f, 3408 f, 3596 f, 3951 f, 4725 f, 5306 f; eere, 5096.

Rhyme words.—ere timor (106, 725, 767, 1536, 3301, 5096), were pret. subj. 3 sg. (725, 767, 3301, 3408, 3951), there (1280, 3596, 5306), bere foretrum (2722), every where (4725).

eye, yë (A.S. éage, L. b ée, O. ehe), 272, 453 f, 1386 f, 1488 f, 1989 f, 4188 E, 4972 f C, 5060 f, 6318 f, 6811 f, 6917 f, 7264 f; eye, 6442 (ey3yn C).

Note.—Èye is the prevailing spelling; ye, which is shown by the rhyme to be Chaucer’s form, is found in 7264 (ABD), 6917 B, 6811 D, 4972 C. Other forms are: in B, éyhe, 272; éyhe, 1386; éygh, 1488; heye, 1989; in C, éye, 453, 1386; in D, ey, 1488, 5060; yhe, 6318, 6442; yec, 6917. Heighhe, 1989 A, is an error. Èye occurs in 272 D.

Rhyme words.—companye (453, 6811), folye (453), lye (1386, 5060, 6318, 7204), heighhe (l. hyye)(1488), pyre (1488), wrye inf. (1989), y-wrye p.p. (6318), aspye inf. (6917), sl(e)y adj. pl. (7264). [In 4972 C the rhyme is false,—twyce: yë: awayne.]
§ 5. In *lady* (A.S. *hlæfdige, f.*) and *pley* (A.S. *plega, m.*), the final vowel disappears, and in *pley* the *y* unites with the preceding vowel to form a diphthong (Child, § 5; ten Brink, § 211). In *fo, foo* (A.S. *ge-fá, m.*) an old (A.S.) contraction is preserved (ten Brink, § 211; Sievers, § 277, n. 2).

lady (A.S. *hlæfdige, L. læfdi, O. lafdiz), lady (before vowels and consonants), 106, 166 ABC, 346, 434, 493, 524 (bodie D), 1025, 1093, 1164 BD, 1510, 2150, 2177, 2501, 2718, 2799, 3797, 3910, 4131, 4327, 5265, 5863, 6112, 6507 (laydy B), 6525, 6581, 6592, 6815, 6820, 6939, 7032, 7235, 7678, 8029, etc.; lady (before vowels and consonants), 166 D, 269, 7879; lady 166 A. [ladi is common in C.]

pley (A.S. *plega, m., L. pleçe), 6291 f (pleye B, play C) (: weye acc. (way BD, alway C): away); pley and, 1790 (-e B, play C †); pleye the, 5528 (pley CD).

fo, foo (A.S. *ge-fá, sbst. (fáh, fá, adj.), L. ifa, L. fo, ifo), 837 f (wo B), 1573 f, 1769 f, 2567 f, 2701 (for C), 4828 f, 5751 f, 6522 f, 6591 f (seo D); before vowels, 485, 1990.

feldære, 3703 f BC (feld[e]-fare BC, feldyfare D) (: fare 3 pl.) (cf. Parl. F., 364) is referred to *feldor, m.*, though Bosworth-Toller questioningly recognizes a weak feminine *feldelfare* on the strength of the eleventh-century gloss *clothamer* and *feldeware*, Wright-Wülek., p. 287, 17. The M.-Eng. form has perhaps been influenced by popular etymology (quasi *feld-gefara*).

Note.—For wyndowe, see § 15.

§ 6. Anglo-Saxon masculine and neuter vowel-stems that have a final vowel (-e or -u) in the nominative singular, preserve this vowel as -e in the *Troilus.*

For convenience the following nouns are thrown together in a single alphabetical list: (i.) masculine jo- (ja-) stems with long stem-syllable,—ende, leche; (ii.) neuter jo- (ja-) stems with long stem-syllable,—wedé, wyte (for ernde, see § 7); (iii.) neuter w-stem,—bale; (iv.) masculine i-stems with short stem-syllable,—ache, hate, hege, lyce, mete, pilwe; (v.) neuter i-stem with short stem-syll ble,—spere; (vi.) masculine u-stems with short stem-syllable,—sunu, wudu. Masculine nomina agentis in -ere (which properly belong under i.) and abstract nouns in -scipe (which
properly belong under iv.) seldom (nouns in - scape perhaps never) retain -e: see § 7. For vil, vilde, see § 2. For ane, see § 15.

ache (A.S. ece, m.), -e, 5390 (ach B, ehe C).

bale (A.S. bealu, n., L. balu, bale), 5401 f ( : fyngres ... smale : pale pred. adj. sg.).

ende (A.S. ende, m., L.O. ende), 966 f, 1303 f, 1876 f, 2320, 2333 f, 2580 f, 2960 f, 3047 f, 3234 f, 3304 f, 3457 f, 3544 f, 3611 f, 3773 f, 4601, 4655 f, 5777 f, 6062 f, 6242 f, 6838 f, 7257 f, 7421 f, 7636 f, 7917 f, 8032 f; ende, 1345, 5498, 7756; end[e], 6862 f AB (-e CD). [Cf. endeles, § 85.]

Rhyme words.—I. Infinitives: bende (2333), wende (2333, 2580, 3457, 3544, 3611, 4655, 5777, 6242, 6838, 6862, 7917), blende, blynde, caccare (2580, 3047, 6062), sende (3304, 5777, 8032), shende (6242, 7257, 7421); II. shende ind. 1 sg. (7636), subj. 3 sg. (966), wende can (1303), cas (3234), camus (3047, 7257), catis (2960 ABC), to-rende subj. 3 pl. (1876), sende mittas (3544), mittat (3773, 6862).

cere: see § 7.

ernde. The best MSS. have erand. See § 7.

hate (A.S. hete, m. (cf. hatian), L. hæte, hete, O. hete), 1798; -e, 3870; -e he, 477.

hegge (A.S. hege, m., cf. heeg, f. (?), hece), He loketh forth by hegge by tre by greue, 7507 (hegg B, hegis † C, hegges † D, hege G).


—lechecraft, 5098.

lye (A.S. lyge, m., N. lyg); And for a soth they telle that lyie is, 6069 Cö ( : amphibologyis), but read twenty lyes with ABD.

mete (A.S. mete, m., N. met(t), L.O. mete), -e, 907 (mone † C, brede † D), 5437 ABDC ( ≅ C); -e his, 485.

pilwe (A.S. pyle, pylwe, m.), Saue a pilwe (pilwo B, pilowe D, pilowe G) I (om. C) fynde nought (G inserts elles) tenbrace (to embrace CG, to embrace D), 6587.

—shiphe (A.S. - scape) : see § 7.

sone (A.S. sunu, m., L. sune, sone, O. sune), 226, 1401 f ( : wone custom), 7027 ABC; sone, 2, 261, 1187, 1793, 3012 (some † B, soni † thogh D), 4650 (son D †), 6375, 6451, 7953, 8109.—Tydeus sone that doun descended is, 7877 ABDG. (sone †, 7027 D.)

Note.—Verses 226, 7027 disprove ten Brink's remark (Chancers Sprache und Verskunst, §§ 260, 261) that sone never occurs as a dissyllable in the interior of a verse in Chaucer. Further examples of dissyllabic sone will be given from the Legend of Good Women in an article by Professor J. M. Manly, which is soon to appear. (Cf. also Child, § 12.)

1 Later in the line read drynk[e] ABC (drynke D).
§ 6, 7 ] of Chaucer's Troilus. 11

spere (A.S. spere, n., L. spere, sper, P. Pl. spere, sper), 3216 f (spere B) (: spere jur; spere, 2512 (spere A), 4702; spere † for, 1286 C. wede (A.S. (ge)wāde, n., L. i wede, b wede, O. wade), 177 f, 4273 f (—wede, wode † B), 4561 f.  

Rhyme words.—dredre n. (all), brede n. (177), rede ind. 3 pl. (4273, 4561).  

wil, wilte : see § 2.  
wode (A.S. wudu, m., L. wude, wode, O. wnde), haselwode thoughte, 6868 (hastow † B); from haselwode || there, 7537; haselwodes shaken, 3732 AB (-e is CD); -e, 2417. [Var. B -wodde; D -woode.]  


§ 7. Exceptions to § 6.  

A.S. ærendre and stèle, neuter jo-stems, lose their -e in the Troilus.  
The final -e of the termination -shipe (A.S. -scipe, masc. i-stem) is not sounded and sometimes not written. The final -e of the termination -ere (A.S. -ere, jo-stem) is not sounded except in rhyme.  

ernde. Instead of errude (A.S. ærendre, n., jo-stem, L. ærnde, errnde, O. ernde), the best MSS. have (h)erand in the only place where this word occurs,—erand was, 1157 (herand B, erndē D).  

stel (A.S. stèle, style, n., L. stel, dat. stele) shows no -e,—of stel, 1678 f (-e BD) (: euery del : wel(e) adv.), 4987 f (stiel B, stele D) (: vpon the whiel)1; of stel and, 3322 (stiel B, stele D); trowe as stel in, 7194 (steele B, stele D).  

-ere (A.S. -ere, L.W.S. also -re, m., forming nomina agentis):  

déndre, 5163 (-er C, yndir D).  
fýndere, 1929 (-er BD, fingir † C). [-ere (?).]  
hãerpour (A.S. hearpere), before vowel, 2115 (ha[r]ppour B).  
hōldere, 1729 (-er D, -yn † C).  
ledère (A.S. lēdere ?), 6116 f (-dēr D) (: yfere : bere ursus).  
lōuére, 510 (-er D), 512 (-er AB), 2431 (-er BD), 4634 (-er BD), 4640 (-er BD), 5862 (-er BD); lōuére, 20 (-er D †), 1115 (-er BD), 4228 (-er E), 4570, 5233 (-er D, -ers B); -ère hastow, 4301 (-er B, oone † D); lōuére I, 1097 (-er BD); -ere he, 2130 (-ere seyde C, -er he D).  

lyere (A.S. léogerere), 3151 (-er BD); lyere, 3157 (accent uncertain A; -er BD, lif[e]re C).  
makere, 741 (-er BD; in A read [y]beten), 4279 (-er BD)2; -er yet, 8150 (-er BD).  

1 C ‡ om. of. 2 Thow rakel nyght there God makere of kynde.
Observations on the Language

morter (A.S. mortere, m., from Lat. mortarium, cf. Pogatscher, §§ 259, 287), m. that, 5907 (percher C).

rèdere (A.S. rëdere), 6633 (-er D).

Note.—The following verses, though they prove little or nothing, are curiously illustrative of the ending -ere in the fourteenth century:—

Jak Chep, Tronche, Jon Wran, Thom Myllere, Tyler, Jak Strawe,
Erle of the Plu, Rak to, Deer, et Hob Carter, Rakstrawe;
Isti ductores in plebe fuere priores.—Versus de tempore Johannis Straw.

Wright, Political Poems, I, 230.

-shipe, -ship (A.S. -scipe), termination forming abstract nouns:

felawship. And wher that (om. BCD) hym lyst (liste B, leste C) best felawship (felaweshipe B, felauschepe C) kan, 1291.—felawship, 3245 (-shyp B, -ship D †, felauschepe C).

frendship (A.S. fréondscipe, L. freonscipe), (i.) 2872 (-shippe B, -shipe C) (ii.) frenship, 1456 (-schepe D); frenship, 6498 (frenschcpe B, frenschepe C, frensshipe D); frenship haue, 1325 (-e D, frenschcpe C, frensshipe D); frenship here (dat.), 6548 (frenchcpe B, frenschcpe C, frensshipe D) to D).

lordship (A.S. hláfordscipe), lordship yow, 2505 (-chip B, -schepe (I) 3ow C); -ship hym, 2921 (-schepe C, -ship was ‡ D); -ship owr, 4598 (loresphe C, lord(e)schepe E).

worship (A.S. wërfcipe, L. wurcipe, wörschepe, O. würrshippe), w. and, 46 (-schepe C, -shipp D), 82 (-schipp B, -schepe C).

§ 8. Anglo-Saxon feminine nouns that have -u in the nominative, end in the Troilus in -e throughout the singular (except in the genitive).

The following list includes (i.) -ä- (-ō-) stems with short stem-syllable: ans-were, care, fure, hawe, love, save, shame, tale, wyke (originally n-stem); (ii.) abstract nouns in -u, -o, corresponding to Gothic abstracts in -ei and usually indeclinable in the singular: brade, elde, hele, hete; (iii.) feminine u-stem with short stem-syllable: dore. For more, throte, see § 3. [For gere, see § 43, n. 3.]

answere (A.S. andswaru, Durh. ondsuere acc., L. än(d)-swere, answare, O. annßweare, -swere); answere, 69 (-er B, answver D), 72 (-er B), 2245 (-er B), 7786 A (C (?); -er D) †; answere yow, 2210 (answeré † 3ow C1); answeere hym, 5556 (answer to ? B, answerpere

1 Of wich in effect hire answere was this C.
him C, answèr him D); answère, 2139 (ans(c)wère B, answèr(d) D), 5820 (⁻e D).

brede (A.S. brèd, L. bræde, L. brede), 179 f (⁻e wrede n.), 530 f (⁻e lede inf. : drede n.), 8020 f (⁻e Diomede : hede n. heed).

care (A.S. caru, L. O. care), 505 f, 550 f, 587 f, 612 f, 660 f, 1016 f, 1192 f, 2085 f, 4407 f, 4891 f, 5124 (f) AB (⁻e CD), 5194 f (fare AB), 5241 f, 6230 f, 6383 f, 6417 f, 6600 f, 6698 f B, 6699 f AC³D (fare B), 7112 f, 7321 f, 7511 f, 7731 f (fare D); care, 1862 D; care hym, 3908.

Rhyme words.—in the snare (505, 7112), Pandare (550, 587, 612, 5124 (?) AB, 5241, 7511), fare n. (550, 1016, 2085, 4407, 6230, 6417, 6698 B, 6699 AC³D, 7731), wel-fare (4891), ye fare ind. 2 pl. (1192, 6600, 7321), inf. (4407, 5194 CD, 5241, 6383, 7321), bare adj. (660, 1192, 4891), spare inf. (4891).

doře (A.S. duru ; cf. dor, n.; L. O. dor, dure), e, 180 (⁻e tönü C), 3540, 3590, 5014 (C f); e he, 4894; e hym, 2033.—dorę (before a pause), 3526, 3587 (dore f C)², 3601 (trap[pe] doré D).

ełe (A.S. ieldu; also ield, L. ælde, æld, O. P. Pl. elde), 1478 (⁻e c), 1484 (⁻e D, olde C); e, 6031 (age D).

fare (A.S. faru, L. fare, fare, uore, P. Pl. fare), 551 f, 1018 f, 2086 f, 2229 f, 3447 f, 3595 f B, 3948 f, 4408 f, 5194 f AB, 6229 f, 6416 f, 6698 AC³D, 6699 f B, 6870 f, 7729 f (fare D); welfare, 4890 f; a faré carte, 7525 f (a soory f C; D); welfare, 7722 AD (wèl-farë f and C); fare he, 5582.

Rhyme words.—stare inf. (2229), Pandare (3447, 3948, 6870), fare inf. (5194 AB). For the other cases, see care, above.

hele (A.S. hélú; also hél, -e, f.; L. hele; O. hele), 1792 f, 2835 f, 3163 f, 7959 f (all four : dele inf.); e, 461, 2848, 7722 (esë f C), 7766.—hele honour, 6104 ABD. [Cf. heleles, § 49, n. 5.]

With hele swychn that but ye yeuen me
The samë hele I shal noon helë haue, 7778-9.

hête (A.S. hétu; also hête, -an, f.; L. hate, O. hæte), 971 f, 2027 f (herte f C), 5173 (heete B, herte f C), 6245 f, 7470 f, 7602 f, 8124 f.—For hête (ête B) of cold for cold of hete I deye, 420 (for cold of hété for hete, etc. C).


lawe (A.S. lagu; also läh, n. (f) and laga, -an; L. laç, lawe, O. laȝhe), 223 f (⁻e drawe inf.), 996 f (⁻e drawe inf. : aye), 5280 f (⁻e : guawe inf.); e, 238, 4590 (lawe B; E f); e han, 2878 (⁻e have D).

1 Answer and is possible in AB, answe and in D.
2 In A read lay[en].
loue (A.S. lufu; also lufe (nom. not W.S.), -an, weak fem., see Sievers, § 278, n. 1, Cosijn, Altws. Gr., II, § 33, Platt, Anglia, VI, 176; L. a lufe, b loue, O. lufe), 231 f (: aboue), 925 f (: loue amo), 1933 f (alone † C) (: loue amo), 3718 f (: aboue), 3866 f (: shoue p.p. : aboue), 8191 f (: aboue), 8205 f (: aboue).

Of loue (dissyllabic) in the interior of the verse there are but four certain examples:

Han felt that louē dorst[e] yow displesc, 27 (dorste B ; D ?).
It semeth not that louē doth yow ¹ longe, 1631 (semyth me not C).
Louvē that with an holism alliaunce, 4588.
Louvē that knetteth lawe of companye, 4590 (D (?) ; loue that en-
dytyth † C).

To which is probably to be added

And to the God of loue thus seyd he, 421 (seyd he D).

In 8132 we have apparently a verse of nine syllables, though a very disagreeable one:

Of his loue I haue seyd (seyd(e) B) as (that D) I kan. (Of course it is possible to read 4588 and 4590 as 9-syl. lines ; cf. 1585.)

In

Louv ayens the (om. C) which (-e C) who-so defendeth, 603, and
Louv hym made al prest to don hire byde, 4824,
we have to choose between nine syllables and hiatus.

Note.—The other cases of loue (dissyllabic) in the interior of the verse are without doubt scribal errors. Thus,—196 † AD (-e of), 200 † D (-e and), 234 C, 242 ‡ C (-e hath), 249 (?) † D (-e have), 400 † AD (-e is), 436 ‡ C, 500 † D, 683 ‡ D (-e hym), 677 ‡ CD, 991 † D (-e of), 1144 † D, 1182 ‡ A, 1642 † D (-e in), 1688 ‡ C (-e I), 1607 ‡ D (-e he), 1976 ‡ CD, 2007 ‡ CD, 2182 ‡ C (D ?), 2593 † D (-e is), 3014 ‡ D, 3559 ‡ D, 4170 ‡ E, 4604 ‡ E (-e eng(u)ht), 4987 ‡ C, 5147 ‡ CD, 6284 ‡ D, 6296 ‡ C, 6314 ‡ C, 6844 ‡ D, 7930 ‡ AD.

loue (before vowels), 196 BC, 200 ABC, 237, 400 BC, 401, 571, 584, 612, 698, 899 ABD, 902, 972, 991 ABC, 1005, 1020, 1104, 1111, 1112, 1124, 1182 BC, 1208, 1331, 1394, 1456, 1464, 1477, 1542 ABC, 1635, 1662, 1764, 1827, 2160, 3564, 4608 ABC, 4987, 5077, 5147, 5243 † CD, 5340, 8232, etc.—loue he, 353 ‡ C, 388 (B †), 1607 AB ; -e his, 484 ABC ; -e hem, 31 B (him A = hem), 1875 ; -e hath, 879 AB, 960 ABC (D ?) ; -e hadde, 304, 663 ; -e how, 1752 ; -e halt, 4606 ; -e hire (?), 1986 A.

louë, 206, 255, 308, 353 ABD, 384, 402, 436 AB, 443 ‡ C, 518, 523 ABC, 622, 646 ², 711, 744, 810, 864, 1118, 1129, 1147, 1181, 1182 † D, 1477, 1588 AB, 1759, 1789 (-e ‡ D), 1823 AB, 1866,

¹ Cp. inserts nat here.

9-syl. verse in ABC(D ?).
§ 8, 9. of Chaucer's Troilus.

1912, 1950, 2007 ABC, 2251 ABC, 2285, 2309, 3014 AB, 4103, 4433, 4586, 4587, 4590 † C, 5243 AB, 6234 ABC, 6296 AB, 6314 AB, 6844 ABC, 7418 AB, 8039, 8052. The old-face figures indicate lines in which lowe may be read if one chooses to admit the extra syllable before a pause (usually the principal caesura). Thus,—Blyssyd be lowe / that kan thus folk conuerte, 308; In lowe / for which in wo to bedde he wente, 1147.

luf occurs once;—Of vertu rote of luf' fyndere and hed, 1929 A (lust BC, fynder of lusty D). [Cf. lufson, 6828 AB (loue-D), 7274 (loue-CD).]

sawe (A.S. sagu, L. sae, sæe, P. Pl. sawe), 6401 f (ː gnawe inf.).
[sawe †, 3562 f D, see shawe.]

shame (A.S. scamu, sceoumu, sceamu, O. shame), 252 f, 374 f, 868 f, 896 f, 1440, 1730 f, 1848 f, 2922, 2931, 3479 f, 3969 f, 5192 f, 5258 (-equivat B, iapé † in C), 6130 f, 6227 f; -e, 642 (equivat by † D), 2370, 2376 (speche CD), 2585, 2867, 3091, 3619, 4412 (schamö red D); -e his, 107 (equivat falseness C).

Rhyme words.—name n. (252, 896, 1848, 3479, 6130, 6227), game (868, 1730, 3969, 5192 D, 6130, 6227), grame (374, 5192 ABC), blame inf. (5192).

tale (A.S. talu, L.O. tale), 2631, 1393 † C (pl. ABD), 2278 f (ː smale adj. pl.), 2651 C, 2707 (line om., C), 4036, 4077 f (ː nyghtyngale), 4245 (take † C), 7395 CD (tales A; B †); -e, 14, 1303 (talk † was C, talë † was D), 1344 BCD (tales † is A), 1390 ABC, 2690, 3456 (equivat † A), 3611 A (equivat brought BC, -e † is D), 4507 (equivat D), 4789, 5324 AB (equivat newe C, thes † tidinges D), 5328. [tale † to, 1390 D.]

wyke, wowke (A.S. nom. wicu, wucu, orig. a fem. n-stem; oblique cases in -an occur, see Siev., § 278, n. 1, Cosijn, Attus. Gr., II, § 33; L. wike, O. wuke, P. Pl. woke, weke, wyke), wyke, 1515 f (ː syke inf.), 2358 f (weke BD, wyeke C) (ː pyke inf.); wowke, 5940 (equivat C, wooke D), 6855 (equivat C, wooke D). [Cf. ten Brink, § 35. A.]

§ 9. Monosyllabic feminine nouns with long stem-syllable take in the Troilus a final -e (perhaps derived from the oblique cases) throughout the singular, except in the genitive (cf. Child, § 16; ten Brink, § 207).

The following list includes: (i.) pure ë- (o-) stems,—(a) bene, bere, bote, browe, chyste, glowe, halle, halue, helpe, leue, lode, mede

¹ Supply [for] in C.
(A.S. měd), myle, reste, rinde, rode, salue, scole, snare, sorwe, soule, steuene, stounde, strete, throwe, while, wounde, youthe (originally i-stem); (b) filthe, highte, lengthe, murtne, [routhe,] sleughte (O.N. siugð), slouthe, strengthe, trouthe, wraethe; (ii.) jā- (jō-) stems,—blysse, egge, helle, hire, keye, lysse, messe, shethe, specche,1 synne, wreche,2 yerde; (iii.) wā- (wō-) stems,—mede (A.S. mād), rowe, trewe; (iv.) i-stems,—bone (O.N. būn), [byrthe,] dede, glede, hyne, mynde, nede, quene, sighte, tyde, wene. Steuene (A.S. slēf, slīf) belongs either to the jā- or to the i- declension; the history of rysshe (A.S. risc, etc.) is not satisfactorily determined.

Note.—For convenience soule and steuene are included in this list. Some of the nouns under i. b show in Anglo-Saxon a by-form in -u (cf. also sole). For pryde, see § 8. For hegye; see § 6.

bene (A.S. bēan, P. Pl. 8. bene), 4009 f (: mene ind. 1 sg. : clene adj.);
6726 f (: mene 3 pl.). [Var. B beene.]

bere (A.S. bēr, bér, L.O. bære), 2723 f (: cre), 5525, 5845 f (ber D)
(: manere), 5870 f (C †, ber D †) (: yfere adv. : dere adv.). [Var. B beere.

blyss, blisse (A.S. blīsās, bliss, L.O. blisse), 623 f, 3023 f, 3184 f,
3546 ([se]? D),2 4063, 4114 ([se] D), 4164 ([se] C, blysyd † A),
4465 f, 4499 ([se] D), 4870 (D †),3 5985 (iocyte C), 6759, 6911 f
(byls C), 6913 f (blisy C, hisse † D), 7021 ; blyss, blisse, 1934
(byls C, byls[se] which † D), 1970 (D †), 1974, 1976, 2152 (blis C),
4026, 4248, 4558 (blis C), 5497 (iocyte C), 5498 (blis C), 5912 (ioyis
C †), 6969 (blisy C). [Var. D blis or blys in the lines marked by
old-style figures.]

Rhyme words.—wyssse inf. (623), kysse inf. (3023, 6911, 6913), lysse n.
(3184), myssse inf. (4465), blissee n. (6911, 6913).

bone (O.N. bōn, bān, f., A.S. bēn, O. bene, L. bone), 1020 f, 4730 f,
6957 f.

Rhyme words.—mone moon (1020), to done (1020, 4730), soone (4730, 6957).
[Var. B boone.]

bote (A.S. bōt, L.O. bote), 763, 1430 f (boot D), 2464 f (bete † C,
boot D), 7035 f, 7609 f, 7690 (but † C); —e, 832, 2903, 4050
(boot B), 5276, 5401 (ē † on C), 5921 ; e hym, 352. [Cf. boteles,
§ 49, n. 5.]

Rhyme words.—vnderfote (1430), rote (1430, 2464, 7609), soote adj. (7035).
[Var. BD boote.]
browe (A.S. bru, gen. brūwe), 204 f (: to loken Rowe).
byrthe, birthe, burthe (cf. A.S. ge-byrd, f., n., ge-byrdu, f., Siev.,

1 See Kluge, Nominalle Stammbildungslehre, § 113.
3 Supply [in] in D.
§ 267, n. 4, O. birde, P. Pl. burth, burthe, byrthe, 3559 f (th B, burthe C, birthe D) (: murthe AC, myrthe B, mirthe D); birthe, 5501 A (birth D, [my] burthe B); burthe hym, 6572 (byrthe B, bur(t)h C, birthe D).

chyste (A.S. cest, W.S. ciest, cyst, P. Pl. cheste), -e, 7731 (chest CD).
dede (A.S. dâd, dât, L. dâde, O. dâde, dâed-bote), 93 f, 1187 f, 1427 f, 3133 f, 4143 f, 5286 f (nede A), 5611 f, 5893 f (dredre † C), 6003 f, 6234 f, 6413 f, 6837 f; -e, 3271, 3895 (dredre † C), 5643. [dede, 4615 f C, is an error; read dyt.]

Rhyme words.—rede ind. 1 pl. (1187), 3 pl. (3133, 5641), inf. (93, 1187, 6837), arede inf. (6234), nede n. (1427), dedefled adj. pl. (3133, 5286, 5893), deder n. (93, 6003, 6234, 6413), lede 1 sg. (6003), womanhede (4143, 6837).

egge (A.S. egg, L. mid egge), 5589 f (: abregge inf.).

filthe (A.S. fylâ), -e, 3223 (-e † and B, fethel C), 6240 (fôyle ët † C, filth D).

glede (A.S. gleôd, P. Pl. glede), 4999 f (: fede inf.), 6666 f ABC (: hede n. heâd : steðe steed).

gloue (A.S. glôf, but also foxes glôfa, weak), -e he, 7376.

halle (A.S. heall, hall, L. halle), 2255 f (haH D) (: calle inf.), 3698 f haH D) (: alle pl. : falle p.p.), 5394 f (: alle pl. : falle inf.).

halue (A.S. healf), in byhalue and on... halue: (a) byhalue (A.S. be healf, on myn (my BD) byhalue, 2513 (bi- B, be- C); on his byhalue which, 2819 (on his half † with C, on his halue that C, on his half which D). 1 (b) on... halue (A.S. on healf, O. o... halle, cf. L. an his halue), on myn h., 5607 f (vn my behalue D) (: salue n.).

Note.—The adjective half may be seen in 3186, 3345, 3481, 4921, 5927, 5970 (hal † C, halfe D), in phrases with a, the, and this. The plural appears in halue goddes (= denigods), 6207 (half[e] C, halfe D).

helle (A.S. hell, L. (obl.) O. helle), 786 f, 872 f, 1190 f (hiH D), 1981 f (-H D), 3434 f, 4300 f, 4442 f, 5374 f C (-H D), 6202 f, 6216 f, 6360 f, 6575 f (-H D), 7759 f, 7895 f; -e, 859 (-H D), 1521 (-H D), 2850 (-H D), 7739.

Rhyme words.—welle n. (872, 6216), inf. (5374, 6575), telle inf. (872, 1190, 1981, 3434, 4442, 6360), ind. 3 pl. (786, 7895), dwelle inf. (4300, 5374, 6202, 6360, 7759), ind. 3 pl. (3434), subj. 2 sg. (786), selle inf. (4300, 4442), swnwelle inf. (6575). [Var. holle, 786 B.]

helpe (A.S. help, L. help, dat. -e, O. helpe), helpe to, 695 AC (help D, -e? B); -e the, 5954 (help B); help to, 2531 (-e C, hei[l]pe B, help † of D); help yet, 672 (-e † sumwhat C); help do, 795 (-e †

1 Line 2819 is unmetrical in D and a poor 9-syl. verse in C. B is nonsense. G and Cp. read: On his half whiche (which Cp.) that soul vs alle sende.
Observations on the Language

D, helē C); helpe, 2709 A (-p B); help (bes. vowels), 18 (-e BD), 1003 (-e C), 4455 (-e CD), 4765 AD (-e B)\(^1\), 6221 (-e CD), 7390 (-e CD). \[helpē ✤ more, 2540 C (-es ABG, help to D).\]

Note.—The interjectional help! (see 1047) was no doubt originally an imperative, though such passages as "Gentleman. Help, help, O, help! Edgar. What kind of help!" (King Lear, v. 3, 222) show that our modern feeling that this help is a substantive is of long standing.

highte (A.S. héah, héah, hieh), 7190 f (heighte B, hyzte C, hight D) (myghte, myght, myzt, might pret. 3 sg.).

hire (A.S. hýr, L. hure, P. Pl.\(^\text{ab}\) huire,\(^\text{c}\) hure, huyre), 4787 f (here C), 5168 f (here AC, hir D); -e, 334 (C ✤)

Rhyme words.—on fire, a fire (on fere C) (4787, 5168), desire ind. 1 sg. (5168).

hyue (A.S. hýf), 6018 f (heue C) (dryue inf.: bylue adv.).

keye (A.S. cæg; also (rarely) cæge, -an, Pet. Chron. keie, P. Pl.\(^\text{b}\) keye), 6823 f (kay C, key D) (awaye: pleye inf.).

kynde (A.S. cynd, n., but usually ge-eynd, f. (later n.); late A.S. ge-eynde, n., ge-eyndu, -o, f., see Sievers, § 267. b and n. 4; L. icunde, dat. cunde, O. kinde), nom., 2459 ([e] D), 4572 f; of, 238 f, 972 f, 1455 f, 1947 ([e] D), 2528 f, 3150 ([e] D, kyng ✤ A), 4279 f, 4563 f, 4607 f, 5080 (be kyndē C), 7825 f; out of, 5798 f; in, 254 f (adj. ✤ C), 3176 f, 3745 f, 5527 f; by, 5113 f, 6739 f.—kynde, nom., 4468, 7192.—kyndē the, nom., 5758 AB (ē ✤ wrouȝt C, nature ✤ D).

Rhyme words.—bynde inf. (238, 254, 4279, 4607), ind. 3 pl. (5527), vnblynde inf. (4572), wynde inf. (254), subj. 2 sg. (4279), fynde inf. (972, 2528, 3176, 3745, 4563, 5113, 5527, 6739), ind. 1 sg. (5798), ind. 3 pl. (7825), mynde n. (1455 [mende C], 3176, 6739), rynde (5798). [Var. C kende, 1455; D kynd, in the lines marked by old-style figures.]

lengthe (A.S. on lengge; also, lengu, -o, f.), 1347 f BD (lengthe A, lenthe C), 7854 f (lenthe C, length D); -e, 4917 (lenghe B, lenthe C), 5807 (lenthe A, lenghe B, leue ✤ C, length D), 6343 (length B, length D), 8020 (lenghte B, lenthe C, [of] the length D). (Rhymes only with strength.)

leue, leecue (A.S. leaf, L. leue, leaf, O. lefe), 1819 f AB, 2387 f, 2621 (-e BCD), 2743 f, 2806 f, 3067 (-e D), 3401 f, 3436 f, 3464 f, 6020 f, 6441, 6843 f, 6845, 6856 f, 6863, 6974 f, 7378 f, 7448 f; -e, 1294, 1681, 2545, 2719 (loue ✤ B), 2774, 3051, 3458, 3525, 5392; leue home, 126 A (-e and BCG Cp.). [leue ✤ went, 126 D.]

Rhyme words.—byleue, bleue manere (1819 AB, 3464, 6020, 6843, 6856), reue inf. (2743), reue (by-reue) subj. 1 pl. (2800), to-clene inf. (6974), leue relinguo (7448), cue, eue (2387, 3401, 3436, 6843, 6974, 7378).

\(^1\) Read among[es] AD, amonge[es] B.
lode (A.S. lâd, L. lod-ciňht, O. lade), lodĕ-sterre, 6595 f (lodis C), 7755 f (loode D).

lore (A.S. lâr, L. lâre, lare, leore, lore, O. lare) 645 f, 754 f, 1083 f, 1650 f, 2426 f, 3085 f, 6385 f, 6690 f, 7099 f; -e, 1482.

Rhyme words.—more adv. (1083), the more adel. (645), no more adv. (754), I can nomore (6690), routhe more (1650), more n. acc. (2426), pred. adj. sg. (3085), enèremore adv. (6385), sore adv. (754, 1083, 1650, 3085, 7099), sorwes sore (2426), yore adv. (6690). [Var. B lore.]

lysse (A.S. līs, liss, L. (obl.) P. Pl. lísse, 3185 f (lesse B, lisse C) (: yn blysse).

mede (A.S. méd, L. O. P. Pl. mede), 3257 f (: nede n. : drede n.); -e, 1508.

mede (A.S. méd, méd, gen. médé, médwe, L. (dat.) medewe), 156 f (: rede adj. pl. : rede lego), 1138 f (: rede adj. pl. : sprede inf.).
murthе (A.S. myrg金融市场, myr金融市场, L. mur金融市场), 3557 f (: byrthе A, byrth B, burthе C, birthе D); myrthе †, 7740 C. [Var. B myrthе; D mirthе.]

myle (A.S. míl, L. O. mile), 6766 f (: while : bygile inf.).

mynde (A.S. ge-mynd, f., n., O. minde), of, 365 f; yn, 1456 f (-d D), 3173 f, 4348 f, 4385 f, 4680 f, 6736 f; to, 1606 f (-d D), 1687 f (-d D); out of, 5579 f, 5963 f, 6099 f, 7805 f, 8058 f; acc., 5335 f, 3772 ABC; -e, acc., 3963; yn mynde he, 733 (-d D), 3914 (-d D).

Rhyme words.—fynde inf. (365, 3173, 4348, 4680, 5963, 6099, 8058), subj. 3 sg. (5579), ind. 3 pl. (6736), wynde inf. (1687, 4385), vnbynde inf. (5335), kynde n. (1456, 3173, 6736), vnkynde (4680, 6099, 7805), by-hynde (1696). [Var. C mende.]

nede (A.S. néd, néd, nýd, néad, néod, L. ned, neode, O. ned, acc. dat. nede), 772 f, 863 f, 1428 f, 3259 f, 3296 f, 3308 f, 3331 f, 3388 f, 3548 f, 3570 f, 4067 f, 4736 f, 4808 f, 5286 f, 5768 f, 6194 f, 6220 f, 7389 f, 7403 f; nede (before consonants), 128 AC (-ed † B), 2617 (A † B †), 2638 (-e C), 3266 † C (-es AB, -is D), 3984; -e, 4480, 5596, 5697 (A †), 6699 ABD, 6949 ABD, 8221.—nede to, 886, 4853 A (-e CD; B †); -e|| there, 1799 (e wher D); -e|| sestow, 2888; -e was, 4630; -e ful, 4797 † C (-e he (? D †); -e were, 6170 † A (?).—nede were it (=wer't), or nede were it, 4773 AB (cf. 6170 A). [2891?] [Cf. needeles, § 85; nede, -es, § 91.]

Rhyme words.—spede inf. (772, 863, 4736), blede inf. (863), procede inf. (3206), ind. 3 pl. (inf. † D) (4808), for-bede inf. (3308), subj. 3 sg. (3588, 6220), bile inf. (5768), brede inf. (7359), drede n. (772, 3259, 3331, 3548, 3570, 4736, 6194), dede n. (1428), dede pred. adj. pl. (5286), mede meded (3259), hede n. he d (3308, 4067, 6220), Diomeded (7359, 7403), stede steed (7403).
Observations on the Language

§ 9.

-nesse, termination (A.S. -nes, -nis, -nys, late -nisse, L. O. P. Pl. -nesse).

besynesse, bysynesse, 795 f, 1035 f, 2259 (-nes[se] D)\(^2\), 2401 f, 3007 f, 3086 f, 3205 f, 4241 f E, 4255 f (besines C), 4452 f (besynes C), 6150 f (buxsonnes D).

bitternesse, 639 f (bet- B, bittyr- C), 3657 f, 5506 f; -e, 4062.
brotelnesse, 8195 f (bri^tilnes D).
corsednesse, 5656 B (cursed- D, wykkednesse A).
derknèse, 18 f (derke- BD)\(^3\), 3668 f (distresse B), 4962 f (derkènesse B, derknes C).

drerynesse, 701 f, 964 f, 5563 f C.
dronkenesse, 1801 f (dronkenes C, drunkenesse D).
falsnesse, 107 f (false nesse BC).
fieblenesse, 1948 B (febjlnisse C, feblesse A).
gentilnesse, 7980 f D (gentilesse ABC). (Cf. variants under gentilesse, § 25.)
gladnesse, 19 f 22 f (gladde- B), 615 f, 1790 f, 2848 f (gladde- B), 2889 f, 3008 f (gladde- B), 3022 f, 4038 f, 4057 f, 4086 f (-nes C), 4242 f (-nes C), 4289 f, 4357 f (-nes C), 4568 f, 7956 f; gladnesse, 640 C; -nèse, 4155 (-e yif C, -e yif D).
goodnesse, 991 f, 2849 f (goode- B); -nesse he, 116 (gòde- B).
hardnesse, 2330 f.
harli-, hardynesse, 566 f, 1719 f; -e, 4618.
heuynesse, 24 f, 655 f, 963 f, 3849 f, 4039 f, 4241 f (-nes C, besinesse E), 4288 f, 4767 f (wrecchidnes D), 5025 f, 5464 f, 5563 f (dreyynesse C), 5745 f, 5929 f, 6503 f, 6984 f, 7154 f (-nes C), 7577 f.
holynesse, 560 f.
hòlyghnesse, 8172 ([the] hölygh- B).
kyndënesse, 5382 f.
lustyuenesse, 3019 f.
rudënesse, 6151 f (reudënes C, rud[е]nesse D); -e, 6339.
secrenesse, 1928 (sekynnes C, sikerence D, sikerennes G).
seylynesse, 3655 f, 3667 f, 3673 (-[se] D).
shrewëdnesse, 1943 f (sh(e)rewed- B, schrewed(e)nes C, shrewdënesse D).
sikè-, sykenèesse, 2661 f (sik- CD), 5507 f (sikè- B, sek- C); syknessë lest, 489 (sikè- B, sek- C); syknesse, 4055 f (sek- C, sijk- D).
siker-, sikerennesse, 3824 f (sikir- C), 4085 f (sikerines C), 4157 f,

\(^1\) Old-style figures indicate that D has -nes.

\(^2\) But of hire bysynesse (-es Cp.) this was on.

\(^3\) Scansion uncertain.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

4355 f; -nesse, 1858 (seirnes C), 6174 (seirnes C). [Cf. secrenesesse.]

sothfastnesse, 5742 f (soth(e)- D).

swetnesse, 1036 f (swett(e)nesse B), 2886 f (swenienesse † B), 3021 f (swett(e)- B); -nessé, 4061 (perh. -nésse in A); swétnesse hauc, 638 (swét(e)nesse han B, swétnesse a C).

vnlkynnesse, 16 f.

wikked-, wykkednesse, 992 f (-yd- BD, weked- C), 5656 f A (corses- B, cursed- D).

wildernesse, 6207 f.

wilfulnesse, 793 f.

witt(e)nesse, 6212 f (wltnesse BCD); wytnesse, 3102 f (witt(e)- B).

wodnesse, 3636 f (wod(e)- B); wo6dnesse, 4224 f (woo(n)d(e)nesse B), -nesse, 4900 f (wod(e)- B, distrestef C, wood(e)- D).

worth!, worthynesse, 567 f, 642 f, 961 f (-nes C), 11246!, 1263 [-nes C], 1789 f, 1926 f (-nes C), 4158 f, 4451 f (-nes C), 4631 f (-nes C), 6148 f (-nes C), 6330 f, 7080 f, 7928 [-nes D, -e the C], 8192 f; -nesse his, 4392; vnworthynesse he, 2166 (on- C).

wrecchednesse, 1371 f (-nes C), 4629 f (-nes C), 6402 f (wreched(e)- B, wrecched(e)nes C); -nesse, 3223 f (wreched(e)- C); wrecchidnes †, 4767 f D (heuynesse AB).

But:

buxsomnes †, 6150 f C; gladnès † ho, 2891 D; goèdnes † herye, 4514 D; noblènes †, 8194 f D (noblèsses AB); witnes of, 5403 A (-nesse BCD).

See also the variants in the preceding list.

A.S. bieternees, biternys; dréorinys; drunecennes; gladnes; goédnes; hálignes; heardnes; hefignes; seoecnes; swétnes; ge-witnes; wódny [; buhsomnes Bosw.- T. without authority].

Rhyme words.—Nouns in -nesse rhyme principally with each other; but the following rhymes also occur,—distresse (615, 639, 641, 1801, 1943, 2330, 2886, 3086, 3102, 3205, 3824, 4055, 4057, 4288, 4289, 4629, 4631, 4767, 4962, 5025, 5382, 5464, 5506, 5563, 5742, 5745, 6330, 7080, 7956), accesse (2401, 2661), gentillesse (1246, 1789, 1790, 3007, 3008, 4255, 7956), largesse (4568), provesse (1719), richesse (6330), noblesse (8192), goennesse (6207), hierdesse (655), presse n. (560), lese, lasse adj. sg. (701, 793, 5464, 6984), plu. (6207), I gesse ind. (655, 991, 992, 1371, 1801, 1943, 4568, 5563), gesse, gyssse inf. (3824, 4085, 4086, 5566, 6984), dresse inf. (1719, 6402), redresse ind. (3849, 5929, 6402, 6503), expresse ind. 3. pl. (7154), blesse subj. 3 sg. (7577).

queene, quene (A.S. cwén, cwéu, L. quen, quene, O. ewen), 699 f,

1 In C read worth[y]nesse.
2 In A supply [here].
759, 217 f, 2772 f (the quene † elyne C?), 2788 f, 5900 f, 6256 f, 6375 f, 7258 f; -e, 2641 (quen C), 2799, 6009 (quen C).

Rhyme words.—y-scene adj. (699), scene adj. (7258), tene (817), grene (817, 2278, 6375), susteyne (-tene) inf. (2772), shene adv. f (5900), shene adj. def. (6256), wene n. (6256), † clene f adv. (6375). [Var. D quene.]


Rhyme words.—the best (3767, 3887, 5541, 1781, 5949, 6264, 7967, 8112), the alderbeste (4441), my beste (600), breste subj. 3 sg. (600), breste inf. (4277, 5243, 6299, 7376, 7930), molesté inf. (5541), keste (kyste) pref. ind. 3 sg. (3973, 4360), lest (lyste) pref. ind. 3 sg. (166 f, 19963, 3066, 3973, 4522, 6881, 7468, 8098), yste pres. subj. 3 sg. (18454, 2029, 3808, 3887), the worthièste (1845). [Best adv. (330 C?).]


rote, roote (A.S. rôt, O. rote), 1433 f, 2463 f (a root † D), 7608 f; -e, 1929 (root(a) B, rote † fynder D). [Cf. roteles, § 49, n. 5.]

Rhyme words.—bote A.S. bót (1433, 2463, 7608), vnderfote (1433).

routhe, ruthe (2441), reuthe (4924) (not in A.S.; formed from the vb. reuwen, rewen, A.S. hréowen, on the analogy of other abstract nouns in -th; cf. O.N. hrygg and hrygga; L. reouše; P. Pl. routhe, reuth, reuthe, rothe), 582 f, 769 f, 1434 f, 1574 f, 1649 f, 1749 f (rowhte † B), 2092 f, 2224 f, 2365 f, 2441 AB, 2587 f, 2964 f, 3737 f, 4353 f, 4924 (ruth † D), 6138 f, 6152 f, 6271 f, 6335 f, 7363 f, 7462 f, 7748 f, 7950 f, 8050 f; -e, 1608 BD, 2355, 2460 (-th B), 6244, 6989. [-e † on, 1608 A, L. -e vpon (mercý † C).] [Cf. routelees, § 49, n. 5.]

Rhyme words.—slouthe (2092, 2224, 2587, 3737, 7950), vntrouthe (7462), trouthe (all the rest). [Var. B rowthe; BC rewthe; C reuthe.]

rowe (A.S. raw, réw, P. Pl. rewe, by rewe), by r, 2055 f (row D) (: lowe adv. : threwe inf.).

1 clene AGB Cp. Durham MS., clene Phillipps MS. 8252, clene John’s MS., shene D Selden MS. B. 24. (C cut out.)
2 The asterisk indicates that C has no -e; old-style figures indicate that D has none.
3 Perh. subjunctive.
4 lyst A (the worthièste).
5 "In rest," the reading of C, is clearly wrong.
6 Supply [ae] in D.
7 Old-style figures indicate that D has trouth.
§ 9

of Chaucer's Troilus.

23

cynde (A.S. rind, but a pl. rindan occurs), 1727 f (rynd D) (: byhynde: fynde inf.), 5801 f (: kynde n.: fynde ind. 1 sg.).

rysshe (A.S. risce, f., weak forms also occur; P. Pl. rusche, ruysshe), 4003 f (ryshe B, rische D, reche † C) (:

fysshe inf.).

salue (A.S. scalf, O. sallfe), 5606 f (: on myn haluce).

scole (A.S. scól, see Sievers, Beitr., I, 488, but scól, Chron. 816; L. in scole, P. Pl. scole), -e is, 634 (: tolys : folys).

shtethe (A.S. sceá, L. dat. scæþe, sce, O. dat. shæpe), out of . . . shtethe he, 5847 (sheth D, schede anon C).

sighte, syght[e] (A.S. gesihS, L. siht, dat. selte, i-sihSe, etc., O. sihlhte), nom., -[e] trewely, 1713 AD (-e BC); acc., -[e] fle, 1795 ACD (-e B); acc., sghtte, 294 f (sy3th C, sight D) (: lyghte inf.); acc., -[e], 4974 f AD (-e B) (: eyen bryght[e] (-e D) : lyght[e] inf. (-e BD)) ; for, -[e] ye, 1754 ABC (D † ); from . . . sighte, 6998 f (-t CD) (: myghte pret. ind. 3 sg. : lyghte inf.); with sighte, 2380 f (-t CD) (: myghte pret. subj. 3 sg.).

sight, (i.) acc., 5375 f CD 2 (: knyjt C, sighte pret. ind. 3 sg. D).

(ii.) by, 1787 (acc. D, seyth C); vpon, 7735; in, 5603; nom., foresight, 5623. [of that sight † that, D 3338.] [Var. C syzt, sijt, sy3te; D sijt.]

sleue (A.S. sléf, L.W.S. slýf, but slyfau pl. occurs as a variant in Benedict.-r., ed. Schröer, p. 89), 6065 f (: preue inf.), 7406 f (: releue inf.).

sleyghte, sleighthe (O.N. slégtS, L. sleþe, P. Pl. sleighte, etc. sleithe), 2597 (-[e] BC, -[e for] D), 6158 (sleyt[e] C, sleyghtes D); -e, 6121 (-t D, fly3t † C), 6123 AB (sleyzt C), 7136 (sleight D). [Var. B sleughete; C sley3te.]

slouthe (A.S. sléuW, L. sluante), 2044 f, 2093 f, 2221 f, 2585 f, 3738 f, 7947 f (-th D); -e, 1371, 3777 (-th D).

Rhyme words.—routhe (2093, 2221, 2585, 3738, 7947), trouthe (2044, 2221, 2585, 3738, 7947).

snare (A.S. sneare, but also sneare, Sweet, 4), 507 f (sware † B) (:

care n.), 663 f (:

care n.: bare pred. adj. sg.), 7111 f (:

care n.).

sonde (A.S. sand, sond, L. sonde), 7735 f (: in honde); -e, 3334 (-d BD, [or] soune C). [in goddes sonde, 4207 D, is error for honde.]

sorwe 3 (A.S. sorg, sorh, L. sorhe, seorwe, O. sereþe), 390 (C †),

1 "Right for the firste syght[e] ye parde."
2 This stanza is not in AB.
3 Old-style figures indicate that D has sorow (before vowels, sorw); an asterisk indicates that B has sorw.
Observations on the Language  

§ 9.

485 f ABC, 527 (–ow B), 563 C, 665 (pl. BD), 706 (sorwe B), 860 f, 945 f, *1491 f, 19301, 1951, 2049 f, 2184 f, 2594, 2608 f (sorwyn C), 2694, 2955, 3147 (–es AB), 3189 † A, 3715 (–e B), 3730 f, 3900 f, 3928 (sorwe dissyll. D), 3935 (–e D), 4312 f, 4369 (–e B), 4760 f, 4816 C (pl. ABD), 5233 (–e B), 5091, 5094 (–e B), 5133 (–e B), 5199 C, 5122 (–e B), 5446 (–e B, –yn C), 5465 (–e † to C), 5568 ABD, 5587 (–e B), 5590 BC (pl. AD), 6107 f, 6278 f, 6376 f, 6499 C (pl. ABD), 6567 D (pl. ABC), 6628 † C, 6629 C (pl. ABD), 6652 (–e B), 6658 f, 6769 f, 6813, 6923 ACD (–es B), 7017 f, 7049 f, 7070, 7086 f (destresse † B), 7238 f, 7308 f, 7649 (C †), 7695, 7888 f, 8026 f.—sorwe, i (sorwe B), *108 AC, 530 (–owe BD), *579, 582 † A, 641 (–ow ne D, –we or † in C), *712, 3640, 3742 (sor[ ]w B, sorw(is) C, soraw at D), *381o (–e hire C), 3932 (sorwe D), 4527, 4759, 5021 AB (–owe D), *5171, 5436 (–e † of C), 5438 † C, *5458, 5482, *5498, 5503 (sorw D), *5541 (wo C), 5561, 5586 (–e † for D), 5743, 6226 (–e ze B, –e that C), 6380, 6480, (–e pese ? C, D dub.), 6540, 6561, 6712, 6821 (yn † C, –e † von D), 6895 (–e doun C), 6921, 6976, 7559 (–es † and B), *7605 †, 7927 (yn † of C), 7930 A(?) BC (–e † for D), 8102, 8107, 8144; sorwe he, 7012 (–e † on-to C), 8089; –e hym, *7405 AD (C †).—sorw[ ]e doubleth, 5565 AB (–e CD). [sorwe † to, 5092 AC, 5465 C (–e AB); sorwe gan, 546 C (–e D), read wo; sorow, 705 † D (pl. AC, –es † B), 3747 † D (pl. ABC); sorwë † of, 5791 C; sorwyn † brynge, 3768 C.] [Cf. sorwful, –w[e]ful, § 49, n. 3.]

Rhyme words.—marwe (everywhere), to borwe n. (2049, 2698, 8026), borwe inf. (485, 7086).

soule, sowle (A.S. sawol, gen. sawle, saule, L. saule, O. sawle), 47 (B †), 1853 (hert[e] † D), 2944 (D †), 3768 AB (–e D), 4343 (D †), 4967, 49794, 5134, 5361, (–e ful C, hertë A), 5836, 6026, 6061, 6155, 6216 (–e synke CD), 6685, 6942 (–e † me ? D), 7913.—So that his sowle here swe (soule BC, sowle D) folwen myghte, 5849.—soule, 2723 (soul D, –e broust C), 3187 (soul D; C ?), 3433 (soul D), 4161 (–e brought E; C †), 4441 (–e † to D), 5438 (sorwe † C), 6058 (soul B, –e † schal CD), 6362, 7035, 7386 (–e † vp C).

[soule † she, 7079 D.] [2819 (!), see p. 17, foot-note.]

speche (A.S. sprèc, spréc, L.W.S. spèc, L. speache, speche, O. speche), 702 f, 884 f, 1142 f, 1333 f, 1582 f, 1657 f, 2154 f, 2506 f, 3237 f,

1 All four MSS. defective (sor C).
2 AC corrupt.
3 In B supply [it].
4 AB too short; C †; D apparently right.
5 soul 1-brought AB, soul y-brought D (cf. 4161).
6 sowle-is A, soul-is B.
steuene (A.S. stefn, stenn, L. stef(e)ne, steuene, O. steffne), 4565 f (neuene B) : (heuene).

stounde (A.S. stund, L. stunde, O. stanza), 1060 f (-d D), 1079 f (-d D), 4537 f (-d D), 4738 f (-d D), 5287 f, 7818 f, 7865 f (7866 f C) ; stoundémele (A.S. standnélum), adv., -e, 7037 ABD (stormyal D).

strength (A.S. strengs, strongs, L. strenge, strenge, O. strengge), 1345 f (strenghte B, strenthe C) ; strenghthe, 7833 f (strenthe C, strength D). (Both rhyme with lengthe, lengthye.)

strete (A.S. stræt, strét, L. a strate, streth, O. strate), 2271 f, 2312 f, 4723 f, 5591 f ; -e, 5288 ; -e he, 1701 (line om. C).—strete, 1697 (-e D tho D) ; -e lokyng, 2100.

synne (A.S. synn, L. dat. acc. sunne, O. sinne), 824 f (-n D), 1937 f (-n C), 3755 f (-n CD), 5423 f, 6244 f (-n C) ; -e, 556.

throwe (A.S. þrag, L. prowé, O. praʒhe), 1772 f (throw D), 2740 f, 5046 f, 7824 f (trowe B).

trouthe, trowthe (A.S. trówð, tróowð, L. trouð, O. trowwe), 450 D, 584 f, 770 f, 1409 (-e B), 1435 f, 1575 f, 1750 f, 1927, 2043 f, 2223 f, 2366 f, 2588 f (-th B), 2962 f, 3624 1, 3805 (-e y D), 4354 f, 6139 f, 6153 f, 6272 f, 6334 f, 7364 f, 7749 f, 7949 f, 8042 (-e D), 8049 f ; -e, 676, 691 (-e wolde C), 899

1 trouthe plyght A, -e I plighe (i.e. i-plight) B, -y-plyght D, trouthe plyst C.
Observations on the Language

§ 9.

(-th B),1 988, 1047, 1054 (D †), 1245,2 1364, 1591, 2168 (-th B), 2282, 2447, 2975 (-th B), 3005, 3478 (-th B), 3834, 3953, 4071, 4139, 4228, 6311 ABC,2 7418 ACD, 7521, 7777 (hertes † pete C), 7798, 7980, 8034 (-th B), 8070, 8141; -e here (poss. sg.), 2771 (-th B); -e here (dat.), 5107 ABD; -e he, 8039; hath † hold, 2168 D; throuthe the, 1255 (heed D); -e but, 831 (-e C) (cf. 2771 † B, 6311 † D, 7418 † C).—vntrouthe, 7461 f (ontreuthe C, vntrouthe D); -e, 3826 (-th BD, ontreuthe C); -trothe, 7811 (-th BD, ontreuthe C). (Old-style figures indicate that D omits -e.)

Rhyme words.—rourthe (all but 2043), slouthe (2043, 2223, 2588, 7949). [Var. BC treuthe; B trouthe, throuth; D strongth.]

truwe, trewe (A.S. trów, cf. also trúwa), truwe, 5974 f (trewe CD) (: in muwe (mewe CD)) ; truwe, 5976 (trewe C, treus † be D); trewe, 4621 ABC, 4720 (trew B, trews D).

tyde (A.S. tid, L. dat. tide, O. tid), 947 f ( [t]yde C) (: abyde inf. : hide inv. sg.), 5739 f (: syde), 7063 f (: side).—meltid ‖ that, 2641 (mcel(i)-ted B, melé † that C, om. † D); tid but, 2824 AC (tyd B, -e † lost D); tyd that, 1228 C (tyme A, tymé BD).

wene (A.S. wén, f.; also wéna, -an, m., Gn.; L. wene, buten (wihuten) wene, O. wén, wiputuen wen), withouten any wone, 6255 f (: shene adj. def. : queene).

while, whylle (A.S. hwíl, L. while, O. whil, while), 328 f, 718 f, 1353 f, 1592 f, 2768 f, 2892, 3618 f (wyse † C), [3919 † f CD,] 3920 f, 4663 f, 4922 f, 5366, 6764 f, 7245 f, 7638 f ; -e, 2684, 2941 (whyl(y) and A), 3292 (whiche † B), 3336 (wise † D), 5781, 7291; -e he, 3380 (Ther he and AB, The while he CD) [ , 7289 D (l. wight) ]; while ‖ which(e), 3277 AB (-é which C, -[e] that D).

Rhyme words.—smyle inf. (328, 1592), bygyle inf. (718, 1353, 4663, 4922, 6764, 7245), ind. 3 pl. (7638), wyle (718, 1353, 3920), gyle (3615), affyle inf. (2769), myle (6764). [Var. B. wylle, 5781, quylene, 6764.]

Note.—As adverb,—whil (without sounded -e) (O. whil): cf. 468, 536, 3016, 5167, 5339, 5745, 5925, 6048, 6326; for while, cf. 315 AB (whilys † C), 536 D, 5167 D, 5339 D, 6326 D; while he, 5745 BD. —536 C, 6048 D, 6326 A, should be emended so as to keep whil.

wounde (A.S. wund, L. O. (obl.) wunde), 858 f (-d D), 1081 f (-d BD), 1241 f (-d D), 4539 f (-d D), 5257 f, 5289 f, 7866 f (D † ; 7865 † f C).

Rhyme words.—grounde n. (858, 7866), stounde (1081, 4539, 5257 † D, 5289, 7866), bounde p.p. (858), y-founde, founde p.p. (5257 ABC, 5289), the secunde (ou-) (1241), abounde inf. (1241). [Var. C. wunde.]

wrathe, wratthe, wraththe (A.S. (N.) wræðð(c)o, L. wraððe, wraððe, O. wræpe), 6054 (wreth[e] B, wretthe C), 6510 (wreth[e] BD, 1 In C insert [by]. 2 Read ad[e] (adh[e]) in 1245 CD, 6311 ABC.
wrethe C) 1; -e, 7323 (wrath B, wrethe C, wreth D), 7619 (wrethe C, wrath D), 8163 (wrath BD); -e hast, 933 (wrothe D, wrehde‡ C). [wrethe, 2952 ‡ C.]

wreche (A.S. wrēc ultiō, miseria, L. wreche, O. wāechhe), -e, 1869 (-ō ‡ is D), 7253 (wreh D; C ‡), 7259.

Note.—In 1869 wreche = misery; in the other two cases it = vengeance.

yerde (A.S. ġerď, W.S. ġerď, gyrd, L. ġerď, ġerď, O. ġerrde), 740 (yerd D), 742 (yard D), 1239 (yard D), 3909 (yard D); -e, 257 (wand ‡ that D), 2612 (-c that D).

Rhyme words.—answer(e)ae ind. 3 sg. (740), ferde antbj. 3 sg. (740, 1239), herde ilul. 3 sg. (3909), subj. 3 pi. (2512). [Var. BCD ġerď.]

youthe (A.S. géowď, Ps. iugwď, L. ʒu3eSc), 975 f (youthe BCD) (: kouthe subj. 3 sg. : nowthe).


I. The following list includes such nouns (including "gerunds") in -ynge as rhyme with an infinitive in the Troilus. All the rhymewords are recorded in each case. D almost always lacks -e in this ending, but I have not taken the superfluous trouble to register this lack of -e. Minute varieties of spelling are also disregarded.

calkyng (kalkelyng C, calcelyng D), 71 (: brynge).

compleynynge, 4903 (: sprynge).

comyng, 3203 (: brynge), 4086 (-g C) (: synge).

conyng, 853 (he[f]ynge A) (: synge).

konnyng, 2943 (: brynge).

sobbyng, 5796 (wepynge C) (: brynge).

taryng (-e B), 743 (in his counsayl tellyng) (: sprynge).

tydyng, 2036 (: synge).

wytyng, 1321 (wet- C) (: ryng : lynyng ptc.).

II. Here follow all the other cases of nouns in -ynge in rhyme. Where no note is added, the rhyme-words are other nouns in -ynge; an asterisk indicates that the rhyme-word is a present participle (or participial adjective) in -ynge; an asterisk and an old-style verse-number indicate that one rhyme-word is a noun in -ynge, the other a present participle.

byfallyng (-e B), 5680 f.

cerrysshynge (cherisynge B, -isyng C, -issyng D), 6196 f.

cchetrynyng (chit- B), 1153 f.

compleynynge, *1645 f.

1 That half so loth youw re wraththe (wreth BD, wrethe C) wolde (wold B) deserce.
Observations on the Language

comynge, 3038 f.
deyinge, 572 f (de[y]inge B).
doyng (-e B), 1119 f (: thyn D).
dwellynge, *304 f.
festenynge, *6818 f (feestynge B, festynge C, noon † thing D).\(^1\)
forseynyge, 5561 f.
guerdonynge, 1477 f (-g CD).
gynnynge, *377 f ((by)gynnynge D).
langwysshynge, 569 f (-guysinge B, -guissyng C).
louynge, 1476 f (-g CD).
lyuynge, 197 f.
preyinge, 571 f (-g C).
purueyninge, *5648 f (-ueynge B, -uyng D), *5677 f.
semyng, *284 f.
shewynge, 5678 f (sh[e]w- B).
sloberyng, 1152 f (-berryng B, slomberyng ? D).
taryinge, *7938 f (-g CD).
warmonyne, 3037 f.
weedyng, 6198 f (-g CD).
wenyng, 5654 f.
weymantynge, 1150 f.
wityng, 5653 f (wet- B, weting D).
wonderyng, 1120 f (-[e]ryng B, wondur † thyn D).
wynnynge, 199 f.
goynge, 5596 f (: whan I hym brynge).
heriynge, 2890 f (-y[ng] B) (: brynge subj. 3 sg.).
in-comynge, 2393 f (: brynge ind. 1 sg.).
rekenynge, 2725 f (-g CD) (: brynge subj. 2 pl.).
taryinge, 2727 f (-g CD) (: brynge subj. 2 pl.).

Note the exceptional rhyme in,—
byfallyng, 5738 f (-e B) (: thing : comynge ptc.).

III. Nouns in -ynge, -yng, before consonants. (D has almost always -yng.)

[abettyng, 1442 D (l. abet).]
bygynnyng, 1876 (beginnyng † oftyn C).
comynyng, 4803 (-g [the] C).
dorryng, 7200 (duryng B, doryng (to) C, doyng † D).

\(^1\) BC one syllable short : l. festenyng.
fallynge, 5683 (-e BD).
fałyng, 921 (-e B, D t).
gôynge, 5959; golngę, 6006 † C (gôing † D, wêndyng A, wêndyngę B).
haiłkyngę, 4621.
kêpyng, 200 (-e BC, D †).
kônnyngę, 662 (cûnnyng D, cûnnyng is † C); connyng, 1089 G
(con(i)yngę B, C cut out, comyngę † A, comyng † D).1
längurynge, 6405 † C.
lêsyng, 3672 (-e B, lesyng(is) C).
likingę, 4315 † C.
lôkyng, 173, 293 (-e BC), 8183 (-e B).
lôuyngę, 1144 B (A † om., of loué so † D).
mâkyng, 8152 (-e B).
mênyngę, 7510 (-g [now] C).
prefyngę, 2674 (-e B).
räuëshyng, 62 (räuysỳngę B, ràyvsshỳng D).
sîttyng, 5700 (-e B), 5704 (-e BD).
tûnynge 856 (-e C, tornyngę B).
wêndyng, 6006 (-e B, golngę † C, going † D).
wêpyngę, 5199 (sorwë † C), 5548 (-e B, -e hym † C).

The cause of his comynge (-yng D) thus answered, 2187 (causë?).

IV. Before vowels and -h (vowel, unless otherwise noted).

âkyngę, 1081.
auûsyng here, 2999 (-e B, avisid † D, and send † C).
bûryngę (dissyl.), 7862 (brennyngę C, burying (dissyl.) D).
callkulỳngę, 6060 (kakelyng † C, calkelyng D).
chaungyng, 3391 (-e B, schaungyng C); -e, 4893 (eschaungë of? D);
schaungyng, 5060 C † (lôkyng AD, lôkynge B).
cômyng, 3763; -e is, 5169; -ỳng, 3754 (-e B); cômyngę hom, 7743
(-e à-zén † C); cômyng into, 4294 (-e BC).
dâwyng, 4308 (dawnynge BD).
dissimulyngę, 7976 (dishomblyngę † C).
dôyng, 1125 (-e B, dêlyng D).
drôechyng, 3695 (-e B).
êsyng, 2372 (-e BC).
fâllynge, 5723.
fêcyng, 7253 (-e B, fechyng hom † C, fêtting of D).
fêlyng, 3932 (-e BD, fîlllyng † C); fêlyng han, 4175 (-e B, -g haue E).

1 connyng Digby III. 4912, konnyng E, comyng Cp. Durh., comyngę John's,
comyng Phillipps MS.
Observations on the Language

flōmyng, 3775 (-e B).
gōyng echow, 5764.
gōdyng, 7006 (-e BC, guiding D).
gūnyng hath, 1756 (bygynyng † D).
hārmyng, 2225 (-e BC).
hēlpyng, 857 (hēlynge B, hēlyng D).
konnyng, 2164 (-e B, cunnīnge C, cunnīng D); kōnnyng, 3841 (knōwynge C, kūnnyng D); kōnnynge hem, 83 (knōwynge him B, knōwynge hem C, kunnyng[ê] hem † D); kōnnyng hadde, 7229 (knōwynge C, konnyng † and † D).
kyssyng, 4245 (-e BC).
langwysshynge, 529 (-e B, -guissyng C, -guysshyng D).
lōkyng, 182 (-e B, -ỳng and † D), 1619 (-e B), 5020 (-e B, schaungyng C); -e, 4790 (tēllynge † C, lōkyng † D).
lōnyng, 55 (-e B), 1003 (-e BC); -e, 8196; -e how, 3.
mākyngne, 3131 (-g [of] avaunt[es] D).
mèd[e]llyng, 4829 † A (mèdlynge B, mèdelyng C, mèdlyng D).
mètyng, 4554.
pàrtyng here (eam), 4370 (-e BC).
pursyng, 2829 † C.
rauësshynge, 7258 (to rauyshen any B, to rauych ony C, to rauißh any D)¹; rauysshýng, 5210 (rauaschingyng C).
[rehētynge †, 3191 D.]
rèsonyng, 5708.
sçornyng, 105 (-e C, scorné † of D).
sèïngne, 5085.
shrîkyng, 6745 (schrychynge B, strichinge C, shrikyng D).
sikynghe, 724 (sighyng D).
slōmberyng, 6609 † C (pl. ABD).
sływīng of †, 2026 C.
sytyng, 5696 (-e B).
tārỳng (dissyl.) of, 7800 AC (tārṛynge B, tārỳng (dissyl.) D).
tēllyng, 4790 † C.
tītṛỳng, 2829 (-e B, tītṛỳng C) [perh. tītṛỳng in AD, -ēṛỳng in C].
tōkenyng, 5532 (-g CD, tōkynyng B); -e herte, 5441.
twīnnyng, 5965 (-g CD).
vīsitīnynge, 1126.

¹ Read he[n-ne]s forth in AD.
wæs wyng, 2830.
wælynge, 408 (wailynge B, wele † and C, weylynge D).
wændynge, 6098 (e B, wîndynge C), 6292 (e B).
wëpynge, 701 (e BC), 5603 (e BCD); -e, 6439 (—ing? D), 7872 (C †).
whysprynge, 2838 (whisperyngis † C, whistryng † D).
wrîtyngê, 7732 (at (the) wrîtyng C); wrîtyng, 8157 (— e B).

Observe,—
comëngë and, 4517 AB (e & ek C, -g and eke D). And compare,—
comëngë || thus, 2187 ABC ([e] D); or, the cause of his cômyngë (?) 

§ 11. The following feminine nouns with long stem-
syllables do not take -e in the Troilus (cf. Child, § 17):

(i.) ã— stem,—forward; (ii.) i— stems,—bench, might, plit, sped, thrust, 
wright, von, world; (iii.) consonant stems,—bok, nyght, ok. In the 
case of bench, the example is not decisive.

Note.—Cawele (A.S. candel, cowel, f.) is always dissyllabic,—cawele to, 
3983 (-del D, carede † C); -dele in, 3701 (-delt D). For sholdor (A.S. 
for 1888-90, p. 241), cf. 2756. For cedre, see § 29; for hond, see § 13; 
for helpe, see § 9. Mylk, 2011f C, is an error for bon.

bench (A.S. benc), on bench hym, 1176.
bok, book (A.S. bœc), 4679 f (-e D) (: forsook pret. ind. 3 sg.), 6654 f 
(-e BD) (: wook : took both pret. ind. 3 sg.). Before consonants,—
1095, 1180, 1189 (metre?), 1196, 4660 (-e D), 4688, 6948 (bouë † D); 8149 (-e D), 8152 (-e D); before vowels,—1171 (AB too long), 
3345 (-e B, -e D †). O moral Gower this boke I directe, 8219 ABD. 
forward (A.S. foreward), 6860.

might, myght, (A.S. mĭ(e)ht, meht, L. mihte, O. mihtë, acc. dat. 
mihhtë), (i.) nom., 2058 [4599 † C (pl. AC)], 7782 AD, 7801 f, 
8117 f (-e B); acc., 33 (-e D), 227 f, 1264 f, 1718 f, 2425 f (-e B), 
3354 f, 3496 f, 4247, 5148 f (-e B), 5281 f, 5602, 6478 f, 7046 f, 
7229 f, 7284 f, 7464 f; with, 1419 f, 1934 f, 2083 f, 2637 f, 2770 
(-t alone † D), 3020 f, 3278 f (-e B), [3843 † f C], 6149 f, 6438 f 
(-e B); by, 5210 f (nyght B) 1; of, 4618 f, 4635, 7201 f; to, 6491 f 
(-e B); for, 7322; through, 6200 f (-e B), 7613 f (-e B); emforth, 
3841 f (emfor[th] C, after † D). (ii.) nom., 1260, 2849, 2851, 2870 
(-t † hym D); acc., 8067 (-e B); with, 3085, 8084 (m. [y]serued B, 
herte D); by, 6708 2; on, 5857 (miȝt(es) D); thorough, 2402; acc., 
myght hire, 45 (m. their D).—thorough myghte, 5778 f AB (-t CD) 
(: nyght nom.).

1 In A read by for my. 2 Dele (≪) in C; insert [i] in B.
Observations on the Language


nyght (A.S. neht, Midl. also necht, E.W.S. niet, L.W.S. niht, L. niht, dat. nihte, O. nihht), (i.) nom., 2075, 3640, 4253, 4508, 5776 f, 6907 f, 7044 f, 7282 f (C t); time, 1174 (D t), 2423 f (-e B), 3071 f, 3281 f, 3356 f (-e B), 3476, 3552, 3756 f (-e B), 4157, 4399, 5175 f (-e B), 5315, 6494 f, 7466 f, 7543, 8118 f (-e B); acc., 7022 f (nyght(t) B); nyght by nyght, 7003 f (n. & n. D); next, 944; to, 2081 f (into, D), 3511, 7532, 7799 f; on, 4021 (lyght ‡ B; of, C); vpon, 7148 f; in, 6826 f (-e B); ouer, 2634 f; of, 2052 f (thour, C), 4488 f; after, 5083 f; a fourt·nyght, 6697 f (-e B, fortenyȝt C); in fourt·nyght, 5939 (in ‡ fortune nyȝt C); syn mydnyght, 3444 (tul, D).—(ii.) nom., 1983; acc., 3183; voc., 4271; time, 3379, 3392, 7156; at, 7559 (at n. with C); by, 452; ouer, 2598 (to ‡, D 2); at n. he, 2625; at n. homward, 4711 (at n. ‡ thei D).—by nyghte, 7065 (t BCD), 7517 (t BCD).

Rhyme words.—myght, myghte n. (2081, 2423, 2634, 3231, 3356, 5776, 6494, 7044, 7282, 7466, 7799, 8118), wyght (3071, 3756, 5083, 5175, 6494, 6967, 7148), knyght (3281, 3756, 4488, 6697, 8118), light n. (6907, 7903), pred. adj. sg. (7044), briȝt adj. post·pos. (2052, 6326, 7282), right acc. (5175), aryght (2081), noon right (2634), as lyne right (3071), vnright adv. (7022) yhiȝt p.p. (6907), byhight p.p. (7460). [Var. C nyȝt (nyȝt, 4167); D night, nyȝt.]

ok (A.S. ûc), 2465 f (ook B, okes ‡ D) (: strok n.); 2420 (ok ê D), 2474 (ok ê D). [Var. B ook.]

plit, plyt (A.S. pliht, m. f., L. plihht, plihte, O. pliht; influenced by O. Fr. plîte), (i.) 1159 (< BD), 1797 f (<e BD), 3881 f, (<e BCD), 3981 (<e B), 4219 f (<e BE), 4393. (ii.) 2816 (<e D), 3088, 4322 (place ‡ D); plyt he, 2823 (<e he D).

Rhyme words.—delit (delite) n. (1797, 4219), despit (despite) (1797, 3881, 4219). [Var. BCDE plît(e); BD plyt(e); C plyt, plyt; D plît.]

sped, speed (A.S. spéd spêd, L. a ispede, b spede, O. sped), s. bê, 1036 (speedê B, spedê D); s. fro, 1094 (<e B, -e hereafter D); s. al, 17 (speddê ‡ though D).

thryft (O.N. prîft), (i.) 3713 (<e B), 4091 (<e BD, thrifi C), 6292 (<e BD). (ii.) 1667, 3789 ([good] th. A); th. haue, 1932 (C ‡), 2772

1 C, metre f
2 D, metre f
3 Supply [in] in A.
4 In A supply [so].
(C †); th. he, 2568.—vnthrift that he, 5093 BC (vnthryf [that] he A). [Var. BCD thrift, BD thriite.] 

wight, wyght (A.S. wiht, wuht, wyht, f., n. (Siev. § 267, u. 3), L. wiht, whit, O. wiht, P. Pl. b. wyght, e. wight, wiht, wiȝt), 101 f., 163 f., 1072 f., 1265 f. ABC, 1535 f., 3068 f., 3621 f. (e B), 3754 f., 4126 f., 4617 f., 4635 f., 5070 f., 5085 f., 5108 f., 5178 f., 5213 f., 5406 f., 6197 f., 6287 f., 6435 f., 6493 f., 6527 f., 6694 f., 6718 f., 7150 f., 7198 f., 7226 f. (e B), 7478 f., 7611 f. (e B), 7710 f., 7918 f. Before consonants: 13 (e a † D), 534 (e D), 685 (wyght A, things B), 692, 1031 (nonwyȝt † C), 1058, 1121 AB (D †), 1273, 1432, 1613, 1655, 1881, 1916, ABC (D †), 2079, 2129, 2663, 2945, 3074 (man D), 3213, 3300, 3338 (wit † C, sight † D), 3445, 3517 (e B), 3534 (man CD), 3598 (hem not † C), 3602, 3631 (whit C), 4633, 4947 (e D, which † C), 5027, 5053 (wit † C), 5914, 6825, 6923, 6988, 7242 (e B), 7730, 7798, 8208.—Before vowels: 268, 382, 690, 1372, 1481, 2033, 2739, 2869, 3275 (iche in † CD), 3586, 5917 (wyȝt his C, wight his D), 6851, 7290 (w. his BD, with † C.—Before h: w. hadde, 500 (D †); w. hath, 2669 (men have † D), 6736; w. he, 7289 (C om. † (hiatus), while † he D).

Rhyme words.—knyght (163, 1072, 1265, 1535, 3621, 3754, 5406, 6197, 6694, 7198, 7226, 7918), wyght (3068, 3754, 5085, 5178, 6435, 7150), fourtenyght (6694), myght (1265, 4617, 5213, 6197, 6435, 6923, 7226, 7611), ryght n. (4126, 4635, 5108, 5178, 7710), adv. (101, 7611), as lye neight (3068), aright (5070, 7478), vnright n. (1535, 5213), light n. (5406), pred. adj. sg. (5070, 6435, 6718, 7478), bright adj. indef. (163, 6527), plyght p.p. (3621), hight p.p. (5108, 6287), dight p.p. (4617), byhyght p.p. (6718). [Var. B wyȝt, wiȝt, wyght, wyȝth; C wyȝt, wiȝt; C whiȝt; D whiȝt.]

won (O.N. vân), ther was non other won, 5843 f. (e BD) (: noon pron.: agon p. p.).

world (A.S. woruld, W.S. weorold, L. weorold, weorlde, O. weorcldl), (i.) nom., 3264 (w. hit D), 3302 (wor[l]d C), 3318, 3481, 5052 (e D), 5985 (e BD, w. [ne] C), 7014 (e D), 7196 (e D), 8111 (e D), 8204 (e B); voc., 4868 AB (e D); acc., 504 (e D), 3215, 4272, 4593 (e B), 5177 (C †, e D), 5860 (e D †) ; in, 1262, 1320, 2859 (wor[l]d A, wirk † D), 3132 (e B), 5048 (e BD), 5802 (e D), 6308 (e BD), 6805 (e D), 7085 (e D); out of, 41 (e D), 5613 (e BD); of, 1495; for, 1214 (e B, wor[l]d C), 6099 (e D), 8060 (e D); thorough-out, 7425 (e D, wor[r]ld B). (ii.) nom., 1573, 3370,

1 Read in C, wyȝt was wojult[ed].
2 = person.
3 Supply [y] in D (y-born).
4 Supply [or] in AD.
5 Supply [a] in A, [or] in D.
6 D ummetrical.
7 Supply [that] in D.
8 CD read in †.
9 AC defective.
Observations on the Language

3392; voc., 211; acc., 1505, 4563, 5284 (-e D), 8180; in, 1378, 1383, 3167 (w. † now D); out of, 5442 (Æ gon D)¹; fro, 5831 (e BD, wor[l]d was C); for, 4086 (wor[l]d A), 5961 (-e D), 5998 (-e D); in . . . w. here, 3678.—on of this world [the] beste y-preysed, 7836 A (worlde the best [i-]preysed B, worlde (-e DG) the (om. D) beste (best D) i-preysed(e C).— world(e) (ace.) may, 4446 A (world BCD).

§ 12. Apocope of A.S. -n in nouns is found in the Troilus in the following words (cf. Child, § 15; ten Brink, §§ 203, 207):

morwe (A.S. morgen, m., o-stem), eue (A.S. æfen, n., m., jo-stem),
game (A.S. gamen, n., o-stem), mayde (A.S. mægden, n., o-stem),

ekynrede (A.S. cyn(n) + réden, f., já-stem). Compare also melle
(mylle) (A.S. mylen, myln, m.) and fast (A.S. fæsten, n., jo-stem).
eue, eeve (A.S. Æfen, Æfen, n., m., L.æuen, heue, O. efenn), 2386 f
(euen : leue B), 3437 f, 6977 f, 7377 f, 7505 f (euene C : grene
(l.-ue)) ; at, 3402 f, 6844 f; it wol neygh euën be, 7500 (euyn CD);
time, eue, 7088 ; euën and, 487 (eu B, euyn (?) C).

Rhyme words.—leue noun (2386, 3402, 3437, 6844, 6977, 7377), bleue inf.
(6844), to-cleue inf. (6977), by grene (7505).
game (A.S. gamen, gomen, n., L. gomen, gome, game), nom., [372 † f
D,²] 868 f, 1123 (-èn B, -e D),³ 1732 f, 3968 f, 6225 f ; acc., 5224 f;
for, 3478 f (a-game BD, on g. C), 6127 f ; of, 3926 f, 6783 f (fame
C) ; letté-game, from, 3369 f (of, BC, of . . . let[te]-game D).—
game, acc., g. bygonne †, 3092 A (gamèn pleye B, -e pleye C,
game † to D).—game, nom., 4336 (gam B); acc., 2195 (gamyn in
C); bytwene, 3096 (gam B); a game, 3490 (on g. C, a-game † that
D), 3492 (on g. C) ⁴ (cf. 3478 f).

Rhyme words.—shame n. ([372 D], 868, 1732, 3478, 3968, 5224, 6127,
6225), name n., (6127, 6225), tame adj. (3969), frame inf. (3369), to blame
(3926, 6783), defame inf. (5224).
kynrede (A.S. cyn(n), n., + réden, f., cf. húś-réden, mág-réden, etc.,
P. Pl.³ of kynredene, b kynrede), 7342 f (ken- C, kynred D) (: out
of drede).

mayde (A.S. mægden, L.W.S. mæden, n., L. maiden, maide, O.
maiden, P.Pl. mayden, mayde), nom., 1965 f (: Criseyde : seyde

¹ world a-gon A ; worlde gon B (defective) ; world i-gone C ; worlde gon D.
² L. greme (AB ; C gaine †).
³ gamè shent A, -èn shente B, -e y-shent D.
⁴ In the last two examples the MSS. have no hyphens; 3490 ABD may then
(possibly) be acc., 3492 ABD may (not improbably) be nom.
mirwe, morwen (A.S. morgen, m., tô morgen, dat. morne, L. morgen, morze, morwe, P.Pl. morwe, morwen), I. morwe, (i.) nom., 944 f.

1150, 4311 f (-owe D late hand), 7393 (-en B); time indicated, 487 f (on, C), 2183 f, 4405, 7048 f, 7088 f, 8024 f; to, 861 f, 2518, 3227, 3731 f, 4759 f, 6660 f, 7307 f, 7889 f; vnto, 6768 f; till, 6279 f (to (= til C, til (to) m. D); on, o, a, 1490 f, 2573, 2606 f, 3265 (-en B) 4, 4397 ([e] B), 6105 f, 6377 f, 7467; on half a m., 5970 f (morowe D); by, 2046 f, 7015 f (-owe D), 7237 f; of, 3903 f.

[to morwe † wele, 7358 C (-e ABD).] (ii) morwe, to, 2583, 3651 (to more A), 3690, 3692 (-yn C), 7114 (D †), 7358 ABD; on, o, a, 2179, 3394, 6882, 7555 (-yn C); on the -e he, 6649. — II. morwên,— the m. com, 2640 (-yn C), in a m. sterue, 3231 (on a m. B, on a morwyn C).

Rhyme words.—borwe inf. (487, 7088), to borwe dat. (2046, 2606, 8024), sorwe (everywhere). [Var. morw, B 1490, 3651, 3690, 4311, 6768, 6882, 7014, 7114, C 2583, 4311.]


fast (A.S. fæsten, n., O. fasste), of, (bef. vowel) fast, 6733 (-e D).

Note.—With these may be compared a-swone, 3934 f (on a c, in a swoun D) (: out of towne) (L. iscowen, iswojen, AS. geswogēn p.p.).

§ 13. Hond (A.S. hond, fem. u-stem) takes -e in the dative phrases on honde, yn honde.

Note.—"Dativ auf -e bei consonantisch auslautendem Nom. liegt vor in honde, wonen hond gilt (A.E. hōnda hond):" ten Brink, § 209. It will be observed, however, that the dative in -e is used only in certain idiomatic phrases which had an existence independent in some measure of that of the noun (cf. infra. § 14).

honde (A.S. hand, hond, f.; L. hand, hond, dat. -e, O. hand, wip hande), on h., 3779 f (in hond D), 3996 f, 6066 f; yn h., 1288 f (hond D), 1302 f (on hende C, on hond D), 1562 f (-d D), 2307 f (holde † C), 3615 f (hand D), 7734 f, 7978 f, 8043 f. [acc., honde † vp, 2287 A (pl. BCD); - ē † wrong, 5833 A (pl. BCD).]

1 A remarkable succession of -en's: "herden a mayden reden."
2 Old-style figures indicate that D has morow (before vowels, -ow).
3 to = till.
4 morow when D.
hond, (i.) acc., 1378 (-e D); by the h., [2266 f † C (hood AD, hoode B),] 4579 (-e D); of othere h., 8127 (-e B), cf. 2090; with rakel h., 1060; withouten h., 3030 (-e B).—(ii.) [voc., 4103 † B (bond AC, god † D);] acc., 6515 (-e BC), 7236 (-e B, haue † D); into hire h., 433; of here h., 2140 (-e B)¹; yn thyn h., 1046 (-e B); in goddes h., 4027 (-e B, sonde † D); on h., 4702 † A (in honde B, in hond D), 6428 AB (-e D); by the h., 1173, 6444 (-e B, -e † sobirly D); by the h. here, 2689 (-e B).


§ 14. The following masculine and neuter nouns which in Anglo-Saxon end in a consonant in the nominative sometimes or always take an -e in one or more cases in the Troilus:

(i.) masculine o-stems,—borh, botm, clúd, déwes, fiér (fér), græf (græf), grund, -húd, híap, heofon, pín (m.?), prím (m.?), scrín, síc, stéger, steál(l), téar, túan, -twist, weg, wer; (ii.) neuter o-stems,—cræt, fýr, gæt (geat), gær (gér), góð, hors, lif, los, síc, tempel, -wil, wolcen; (iii.) neuter i-stems,—bed(æ), híew; (iv.) neuter wo-stem,—cnéow; (v.) masculine i-stem,—flyht; (vi.) neuter i-stems,—ge-fér; (ge)wiht; (vii.) masculine consonant-stem,—fút. For stere guber-

maculum, see § 2.

(a)² In some of these words the Chaucerian -e is clearly the Anglo-
Saxon dative singular ending. So in bedde, borwe, dethe, fere (in yfere, see § 88), fyre, hepe, horse, knowe, lyne, towne, yere. For most of these a nominative or accusative in a consonant is found in the Troilus (thus, bed, borw, bourgh, deth, etc.), and in all of them the -e is confined to dative phrases with a preposition. Some of

the words, to be sure, exhibit also forms without -e after prepositions that in Anglo-Saxon require the dative; but it will usually be found that such phrases as preserve -e are idioms in which the preposition has come to be very closely associated with the noun, whereas in the (presumably dative) phrases that show no -e the collocation of noun and preposition may be regarded as accidental or occasional. The distinction may be seen by comparing such

¹ Metre in AB †. In D supply [that].

² The following paragraph was in type before Kluge’s note in Paul’s Grundriss, I, 900, met my eye.
idioms as to bedde, abedde, to towne, on horse, on the one hand, with in his bed, on the bed, on here hors, on the other. In the first class of examples there is no article or other word between the preposition and the noun: the phrases are units, and as such have an existence more or less independent of the individual history of their component parts (in abedde, afyre, alyue, yfere, we have actual compound words). It is easy to see how the Anglo-Saxon dative -e might be lost elsewhere but preserved in these petrifications. In the second class, on the contrary, we have no such unified phrase, and consequently no -e. The difference is well illustrated by to deth (A.S. to déaDe) and to the deth. In other words, bed, deth, etc., were not inflected in the dative by Chaucer. When he appears thus to inflect one of them, he is merely using an inherited petrification containing a dative (compare our use of alive, whilom).

In a few cases, however, an article or pronoun is inserted between the preposition and the noun in these phrases, and the -e still preserved,—by analogy, no doubt. The following list of the phrases included under this present sub-head a will make this clear: abedde, to (unto) bedde, vnto here bedde, to borwe, to deth, afyre, on fyre, in the fyre, to the fyre, to hepe, on hors[e], on knoace, on (vpon) lyue, alyue, yn at his lyue,1 in towne, to towne, out of towne, in the towne2, to yere, of fern[e]yere. On grounde seems to be a similar survival, and stands over against on a ground (i.e. on a foundation): cf. on the grounde, to grounde, to the grounde, through the grounde (but through the ground, under the ground). Gode in to gode (A.S. to gode) and the analogous phrases sounen ynto gode, for gode, for the townes gode, probably belongs here. (Cf. on, yn honde, § 13.)

(b) One is tempted to refer to a the following phrases: yn stalle (but cf. into a hitel oxes stalle, C. T., E 207, in an oxe stalle, id., 398, and see Child § 14, ten Brink § 199 Anm.), put to flyght[e] (but cf. to the flyghte), to were (but cf. to the soweful were, Parl. F. 138). In on the stayre, adown the stayre, downward a stayre, we probably have to do with an inorganic -e, not with a dative-ending (cf. He passeth but oo stayre in dayes two, Compl. Mars, 129), and so perhaps in with many a twyste and of wighte. For vpon a rore, see § 15.

(c) The Chaucerian -e represents an Anglo-Saxon dative plural ending (-um, later -an, L. -en) in sithe (as, an hundred sithe, cf. tyme

1 Lyue is also used in the adverbial phrases my (his, al my) lyue = during my (etc.) life (but see 4140). Cf. also the adverb blyue.

2 But,—in to towne, 4624 f.
and tymes in similar phrases, § 2, p. 3, above). So perhaps in
vnder fote (see Zupitza, Guy, note on v. 598).

(d) Unmistakable inorganic -e's appear in the following words,
in which -e appears in nominative, accusative, or vocative,—clowde,
feere, grane, heue, pryme (French influence), pryme, tere (but also teer),
weye (but also wey), wyle, yate. So also in the suffix -bede (but
also -hode). Cf. also carte, shryne. In botme, -me represents Anglo-
Saxon syllabic m (A.S. botm) (cf. ten Brink, § 199 Anm.). Temple
represents A.S. tempel. In heuene (disyllabic in all cases; before
vowels, heuene) the MSS. vary between -ne and -en (-yn); for walkene
(A) there are the variants walken (B) and walkyn (CD): ten
Brink decides for heaven and whele, but admits heuene (§ § 199. 1,
203. 5, 219); but it cannot be regarded as settled whether Chaucer
in such cases said -né, -én, or -n, whatever he may have written.

(e) The -e in the sothe seems the result of an adjective analogy.
But we find also forsothe (A.S. forsoð, —but to soðe, to sonden, -um);
cf. for a soth.

Note 1.—Ten Brink's dictum that the nominative and accusative of neuter
vowel stems have "tonlosses e durch Analogiewirkung in der Mehrzahl der
kurzsilbigen und einigen mehrsilbigen o- Stämmen" (§ 203. 5) gets
slight support from the Troilus. See the evidence under bak, col, got,
gres, las, mot, path, ship (§ 18, below). Holé of, 3443 C (holé D) is an
error, and losse, losse are hardly significant. As to col (cole), cole is the
only form recognized by ten Brink, except in composition, but col occurs.

Note 2.—For instances of an erroneous -e written, but not pronounced, see
especially § 18 under bor, brest, cold(e), dom, fend(e), flood, foul(e), frend,
gold, harm, hed, hom, knyght, kyng, lord, noon, reed, ryng, thing, werk,
wyn. The following apparently sounded -e's are due to copyists' errors,
and are easily corrected by a comparison of MSS.,—teed (A.S. teald), 1621 f
D.: rede adj. pl.; ryndè holte, acc., 2932 C (rimes ABD); with the
stremé of, 2971 D; losè me, 4751 D. For geste (t) see § 18.

Note 3.—For thondre see thonder (§ 18). For angre see § 19; for shyrre,
syrrere, see § 15, n. 1. On the confusion between -er and -ere cf. Child § 84
and infra §§ 15, note 1, 29. For fevre, feuer, see § 18.

bedde (A.S bed(d), n., L. bed, dat. bedde, O. bedd, i min bedd, o
bedde), to bedde, 3497 ([de] D), 3533 ([de] D), 5905; vnto
bedde, 2032 f (& † to bedde C, to her bed D): (spedde pret. ind.
3 sg.) vnto here bedde vinte, 7384 (reste C, rest[e] D); a-bedde,
2390 f (in b. C, a bed D): (spedde pret. ind. 3 sg.), 3531 ([de] D),
3535 ([de] D), 4426 (in b. D), 4521 ([de] D).—to bedde he,
1147 (bed D), 6574; a bedde, 908 B (in b. C, in bed D, a bedde
and [make] A); a bedde half, 1152.2

bed: (i.) vpon his b., 1642 (beddè B); in his, thi, the b., 2395

1 "Wie es scheint gilt tere statt teer." ten Brink, § 199 Anm. But teer occurs.
2 Pandare a-bedde (so in ABCP.; a bed DG) || half yn a (om. DG) slomberyng
(slomberrynge B, slombryng DGCP.). Leaf cut out in C.
of Chaucer’s Troilus.

(-de C), 2602 (-de B), 3897 BCD (line too long in A), 6772 (-de D); into his b., 4377 (-de A); on here, the b., 5395 (-de D), 6657 (-de D); toward the b., 5017 (-de ? B, D).—(ii.) from his b., 7899 (-de D); in here b., 5909 (-de BCD), 6709 (-de D, in . . . bed ben † C); in . . . bed he, 4457 (on his bedde he D); vpon . . . bed he, 4918 (-de BD); into bed hym, 3939¹ B (-de C, D †); vpon . . . bed hym, 4886 (-de D); in . . . bed hym, 7802 (-de D).

Note.—vpon his bedde side, 4896 D, is merely hapography for beddë side (AB, beddys s. C).

borwe (A.S. borh, m., L borh), to, 2048 f ( : morwe : sorwe), 2609 f ( : morwe : sorwe), 8027 f ( : morwe : sorwe).—And I thi borw (bourugh B, borow D) fy (om. C) no wyght doth but so, 1031.—And I yourþ bourȝe ne neuerþe shal for me, 1219 (bourugh B, borw C, borow D. [borow 2048 f D, 2609 f D.]

botme (A.S botm, m.), in . . . b., 297 (botème C, botme † hit D); to . . . -e, 1620 (botème † C, botmë † it D). [Cf. botmeles, § 48, n. 5.]

carte (A.S. cræt, n., L. carte, O. karrte, P. Pl. cart-whel), with, 6641 ABC; nom., farë carte, 7525 f (soory † carte D) ( : arte = art thou); cart a-mys, acc., 7028 (-e BCD); cartë, acc., 4597 † B.

clowde (A.S. clúd, m., rock, L. clude, rock), nom., 3275 f (cloude BCD) ( : kowde potuit).—cloud, (ii.) nom., 1851 (-e BC, c. that † D), 1866 (-e BC, cloudis † in D), 4862 (-e BC, D †).—vnder cloud[ë] blak, 175 (-ë BC, vnđur blak cloud so D †).

dethe (A.S. dëaþ, m., L. dæþ, deþ, etc., dat. deaþe, deþe, O. dæþ, dat. dæþ, dæþe). A dative in -e is preserved only in the phrase to dethe (A.S. to déaþe),—do to thethe, 5439 f ABG (to the thethe D, don to deye C) ( : til I vnshethe (coneuye C †) ); to dethë mote I smetë be, 2230 CD (-[e] BG, to deth[ë] mot I be smet[ë] A). But in to the deth no -e is preserved,—to the dethyn herte ( = until death, etc.), 6937; vnto the dethyn, 606; vnto my deth to, 7348. [to deth † or, 2840 C (-e D), and into myn deth † in, 4934 C, of course prove nothing].—A doubtful line (in which however, we should no doubt read deth) is: That of his deth (-e D) ye be nought (not C, no thing D) to (for to CGCp.) wyte, 1470. In 4082 C, read deth (acc.) [y-]schape (deth is shapen A, deth y-shapen BD).

deth, everywhere else, whether before vowels or consonants (though D often adds -e, which, however, is never sounded, for

¹ A reads “he hym (i.e. he’m) into beddë caste.”
3185 D should be corrected). Thus,—nom., 1286 (e D), 2905 (e D), 3913 + C, 5132, 5165, 5444 (e D, they + C),1 5518 (day + C), 5571, 5859, 6257,2 7756; acc., 1046, 2980 (D †), 3185 (Æ † sone D), 4419, 7750, 7776, 7920 (day † C), 8081; voc. and exclam., 4912, 5163 (e D), 6568 (loude † he C); of (not = ex), 527,3 799 f (e D) (: breth acc.), 825 (e his D), 1423 (e D), 1518 (e D), 2364 (e D), 3913 (nom. † C), 4903 (C †), 5481 (e D), 6109; from the, his d., 469 (D †; dethes = deth his C), 536,4 1651 (e hym D), 4085; with my, his, the d., 2952 (e D), 3747 (e he D), 54015; neigh the d., 3204 (e D); after the, your, my d., 5415, 5900, 7054 (day † C), 8035 (day † C); toward my d., 7004 (C †); thorough my d., 7636; for his d., 8185 AB. [Var. BD deeth.]

fere, in yfere (var. in fere), see § 88.
fere, feere (A.S. féér, fér, m.), nom., 3425 f, 3986 f, 4183 f, 4527 f; acc., 3414 f, 3470 f, 3595 f, 4240 f; voc., 4163 f; for fere, 108 f, 768 f, 1388 ([-e] B), 1534 f (fer C), 5334 f, 5863 (B † om., fer[e] D), 5887 (fer † to D), 6025 f, 7272 f, 7966 f; in f., 726 f; yn this f., 1399 ([-e] B); in swych f., 3299 f; of (= gen.), 3932 f.—for fere, 801, 1855 (fer C), 6744 (fer D); for fere he, 875 (fer C); of the fer his, 6619 (fer BD, fer † the C).

Rhyme words.—were eras (4163) crant (3425, 3470, 3932, 4240), esset 726, 763, 3299, 3414, 3986, 4183, 6025, 7966), essent (4527, 5334), nere 3 sing. (4183), enquire inf. (4527), ere, ere (108, 726, 763, 1534, 3299, 3595), tere n. (3932), there (3414, 3425, 3470, 3595, 4163, 6025, 7272), where (4240).

flyght (A.S. flyght, m., L.a flught, dat. -e b flght, dat. -e, O. flibht), to the flyghthe, 2324 f (flyght C, flight D) (: lyghthe adj. pl.); is put . . . to flyght[e], 1851 f (: the somne shyneth bright (-e B)); put to flyght the, 1698 (flyght C). [in flyght as, 6121 † C.]
fote (A.S. fót, L. fot, dat. -e, O. fot, o fot, with fote), vnderfote, 1432 f (foot D) (: bote : rote); in his fot(e), 4034 f (foot B) (: sot : I mot); nom., fot is, 2049 (e C).

fyre, fire (A.S. fýr, n., L. fur, dat. -e, O. fir), in the fyre, 3553 f (fyr C); to the f., 3820 f (fere BCD); afyre, on fire, 2866 f, 4788 f (fere C), 4846 f (in f. A, on fere C), 5171 f (fere C), 7083 f, 7829 f; a fere, 229 f (a feere B, al fere C, ful † fere D).6 fyrr, fir, (i.) nom., 4475 f (-e BCD), 5080 (-e BCD); acc., 445 (-e C, fere D), 2417 f (-e B, fere CD), 3326 f (-e BCD); the ner the fyrr the, 449 (fere D).

---

1 In 5444 D dele (the).
2 but [if] deth me D.
3 In C read to for the.
4 In C supply [that].
5 In C supply [to].
6 In B insert [herte].
(ii.) nom., 436 (fere D †), 490 (¢ B), 4780 (fer C, fere D); a-fyr, 3698 (¢ BD, à † fere C); of, 6665 (¢ D); nom., fyr he, 3267 (¢ BD, fyr [he] C).

Rhyme words.—ire (2866, 7829), hire, here n. (4788, 5171), desire inf. (3553, 4846, 7083), ind. 1 sg. (5171), enspire inf. (4846), inv. 2 sg. (3553); desir n. (2417, 3326, 4475), spir (¢ BCD) A.S. spir (2417), wir (¢ BD) A.S. wir (4475).

6017 fyro (fere BCD) : dere adj. : here inf. (3820); a fere : were esset: dere inf. (229). [Var. C 490 fuyr; C 449 fyer.]

gode, goode (A.S. god, n., O. god, inn gode, fórr gode), sownen yn-to g., 1029 f (good D) : vnderstode subj. 3 sg.; for g., 3766 f (good D) : stode ind. 3 pl.; for the townes g., 5215 f ( : withstode subj. 1 sg.); to good[ë] mot it turne, 1175 (¢ BC).

good, (i.) nom., 3950; acc., 1182 A (l) D (¢ B; of, CG, a doubtful line)1, 2263 f (¢ B) : stood ind. 3 sg., 3480 f (¢ B) : on a flode, flood D), 3724 † D, 6469 f (¢ B) : stood ind. 3 sg.), 7512 f ( : hood, -e BD); for al the good, 3220 (¢ B), 5583, 7249 † C.—(ii.) nom., 7739; acc., 4749 (¢ B), 5073 AD (¢ D); ayen som g., 7529 (¢ C).

grave (A.S. grief, graf, m., n., O.N. grof,f.), nom., 7781 f ( : haue inf. : same inf.); vnto, 7105 (B † C †).

grounde (A.S. grund, m., L. grund,b-e,ab dat. -e, O. grund, to grund, to grunde), to the g., 856 f (d CD), 4906 f; to g., 4707 f (d D), 4739 f (d D); on g., 4966; on the g., 7650 f; through the g., 7863 f.

ground, (i.) nom., 939 (¢ B), 1927; through the g., 1190 (¢ B, -d † of D); vnder the g., 4282 (¢ BD). (ii.) voc., 4146 (¢ BE); on a g., 3824 (¢ B); to the ground his, 5184 (¢ B, -é doune D).

Rhyme words.—wounde n. (856, 7863), stounde (4739, 7863), bounde p.p. (856), y-grounde (4707), expounde inf. (7650), confounde inf. (4906). [Var. BD grounde; C. gronde.]


goodlihede (-hed D), of, 7953 f ( : in drede); -hed, of, 1927 f (-hede BD), ( : hed caput : ded adj. sing.); nom., -hede, 4572 (-hed, -hid, -heed).

knyghthod (A.S. cnihthād), of, 7954 (knythod C); nom., -hod and, 8117 (¢ ² D).

manhod, (i.) nom., 6336 (¢ B); with, 3270 (¢ B), 5191. (ii.) nom., 1761; with, 7839 (¢ B); acc. vnmanhod, 824 (¢ BD ³; ön-manhöd † C).

1 Cp. has the right reading: Is it of loue o som good þe me lere. B and the John's MS. also insert o.

2 Supply [gret].

3 D is hopeless as to metre; in A supply [a].
Observations on the Language

§14.

womanhede, to (vnto BCD), 4144 f; of, 4582 f; for, 6124 f (-hed CD); acc., 6836 f; to womanhede that, 283.

Rhyme words.—dede n. (4144, 6836), drede n. (4582, 6124), lede inf. (4582), rede inf. (6836).

hepe (A.S. heap, m., L. hæp, hep, dat. -e), to hepe, 4606 f ABC (: lepe inf.).—acc., hep of, 5943 (-e D, heepe B).

heuene (A.S. heofon, m.: also, L.W.S. heofone, f., cf. eorðe, f.; L. heovene, heofne, O. heofne, hefne), in, 878 f; to, 4046 f (in † h. B), 5285 f (heuen D), of, 4567 f.—heuene, before consonants, always dissyllabic,—nom., 1911 (-yn D †)¹; acc., 2844 (-yn D); in, 31 (-yn C), 1980 (-en B, -yn C), 3432 (-yn D), 4441 † CD; of, 1766 (-en C, -yn D); to, 3026 (-yn D); from, 3468 (heue † C, -yn avale D), 5508 AC (en D; B †); on, 6637, 8188.—heuene, nom., 1722 (-en B, -yn † on D); in, 2850 (-yn D), 4441 AB, 8182, 8207 (-en BD); from, 5374 (-en D); in . . . h. he, 4093 B (-yn † he D)²; in h. his, 6058 (-en D); nom., h. his, 4584 (-yn D); in heuêne hye, 4587. [heuene † egle, 4338 D.]

Rhyme words.—neuene inf. (878), neuene ‡ n. (4567 B), steuene (4567 ACD), seuene (4046, 5285).

hewe (A.S. hêw, n., W.S. hêw, hêw, N. hîu, see Siev. § 247, n. 3, Sweet, 1789; L. hewe, O. hew, inn hewe), nom., 461 f, 4540 f (hew B), 5402 (-ê BCD); acc., 441 f, 1388 f, 2555 f, 7766 f; of, 3145 f, 5041 f (-w C), 5398 f (-w D), 7936 f, 8135 f; with, 5325 f, 6922 f.—hewe, nom., 2936 † D; acc., 1145 (D †).—in his hewê bothe, 487 (-ê C †).

Rhyme words.—newe adj. (441, 4540), adj. (1388, 2555, 5325 [of newe A], 7936 [aneuwe C]), newe inf. (3145), trewe adj. (5041, 5325), vntrewew 3145, 7936, 8135), rewe inf. (461 [rew A, rewe pres. subj. 2 pl. † CD], 5398, 6922), knewe ind. 3 pl. (4540).

horse (A.S. hors, n., L. hors, an horse, to horse, O. horrs), on horsê) gan, 6400 AB (-ê CD).—hors, (i.) on here h., 6545 (of = down from, BCD); from hire h., 6552 (-ê D, C †). (ii.) nom., 223, 1711; acc., 4707, 7381 (-ê D); on his h., 2346, 6398 (h. he D); of (= from) hors, 6876 B (of here h. AC (plu.), of horsê light D); from his h. he, 6563 (-ê D; C †).

knowe (A.S. cnéo(w), n., N. cnéw, cnéo, Merc. cnéu, L.a on cneowe, L.b a cnowe, O. o cnewwe), sat (fel C) on knowe, 2287 f (know D) (: I trowe ind. : sowe inf.).

loose, see § 18.

lyue (A.S. lif, n., L. lif, on liue, bi life, bi liue, O. lif, dat. lif, -e), acc.

¹ it an heuene (it) was C.
² heuene om. in A.
of time (my lyue, his l., al my l.), 594 f (lyf C), 1290 f (in † my l. D), 2141 f, 4929 f (liff D), 6528 f (in † his l. C); euere his l. and, 6799 (lyf C, liff D); on lyue, 1223 f, 1973 f, 5156 f (lyf C), 5425 f (onlef C), 6632 f (a lyue D), 7027 f, 7251 f, 7732 f, 8226 f; alyue maken, 3734; on lyue come, 7248; on lyue, 4958 ABD; on lyue han (hanq), 5899 (o 1. B, a-lyue a be C); vpon lyue, 2115 f; yn al his lyue, 2623 f ([in] C); yn lyue, 899 † C; of ( = out of) lyue, 2693 f (on † l. C), 7924 f. [Cf. blyue adv., § 88.]

Rhyme words.—blyue adv. (594, 1223, 1290, 2623, 2693, 5153, 6528), lyue (2115, 7251), Arguye nom. pr. (5425), thryue inf. (1223, 1290, 2141, 2693), dryue inf. (2623, 5156, 7732), dryue subj. 3 sg. (7027), depurye inf. (4929), dyscriue inf. (1763, 6632, 7732), ryue inf. (7924), stryue inf. (6528), circumscrive inf. (8226).

lyf, lif, nom. (i.) 1863 f, 536 [-e † C], 772 (-e B), 1041, 1199, 1286 B (of lyf D), 1447 (lyue B), 1551 † A (lyf is B, l. in C, -e † in D), 1826 CD, 1936, 4952, [5273 † f C], 5339 (C †), 6516, 7741 † D, 7581, 7986; voc., 4264; nom. (ii.) 462 ABC, 1286 A, 1826 AB, 3217 (-e B), 4319 (acc. † D, nom. -e B), 4936 (-e B); acc. (i.) 1046, 1557, 1915 † D, 1917, 1920 f, 3257, 4447, 4559, 5229, 6703 f (-e B), 6720, 6992 [-e † C], 7077, 7532 (-e B, lyf † I C, liff[e] † D); acc. (ii.) 469, 1554, 1660, 4318 BD (lyf saue ? AC), 4444, 4963 (lyf † wele C), 6004, 7741 AC, 7747 (-e D), 7770 AD, 7776; acc., lyf his, 2151; of (not = ex) (i.) 4323, 5610 (-e † C, D †), 5826, (ii.) 4689, 4775 ABD; with (i.), 7637, 7682; by lyfe be, 2103.—wreke vpon myn owney lyf, 2950 f.—In 4140 f, al my lyfe (lyue BC, life ? D), acc. of time, rhymes with wyf, voc.

Rhyme words.—stryf n. (1863, 1920, 6703), wyf (2950, 4140, 6703), en tentyf adj. (1920).

pryme (A.S. prim, m. f) seems to owe -e to the influence of Fr. prime.—pryme, nom., 2180 f; at, 2077 f, 6378; after, 2642 f; atwixen, 6835 f. (Cf., of lusty ver the pryme, 157 f.)

Rhyme words.—tyme (everywhere), by me (2077). [Var. BCD prime.]

pyne (A.S. pin, m. (?), L.O. pine), nom., 1761 f; acc., 2250 f, 6631 f (peyne † A), 6653 f (peyne † A), 7490 f; in, 4685 f, 5136 f (peyne † C), 6369 f (peyne † B); of, 7255 f † B (l. peyne with ACD); -e, nom., 4300 (-e † D).

Rhyme words.—encyne inf. (1761), myne inf. (1761), 5136), dyne inf. (2250, 7490), fyne inf. (4685), deuyne inf. (6631, 6653), depurye inf. (6631), twyne subj. 3 sg. (6639), Quyryne (4685), Proserpynye (5136). [Var. D pine.]

shryne (A.S. scrín, u., see Pogatscher, p. 161), voc., -e, 6916.

sithe (A.S. siȝ, m., L. siñe, dat. -e, O. ann sipe, opere sipe, offte sipe,
sibess), a hundred sithe, 4437 (-e he B, tyme and C, tymes D); a thousand sithe, 5415 f (s wythe : lythe inf.) ; an hundred sithe, 6835 (-e C, -es D); a thousand sithe, 7744 f (sith D) (: blythe : swythe).

[Dat. pl. in A. S. : as, seofon si∂um.]

sothe (A.S. sɔ∂, n., L. sο∂, so∂e, O. sop, to sope). In the Middle English uses of this word there seems to be some confusion between sɔ∂ sbst. and sɔ∂ adj. The substantive phrase the sothe is perhaps due to the influence of the definite adjective form. Forsothé instead of A.S. forsoθ (cf. tó so∂on) is noteworthy. See also in soth. In the examples that follow soth (sothe) seems to have been felt as a substantive. In ye sey right soth ywys, 1275 AB, perhaps soth[e] is an adverb.

the sothe, acc., 12, 1605, 4440 ([e] B), 5615, 6983 ([e] B), 7375, ([e] BD), 7391 ([e] B, [the] soth[e] C), 7398, 8003 ([e] B, the soth † D); forsothe, 5697 f (for soth BD) (: in yow bothe); forsothë so it semeth by hire song, 1968 ABCD ([e] G), but cf. for a soth, 6069.—the sothe is, 5965 (B † D † ; the s. (this) is C).

soth, sooth, (i.) nom., that is s., 1268 f (-e D) (: doth 3 sg.); acc. (in soth to seyn, soth for to telle, and similar phrases,—no def. or indef. article), 343, 591 (om. D), 712 (the sothë D), 822 A, 1706 (-e B; D †), 1769, 2071 (the sothe D), 2367 f (ful sothe, as if adv., D, but the rhyme doth 3 sg. (doth(e) D) condemns the form), 2441 (the sothe [for] D; C †), 2601 (the sothe D), 3197 (-e D), 3272, 3492 (the sothe D), 3835, 4372, 4635 (-e D), 4709 (the sothe D), 5165 (soft † B), 7531 C (-e D), 7712, 7883; seye a soth, 1316 (-e D), 2222 (-e BD); homly s. to seyne, 2644 BC (the soth(e) D); in soth, 6506 (-e D), 6734; for a s., 6069 (cf. forsothe). (ii.) nom. (in the phrase soth is), 3461, 4166 AC (-e B), 5930 (so[th] C, -e D), 6392 (-e D); acc., seyde . . . soth, 3420 (-e D); soth hym seyde, 822 C (-e BD); a soth, acc., 7821 (-e CD), 7902, 8087; a soth(e), acc., 7672 ABD (asay † C); lyk a soth, 3761; cause of soth, 5703.

staire, steyre (A.S. stäger, m.), on the s., 215 f (starre † B) (: contraire : debonaire); adoun the steyre, 1898 (stey entrepreneurship, stairë anon D † ); downward a steyre, 2790 (steyre B, stair D).

stalle (A.S. steall, stall, m., O. stall), oxe yn stalle, 7832 f (stall D) (: vynes alle).

temple (A.S. tempel, n.), 323 CD (disordered), 1458, 6728 (temple C), 6929; temple, 162 (AB too long, temple B), 185 (D †), 317, 363,
3382 (tempéle C); temple he, 267 (é went D); templé he, 5609.

tere (A.S. téar, tór, tæher, m.), nom., 3929 f; acc., 6585 f, 7409 f, 7945 f; of, 7243 f; with, 7544 f (ter D); for ... teer which, 3012 (tere BD, ter C).

Rhyme words.—were erant (3929, 6585, 7544), esset (7243, 7945), of his fere (3929), where (6585), ellys where (7409), there (7243, 7544). [Var. BD teere.]

towne (A.S. tún, m., L. tun, dat. -e, O. tun, to tune, i., off tune, P. Pl. to tune), in the t., 3030 f; in t., 5250 f, 6890 ([e] D, in(to) touné for C); to t., 4871 f; out of t., 3412 f (-n B), 3933 f, 5193 ([e] B, of (=ex) the toun[e] C).—towne, of t., 270 ([e] † or D, in touné † or C); into t., 2196; in t., 4724 (-n B), 5342 (-n B, tounyns † C).

—nom., townë start, 6048 D (but supply [thus]).

Rhyme words.—sowne inf. (3030), townë inf. (3412, 5250), a-swowne (3933), howne n. (4871).

town, toun, (i.) nom., 141, 1463, 5247 (-e D), 6048 ABC, 7131 f, 7873 (-e D); voc., 7369 f; acc., 558 f, 1464 f, 4741 (t. [to] B, nom. t. is † D); in the t., in this t., in al this t., 64, 2501 f, 6002 AB (C(?), -e † (l) D), 6042 f (-e CD), 6792 f, 7353 f; of (not = ex but equivalent to a genitive), 186 f, 478 f, 1822, 3225 f, 4783 f, 4854 f ((s)town A), 6926 f (-e D), 7040, 7219 f, 7388 f (-e D), 7475 (-e D); out of the t., 75, 6368 f (-e BD); out of a t., 6384 (-e D, [a] town A); into t., 4624 f (to D); into this t., 7486 (-e D); into the t., 7517; aboute Troyé t., 4692 f; on al the t., 4780; travity to the t., 4866 f; withinne Troyé t., 7332 f (-e D); thorough-out Troyé t., 8012 f (-e C).—(ii.) nom., 804, 6763 (-e D); yn al the t., 1224, 1833 (thour, C), 1966; yn the t., 3716; out of t., 3419; nom., t. hath, 5209 (-e D); in t. his, 1069.

Rhyme words.—For town,—doun, down adv. (186, 4624, 6792, 6926, 7219, 7369, 7388, 8012), Sarpedoun (6792), attricioun (558), baroun (4692, 4854), conclusion, —ion (478, 7131, 7369), condition (7332), conclusion (4783), denoucioun (186, 553), dyscression (4866), disposicion (6368), entencion (7131), excocion (6368), Lameadoun (4783), lyoun (4624, 4692), opnyoun (7219), oppressioun (2501), possessioun (2501), renoun (478), saluacioun, saucacion (1464, 6042), suspicion (8012), tribulacion (7353).

twyste (A.S. maest-twist, m. l), with many a t., 4072 f (-t C) (: tryste inf.: wyste ind. 3 sg).

walkene (A.S. wolcen, wolken, n., pl. wolcnu, Pet. Chron. se wolene; L. weolcne, wolene, pl. (?); P. Pl. walkene, welkene, e wolkene),

1 A disagreeable line, but identical in ABCDG: "Til in a temple he fond hym al lone." Cp. reads: "Til in a temple he fonde hym al alone."
2 Old-style figures denote that D has no -e.
3 Always with some word or words (as, the, this, at this) between of and town.
the walkenē shop hym, 3393 A (walken B, walkyn CG, walkyn D, wolken Cp.).

were (A.S. wer, m.), to were, 2877 f (to the † w. D) (: here eam). [Cf. This streme you ledeth to the sorrowful were, Part. F., 138 (: spere : bere inf.).]

wayne (A.S. weg, m., L. weie, wai, dat. wei, weie, etc., O. wey33e), acc., 5954 f1 (wayne C), 6288 f (way B, alway † C), 6459 f, 6719 f (way C); by, 495 f, 6988 f (wayne C); vpon, 2576 f (forth his w. C); in, 3080 f; adverbial, what w., 4821 f.—wayne, acc., -e to, 1862 A (way B, why C); -e for, 6131 A (way BD, om. C)2; which weye be, 3599 (way BC).—wayne, acc., 4610 (way B, wey † no E); nom., weye is, 1702 (-e is C, way is B, wey is D); on ... weye he, 1532 (way B). (Cf. awyey, awyey, adv., § 89.)

wayne, wey, (i.) nom., 2336, 7432 f; acc., 1160 BD (-e † A), 4851 (-e C); 5964 (-e C), 6180 AB, 6877 (woye (?) † haue C, way † haue D †), 7380; out of, 219 (-e C); on, 2388, 6864 (-e BC); by, 7025 (-e BC); went his wey, 1055; do wey do wey, 1978 (D †).

(ii.) vpon ... wey he, 2034 (-e him C, wey hym D); on ... w. hym, 4365 (-e CD); a forlong wey on, 5899 (woy C).

Rhyme words.—seye inf. (495, 3089, 4821, 5954, 6459), obeye inf. (2576), pleye inf. (3089), deye inf. (6988), leye = wager inf. (6719), preye ind. 1 sg. (5954), twye (485, 4821, 6988), awyey (6288, 6459), awyey (7432), pley n. (6288), wellyawey (7432). [Var. BCD way; C waye, woye; D weie.]

wighte (A.S. go-wiht, n., also -e, L.a wiht,b weht, O. wipp fife wehhtte off sillferr), of w., 2470 f (wyghte B, weight D, on † wyghte C) (: thynges lyghte).

wyle (A.S. wil or wile, n. (Chron. 1128), flygewilum instr. pl. (Mód. 27)), nom., 1356 f, 3919 f (w(h)ile CD); for, 719 f (gyle C).

Rhyme words.—while n. (719, 1356, 3919), bygyle inf. (719, 1356). [Var. BC wile.]

yate (A.S. gæt, W.S. gæt, Ps. get, n., Pet. Chron. iate-ward, L. ȝat, dat. -e, O. gate way, P. Pl. gateward), acc., 3311 f (: late adv.), 7503 f (: late adv.); to the y., 1702 AB; vnto, 7501. But,—At the yate there she sholde oute ryde, 6395.—into the yate, 4567 (vnto BD, to C); vnto the yate he, 7555 (-is † C); on to the gate he, 6966 C (pl. ABDG).

A and D write always yate; B and C, always yate (except in 6966 C).

yere (A.S. gær, gær, gér, n., L. ȝer, dat. -e, O. ȝer) to yere, 3083 f (yeer D) (: dere); of fern[ç] yere, 7539 f (fernë[ye]re C, fëuerër †

1 Old-style figures indicate that D has no -e.

2 Obj. of trusten to (on BD); or, perhaps, nominative.
§ 15. The following Germanic nouns, for which no corresponding Anglo-Saxon etymons can be cited, sometimes or always end in the Troilus in -e:

(A) Suspicious or uncertified Anglo-Saxon words,—crampe (cf. A.S. crompeht adj.), mone (A.S. *mân, inferred from ménan), werre (see the word), whippe (A.S. hwœop Somner). (B) Words from the Old Norse: (i.) masculine n-stems, awe, bole (-e, -e, never -ī) (but cf. A.S. bulluc), felawe (but cf. A.S. fíolaga, itself from O.N.); (ii.) feminine n-stems,—bore, sherte; (iii.) neuter n-stem,—wyndowe; (iv.) neuter o-stems,—on loft, o loft, o-lofte (O. Norw. á loft, á lofti, originally u-stem), at thy tryste (but also tryst, trust). (C) Probable Middle English formations from Anglo-Saxon words: (i) nouns from verbs,—drede, hede, hye, lette, and perhaps forde, mase, slyne; (ii.) diminutive,—stalke (A.S. stel); (iii.) heste (-t-formation from A.S. hés, f.), beheste, wente (cf. A.S. wend, f.). (D) Borrowed from Middle Low German,—grote, rore. (E) Miscellaneous words of more or less doubtful etymology,—greue, haste, labbe (var. blabbe), were (?). For hosbonde, skathe, see § 2; for arwe, wodebynde, see § 3; for faldefare, see § 5; for bone, byrthe, routhe, slyghte, see § 9.

awe (O.N. agi, m., n-stem; cf. A.S. ege, m., L eísc, aie, O. eísc, aíhe), 999 f (: lawe : drawe inf.), 5282 f (: lawe : gnawe inf.).

blabbe, see labbe.

bole (O.N. boli, m., n-stem; but cf. A.S. bulluc ; L.O. bulo), -e, nom., 4901 (bole † C, bullē D); -e, yn, 1140 (bullē D; bool it B); -e, of, 3565 (bool B, bok † C).

bore (O.N. bora foramen, f., n-stem, cf. Mätzner), nom., -e hath, 4295 (houre † C).

crampe (cf. O.S. cramp, f., O.H.G. krâmpf, m., M.L.G., M.Du. krampe; Sweet, 269, assumes A.S. cramp from the adj. crompeht; P. Pl. crampe), -e, acc., 3913 (nom. † C, crampe, acc., B).

drede2 (L. dred, drede, P. Pl. dre(e)de, cf. A.S. drædan, vb.), 95 f, 180 f, 499 f, 529 f, 575 f, 775 f, 1757 f, 1831 f, 1918 f, 2260 f, 2408 f,

1 Supply [the] in C.

2 A.S. dræd sb., given in Bosworth, is rejected by Bosworth-Toller, the only evidence for its existence being Matth. xxv. 25 misunderstood (see Mätzner).
2589 f, 2934 f, 3260 f, 3332 f, 3549 f, 3569 f, 1 4080 ([e] C), 4223 f, 4562 f, 4583 f, 4734 f, 4817 f, 5269 D, 5340 f, 5507 [-e] C), 5753 f, 5775 f, 6001 f, 6070 (-[e] C), 6117 f, 6125 f (dred C), 6179 f, 6195 f, 6235 f, 6307 f (dred D), 6415 f, 6566 f, 6627 2 6993 f, 7122 f, 7343 f, 7453 f, 7643 f (dred D), 7955 f, 8144 f; dred, 2585 (-d C), 3672 (-d C), 4676, 6197 (-d C); dred awaketh, 1895 (-e BD).—dred is=dred's, 4400 A (dred is C, -e is BD).—dredé ‡ out, 6073 D. [Cf. dredful, § 49, n. 3.]

Rhyme words.—dede n. (95, 6001, 6235, 6415), dede pred. plur. (5753, 6179), weđe A.S. véōd (180, 4562), bređe A.S. brédéu (180, 529), heđe heed n. (499, 575, 1831, 6566, 7122, 7453), heed n. (775, 1757, 3260, 3332, 3549, 3569, 4734, 6195), mede (3260), the rede red (4223), rede adj. plur. (2934), rede inf. (95, 2260, 2408, 2589 CD, 4223, 5340, 7643), aređe inf. (2589 AB, 5775, 6255), atređe inf. (6117), rede ind. 3 plur. (6307, 8114), kynréde (7343), womanhede (4583, 6125), gooodliliede (7955), Diomede (7453), bléde inf. (499), lede inf. (529, 1918, 4562, 4583, 6179, 6993), I lede 1 sg. (6001), sped inf. (775, 4734), sped subj. 3 sg. (1831), forbede subj. 3 sg. (4817).

felawe (O.N. félagi, m., but A.S. féolaga, from the Norse, occurs in Chron. D, 1016, see Kluge in Paul's Grundriss, I, 786), for his felæwë daun, 7851 (fa- C, felowe D); nom., félawé resteth, 4990 (-owë B, -ow D); nom., félawé deyc, 5186 (fellawe D); félawe, acc., 709 (-aw BD).

ferde (A.S. vb. húran; cf. M.H.G. ge-vérde, f., n., 'betrug'), for ferde[e] caught, 557 (-e BD); of feréd thyn, 5269 (ferd C, ferdë G, drede ‡ D); for feréd out, 6073 (-e out BG, l. ferde out of [his] 8; fer C ‡, drede ‡ out D). [For ferdë, and myn hewe al pale, B. Duch. 1214; And he for ferdë lost his wit, Hous F. ii, 442 (950).]

greue (cf. A.S. gréfe, gréfa, 'pit,' and the confused glosses in Wright-Wüelcker, 225, 23-24), by, 7507 f (grene ‡ C) (: eceue).
grote (O. Dutch groote, cf. L.G. (Bremen) grote; P. Pl. grote), 5248 f (: hote adv. : note).
haste (cf. Dutch haast, O. Fris. hast, Dan. Sw. hast. A.S. haést and O. Fr. haste have also been compared), with hastë goodly, 2031 (-e D, laste ‡ C); nom., ouer-haste, 965 (-t D, for eure ‡ hast vb. C); nom., haste, 7968 (hast D); for ... hast and, 4280 (-e BC); in all the haste he, 4428 (-t BD).

hede (cf. O. Fris. húde, hóde, O.H.G. huota, f.; P. Pl. hede), 501 f, 577 f, 820 AB? (-[e] CD), 1832 f, 3306 f, 4066 f, 4389 f, 4671 f, 5514 AB (-e ‡ therto C), 6221 f, 6451 f, 6565 f, 6668 f (hed D), 7120 f (hed C), 7234 f, 7411 f, 7452 f, 8019 f, 8069 f; hede ther-

1 Written for-drede.
2 Supply [to] in D.
3 A also has his. Perhaps, however, ferde out is right (hiatus in cæsura). Cp. has no his.
of, 1666; heed for, 7266 (hede BD, hede C); hede, 3481 (hede C), 5095 (hede AC), 5769 (hede D), -[e] † what C).

Rhyme words.—dred e n. (501, 577, 1832, 6565, 7120, 7452), nede n. (3306, 4066, 6221), Diomedé (4671, 6451, 7234, 7411, 7452, 8019, 8069), the crede (6451), glede (6668), stede steed (6668), brede A.S. brícdu (8019), blede inf. (501, 4671, 7411, 8069), forbese inf. (3306), pres. subj. 3 sg. (6221), brede inf. (4389), sped subj. 3 sg. (1832). [Var C heede; D heed.]

heste, byheste (A.S. hæs, f., behésa gen. pl., L. heste, bihæste, O. hæse), (a) heste, 3999 f (liste † B, heest D), 6718 (-̣e † A, hest[e] B, bêhést † D); heste he, 6101 (-t C); hestë hath, 4587 (pl. BCE). (b) byheste, 3157 BC (heste † A, hest † D), 3188 f (-t CD), 7554 f (-t D, heste C), 8038 f (-t D); behest, byhast, 1444 f (-e BCD), 1508 f (-e BC), 2414 f (-e B). [haste, 7794 B, should be plural.]

Rhyme words.—feste n. (1444, 1508, 3999, 8038), at the leste (1444, 2414, 3157, 3999, 8038), by este (7554). [Var. BCD beheste, B bi-]

lye (A.S. ligian, to hasten), in lye, 1173 f (lye D) (: companye: thrie adv.), 2797 f (lye C) (: prye inf. : companye), 6047 f (haye B, his D) (: inpartie). [5861 f † C (: deye inf. : companye).]

labbe (Prompt. Parv. blabbe, or labbe, wrycare of cowsnelle, futilis, anubicus), nom., 3142 f (blabbe D) (: gabbe ind. 3 pl., inf. † D).

lette (A.S. vb. lettan, O.L.G. sbst. lette, M.H.G. letze, f., L b lette), withouten, 361 f (let D), 3077 f, 3541 f (let D), 3590 f, 4703 f (let D), 7214 f (lett D).—lettégame, 3369 f (let[te]game D).

Rhyme words.—sette pret. ind. 3 sg. (361, 3077, 3541, 7214), mette somnivius (361), mette congressi sunt (4703), dores were y-shette (3077), shette pret. ind. 3 sg. (3590), fette pret. ind. 3 pl. (7214).

lofte (O. Norw. O. Icel. loft, n., a loft, a lofti, later Icel. loft, etc., A.S. on loft from the Scand., see Napier, Mod. Lang. Notes, 1889, col. 278, Kluge in Paul's Grundriss, I, 786; O. o loft, P. Pl. on lofte, ‡bi loft, ‡on loft), on lofte, alofte, o lofte, 138 f (-t BD, onloste † C), 915 f (-t D), 943 f (-t D), 3512 f, 5883 f (-t C), 6371 f, 6711 f (-t B); a-lofte, 6622 (of ‡ loft B, on loft C).

Rhyme words.—ofte (138, 915, 943, 3512, 5883, 6371, 6711), softe adj. and adv. (138, 915, 943, 3512, 6711).

maze (cf. A.S. amasod, p. p.), 6831 f (maze CD) (: glaze inf.).

mone, moone (quasi A.S. *mán, cf. mænan vb.; P. Pl. mone), nom., 1643 f; acc., 98 † f A (l. mone inf., with BCD), 696 f, 5612 f, 6613 f; -e †, acc., 907 C.

Rhyme words.—allone (696, 1643, 5612, 6613), euerchone (5612), grone inf. (1643, 6613).

rore (cf. O.L.G. hróra, O.H.G. ruora, f., Ger. aufruhr ' uproar'; see, however, Murray s.v. aroar, where perhaps the quotation from the
Paston Letters is not in place. Confusion with roar, A.S. ge-rár (áuru), is prob. for Chaucer's time), sette al Troye vpon a rore, 6408 f (a roore D) (: pore adj. pl.).

sherte (O.N. skyrta, f., n-stem, L. scurte, P. Pl. e sherte), aboue (vpon BC, [vp]on D), 3580 f (-t D); to, 3941 f; on, 4214 f; in, 4758 f (-t D), 6184 f (schert C).

Rhyme words.—herte (8560, 3941, 4214, 4758), pounerte (-t C) (6184), serten affugi (4758). [Var. C sertche; D schirte, shirte.]


stalte (dimin. of A.S. stael, stel; P. Pl. e stalke), on stalk[e] lowe, 2053 AB (stalke C); -ys D, supply [on]).

tryste (O.N. traust, n.), Lo holde the at thi tryste clos and I, 2619 (-e C, tristre f D).

tryst, trist, (i.) nom., 3783 f (-e B) (lyst lubet), 4147 f (-e B, trust C, truste D) (lyst voc.); acc., 3245 f (truste B) (lyst lubet: wyst p.p.). (ii.) nom., 154 (trost C, trust D); voc., 4264 (-e B, trust CE) (cf. 7622); for, 6044 (-e B).—trust, (i.) in t., 83 AC (e B); for wéntruyst, 794 (-e B, -trost C, wantrowist f D). (ii.) nom., mytrust, 1865 (-e B; C †); for m., 3165 (-e B, -trost C).

wente (cf. A.S. wend, f.?), acc., 1148 f (-t AD), 1900 f (-t C D), 6968 f (-t ACD), 7557 f (-t CD); by, 3629 f (-t CD).

Rhyme words.—wente pret. ind. 1, 3 sg. (1148, 1900, 3629, 6968, 7557), blente pret. ind. 3 sg. (7557).

were (= doubt, perplexity, Scotch weir, cf. Skeat, Minor Poems, Glossary), from day to day til they be in were of ioye, 7910 C, but read ben bare of ioye (with ABD).

werre (cf. A.S. war-scot; wyrre, uerre, in the Chron. 1119, 1140, are doubtless from French (see Behrens, p. 55); cf. O.H.G. werra, f.; L. a weorra, b werre), 134 f, 1953 f, 4614 f, 5209 f (werr D), 6597 f, 7756 f (werr D); -e, 6331 (guerre D), 7218 (werr D).

Rhyme words.—dere adv. compar. (134), verre (1953), erre pres. 3 pl. (4614), inf. (5209), sterre (6597, 7756).

whippe (A.S. hweep, still given by Bosworth-Toller on the authority of Somner, but not yet found; cf. M. Du. wippe), of, 220 f (wyppe C, whip D) (: skypepe inf).

wyndowe (O.N. vindanga, n., P. Pl. windowowe), to the wýndowę nexst, 2271 (-ow BCD); yn the wýndowę bothe, 2277 (-ow D); from hire wyndow doun, 4625 (-e C).—Before vowels, wyndowe,—nom., 6897 (-ow B); acc., 4895 (-ow BD, wýndowe [ek] C); thurgh out, 3443 AB; at. . . wyndowe, 2100 (-ow BD, in . . wyndowe C).
§ 16. Four monosyllables in -e may be here put together:

gle (neut. jo-stem), se (i-stem m., f.) stre (masc. wo-stem).

gle (A.S. poet.) gleo, W.S. *gleeg, glíg, Ep. gliú, see Sievers, § 247, n. 3; L. gleo), gle and, 2121 (glee B).

se, see (A.S. sé, inflected partly as m., partly as f., Siev. § 266, n. 3; L. sc, se, O. sce), 417, 1088, 1090, 1528 f (: se inf. : he), 2850 f (: tre), 4600, 5685 f (: be sit), 6211 f (: be sim : free), 7249 f (: see ind. 2 pl. : me), 8178 f (: vanite : felicite); se hath, 4586.

stre, straw (A.S. stréaw, stráw-berie, stréa(w)berie, North. stré, Rush. stréu, Sievers, §§ 112. n. 1 and 3, 250. n. 1; P. Pl. be strawe), stre, 2830 f (: she : he); straw is, 3701 (strow B, straw yfaH D); straw yset, 4846 (-e C); a straw for, 6725 (-e D).

tre, tree (A.S. tréo(w), n., North. tré, tréo, tréu(o), Siev., § 250. 2; L. treo, dat. treowe, O. treo, tre), 2852 f (: se n.), 3385 f (: be inf. : fle inf.).—Bef. csts., tre, 4072, 4888, 7507 (trejs † C); bef. vowels, 957.

Note 1. For snow (A.S. snáw, m., wo-stem), cf. 525 (-e B), 5029, 7539 (snowgh B).

Note 2.—For wo, woo, sbst., from A.S. wd, interj., cf. 4, 34, 248 f, 322, 378, 503, 546 AB, 582 f BCD, 1004, 1147, 1463 f, 2445 f, 3084, 4249, 4921, etc.; cf. also wheer me be wo, 2908; wo is me, 3113; me is wo, 4265 f; wo hym, 694 (wo is hym CD); me is for hym wo, 3768 f; vs is wo, 1808; wo was hym, 356, 6432; hym was wo, 5824, 6356 AD (he was wo B); so wo was hem, 4540. In “But lord this sely Troylus was wo,” 6892, the construction is ambiguous. Cf. ful wo to bed he went, 1147 D (yn woo AB).—The interjection ho is also used substantively in the phrase withouten ho, 2168 f AG (hoo BCP., for ay and o C John’s MS., for Ay and oo D added in later hand); cf. “But ho no more now of this materie” 3032; “But ho (hoo BD) for we han right ynow of this,” 5904.

§ 17. In the following nouns final -y comes from the vocalization of an Anglo-Saxon -g. Cf. also wey (§ 14), lady, pley (§ 5).
bodig (A.S. bodig, n.), cf. 122, 1718, 4906, 4920, 4966, 4984, 5425
C, 5505, 6216 (slur), 6616, 6666, 7682, 7923, etc., etc.
day (A.S. daeg, m.), cf. 442, 456, 482, 1068 f (: bay adj. : ay adv.),
1145, 1146, 1271, 1287, etc., etc.  (Cf. ten Brink, § 199.2.)
iuy (A.S. æfig, n.), pypp ynl an iuy lef, 7796 (yuy C) (A.S. ifgléaf).

wery (A.S. wérig, adj.), for wery and wery of that companyne, 5369.

Note.—May 'maiden' is perhaps from O.N. mádr (stem máfig-), late mey :
see 7775 f (: may possum : day), 8083 f (same rhymes).

§ 18. The following masculine and neuter nouns, which in

Anglo-Saxon end in a consonant in the nominative

take no -e in the Troilus, even in the dative.

(i) Pure masculine o-stems,¹—(a) monosyllabic, arm, bark (gender?),
berd, blast, bor, bot, breth, chep, cherl, clerk, cloth, crop, dom (and
compounds), drem, em, fissh, flod (m., n.), foul, fox, frost, gnat, gød,
gost, harm, hat, hauk, helm, hod, hom, hook, horn, hound, knyf,
knyght, kok, kyn, lord, lust, mouth, non, oth, path, port, post, pyk
(gender ?), qualm, véd, vès, reyn, ryng, sheld, shour, slep, song, spir
(gender ?), ston (wheston), swarm, thank (m., n.), thef, thorn, thought,
thred, thred, top, wal, wir, wynd, yerl; (b) dissyllabic, bishop,
bosom, bridel, crepul, epistol, ernest (also f.), feuer (-ere), laughter,
martir, thonder, wimpil; (ii.) pure neuter o-stems,—(a) mono-
syllabic, bak, blood, bon, bond, brayn, brest, col, cold, corn, der, fel,
folk, gold, gres, hed, heer, hous, lef, light, lond, loss(e), mel, mot,
right, seed, shap, ship, sor, sword, thing, vers, werk, vex, whiel,
word, wrong, wyf, wyn; (b) dissyllabic, deuel (m., n.), forlong, gospel,
iren, ordel (q. v.), timber, water, weder, wonder, yuel.  (iii.) masculi-
ne jo-stem,—bryd; (iv.) neuter jo-stems,—kyn, net, wit; (v.)
masculine i-stems,—craft, del, dynt, gest, gyll, hit, streng, cf. Grek;
(vi.) masculine u-stems,—feld, wynter; (vii.) masculine consonant
stems,—fend, frend, man; (viii.) neuter consonant stems,—bred,
child.  For fader, etc., see end of list; for cros, see § 19.

In the following list MS. D has usually been disregarded, and in-
significant variations in spelling have not been registered.  For
erroneous final -e’s, not sounded, and due simply to the whim of the
scribe, see especially bor, brest, cold(e), dom, fend(e), flood, foul(e),
frend, gold, harm, hed, hom, knyght, kyn, lord, noon, reed, ryng,
thing, werk, wynd (cf. § 14, note 2).

arm (A.S. earm, m.), (i.) acc., 2756; for, 2735 f. (ii.) acc., 3970, 4416

¹ U-stems that have in A.S. identified themselves with the o-declension are not
distinguished.
§ 18.

of Chaucer's Troilus.

(armes † B); yn his a. he, 1241 (-e B).—arm yn arm, (i.) 1908;
(ii.) 2201, 2810.

bak (A.S. bæc, n.), (i.) his b. byhynde, 1724; at her he b. byhynde,
7174 AB; (ii.) acc., 4089; by, 7174 † C.
bark (A.S. bark, Leechd., I, 378, O.N. bøkr, m.), (ii.) vnder, 3569;
ther nys but b., 4889; thorwgh the b., 5801 (-e B, om. † C).
berd (A.S. beard, m.), in the b., 4703 (-e B).
bishop (A.S. biscof, m.), (ii.) nom., 1189 (9-syl. verse).
blast (A.S. blæst, blést, m.), for, 2472 f (-e B).

blood, blod (A.S. blód, n.), (i.) voc., 1679; acc., 435, 1530; of
(source), 4642; vnto, 6964. (ii.) ther nas but Grekes b., 1283;
vnto, 6963. [Var. B -e, -e; C blud.]

bon (A.S. bán, n.), nom., 2011 f (-e B, mylk † C).

bond (A.S. band, n. (bande, pl., Pet. Chron.), Sweet, 254; but the
regular A.S. form is bend, m., f, see Sievers, § 266, n. 2), (i.) acc.,
4596 (in † a bounde C); withouten, 4200 (-e B); with, 4608
(bounde C); from, 4610 (-e B, hond † C). (ii.) voc., 4103
(hond † B).

bor, boor (A.S. bár, m.); bore, boore, nom. 7812 D, acc., 4622 AB
(-e † D), 7601 D, 7834 D; with, 3563 BD; of, 7645 D (: hoore
adj. sg., A.S. hár; bor: hor AC; boor: hoor B).—boore he, acc.,
7840 D. Everywhere else written bor, boor; cf., besides the places
just cited, 7603, 7817, 7825, 7832, 7835, 7876, 7878.

bosom (A.S. bôsm, m.), And yn her he bosom the lettre doun he thraste,
2240 ABC (bosom doun D).

bot (A.S. bát, m.), (ii.) withinne, 416; nom., the b. hath, 1088.
[Var. B boot.]

brayn (A.S. brægen, n.), yn 4346 (breyné B).

bred (A.S. brèad, n.), acc., 1529 f (: ded adj. sg. pred.). (Cf. 907 † D.)
brest (A.S. bréost, n.), (i.) nom., 6582 (-e B); acc., 5414, 5834
(bryst C); in, 4898 (-e B); on, 4258 (-e B); vpon, 5813 (-e B);
out of, 5132; into, 2014 (-e B). (ii.) acc., 4905; vpon, 4694 (-e
B); out of, 5000 (-e B, bryst C); fro, 6155 (-e B); nom., b. here,
5477 (-e B); vnder hire b. his, 2012 (-e B). [Var. B -ee-.] out
of my brest, 5438 AB (brest † conueye C).

breth (A.S. bréð, m.), nom., 801 f (-e B), 4935; acc., 3961, 5840.
bryd (A.S. brid, m.), nom., 2852.
brydel, bridel (A.S. brídel, m.), nom., 946 f (: on ydel); acc., 4604;
by, 6455 f (: on ydel); on, 7236. [Var. C -il.]

chep (A.S. céap, m.), as good chep, 3483 (schep C).
Observations on the Language

§ 18.

cheorl (A.S. ceorl, m.), nom., 1017.

cild (A.S. cild, n.), nom., 4770 D (¢ B, chy[l]d A).
clerc (A.S. cleric, cler, m., coincident with O.F. clerc), (ii.) nom., 2883 (clerc B).
cloth (A.S. clæṣ, m.), nom., 3575 f.
col (A.S. col, n.), thorough, 2417 (-¢ C, -¢ [the] moré B).
cold(e) (A.S. ceald, cold, n.), for, 911 f (-d CD) (: told(e) (told CD) p.p.); through, -e, 2052 (-d B, D (!); the coldē nyȝt C). For hete of cold for cold of hete I deye, 420 (ffor cold of hete for hete of cold, etc. C).
corn (A.S. corn, n.), nom., 219 f (-e B) (: by-form adv. : shorn p.p.).
craft (A.S. creft, m.), (i.) nom., 665, 747; acc., 379; on (acc. BC), 6120 f. (ii.) nom., 4476; in, 6453; nom., lechēcraft, 5098.
crepul (A.S. crypel, m.), by-fore, 6120 (-il C).
crop (A.S. crop(p), m.), nom., crop and rote, 1433, 7608 f (-e B); crop and more, 6388.
del (A.S. dél, m.), ye shenden euery del, 1675 f (-e BD); ony del, 2299 f (-e BD); eche a del, 3536 f (-e BD); neuere a del, 3550 f (-e BD); no del, 1082 A (-¢ D); euery del, 5721 f (-e B, -deH D); acc., haluendel the drede, 3549 (nom., † C). Cf. somdel, adv., (i.) 290 (-¢ B); (ii.) 1081 AD (some deel B), 1688 (-e BD).

Rhyme words.—wel adv. (everywhere but 5721); temporel, eternel (5721), stel n. (1675). [Var. B deele, deel.]
der (A.S. déor, n.), (ii.) acc., 2620 (deere B).
deuol (A.S. défol, m., n.), (i.) nom., 5292 (-yl haue † C); voc., 2822 (-il C). (ii.) nom., the d. haue, 805 (-yl C). As expletive,—How deuol maystow bryngen me to bylysse, 623 (de[ne]ll C).
dom (A.S. dom, m.), (i.) to my d., 5049 (-¢ B), 5064; in myn d. †, 5258 C (supply [no]). (ii.) nom., 5850 ([the] dome B; dom C †). [Var. B doom.]—to my dome, 100 (dome B, dom C).

Compounds.—frédom, (ii.) acc., 235 (-dam C).—kýngdom, (ii.) acc., 7850 (kyndom C, kingdam D).—thrâldom, nom., 1941.—wýsdom, wisdom, (i.) with, 5590 (wisdhum D). (ii.) of, 1299; for, 452 (be wisdum C †).¹
drem (A.S. dréam, m.), (i.) acc., 6741 (-en B); for 7643 (-¢ B); in, 7615. (ii.) nom., 7806 (-e B); acc., 7651 (-e B, -ys C), 7819 (-e B; C †); in, 7614 (drem [y]schewid C); by, 8078 (-e B?); acc., d. he, 7815 (-e B).
dynt (A.S. dynt, m.), with, 7868 (-¢ D, dent C).

¹ In B 452 dele the second (for).
§ 18.] of Chaucer's Troilus. 55

e (A.S. éam, m.), (i.) nom., 1440, etc.; voc., 1394, etc.; of (= from), 1015. (ii.) nom., 3115, etc.; voc., 2244.

epest (A.S. épistol, pistol, m.), e. hem, 3343 ([e]pistil C, lettre † D).

erne (A.S. cornest, -ost, m., f.), (i.) in, 2614, 2788; bytwene, 3096.

(ii.) acc., 1537 (hernest B). [Cf. earnestful, § 49, n. 3.]

fél (A.S. fell, n.), (ii.) nom., 91.

efeld, field (A.S. feld, m.), (ii.) in, 4704 (-e B), 5451 (-e D); through, 1280 (-e B)‡; yn the feld he, 1067 (feeld B). (Cf. feldesfare, § 5.)

fende(e) (A.S. féond, m.), 5099 f AD (fend B, frend † C) ( : frend voc.).

féuer, -ere (A.S. féfer, féfer, m., Pogatscher, p. 164), feuere, 909 f (-: keueré in.f.); feuér and, 491 (-yr B, -ere CD)‡; -ér is, 2605 (-ere B, -ère D, [thi] feuere C); -ere or, 4055 (fyuer D).

fissh, fysssh (A.S. físc, m.), (i.) nom., 5427. (ii.) nom., 2877 ; nom., f. herbe, 2852.

eflod (A.S. flód, m., n.), on a flod(e), 3482 f (flood D) ( : as much good); fro ... flood of, 4442 (floode B, flod C, feende † D).

folk, see § 43.

forelong (A.S. furlong, -lang, n.), a f. wey, 5899 (forlonge B, furlong CD).

foul(e) (A.S. fugol, m.), nom., foule, 6788 A (fowl B, foul C‡).

fox (A.S. fox, m.), fox that ye ben, 4407 (for that † C).

frend (A.S. féond, m.), (i.) nom., 1348 (-e B), 2488, etc.; voc., 584 (-e B), 610, etc.; acc., 627 (-é B), 1052, etc.; of (= gen.), 98. (ii.) nom., 548 (-e B); voc., 2444 (-e B), etc.; acc., 550 (frende B); for, 1497 (-e- B); of (= by), 3638 (-e B).—voc., frende, 602 AB (-d C), 5294 AB (-d C).

frost (A.S. forst, m.), (ii.) nom., 524 (frost B), f. hym, 6898.

gost (A.S. gest, giest, gyst, m.), nom., 2196 f BCDG (geste A) (: it thought here herte brest AC, breste BG, as thogh her hert to-brest D : ye yow lest CG, leste AB, list D). The collation of Cp. and John's records no variations from A in these three lines.

gilt, gylt (A.S. gylt, m.), (i.) withouten, 2365 (-é B); in, 4483; of, 4019 (-é B); for, 8138. (ii.) nom., 7620 (-é B); yn, 1329; for, 7459 (-é B); nom., g. hath, 7750. [Cf. giltles, gilteles, §§ 49, n. 5, and 85.]

gnát (A.S. gnæt, m.), nom., 5257 (gnatte C).

god (A.S. god, m., n.), (i.) nom., 195, 4607, etc.; voc., 400, etc.; acc., 40; to, 32; by, 1200 (be † iouys C), 1222 (by g. he C); of (= gen.),

1 A happens to read field. 2 In C dele (al).
Observations on the Language

§ 18.

69, 612, 1310, etc.; dat., I thankè god, 1240. (ii.) nom., 206, etc.;
voc., 2145 (B †), etc.; to, 421, 925; by, 2043, 2322, 2962, 3214;
of (=gen.), 571, 2402; to g. haue, 1667; to g. hope, 2357; I
thankè it g., 1836.
gold (A.S. gold, n.), (i.) of, 6061, 7175; with, 6039; for, 7249 A. (ii.)
of, 6675; for, 3242, 7249 B; vpon a quysshon gold y-bete, 2314.—
golde, nom., 6185 ARD (gold. acc. † C).
gospel (A.S. godspell, n.), nom., 7628.
gost (A.S. gást, m.), (i.) nom., 2462 (C †), 3306 (C †), 4849, 5572,
5883 (-e B), 8171; voc., 4964; acc., 1616, 5447, 7733. (ii.) with,
7884. [Var. B goost.]

Grek (A.S. Gréc, Crée), 1068.
gres (A.S. græs, W.S. gærs, n.), (ii.), on, 1600 (gras D).
harm (A.S. hearm m.), (i.) nom., 75 (-e B), 3755, 4006, 5505, 7588
(-e B); acc., 839 (-e B)¹, 2734 f, 3647 (-e B); for, 1539 (-e B),
3167 (-e B), 4717 (-e B); with, 1925 (-e B, C †); by, 3171 BC
(om. † A). (ii.) nom., 1874, etc.; acc., 347 (-e B, h. † by C), etc.; to,
1661 (-e B),² 2233; for . . . h. he, 4000.—harmè, nom., 333 (harm
C); voc., 411 (harm C); acc., 3560 (harm C); yn, 7739 (in(to)
harm C); harmè, nom., 409 (harm C).

hat (A.S. hæt(t), m.), nom., 3162 f (hatte B) (: what : that).

hauk (A.S. hafoc, m.), (i.) nom., 671. (ii.) with h., 6128 (-e B).—gos-
hauk, (i.) nom., 5075 Cc.—sparhauk hath, nom., 4034 (sper-
hauk C).

hed (A.S. héafod, n.), (i.) nom., 1929 f (-e D); acc., 1492 f (hede D),
1742 (-e † D), 1774, 2923 f (-e D), 3799 f AB, 3897 (A †), 3921 f
(-e D), 4906 (-e D), 7290 f (with . . . † hed C); at, 2781 f (-e D);
to, 5821 f (-e D); by, 530 A † C †, 1255 † D, 5255 (hod C); in,
5754; of, 5390; saue, 1710. (ii.) nom., 6357; acc., 1625, 1952
(-e D); out of, 3736 (heúd C, hede † gone D); on, 6646 (in his
hed he † D); acc., hed he, 7840. hede, acc., 4415 f (hed BCD);
by hère beddes hede, 3796 f (hed B).

Rhyme words.—ded adj. sg. (1492, 1929, 2781, 2923, [3796 D (dede)], 3921,
4415, 5821), goodlyhed (1929), hed, hede head (3796, 3799), red n. (2781,
5821), red adj. (2923, 3796, 3799, 4415, 7290). [Var. heued, heuyd,
heúd C 1710, 1952, 3736, 5821 f, 5390, 5754, 6646; hede, heede D.]

heer (A.S. hér, hér, n.), (i.) acc., 5398 (here B, her CD). [here in
5478 f B, 7173 C, 7362 D, is an error for hers, pl.]
helm (A.S. helm, m.), (i.) nom., 1723 (-e B); vpon, 8125 (in B
supply [to]). (ii.) acc., 6670 (-e B).

¹ In C supply [cruel].
² In C supply [am].
hil, hill (A.S. hyll, m.), (i.) to, 6973 (C?); i[n] hil Parnaso, 4652. (ii.) nom., 943 (hille B).

hod, hood (A.S. hóld, m.), by, 2266 f (-e B, hond † C) (: good n. : stood ind. 3. sg), 5255 † C, 7514 f (-e BD), (: good n.); acc., 2039 (-e B); in, 2195.

hom (A.S. hám, m.), (i.) as limit of motion, as in A.S. (= domum), 1995 † C, 3068, 3486, 4423 (-e D), 4871 AB, 5392, etc.; at hom, 4755 (-e B); homward, 3463 (hom C). (ii.) = domum, 6848, etc.; home, 126 A (hoom B, hom C), home he, 1681 AB (hom C).

hook (A.S. hóc, m.), (ii.) acc., 7140.

horn (A.S. horn, m.), (ii.) acc., 1727 (hed † C).

hound (A.S. hund, m.), (i.) acc., 3606 (-e B). (ii.) with, 6428 † C. (Cf. § 15, n. 3, p. 51.)

hous, hows (A.S. hús, n.), (i.) nom., 3477; acc., 1058 (-e B), etc.; in, 3042, 6938 f (place † B) (: melodious); out of, 1522 (-e B); at, 3037; to, 3356, 6891 (C †). (ii.) voc., 6904; acc., 2871; in, 1766, 3506; to, 2546 (-e B; C †), 2625; vnto, 2599 (-e B); in the h. he, 5485.

ieren (A.S. frén, n.), acc., felt iren hot, 2361 (the thorn † C).

knyf (A.S. cníff, m.), with this k., 1410.

knyght (A.S. cníht, m.), (i.) nom., 165 f, 1074 f, 1262 f, 1416 f, 3280 f (-e B), 3757 f, 4329 f, 4490 f, 5013, 5231 f, 5279 f (kynght A), etc.; voc., 3018 f (-e B), 3838 f, 4151 (-e B, om. † C), 6199 f; acc., 979, 1956 f, 2679 (A †), 5376 f C (: syst n.), 6147 f; by, 225 f; vpon, 1846; lyk, 1716 f, 2348 f (-e B); to, 3623 f (-e B), 7200 f (-e B), 6696 f. (ii.) nom., 191; of (= gen.), 1537 f, 7228 f (-e B), 8115 f (-e B); fro, 5408 f, 6696 f; knyghte, nom., 3825 f AB (-t C).

kok (A.S. coc(c), m.), nom., 4257 (C †); pekok, acc., 210 (pakoc B).

kyn (A.S. cyn(n), n.), (ii.) nom., 5287, 5993; acc., 6183.

kyng (A.S. cyning, cyng, m.), (i.) nom., 1186 (-e B), 5539 (-e B), 7297; voc., 4856 (-e B); acc., 4800 (-e B), etc.; to, 5308 (-e B); with, 6647 (-e B), 6794 (-e B); of, 4786 (-e B). (ii.) acc., 4938; to, 3224 (-e B); with, 3434 (-e B). of the kyng, 664 AB (of [the] kyng C).

laughter (A.S. hlecahtor, m.), for l. wende, 2254 (-ter BC, -tir D); nom., laughtre men, 5528 (-ter CD).

lef (A.S. léaf, n.), (i.) nom., 4042 (leef B). (ii.) yn, 7796 (leefe B).

light, lyght (A.S. leocht, n.), (i.) nom., 3978 (C?), 6906 f; acc., 4298, 4543, 7001 f (-e B); wo worth . . . l., 5409 f (nyzt † C). (ii.) nom., 3979; voc., 2843; acc., 2405 (lettre † C), 3821, cf. 4962 †
Observations on the Language

§ 18.

C; of, 1994; acc., 1. here (hic), 4303 (lyth C). [Cf. lyghtles, § 49, n. 5.]

lond (A.S. land, lond, n.), yn some l., 1123 (-é B).
lord (A.S. hláford, m.), (i.) nom., 1415, 1524; voc. and excl., 330 (-é B), 350 (now t C), 422, 528, 2924, 6945 (-é C), etc.; with, 1791; by, 2138 BC. (ii.) nom., 65, 2488; voc. and excl., 2406 t C, 2444 (-é B), 6952 (om. t B); acc., 903 (-é B; C t). lorde, voc., 6962 ABD (lord C).

loss(e) (A.S. los, n., L. to lose, P. Pl. e los, loos), nom., -e, 4689 (los B, loos D); -e ne, 4751 (los B, lossé t me D).
lust (A.S. lust, m.), (i.) nom., 4388 (lest D t), 6235, 7618 (C t; -é B, listé D), 8194 (-é B, list D); acc., 1915 (lyf D), 4741 (-é B, nom. lust D), 5751 (-é B, wil C), 8187 A (-é B); ayens, 1561 (liste B, lyst D), 2142 (list D); for, 443 (loué C, list D); of (= gen.), 1929 (luf A, lyst and D); with, 7682; yu, 326; to, 2219. (ii.) acc., 2083 (-é B, list D), 3118 (-é B, lyst D), 4532 (-é B); of, 6389; at, 407; yu, 4661 (-é B, lyst D), 5155 (-é B, loué C); acc., 1. his, 2151 (list D), 4392 (list D).
llest, lyst (cf. A.S. lystan),—lest, nom., 1872 f (-é B) (: prest pred. adj. pl.). lyst, voc., 4145 f (liste B, lust C, truste t D) (: trist n.); yu, 330 f (leste B, rest C; lyst D) (: best adv.).

man (A.S. man, m.) 232 f, 1633 f, 3805 f, etc., etc.
martir (A.S. martyr, m.; also, martyre), nom., 5285 (-tyr BC).
mouth (A.S. muf, m.), (ii.) acc., m. he, 812 BC (m. yet t A), 5823 (-é B, mout C).

net (A.S. net(t), n.), of, 4575 f (nette C); withoute, 1668 f, 6033 (C t); into, 7138. (Rhyme-words all p.p.,—set, yset, yknet, imet.) noon, non(e), noon(e) (A.S. nón, m.), (i.) nom., noone, 7477 (non C); after noone, 2270 (-n BC); after noon, 7493 (and at t after none D); byfor noon, 7485 (-é D). (ii.) a-twixen noon, 6835 (-é BCD).
ordal (A.S. ordál, ordél, n.), (ii.) by, 3888 (ordel C, ordinal t D).

oth (A.S. á, m.), acc., 3953 f (ath B); by, 3888 f (oouth B).
path (A.S. pæð, m.), (ii.) acc., 1122; gon som by-path, 4547.
poart (A.S. port, m., cf. O. Fr. port), to good port hastow rowed, 962 l.
post (A.S. post, m.), (ii.) nom., 993.
pyk (A.S. pie, m. (?), cf. Fr. pique), acc., 2126 f (pik C).

1 In ABD read faste for fast.
§ 18. of Chaucer's Troilus.

quam (A.S. cwæalm, cwalm, m.), (ii.) nom., 6745 (-e C).
red, reed (A.S. rød, réd, m.), (i.) nom., 5160 f (-e BD), 6791 (counsell ‡ D); acc. 661 (-e BD), 2783 f (-e D), 5822 f (-e BD), 6075 (-e BD), 6690 C (rede ABD); to, 2624 (-e BD); by, 2780 (-e BD). (ii.) nom., 1474 (-e BD), 1507 AC (-e B), 7655 (-e B, counsell ‡ is D); of, 2439 (-e BD); withouten, 6385 (-e D). [rede once in A, 6690.]

Rhyme words.—ded mortuis (2783, 5160), she lay as for ded (5822), at his beddes hed (2783), to here hed (5822).
res (A.S. rés, m.), yn a r., 5012 (rees B).
reyn, rayn (A.S. regn, rón, m.), (i.) nom., 3468 (-e B), 3498 f (-e B) (: agayn : fayn), 4402 (in B supply [me]); in, 3630 f (: to seyn : certeyn). (ii.) of, 3470.
right, ryght (A.S. riht, n.), (i.) nom., 591, 3840 f (perh. adj.); acc., 4124 f, 5177 f; by r., 3758, 5105 f (thour r. C); of r., 3826, 4637 f, 5233 f (-e B, on rygt C), 7708 f. (ii.) by r., 1848, 5058.—vnright, acc., 1538 f, 5212 f.
ryng (A.S. hring, m.), (i.) nom., 3732 (-e B), 5531 f (-e B, ryngis ‡ C); voc., 6912 (-e B, r. of C); acc., 3735 C (-e B, ryng I A); yn, 1670 (-e B).—ryng(e), acc., 3727 f AB (ryng C) (: thing acc.).
seed (A.S. séad, n.), nom., 385 C (sede BD, om. ‡ A).
shap (A.S. ge-sceap, n.), (ii.) acc., 1747 (shappe B, in A supply [his]), 6836 (shap hire BC)
sheild (A.S. scield, scyld, sceld, m.), (i.) nom., 1286 (sheeld and B, scild & C), 1617 (-e B, scild C), 1725 (-e B, sheild C), 3322 (shield B, scild C); acc., 6671 (-e B, child C); vnder sheild, 2412 f (-e B, scild C) (: byheld pret. ind. 3. sg. : held pret. ind. 3 sg.)
ship (A.S. scip, n.), (ii.) acc., 7007 (-e D).
shour (A.S. scúr, m.), (i.) in, 4709 (-e B). (ii.) Doun fille as shour in aperiiH (aperil B) swythe, 5413 (Out ran as schour of apriile ful swythe C).
slep, sleep (A.S. slép, m.), (i.) nom., 4380 (-e C); acc., 484 f (: keep n.), 7810 (-e B, C ‡); of (=concerning), 4250 f (shep ‡ A, on slepe C) (: kepe n.); of (=out of), 6883 (-e B). (ii.) in, 6724 (-e B), 8078 (-e B); yn his s. hym, 7597 (-e B); out of his s. he, 7606 (-e B); nom., s. hire, 2009 (-e B).
song (A.S. sang, song, m.), (i.) nom., 5828 (-e B, song is C); acc., 7008 (-e B); of, 393 (-e B), 1961 (-e B); in, 397 (-e B), 4656 f

1 red[?] I shal A (emend to, red I sholde).
2 Supply [this] in C.
Observations on the Language

§ 18.

(e B) ; on, 1910 (e B, lay C) ; by, 1968 f (-e BC). (ii.) nom.,
7738; acc., 4666, 6996; on, 389 (e B); in, 6095 (e B).
sor (A.S. sár, n., f.), (i.) to his s., 5606 (soor B).
spir (A.S. spír, inc. gen.), an ok cometh of a litel spir, 2420 f (e BCD)
(: fyr : desir n.).
ston (A.S. stán, m.), (i.) 1685 f (-e B), 2579 f (stoone B), 3541 (e B),
5016 f (-e B); acc., 3733 f (stoone B); on, 2313 f (-e B); of, 2956
(e B); in (= into), 5129 f (stoone B, into a ston C). (ii.) nom.,
1928 (A f), 8092 (-e B).
strang (A.S. stren, m.), (ii.) acc., 2118 (-e B).
sward (A.S. swearm, m.), (ii.) nom., 1278.
swerd (A.S. sweord, n.), (i.) acc., 5433 (e B), 5877 (-e B), 6670 ; with
this ... s., 5902 (-e B). (ii.) acc., 4415, 5886 (-e B; C f); with
s., 5873.
thank (A.S. panc, pone, m.), (i.) acc., 803, 1008 (-e B), 1100 (-e B).
(ii.) acc., 3485, etc.; t. him, 1461 (-e B).—vntthânk, (ii.) acc., 7062
(-thonke B).
theif (A.S. þéof, m.), (i.) voc., 870 (theef B, if t C). (ii.) voc., 3940.
thing, thyng (A.S. þýng, n.), (i.) nom., 174, 217 (e B, thyngys C), 254
(e B), 5533 f (-e B), 5735 f (-e B), etc.; acc., 1229 (e B), 3725 f
(-e B), etc.; on, 5247 (e B); in, 5070 (e B); to, 5684 (e B);
fro, 748 (e B, for t th. C); aycyns, 2499 (e B); of, 511, 673
(thy(i)ngë B), etc.; any thyng, any thing, adv'l., 848 (e B), 3474 (e
B).—(ii.) nom., 401 (e B), 5358 f (-es B), etc.; acc., 1719 (e B); in,
1800 (e B); on, 2860 (e B); of, 2960; lyk, 103 (e B); for that
thyng hym, 1805.—no thing, no thyng, (i.) nom., 2135; acc., 1460
(e B), etc.; for, 7057 (-e B); with, 2380 (-e B); of, 797 (-e B),
etc.; adv'l., 137 (-e B), etc. (ii.) nom., 339 (e B), etc.; acc., 1558
(-e B), etc.; in, 5827 (-e B); no manerne thyng, adv'l., 5939 (-e B).
thinge, acc., 2791 A (thyngë B, thyng C).
thonder, thondre (A.S. þunor, m., L. þunre), of thondre, 3504 f
(thonder B, thundyr C, thunre D) (: a-sonder : yonder); with
thonder dynt, 7868 (-dir C, thunder D); with thonder, 2230 f (-dir
C, -re D) (: wonder : yonder); acc., the thonder rynghe, 1318
(thundir D, thondyr (to) rynghe C).
thorn (A.S. þorn, m.), acc., 2357 f (-e BC), 3946 f (-e B).
thought (A.S. ge-þóht, m.), (i.) nom., 442 f, 1853, 5643 (-e B) (cf.
1856, 1891); acc., 3981 f, 4951 f, 5727 f, 7529 f, 7644 ; for ... th.,
579 f; yn th., 1779 (in hire th. argue BC); yn here th., 1688 f,
6465 f (-e B); in his th., 4383; out of my th., 4342 f; of here ...
th., 1737; of this th., 1830 (e B); with that th., 1741. (ii.) nom., 6316 † C; acc., 5641; with, 7682; in his th. he, 3285; withinne hire th. his, 1745; with that th. he, 827; with . . . th. hire, 1894.
threth (A.S. þreth, m.), acc., 439 (thralle B).
threed, threel (A.S. þréod, þród, m.), (ii.) acc., 6208, 6370; with, 7175 (e B).
top (A.S. top(p), m.), acc., 5658.
tymber (A.S. timber, n.), (ii.) nom., 3372 (-yr B, -ir C, -re D).
vers (A.S., fers, n., cf. O.F. vers), next this this th. he, 399.
wale (A.S. weal(l), wale(l), m.), (i.) nom., 3321 f (: in al); in, 1132 f (walle B) (: yu al : shal 3 sg. ind.). (ii.) nom., 1239; to . . . w. his, 4906 (walle B); ouer . . . w. he, 7508 (walle B, waft † his C).

[Var. C waft.]

twater, watre (A.S. wæter, n.), (i.) to watre, 2957 (e B, -yr C);
withoute water, 5427 (-yr C).
weder (A.S. weder, n.), (i.) nom., 1087, 3499 (-ir C). (ii.) nom., 3512 (-ir C).
werek (A.S. weorc, n.), (i.) acc., 1059, 8186; for, 2078, 4828 (-e B);
of, 1101, 8021 (-e B); on (vpon BC), 3539; to, 3577. (ii.) acc., 265, 3313, 5514 (wec † A); of . . . w. he, 3544.—workę, acc., 2045 AB (werkę C).
wex (A.S. wæx, weahs, n.), vpon, 2173.
wheston (A.S. hwetstán, m.), (ii.) nom., 631 (weston C). (Cf. ston.)
whiel (A.S. hwéol, n.). (i.) nom., 848 (whelys † C); on, 4673; vpon the w., 4985 f (: of stel); of (=gen.), 839. (ii.) from, 4668. [Var. C whel.]
wimpil (A.S. wimpel, inc. gen.), acc. wimpil and, 1195 C (read barbe).
wr (A.S. wír, m.), by, 4478 f (wyr B) (: fr iymís : desir n.).
wit, wyt (A.S. gewit(b), u.), (i.) nom., 5553 (C ?), 5599, 6273 f, etc.;
acc., 241 f (witte B), 1358 (witte B), 3839 f (witte B, wite C), 5766 f, etc.;
out of, 108, 4892, 5010; emforth, 1328 f, 2082 f (euene with my w. C);
with, 2757; to, 4153 (om. † C); by, 7121 f (: yit : it).
(ii.) nom., 1217 (B †), etc.; acc., 7706; ym, 989; of, 1928 (A †,
wight C), 3058; out of, 7625; with, 2977 (B †), 3007, 3085 C,
6149, 8145; thurgh, 2926 (C †).

wonder (A.S. wundor, u.), (i.) nom., 403 (-yr C), 2228 f (-ir C) (: with thonder : yonder), 5250 (yr C), 5762 (-ir C); acc., 7344 f (-ir C, wonnder B) (: asonder).
(ii.) nom., 955 (-yr C), 959 (-yr C), 1105, 1828 (-ir C), 1834 (-ir C) (cf. 4920, 6425, 6484). (Cf. the adverbial and adjectival uses of wonder, § 85, note 2.)
Observations on the Language

word (A.S. word, n.), (i.) nom., 1102 (-e B), etc.; acc, 397, etc.; of, 820 (-e B); with, 875 (-e B), 1176 (-e B), 1293 (-e B), 1961 (-e B), 2777 (-e B), 3000, 3752 (-e B); without w., 3308\(^1\); at, 4150 (-e B). (ii.) nom., 2896 (-e B); acc., 737, 2113 (-e B), etc.; word by word, 2262 (C†); by, 3273 (by w. ne † C); without w., 5362 (-e B; C †); with that w. he, 204 (-e B), 869 (-e B), 1349, 3583, 3806 (-e B), 3820; with that w. here (poss. sg.), 1335; without w. he, 6900; word and ende, 2580, 3544 (-e B).—acc., by-word here (hic), 5431 (-e B).

wrong (A.S. wrang, see Kluge in Paul’s Grundriss, I, 787), (i.) acc., 2557 (-e B), 3850 (-e B). (ii.) nom., 4017 (-e B); acc., 2764; in w., 594 (-e B); acc., wrongē † to D (-ës AB).

wyf (A.S. wif, n.), (i.) voc., 2948 f (lyf), 4138 f (al my lyfe A, lyue BC); from 6701 f (lif : stryf). (ii.) nom., 678, 6134 (-e B).

wyn (A.S. wfn, n.), acc., (i.) 7215, (ii.) 3513.

wynd (A.S. wind, m.), (i.) 3585 (-e B), 7036 (-e B); acc., 7041 (-e B); with w., 1851 (-e B); in the w., 3368 f (-e BC) (blwend pred. adj. sg.); o wynd o wynd, 1087 (-e . . . -e B). (ii.) thorough, 6806 (-e B); with w., 7004 (-e B); wynde, nom., 2473 AB (wynd C).

wynter (A.S. winter, m.), (i.) nom., 1137; in, 3194 (-ir C), 4887 (-yr C); after, 3904 (-yr C); yn wynter mone, 524 (-yr C).

yerd (A.S. geard, m.), nom., 3erd, 1905 D (yerde B, gardeyn (slurred † A, 3erd [was] C).

yuël (A.S. yfel, n.), (i.) acc., 1666 (euel B, euyl C, evil D), 4006 (euel B, euyl C); for, 5268 (euel B, grif † C); an yuyl that ye ne take, 7988 (an euyl 3e B, on euyl 3e C, on yuell that D).\(^2\) (ii.) nom., 782 (euyl C); acc., iuyl and, 6780 C (harm AB, harme D).

The five Anglo-Saxon kinship nouns fæder, módor, brōsor, sveostor, dohtor (r-stems):—

fæder, (i.) 5994 (faddlyr † C, fadir D †), 6043 (-ir D, -ir I C), 7499 (-yr C); cf. 121, 4756, 4938, 5329. (ii.) cf. 4687, 5217, 5220.

módor, (i.) 5424 AB (-ir D), 7589 (-ir C), 8232; cf. 5869. (ii.) cf. 1135, 4097.

brother, (i.) 653 (-er(e) D), 3094 f (-ir D), 6670, 6884; cf. 51, 1242, 2131, 2444, 2481, 2483, 2496, 2535 f, 2705 f (-er(e) D), 2711, 5067 f, 5120 f, 5203, 5270 f, 6497, 7869 f. (ii.) brother || I, 8094 A (-er deere BD); brother holdere, 1729.

\(^1\) In B insert [it].

\(^2\) In B read ne for it.
suster, (i.) 6253 (systyr C), 7813 (systyr he † C); cf. 1154, 2778, 5510. (ii.) cf. 860, 2309, 2644.

doughter, douhter, (i.) 6200 (doujtyr C), 7473 (doujtyr C); cf. 94, 2845, 4649, 4754, 5325. (ii.) cf. 664.

§ 19. The following nouns of Germanic origin, which have no substantives to represent them in Anglo-Saxon, end in the Troilus in a consonant.

For erroneous -e (not sounded), see fold(e) lok, skil.

abod (cf. A.S. ábidan), nom., 7670 (abood B; C †).

anger, angre (O.N. angr, m.), with an angre don, 563 (-yr C, -re to D)¹; after anger game, 6225 (-ir C); for angre of, 7898 (-ir CD).

bark, see § 18.

bost (etym. dub.), for b., 3090 f (-e B) (: wost seis); thorough, 3140 f (-d CD) (: told : cold).

cast (cf. O.N. kasta vb., kǫstr, m.), (ii.) fro, 1953 (-e B).

cros (O.N. kross, m.; A.S. Normannes cros, Birch, Cart. Sax., III, 367, see Skeat, Trans. Philol. Soc. for 1888-90, p. 286) is of Romance origin, but its precise history is doubtful, see p. 92.

flat (cf. O.N. flatr, adj.), of, 5589 B (A † C †).

fold(e) (cf. O.N. faldr, m., O.H.G. falt, m.), in many fold(e), 1782 f (-d CD) (: told p.p. : cold).

Note.—For fold (A.S. -feald) in the adverbial phrase a thousand fold, see (i.) 2088, 2871, 3094, 3416 (-e † dye B), 4382, 4526 (-e B); (ii.) 1227 (-e B); a th. f. his, 546 (-e B); a thousand foldę more, 819 (-d C).

hap (O.N. happ, n.), nom., 2781; acc., 2539; with, 4088 (B †).—vnhap, acc., 552.

keep (cf. A.S. cépan), acc., 486 f (-e B) (: sleep); kep(e), acc., 4252 f (kep BC) (: of sleep).

lak (O.N. lakr, adj.), (i.) nom., 2263 (lakke B). (ii.) nom., 2044 CD (lat † A, lokke † B)²; 7177 (lakke BD); for, 1994 (lakke B), 2365 CD.

lasch (cf. Dutch lasch), acc., 1. haue, 220 (lasche C).³

lok, look (cf. A.S. lócian), (i.) nom., 2352, etc.; acc., 2344, 7292 f (-e B), etc.; with, 307 (-e B), 325 (-e B), 538 (-e B), etc. (ii.) acc., 291 (-e B), etc.; of, 295 (-e B); with al his l., 229.—of hire lok(e), 364 AB (lok C).

skil (O.N. skil, n.), nom., it skil(e) is, 3488 (skyl BC, skil hit D), skyl yyys, 1450 (-e D).

¹ In A supply [to]. ² Verse too long in C. ³ In C supply [he].

smert (cf. A.S. smeortan; Dutch smart, O.H.G. smerzo, m., smerza, f.), (i.) nom., 5507 (-e D); for s., 5035 (-e BD). (ii.) on s., 5128 (e B, smerthe D).—smert (-e D), 6780, is perhaps a verb (= smerteth).

[On the supposed sbst. smerte, see § 67, s. v. smerte, adj. pl.]

stert (cf. Dutch storten; cf. A.S. steort tail), (i.) with, 6617 (-e B).

strok (cf. A.S. strican), acc., 2467 f (-e B) (: ok); with s., 5173 (strook(e) B).

sweigh (= impetus; cf. O.N. sveigr, m.), nom., 2468 (swough B, swey C, sweyf D).

swough (= swoon; cf. A.S. sw6gan), of (= out of), 3962 (swou^ C, swoun D), 5874 (swow C, swogh D).

syk (cf. A.S. afcan), with, 1230 (-(e) D), 1548 (sike t seide B, syk(e) she D), 3643 (-e B), 3965 (swan B), 4335, 6189. [Var. B syhg; BC sik; D sike, si3, sigh.]

walk (cf. A.S. wealcan), in his w., 190 (C?).

Note 1.—For thryft (O.N. brjft, f.) and von (O.N. vdn, f.), see §11; for shyre, styre, see §19, n.

Note 2.—For kankerdort, of very doubtful etymology, see 2837 f (cankedort C, kankerdorte D).

§ 20. In Romance nouns final -e (-e mute) is usually retained, both in writing and in sound, except for the regular elision. But there are a good many exceptions, in some of which the -e is preserved in writing but loses its value as a syllable, in others of which the -e is neither written nor pronounced. (Cf. Child, §19; ten Brink, §§ 222, 223.)


§ 21. Miscellaneous Romance nouns in -e (-e mute) which sometimes or always retain -e in the Troilus.

This list contains the following words: age, Ariëte, assège, batayle (bâtayle), baude, bawme, bille, blame, calle, cause, caue, charge, charme, chaunge, cheyne, clause, compleynte (còmpleynt[e]), constreyncte (cònstréynt[e]), cope, corâge (côrage), corde, daumande, descênte, diseze, doute, egle, ensâemple, entente, eschaunge, ese, executrice, face, faile,
fame, fate, fayre, feste, flaumbe, force (fors), fortune (-e; fortune, -e), frape, garde, gaude, gemme, geste (gest[e]), grace (grace), gyle, gyse, herbe, houre, infortune, impossible, inke, ire, iape, ioye (ioye ×), lesse, ligne, ma dame, martire, mayle, midécyne, meruaile, messiże, meue (mewe), moble, move, muse, mysörperde, nece (nece), note, noyse, orisonte, penne, peple, persone (pérsone his), peyne, place, planète, pleynye, pompe, potente, pourete, prene, prolôge, prouerbe, pursuyte (‐), quiete (quiete), rage, rascaülle, regne, rente, reprière, requête (‐t), regne, roche, route, ruynë, sauuardé, sege, signe, sire, space, steeve (stewe), table, tente, terme, title, trone, vncele, vniverse, vrne, vède, vermïne, verre, veyne, vîje (viage), visiże, ymage.

Note 1. The Romance words in this list are all French except Ariète (Ital. ariete) 1 and orisonte (Ital. orizzonte). Poverté (O. Fr. poverté), and stewe (O. Fr. stewe) exhibit peculiarities of formation. Potente has no direct French etymon (cf. O. Fr. potence), and may be imitated from Latin. The four words fate (Lat. fatum), midécyne (Lat. medicina, cf. Fr. médecine), quiete (Lat. quietem, or, perhaps, Ital. quiete) 1, vniverse (Lat. universum; cf. Fr. univers), vrne (Lat. urna; see p. 74, footnote 1), are included in this section for convenience. For chiménay[e], see § 33, note.

Note 2. Ten Brink’s rule, “Nach tonloser Silbe verliert -e regelmässig seinen Silbenwert” (§ 223), is illustrated by fortune, pursuyte. In all other cases in point the word that follows begins with a vowel or a weak h, except those in § 22.

Note 3. Other instances of apocope may be seen in grace, ioye ×, nece, sire. For irresponsibly omitted -e’s (scribes’ errors), see especially entente, geste, requête.

Note 4. Eyle, ensample, impossible, moble, peple, table, title, vncele illustrate the treatment of consonant + le. But cf. marbel (O. Fr. marble, marbre), 700 (infra), werbal (infra).

Note 5. Werre bellum, might fairly have been included in § 21; but it seemed better, on the whole, to give it a place in § 15.

bille (Anglo-Norm. bille, L. Lat. billa), 2215 f ABC (:(stonde stille). blame, 1100 f (:(lame pred. adj.), 3107 f (:(name); -e, 5213, 5256, 7431; -e haue, 1295 (‐e † haue BD 3). calle, 3617 f (caH D) (:(alle pl.: calle inf.). cause, 854, 1812 f (:(clause), 2492, 2524, 2718, 2771 (D †), 3607,

1 Cf. ten Brink, § 222 Anm., who is inclined to regard Ariete and quiete as “romanisirende Abklatsche lateinischer Wörter.” He says nothing about orisonte.
2 AD defective. Supply [that].
3 Read in BD, blame haue I [myn] vncele.
3637, 3993, 4004, 4421, 4681, 5379, 75491, 5677, 5889 (e hire BD), 5932, 6313, 6443 (es D), 7239, 7391 (is wich C), 7593, 7665 f (clause), 7668, 7757 C (e AD); cause, 20 (D), 579, 670, 1568, 1580, 1917, 2187, 2848, 2872, 3206, 3378, 3462 CD, 3828, 3833, 3874, 3987, 4761, 4803, 5350, 5589 (A; e to C), 5672, 5674 (e of [the] D), 5703, 5724, 6003, 6316 (thougt C), 6335, 6490 ([the] cause D; B), 6769, 6783, 7017 (e is D), 7592 (C; e of D), 7705 (D), 7757 (e doth C), 8055.— e (before h), (he) 4787, 4885, 6890, 7578 (e of C, e he? D); (haue) 7619; (hadde) 4069.— O cause of wo that cause hast (hath C) ben of blysse, 6913. [Cf. causeles, § 85.]

cauc, 1202 f (saue subj. 3 sg.: rau e 2 pl.).
charge, 2079, 4096 f B, 4842 e, 651 (char C); e he, 444.
charme, 2399 [e C]; e, 2665 (charm C).
chaung, 1107 f (straunche), 7997 f (straunche) (chung C: strong);
e, 5327 (g C for C). [Cf. eschaunges.]
cheyne (O. Fr. chaunche), 509 f (cheyn D): pleyne inf.: peye n., 1703 f (tweyne: to seyne).
clause, 1813 f (cause), 7664 f (cause).
compleynte (O. Fr. complainte, -nt), 541 f (D): dreynyte pret. ind. 3 sg.: pleynte), 5404 f (constreynte); e, 5446 (-t CD), 5467 (pleynt C, compleynyte D); compleynyte hym, 2668 (-e B); côleynyte of, 655. [Cf. pleynte.]
constreynte, 5403 f (compleynte); côteynyte and, 1861 (D; e B, constant C).
cope, 3566 f (Europé).
corage, 3739 f (rage n.), 7188 f (age); côteynge, 564 (courage wake D), 5281 (courage B).
corde, 6806 f (record inf.: accorde inf.).
demaunde, 5957 f (comauande pres. pl.), 6356 f (recomauande inf.);
e he 7222 (e he D).
desente, 319 f (dissent D) (wente ii: mente pret. 3 sg.).
disease, dishese, 1232 f, 2445, 3726 f, 4118 f, 4751 f, 5759 f; e, 2072, 3885, 4658, 6472 (desese A, de-sese C, di[s]ease D), 7783 (pl. D). Rhyme words.—dissplese inf. (1232), plese inf. (3726, 4118, 4751, 5759), apese inf. (3726), ese n. (4118, 4751, 5759). [Var. D dissese, disease.]

1 AB defective.
2 Supply [for] in D.
3 "The cause of his comyng (-ynge DG) thus answer(e)de." The choice lies between cause and comyng. The collection of Cp. and John's MS. notes no variants.
4 Supply [in] in C.
5 Supply [my] in A.
6 Supply [that] in AD.
7 Supply [that] in D.
of Chaucer’s Troilus.

doute, 152 f (-t D), 1820 f ‡ C (-t ‡ D), 2477 f (-t D), 5066 f, 5939 f, 6233 f (dought D), 6431 f, 7658 f, 7816 f, 7881 f, 8007 f; -e, 1451 (-t D), 3360. [Cf. douteles, § 85.]

Rhyme words.— aboute (152, 1820 CD, 2477, 5066, 5939, 6233, 7658, 7816, 8007), outhe (8431), route (5066, 6431), deuonte (152), tuskes stoute (7816).

egle, 2011 (egele C), 4338 (egele C, egle ‡ D).

ensample, trisyll. bef. csts., 232 (-saumple BCD), 995 (-saumple B, on-saumpele C).—ensample, 3714 (-sampele by C), 1 4863 (-sampele C), 7953 (-sampele C). [Var. B ensample.]

entente (O. Fr. entente), 61 f, 738 f, 928 f, 1448 f, 1609 f, 1913 f, 1963 f, 2008 f, 2145 f, 2304 f (-t B), 2351 f, 2645 f (-t B), 2808 f, 2967 f, 3395 f, 4030 f, 4081 f, 4424 f, 4835 f, 5297 f, 5515 ‡ f, 5882 f, 6187 f, 6513 f, 7230 f, 7473 f, 7668 f, 8057 f. [In the above list D has entent throughout (intent, 61), and C has entent except in 61 (where a part of the MS. is cut out) and in 1448, 1963, 3395, 4081, 4835, 5297 (in which lines it has entente.)]—entente (bef. est.), 4008 ([e] C, -t ‡ is D) 3; entent[e] (bef. est.), 4071 AC (-e B, entent ‡ clene D).—entente, 5319 (-t BCD) 4; entent (bef. vowels), 2378 (-e B), 7993 (-e B, centence is ‡ C) 5; entent he, 7139 (-e B).—entente, 2750 f ACD (-e B) (: went ierunt), 6078 f ABCD (: mente pret. ind. 3 sg. : wente iit).

Rhyme words.—wente uit (2808, 3395, 4424, 5882, 6078, 7473, 7668), wente, went ierunt (61, 2750), wente pret. subj. 3 sg (4835), stente, stynete pret. ind. 3 sg (738, 1963, 4081), stente pret. ind. 3 pl. (61), repente pres. ind. 1 sg (928, 1609), consente pres. ind. 1 sg (928), inf. (2531), mente pret. ind. 1, 3 sg (1448, 2304, 2645, 2967, 4030, 6078, 7230, 2351), 3 pl. (8057), 3 pl. (4835), rente n. (1913), sente misit (1913, 5515, 7473), pret. subj. 3 sg (2531), hente pret. ind. 3 sg (2008, 4030), assente pres. ind. 1 sg (2145, 5297), inf. (6187), tormente inf. (5297), glente pret. ind. 3 pl. (5882),rente n. (6513).

Note.—A consideration of the above data shows that the only form that Chaucer uses in the Troilus is entente, never entent except when a final -e would disappear by the regular operation of the rules for elision. The scribes sometimes omit -e where we must supply it, not only in entente, but in the rhyme words; but Chaucer in the Troilus never rhymes entente with a word that has no right to a final -e and never apocopes the -e in the middle of a verse.

eschaunge (cf. chaunge); -e 4808 (chaunge CD), 5221 ([es]chaunge C), 5540 (chaunge D, eschaung ‡ for C).—eschaungë ‡ of, 4893 D (chaingyng ABC).

esse, 28 f, 43 f, 1835 f, 2310 f, 2951 f, 3475 f, 4121 f (astele ‡ B), 4248 f, 4570 f, 4748 f, 5365 f, 5756 f, 6479 f.—Before consonants,

---

1 In 3714 C read, ensampele of for e. by.
2 In CD the rhyme word is spelled sent; but this is not sent = mittit.
3 In BD read all[e]. 4 In C supply [e]. 5 In B supply [the].
Observations on the Language

§ 21.

2746, 3453, 5388, 6474.—ese, 2861, 4146, 5142 (-e and [in] D), 7742 (B †; crese † D), etc.; ese hym, 2744. [7722 † C (?)]. (Cf. diseae.) [Var. D case.]

Rhyme words.—displese inf. (28), pres. subj. 3 sg. (2951), please inf. (43, 2810, 3475, 4121, 4570, 4748, 5365, 5756, 6479), apeare inf. (2951, 6479), countrepeyse (-pese BCD) inf. (4248), dishese n. (4121, 4748, 5756), lese, O. Fr. lesse (1835). [Var. D esse, esse.]

exœtrice, 3459.

face, 1071 f, 1195, 1350 f, 1850 f, 4188 f, 4411 (D †), 4670 f, 4812 f, 5526 (C †), 5812 f, 5999 f, 6449 (C †), 6562 (om. A), 6607 f, 6899 f, 7037 f, 7071 f, 7277 f; -e, 1490, 5477, 5483, 6918, 71701; -e he, 5023 (fate † D); -e hem, 4730 (-e he D).—at pryemé face, 3761 f (place : grace).

Rhyme words.—grace n. (1071, 1850, 3761, 4188, 4670), space (1850, 5999, 7037 CD), pace inf. (1850, 5812, 6899, 7277), place (4188, 4812, 5812, 6607, 6899, 7037 AB, 7071), deface ind. 2 pl. (7277). [Var. C fase.]

faille, faye, 1714 f (: batayle), 6258 f (: assayle subj. 3 sg.).

fame, 5321 (fane † C), 6783 f C †.

fate (Lat. fatum), 7913 (face † C); -e helpeth, 7915 (-e hym BD, face † C); -e, 6572 (stat † C); -e he, 5023 D †.

fayre (O. Fr. feire), 8203 f (faire B, feir D) (: floures fayre (faire B, fair D)); To morwe? alas! that were a fayre! quod he, 3692 (fair B, fayr C, [a] fair D).

feste, 161 (-[e] C, -t † D), 168 f (feest D), 1446 f (festis † C), 1506 f (fest D), 2992 f (-t CD), 3186 f (-t BD), 4001 f (-t D), 4154 f, 6440 f, 6804 f, 6819, 6887 f, 8040 f; -e, 3495 (-t BD), 4070 (-e ioye † D), 4581 (-t D),2 6667, 6809 (ferste † C). [Var. B feest, festo; D feest.]

flambé funeral, 6665 (flambe C, flawme D); -e, 4780 (flaumme C, flaume D).

force, 6137 (fors C), 6784.—fors, (i.) what fors, 1463. (ii.) In no fors, 2562, 4984 (-ce D, fors whan C), 7118, 7979 (-ce D); no fors hardly, 2802.

fortune, 841 f (: commune pred. adj.), 4664 f (: entune inf. : commune adj.), 5053 f (: commune pred. adj. pl.), 7904.—fortune, 138, 849 AB (-tune † to C, -e † for D), 3459, 4509, 4556 (D †), 4922 (fortune alas † D), 4936 (-e jif C, -e yif D), 5047, 5262, 5854, 8108 (-e ay D), 8126 (-e † it D); -e his, 6832; -e hem, 7497.—fortune, 837,1 Supply [of] in B.

B, apparently, "swich a feste and swich proce," where swiche seems to be written, by error of ear, for switch a.
843, 4986, 5851, 6250, 7283; -e hym, 1370.—Ne remuável fortunę deface, 6344. fortunę wolę, 1420 AD (-tune B; D †). [Cf. infortune.]

frape, 3252 f (: iape : i-shape p.p.).
garde,—sauë-garde[e], 4801 (-e B, saf cundwytt hem C, safe conduyt hem D †).
gau, 1436 f (: baude).
gemme, 1429 (comme † B, gom[me] † C).
geste, 3292 f (geest D) (: leste pret. sg. : the beste).—gest[e], 1168 f (geeste B, geest D) (: leste pret. ind. 3 sg.).
grace, 42 f, 370 f, 713 f, 900 f, 926, 955 f, 1056 f, 1070 f, 1117 f, 1351 f, 1799 f, 1916 (D †), 2155 f, 2207 f, 2450 f, 2611, 3303 (spase CD), 3314 f, 3547, 3764 f, 4018 f, 4109, 4111 f, 4191 f, 4298 f, 4616 f, 4672 f, 5217 f, 5614 f, 5895, 6055 f, 6346 f, 6534 f, 6535 (-e † befalle D), 6865, 6944 f, 6955 (-e † C), 7057 f, 7303 f, 7320 f, 7686 f, 7994 f, 8065 f, 8231 (mercy BD); grace, 973, 998, 1328 (D †), 2058, 4925, 4955.—grace for, 3770 (-e had B, -e to D, om. † C). [Cf. graceles, § 49, n. 5.]

Rhyme words.—pace, passe inf. (42, 370, 3314, 4111, 5614, 6055), passe subj. 1 sg. (7057), trespace inf. (4018), purchase inf. (900, 1117, 1799, 5217), inv. pl. (2207), chase inf. (4646), face (1070, 1351, 4191), at pyme face (3764), space (713, 2155, 2207, 7303, 7994, 8065), place (900, 955, 1056, 1117, 2450, 3764, 4111, 4191, 4298, 4616, 5217, 6346, 6534, 6944, 7303, 7320, 7686), deface inf. (6346), arace inf. (7320). [Var. C grase; C 4018 gras; D 42 gras.]
gyle, 719 f C (wyle AD, wile B) (: begile inf. : while); 3619 f (gile C) (: while).
gyse, see § 26.
herbe, -e, 957 (erb B), 1430 (herb B, erbe † C), 2852. [Var. C erbe.]
houre, oure, owre, 456 f (hour D), 1478 f, 1673 f (-iš † D), 2792 f (hour D), 2982 f (our C), 4318 ², 5200 f (hour D), 7006 f; -e, 2642 (hoir † aftir D), 3374 (-r CD) ³, 6826 (-r D) ⁴, 7696 (-r CD).

Rhyme words.—laboure laboro (456), denoure inf. (7006), subj. 3 sg. (1478), powre inf. (2792), hounoure inf. (2982), he is youre (joures † D) (1673), ouro ours (5200).

infortunę wolde, 4847 (-e it AB); -e, 4468, 4959. [Cf. fortune.]
inke, 4535 f (ynke C, ynk D) (: bythenke (bithynke) inf.).

1 So in ABECp. John's Phillipps 8252 (with remuuable) G (with remuuable) Harl. 2392 (with nor for ne) Selden B 24 (with it after fortune). Cut out in C. No resonable † fortune to deface D; No remuuable fortune for to deface Durham II 13.
² For how shoeld(e) (shold[e] B) I my lyf an houré (oure B, our[e] D) sane, 4318 Cp., is apparently the correct reading. A, hour[e] mv lyf (!); C, our[e] myn lyf (!).
³ Supply [she] in C.
⁴Supply [mas] in D.
impossible, an impossible were, 3367 (im- B, & † impossible C; D ²).
ire, iire, yre, 2864 f, 6952 f, 7827 f, 8118; ire, 793; ire he, 6399, 7586.

Rhyme words.—a-fyre (2864, 7827), I desire ind. (6952).
iaye, 2128 f ( : ape), 3250 f ( : fraye : i-shape p.p.); -e, 1215. [-ê † in, 5258 C.]

ioye, 4 f, 118 f¹, 608 f, 1225 f, 1728 f, 1834 f, 1902 (-[e] D), 1967 f, 3059 (C † D †), 3190 (ioy † to D?), 3198 f, 3632 f, 3717 f, 4070 (-e † D), 4162, 4221, 4249, 4284 f, 4292 f, 4513 (ioy † his D), 4556 f, 4718 f, 4752 f, 4931 ([-e] D), 4936 f (ioye † C), 4997 f, 5004 (-[e] D †, û † or B), 5047 (-[e] D), 5968 f, 5985 † C (blysse ABD), 6093, 6104 f, 6293 f, 6390 f, 6481 f, 6790 f, 6971 f, 6978 f, 7094 f, 7144 f, 7293 f, 7745 f, 7910 f; ioye, 1918, 3662, 4520, 8077, etc.; -e he, 2389; -e hastow, 6951; -e hadde 3311; -e here poss. pl., 1861; -e halt, 4478 (-e haldeyth † C).—ioyë have (inf.), 2329 ([-ê] D).—ioyë and (l. ioye and [al]), 3495 C (-e AB).—ioyë † may, 4535 A (-ê BC, [-ê] D).

Rhyme words.—fro ye (4), anoye inf. (5968), acoye inf. (7144), Troye (all the passages cited). [Var. BD ioie; C 1728, 1918 Ioyye.]

lesse (O. Fr. lesse), 1837 f (leese B) ( : ese n.).

ligne, see lyne, § 3, p. 6.

ma damé, 1170 (-[e] B); -e, 1965 (madam B).

martire, see 5480 f (under materie, § 28).

mayle, 7922 f ( : by-wayle inf. : auentaylle).


meruayle, merueyle, 476 f ( : trauayl, -e BCD); -e, 3031 (meràkele C, miracel D).—mêruyyle, 6484 † D (wonder AB, wondyr C).

messâge, 3243, 5474 f ( : rage n.), 5552 f ( : rage n.). [massâgé †, 2021 C.] [5016 B, extra metrum.]

mewe, muwe (O. Fr. muce), 381 f, 3444 f, 4626 f, 5158 f (mew D), 5972 f.

Rhyme words.—suwe inf. (381), saluwe inf. (4626), arguwe inf. (5158), stuwe n. (3444), truwe truce (5972).

miracle, see meruayle.

moible, moeble (dissyl.), 6042 (mobelé C), 6663; moeble is, 6122 (mobole B, mobil C, mobles † ben(e) D).

mowe (Fr. moue), 4669 f (mow D) ( : y-throwe p.p.).
muse, 1094 f ( : vse inf. : excuse ind. 1 sg.).

1 Old-style figures indicate that D has no -e.
2 Bygan for Ioyë the amorousë (thamarousë Cp. John's, thamarousë B, the amorous[e] CD) daunce.
3 Supply a third [her] in D.
mystéricorde, 4019 f (-d B) (: recordes inv. pl.).
necce, 968 (-e to D), 1177, 1334, 1559, 2288, 2550 (-e [myn] A, C defect.), 3051, 3594 (-e † he C, -e quod D), 3788 (nce(ce) C, -e dere † D), 3817, 8075 (nees[e] D), etc., etc.—ncece, 1409 (trowth[e] ncece B), 1491 AB, 2338 (-e lo ‡ C), 2502, 3117 (-e put C, -e † put D), etc.; -e haue, 1373; -e hath, 8090 (nees D); -e how, 4405. [Var. C 2042 nese; D 4398 nice.]—ncece who, 2272; ncece se, 3804 (-e how CD)¹; ncece lo, 1340 (-e BC, -e † alwaye D).

note, 5247 f (: hote adv. : grote).
noyse, 3586, 6620 ABD; -e 85 AB (C †), 1155, 3504 (D †), 4732, 4845 (voys ‡ D), 5248; -e he, 5036. [Var. BD noise.]


penne, -e, 4675.

peple, (i.) dissyl. bef. cts., 73, 1728, 1743 (-il C), 3426 (-ës B, puples C †), 7515 (puple C, people D). (ii.) elided before vowels, 1731 (peplë on CD), 3110 (peplil ‖ as C), 4845 (peplë stërt ‡ D), 6231 A (peplë al(le) B, pepèle ek C; D †). [Var. C. ppeplë.]
persone, 1786 f, 2572 f, 4745 f (all rhyme with to done); -e, 1253.—persone his, 2352 (person C, -e [his] D).

peyne, 9 f, 63 f², 508 f, 589 f, 674 f, 709 f, 1560 f, 1608 f, 1861 f ABC (peyn D1862), 2072 f, 2212 f, 2316 f, 2440 f, 2586 f, 2615 f, 2821 f, 2947 f, 3836 f, 3848 f, 3960 f, 4333 f, 4373 f, 4958 f, 4980 f, 5140 (pleyne † C, peyne † D), 5166 f (peyn C), 5296,³ 5372 f CD, 5411 f (-n C), 5414 f C, 5451 f, 5509 f, 5532 f, 5565 f, 5604 f, 5803 † (-es AB, -ys C), 5806 f, 5919 f, 5967 f, 6398 f (pyne B), 6653 † f A (pyne BCD), 6778 f (pyne † BD), 7041 f, 7090 f, 7255 f, (pyne † B), 7399 f (-n C), 7592 f (payn C), 7599 (-es AB), 7632 f, 7763 f.—peyne, 34, 497, 3634 (wo ‡ B), 4058 (-es ‡ B), 4060 (-e hath BCD), 4344 (pleyne † C), 5799, 6861; -e hym, 7563; -e lire (pl.), 5791 BD (-es † A, sorwe † of C).—peyn † ther yn, 1960 D.

Rhyme words.—pleyne inf. (9, 508, 1608, 1661, 2440, 2615, 2947, 6398, 7592, 7763), pleyne ind. 1 pl. (709), compleyne inf. (4958, 5451, 5565, 7090, 7632), inv. (2586), quærar (3848, 6778), quæratur (5919), to seyne (to seyn 3848) (9, 508, 709, 1608, 2072, 2212, 2440, 3836, 3960, 4373, 5166, 7399), restreyne inf. (674, 5372 CD, 5532, 5604), constreyne inf. (1560), cogitis (2316), destreyne inf. (4373), feyne simulcom (2615), reyne plure (4958, 5532), reyne ind. 3 pl. (5509), freyne inf. A.S. friyan (7592), twayne, tweyn (2521, 3060, 4333, 5411, 5414 C, 5451, 5806, 5919, 5967, 7041, 7632), Eleyne (63, 674, 7255), cheyne n. (508), soureyne adj. (4980), veyne n. (5604, 6778). [Var. CD peine ; D payne.]

place, 898 f, 953 f, 961,⁴ 1057 f (space D), 1115 f, 1128, 1163 f,

¹ Supply [can] in B.
² Old-style figures indicate that D has no -e.
³ Supply [ne] in D.
⁴ AB slightly defective.
Observations on the Language

2449 f, 2652 f, 3060 f, 3763 f, 3856 f, 4113 f, 4190 f, 4297 f, 4339. 4645 f, 4810 f, 5220 f, 5814 f, 6347 f, 6532 f, 6586 f, 6608 f, 6897 f, 6943 f, 7039 f (space CD), 7040 f (space AB), 7073 f, 7306 f, 7319 f, 7685 f, 7992 (spacè C).—place, 429, 2098, 3518 (-e † gan D), 4322 † D, 4435 (-ē rise † D), 4970 (-ē † is C); -e his, 2455 (-ē † his C; D †); place horrible, 6613 (plase oribełe C).

Rhyme words.—face and grace (q.v.), and the following:—purchase inf. (1115, 5220), pace, passe inf. (1163, 2652, 3060, 4113, 5814, 6897), chase, chase inf. (898, 4645), space (7039 AB, 7040 CD, 7306), embrace inf. (6586), race (a-race C) radat (3856), arace inf. (7319), deface inf. (6347).

[Var. C plase.]
planète, 4099 f (: the swete : the grete).
pleynyte, 408 f1 (: I feynye ind. : queynyte), 544 f (compleynt D) (: complynte : dreynte pret. ind. 3 sg.), 5001 † D (pl. ABC), 5462 (-[e] C, complète that † D), 5489 B (-[e] A, complète † thus D), 5593 f (-t C) (: dreynte pret. subj. 2 pl.)2.—pleynyte, 5522 (-t C), 5807 (-t C), 7738 (-t C); -e his, 6631 (-t BC). [5504 f] [Var. D pleint, pleinte.]—pleynt of, 8107 (-e B).
pompe, 6342 (pomp B).
potente (cf. O. Fr. potence), 7585 f (-t CD) (: wente : shente, both pret. ind. 3 sg.).
pouërte (irregular formation, see ten Brink, § 221; O. Fr. poverté), 6182 f (-t C) (: sherte).
preue, 690 f, 3149 f, 3844 f, 6321 f. (preue, 470 f, is perhaps an adjective: "The shoures sharpe fille of armes preue.")

Rhyme words.—lune credere (690, 3149, 6321), remune inf. (690), greue subj. 2 pl. (3844).
prolobe, 5555 (prolong † CD).3
prouërbe, 1482 (prouerb B).
pursuyte, 2829 (pursute D, pursuïng C); pursuytè 4 make, 2044 (pursuit (f) C, pursuté D).
quiète, quyète (Lat. quietem), 3348 f, 4661 f, 5152 f, 5167 f (qui[te] B), 5443 f. —quiète, quyète, 4522 (quyêtè and A), 7370.

Rhyme words.—swete adj. indef. (all), mete meet inf. (3348), pres. subj. 3 sg. (5443).
rage, 3741 f, 4915 f, 5473 f, 5554 f.
Rhyme words.—corage, asswage inf., message (5473, 5554).
rascayllye, 8216 f (: anaylle inf. : trauayle n.).
regnû shal, 7907 † B (¬-s AC, -is D); regne and, 2871.

1 Old-style figures indicate that D has no -e.
2 A has drenche (C drenk) for dreynte.
3 Dele the first as in A.
4 Supply [thi] in A.
5 But supply [thus] and read quyète.
rent, 1915 f (-t CD) (: entente n. : sente misit), 4747 f (-t D) (: wente ivi).

reprêue, 1504 f (reprefe D) (: leue credere), 2225 f (-oue † B, -efe D) (: leue creditis).

requêste, 4719 f (: leste minimos), 5176 (-[e] CD), 7312 f (-t D) ( : at the meste : at the leste).—requést, 2990 f (-e B) (: feste n.) ; requést || is, 1450 (-e B).

reyne (Cotgr. reine), -e here, 6453 (-e he C, rene D).

roche (O. Fr. roche, roke), -e, 4339 (rok C, rock D).

route, rowte, 271 f (-t D), 1698 f (-t D), 1903 f, 5065 f, 5344 f, 5379 f,
6428 f, 6450 f (-t C), 6765 f, 6915 f, 7858 f.

Rhyme words.—aboute (all but 1698, 6428, 6915), withoute (271, 1698, 6428), onte (6915), shoute inf. (1698), doute n. (5065, 6428), knyghtes stoute (7858).

ruyn, 5049 f (: deuyne inf. : defyne pres. 1 sg.).


sege (cf. assege), 6142 CD (thassêgê A, thassâgê B); -e, 1169 (sege(e) B).

signe, 3994 ; -e of, 5826, 8015 (-e of [his] D).

sire, 2042 (-[e] BD) ; -e, 2501 (sere C, here † D), 2544 (sir BD), 6117 (syre C, sir D); -e his, 2925 (sir D).—sirê come, 2917 (syr B, for † D).

space, 505, 714 f, 1852 f, 2156 f, 2209 f (sp[a]ce B), 3303 (gracê AB), 5998 f, 7039 f CD, 7040 f AB, 7305 f, 7992 C, 7993 f, 8067 f.

Rhyme words.—face, grace, and place (q.v.) ; also, chace inv. pl. (2209), pace inf. (1852).

stewe, stewe (cf. O. Fr. estuve), 3443 f (: mewe) ; the stewe dore, 3540.

table, 6800 f (tabele C) (: honourable, honurabele C).

tente, 6511 f (-t C) (: entente), 7208 (: ther B), 7385 f (-t CD)
( : wente iit).

terne, 7059, 7453 ; -ê holte, 7572 ([e] D, hestis † C).

title he, 488 (tytcle C, stanza not in D).

trone, 5741 f (: sone adv.), 5748 f (; to done), 5837 f (: sone adv).

vncle (dissyl.), 1172, 1183, 1207 (C †), 1221 (D †), 1231, 1324, 2 1579, 1739, 2188, 2217, 2561, 2809, 3487, 3684 (vncle [myn] D), 4420, 3 5601; vncle (dissyl.) herde, 2185 ; vncle, 1335 (-e hir D 4). (C always spells the word with an interior e, vnkele, but never makes it a trisyllable.) 5

1 "Sire my nece wolde do wel by the." Hardly to be regarded as a 9-syl. verse.
2 Supply [myn] in AB.
3 Dele (for) in A.
4 In a rather later hand.
5 In 2188 supply [myn] in C.
Observations on the Language

74

§ 21. Observations on the Language. (Lat. universum, cf. Fr. univers), 2878 f (vniuers(it)e A) (: the worse).

vrne ¹ (Lat. urna, rather than Fr. urne), 6674 f (: torne (turne) inf.).

vsage, 150.

vermine, 3223 f (: determyne inf.).

verre, 1952 f (: werre).

veyne, 5605 f (: restreyne inf. : peyne), 6780 f (: peyne : pleyne plorem); -e, 866 (wayne D).

viage, 3574²; -e, 1160 (A too short); viage, 2146.

visage, 5524 f (vesage C) (: ymage); 8201 f (: age : ymage).

ymage, 4897, 5526 f (: visage), 8202 f (: age : visage).

§ 22. Exceptions to § 21 (cf. § 21, note 2).

acord (O. Fr. acorde, accord), 4592 (-e B, l. om. † E).

angwyssh (O. Fr. anguisses, angoisses), (i.) 5506 (-guys C). (ii.) 4817 (-guys C, -gwisshe D).

aungel (O. Fr. angele, angle), 5306 † C (Ioüé AB; Ioü D (†)).³

(Cf. ten Brink, § 221.)

beste (O. Fr. beste), 2852 (best BD).

broche, broch (O. Fr. broche), (i.) broch, 4212 (-e BC, -e (of) gold (?) C), 8024 (-e BD; C †); -e || yow, 8051 (broch B, -e (?) D); -e || that, 8053 (broch B). (ii.) -e, 7403 (broch B, -e [and] that C); -e he, 8032.

concord (O. Fr. concorde), còncord and, 3348.

cûrtyn (O. Fr. curtine, cortine), cûrtyn pyke, 2902 (-teyn C).⁴

marbel (O. Fr. marble, marbre), 700 (-il C, -le D) (cf. § 21, n. 4).

phisyk (O. Fr. phisike), 2123 f (fisyk B, fisik C, physik D) (: lyk pred. adj. sg. : pyk fish).

pres, prees (O. Fr. presse), (i.) cf. 173 f, 2734, 2803, 4765 f. (ii.) pres he, 2728. [Var. D presè.] In all the above cases pres = throng ; in the phrase leye on presse, presse occurs, 559 f (: holynesse).

räket (O. Fr. rachete), räket to, 5122 (rakett D).

rebel (O. Fr. rebelle, noun and adj.), Al haue I ben rebel yn myn entente, 1609.

réfuyt (O. Fr. refuite, refuit), (ii.) 3856 (-fut BC, -fute D).

rélyk (O. Fr. relique), rélyk || hight, 153 (-ike C, -ique D).

¹ Apparently then a new word: "a vessel that men clepeth an vrne."
² Supply [to] in C.
³ Cp. has Ioü ; E. Harl. 4912 John's have But any aungel.
⁴ Supply [in] in A.
rescous (O. Fr. rescous, rescousse), (i.) 4084 (rescousse D). réserve, (ii.) 478.

skârmyssh (O. Fr. escarmouche), s. al, 1696 (scârmich B, scharmus C, skârmisse D); s. of, 2019 (scârmich B, charmys B, scarmyssh D).

sours (O. Fr. source), (ii.) 7954 (sors D, ground D).

text (O. Fr. texte), text || ful, 4199 (tex B, tixite || E, tixt is C); text || to (so C), 6072 (-e D).

traurers (O. Fr. traverse), 3516 (-eres B, curtyns J D). [Plural?]

^ssue (O. Fr. issue), 6568 (isseu BD, isseu C).

Nobley (O. Fr. nobleie, noblée) occurs once (before a vowel), see 6332. Cf. chimcney (O. Fr. cheminee) and valey (O. Fr. valée) (§ 33, n. 2).


That -e counts as a syllable is clear not only from rhyme, but from the cases in which mischaunce occurs in the interior of the verse before a consonant (5332, 6024; cf. also 3132). For convenience, balaunce, daunce, romaunce, and traunce are included in this list. Interesting words are aseïraunce, desesperaunce, obïjesaunce, signification, sufïsiaunce (var. sufïcuaunce), vengeaunce.

In the following list all rhyme-words are given, except nouns in -aunce:—

abundaunce, 3884 (hab- A, ab- D)

àliaunce, 4588 f.

aqueyntaunce, 6485; acqueyntaunce, 6492 (ns CD).


balaunce, 1551 f, 6222 f (-auns D).

chaunce, 1549 f, 2432, f B (acht ACD), 8031 f (chauns D).

côntenaunce, 1637 f (: daunce n.), 2102 f, 3821 f, 4384 f. [Var. C cuñtenaunce; D countyn-] côntenaunce, 6902 (cûntenaus C, countenauns D).

continuáunce, 2919.

daunce, 517 f (: auaunce inf.), 1638 f (: continuance), 2191 f (: penaunce), 3375 f C (: ordenaunce), 6093 f (dauns D) (: pentaunce).—
daunce, 3537 (C f), 6811 (dauns D).

delyueráunce, 4864 f (delib- C).


1 9-syl. line in A.

2 Thaqueyntaunce (The aqueyntau[n]se C, The acquentauns D) of these (this BC, thes D) Troians (-晏s B, -aunes D, Troylus C) to (for to C) chaunge.

3 If we read deï before this word we can shun the -êu-.
Observations on the Language

§ 23.

dessèueraunce, 4266 f (dis- BD).
disauenaunce, 1596 f C (\(l.\) disauænce inf.).
displesaunce, dysplaece, 3322 f, 4137 f.
douteaunce, 5625 f (doughtauns D), 5706 f; cf. 200 f C.
guernaunce, 1304 f (: daunce inf. : myschaunce n.), 1552 f, 2105 f, 2527 f (generaunce \(\uparrow\) B, sustenaunce \(\downarrow\) D), 3269 f, 3323 f, 3787 f (gouernaunce B), 4586 f.—guernaunce hire (poss. sg.), 3058.
ignoraunce, 4136 f, 5646 f, 5663 f, 5733 f; -e, 3668, cf. 2133 \(\downarrow\) C.
instaunce, 2526 f.
misaunce, myshaunce, meschaunce, 92 f, 1307 f (: gouernaunce: daunce inf.), 2104 f, 3533 f (: ordenaunce: traunce inf.), 4227 f (mysschaunce D) (: auaunce subj. 3 sg.), 4865 f, 5153 f (-ns D), 6223 f (-ns D), 6722 f (-ns D), 7797 f (myschauns D, myschaunce C) (: auaunce inf.). myshauncë (bef. csts.), 5332 (mes- B, mischaurs[e] D), 6024 (mes- B, myschaunce C, mischauns[e] D).—myshauncë in, 3132 (meschaunce B, myschauns[e] C, mischëf \(\downarrow\) yet D).—myshaunce, 118 AB (-ë || and B).
mountaunce, 2792 (montënaun[n]s C); moutance, 4574 (moutënauns C).

obëysaunce, 3320 f (obseraunce \(\uparrow\) D).
obseraunce, 1197 f (: daunce inf.), 3812 f; cf. 198 \(\uparrow\) f D, 2430 \(\downarrow\) f B, 3320 \(\uparrow\) f D.—obseraunce, 5445 (-ns D).2

ordenaunce, 1595 f (: disaunaunce inf.), 3377 f (puruaunce \(\uparrow\) C), 3530 f (: myschaunce n.: traunce inf.), 5626 f (ordinauns D), 7968 f (ordinauns D). [Var. BD ordinaunce; B only.]
penaunce, penunaunce, 94 f, 1614 f (pen[a]unce C), 2190 f (: daunce n.), 5004 f (: traunce n.), 6091 f (-ns D) (: daunce n.), 6724 f (-ns D), 8034 f (-ns D); cf. 201 f CD (-ës AB).

persëueraunce, 44 f (: plesaunce : auaunce inf.).

pleaunce, 46 f (: pleueraunce : auaunce inf.), 3268 f, 3786 f, 3813 f (displesaunce \(\uparrow\) C), 4264 f, 4374 f, 4386 f, 5069 f (-ns D) (: daunce inf.), 5081 f (-ns D), 5155 f (-ns D), 6177 f (-ns D), 6304 f (-ns D), 6677 f (-ns D), 6927 f (-ns D) (: remembraunce : daunce inf.), 7623 f (-ns D), 7971 f (-ns D); cf. 5761 f CD.—pleaunce, 6324 (-ns D), 7094 (-ns D); pleaunce or pleaunce, 2846 (-ns D).
pûrueyaunce, puruayance, pourueaunce, 1612 f, 3375 f (daunce \(\downarrow\) C\(^e\), pûrveaunce D), 5623 f (-ns D), 5644 f, 5662 f, 5708 f, 5732 f, 7809 f (-ns D).—pûrueyaunce hath, 5639 (-ns D).

1 But 118 B supply [ye] and read mischaunce in.
2 In 5445 C dele (\(I.\)).
rèmembraunce, 3810 f (-ance C), 4375 f, 4387 f, 5082 f (-ance C, -auns D), 6305 f (-ns D), 6678 f (-ns D), 6925 f (-ns D) (: plesaunce : daunce inf.), 7807 f, 7970 f (-br[a]unce C, -brauns D).—rèmembraunce, 7084 (-ns D), 8026 (-ns D), 8054 (-ns D).1 répentaunce, 4150 f.
romaince, 3822 f (-ance C).—ròmaunce, 1185 (-ns CD).
significaunce, 6725 f (signe[y]aunce C, signicauns † D); signyfaunce, 7810 f (-niaunce B, -nyfaunce C, -niauns D). (Synaeresis of the italicized vowels.)
substàunce, 6175 f (-ns D).—substaunce, 4879, 6167 (-ns D).
sùffisaimce, 4151 f (sufficyaiince C, souffici'awnce E), 6302 f (sufficiàunce C, -ficiawns D).—sùffisaisnce, 4558 (-ns C). (Synaeresis of the italicized vowels.)
sùstenaunce, 2527 † f D.
traunce, 2391 f (: daunce inf.: desesperaunce), 5005 f (trau[n]ce C) (: penaunce).
variaunce, 5647 f, 7125 f (-ns C), 8033 f (-ns D).
vèngeaunce, 8071 AB (-gæuns D).


This ending always rhymes with itself. In the few cases in which it occurs before a consonant in the middle of a verse, the -e does not count as a syllable (see under prescience (5683) and science (67)) (cf. ten Brink, § 223). For convenience, defence and offence are included in this list.
asbence, 513 f, 3056 f (-ns B), 4142 f, 5445 f (-ns BD), 6599 f (-se C, -ns BD); -e, 5089 (-ns BD) 2.—àbsence, 7759 (-ns D, -nce be C).
àbsiténence, 5446 f (-ns D).
àduertence, 7621 f (-ns D); -e, 5360 (-ns BCD).
àudiènce, audyence, 4732 f, 5207 f (-ns D), 6598 f (-ns BD).
cònsèiènce, 554 f (concience C).
dèfence, 2980 f (A †), 4141 f (diff- B, defense D), 4949 f (diff- D).
dileffe, 395 f (-ns CD, deference A).
diligence, deligence, 2977 f, 4139 f.
èxcellence, 3057 f, 3830 f, 4116 f, 4167 f.
experiènce, 7620 f (-ns D); -e, 4125.
inncènce, 2133 (-ns D, ygnoraunce † C).
offence, 556 f, 2979 f (-nse C), 4861 f.
pàciènce, 7760 (-ns D).

1 Supply [a] in D.
2 Or, absence (first word in the verse).
prèscièncè, 5726 f (-nt D); -e, 5649 (prescient D); -e hath, 5660 (-nt D); -è put, 5683 (-nt D).—prèscièncè, 5673 (prèsciènt D), 5724 (prèsciènt D). (Synæresis in 5673, 5724.)
presèncè, 6596 f (-nt C); -e, 1545 (presaunce B).
prudèncè, 7107 (-ns BD).
rèsistèncè, 3832 f.
 rènérèncè, 516 f, 3054 f, 4115 f, 4170 f, 4731 f BD (reuèrèncè A); -e, 2882.
sàpìèncè, 515 f.
sentèncè, 393 f, 4169 f, 4859 f, 5208 f (-ns D), 5725 f.
viołèncè, 4948 f; -e, 5224 (-ns D).


(I.) For convenience dístresse, oppresse, presse, and redresse are included in this list. Rhyme words are commonly nouns in -esse or in -nesse. All other rhyme-words are indicated. For -essè before a consonant, see gentilesse (3100). For accèssè, èxcessè, see § 32.

(II.) All the examples of this ending occur in rhyme or before a vowel.

I. dístresse, dystrèsse, dèstrèsse, 439 f (-es D) (: blyssé subj. 3 sg.: prowesse), 616 f (-es D), 641 f (-es D), 1011 f (-lesse pred. adj.), 1748 f, 1804 f (: dronkenesse : gesse ind. 1 sg.), 1941 f (-es C) (: shrewednesse : gesse ind. 1 sg.), 2331 f (distrès D), 2355 f, 2457 f (: impresse inf.), 2888 f (-es D), 3087 f (disdresse t B), 3104 f, 3206 f (-es D), 3634 f, 3723 f, 3827 f (sykernesse : gesse inf.), 3877 f, 4058 f, 4286 f, 4438 f ABC (: blyssé inf.), 4632 f (-es CD), 4766 f, 4963 f, 5026 f, 5188 f (-es D), 5383 f (-es D), 5462 f (-es D) (: heuynesse : lesse pred. adj.), 5504 f, 5560 f (: heuynesse : gesse ind. 1 sg.), 5744 f (detresse D), 6333 f, 7078 f, 7957 f.—distrèsse, 550 (-es D).^2

dùrèssè, 6762 f.
èxcessè, see p. 87.
fèblessè, 1948 (fèblènnesse B, fèbîlnesse C, fèblènès D) ^3.
gèntîllesse, gèntùllesse, 881 f (-nesse D) (: gesse ind. 1 sg.), 1245 f (ièntîllesse D), 1747 f (gèntîllesse BD), 1787 f (-nesse B, -nesse D), 2353 f (-nesse CD), 3005 f (-nesse B, -nesse D), 3244 f (-nesse BC, 2 Supply [swich] in C.

In D supply [that].
Supply [that] in C.
icentilnesse D), 3724 f (-nesse BCD), 3878 f (-nesse C, -nes D), 3990 f (-nesse BCD) (: gesse ind. 1 sg.), 4256 f (-nesse B, -nes C), 7954 f (-les C, -nes D), 7980 f (-ness D) (: gesse inf.).—gøntilësse triste, 3100 (gentileste † B, -nessë C, -nes to D).—gøntilësse, 4393 (-nesse C, -nes D).
largësse, 4566 f (: gladnesse : gesse ind. 1 sg.).
noblësse, 287 f (: gesse inf.), 6802 f (noblelesse C), 8194 f (noble-
ness † D).
opprésse, 6761 f.
presse, 559 f (: holynesse). Cf. pres, prees, § 22.
prowësse, 438 f (: blyss subj. 3 sg. : distresse n.), 1717 f (: hardynesse :
dresse inf.), 1745 f (pruesse C), 6799 f (largesse CD).
redrèsse, 5190 f (retresse B).
richësse, 6031 f (: suftice inf. : guise inf. W), 6040 f (: suftice inf. :
dresse C), 6204 f (: guise D).

§ 26. Nouns in -yce, -yse. For apocope, see servise (315).

For -ë before a consonant, see coueytise (3103).

àuarëce, 4647 f (anryce C) (: vice).
coueytise, couetisë, 4231 f (: dispise ind. 3 pl.), 6031 f (: suftice inf. :
gyse n.), 6040 f (: deuyse inf.). [Var. C couetysë ; D couetise.]—
coueytisë wroughte, 3103 (-ë (I)wrougte B, couetisë † this D).
cowardise, -yse, 5264 f (: emprise), 6775 f (: ryse inf.).
emprise, 1158 f (: ryse inf.), 2476 f (emprise † C) (: aryse inf. : for-
byse inf.), 3258 f (: servysë), 5263 f (: cowardise).
gyse, 2001 f C (wyse ABD) (: 30 ben wise), 6032 f (: suftice inf. :
coueytise) ; -e, 7224, 8013 (-ë † C, guise D †) ; guise, 6427 D (wyse
AB, wise C).

malice, 3168 f (maleys C) (: nice adj. pl. : vice).—mals if, 3722 (-ice
B, -icë jif (!) C, -icë † if D) 4.—målës hir, 3997 (malice BD, -eys C).

1 Dele (a) in B.  2 Supply [his] in B.
3 Dele (the) in D. Cp. has tendernesse ; John's has tendernesse.
4 In B read if for of.
Observations on the Language [§§ 26, 27.]

office, 4278 f (-yse C') (: vice).

sacrifice, 3381 f (: seruyse), 4550 f (: ryse inf.), 7828 f (: dispise inf.: wyse n.). [Var. BCD -ise.]

seruyc e, -yse, -ise, -ise, 82 f, 164 f, 335 f (servys D), 951 f, 956 f, 982 f, 1763 f, 2884 f, 2975 f, 3003 f, 3256 f, 3279 f, 3317 f, 3380 f, 4130 f, 4444 f, 4636 f, 4657 f, 5059 f, 5176 f, 5471 f, 5494 f, 7681 f. [Var. B ceruyse; C servyse. — seruise, seruys e, 430,1 3250, 4230 .— sèruys e, 3834.—sèruys e, 315.

Rhyme words.—wyse n. (82, 164, 335, 951, 956, 982, 1763, 2975, 4130, 4636, 4657, 5059, 5176, 5471, 5494, 7681), wyse adj. sg. and pl. (82, 956, 982), deuyse inf. (2884, 3003, 3317, 4636, 4657, 5471, 7681), deuyse ind. 1 sg. (3279), emprise (3256), sacrifice n. (3380), suffise inf. (4444, 5059).

vice, 980 f, 1810 f (nyse † A), 1940 f, 3169 f, 4234 f, 4280 f, 4648 f, 5258 f, 8071 f. [Var. CD vice.] — vice is, 689 (C † D †) (: vices pl.); vice, 252 (vys D), 1937 3, 2974.

Rhyme words.—cherice inf. (980, 1810), nyse, nyce adj. sg. and pl. (1810, 1940, 3169, 4234, 5258), malice (3169), office (4280), aurayce (4648), puynce inf. (8071).

§ 27. Nouns in -ure. Except as indicated, nouns in the following list rhyme only with each other.

armure, cote arm[ur]e, 8014 (c. armur B, cote armure CD).
asur (O. Fr. azur, asur), see § 32.

àuenture, 35 f (: endure inf.), 368 f, 568 f (mys † C), 784 f, 1085 f, 1309 f (: disfigure inf.), 1366 f, 1827 f, 2604 f (: endure inf.), 4059 f, 4209 f, 4986 f (: endure inf.: sepulture), 5050 f, 5991 f (: endure inf.), 6661 f (-tur D) (: endure inf.: sepulture), 7903 f.— disàventure, 1500 f, 4959 f (mys C, disauentur D) (: dure inf.), 5417 f, 7811 f; mysàuenture, 706 f.— àuenture, 1373 (-ê † bele CD).

—mysahn ter 4 ayleth, 766 (mysauenture D †, mysau(e)ntur(e) B, aûtentre mys-alylyth † C).—For paraintendent (var. C parauentaure, perauentaure, etc.; D peraunter, parauentaure, etc.), cf. 619, 668, 854, 1796, 2006, 2458, 3333, 5260, 7354 (perh. trisyl.), 7645, 7889.

créature, 104 f, 115 f, 283 f, 570 f (cry- C), 1502 f, 1802 f, 2855 f (: endure inf.), 4914 f (crya- C), 5048 f (crya- C), 5418 f (-tur D), 5429 f (: dure inf.: noriture), 6341 f (: dure inf.), 6517 f (cria- C) (: dure inf.), 6573 f, 6604 f (crya-C, creatur D) (: endure inf.), 6747 f (-tur D), 7077 f (l. om. † C), 7171 f, 7195 f (cria- C, creatur D),

1 In D supply [iny].

2 In 4230 the word stands first in the verse. Either accentuation is permissible.

In 4230 C read a[t]s[o], and so too in Harl. 2392.

3 In C read fle[me]n and in D al[le].

4 Cf. paraunter. See ten Brink, § 263.

In the following list are put together, for convenience, chere, manere, matere, preyere, ryuere, spere (= sphere). Observe mànere, måner. The spelling émyspêry for hemispère (see spere) is interesting.

chere, cheere (14 A, and sometimes in B), 14 f, 124 f, 181 f, 280 f, 289 f, 433 f, 879 f (shere B), 1125 f, 1234 f, 1417 f, 1445 f, 1556 f, 2214 f, 2352 f, 2446 f, 2597 f, 2626 f, 2811 f, 2896 f, 2938 f, 3072 f, 3174 f, 3271 f, 3334 f, 3484 f, 3589 f (cher C), 4198 f, 4396 f, 4506 f (clere † A), 4552 f (D †), 5137 f (cher D), 6097 f † B, 6298 f, 6394 f (cher D), 6547 f, 6779 f (cher D), 7170 f, 7276 f (shere B, cher D), 7591 f (cher D).—chere (bef. csts.), 2660 (-e) C; D †), 2592 D (-es AB, -is C).—chere, 1006, 1734 (cher C), 2343 (C † †), 5020, 5060 (cher CD); chere hym, 1663 (cher C); cher (bef. vowel), 327 A (-e B, chyr C, cheré he D †).—He neither chere (schyr C) ne (om. BCD) made ne word (worde B, word D) tolde, 312 (Shall we read: He neither cheré made ne word [ne] tolde? The Cp. collation makes no note.).

Rhyme words.—fere comes (14), manere (181, 289, 879, 1125, 2597, 2626, 2811, 2896, 2938, 3271, 4552, 5317, 6394, 6547, 7170), dere adj. (433, 879, 1417, 1556, 2214, 2446, 2811, 2896, 2938, 3174, 3334, 4198, 4396, 4506, 6547, 6779, 7276, 7591), here hic (124, 289, 1125, 3484, 6298), here inf. (124, 280, 3334, 5389, 5317), matere (1234, 2214, 3271, 4506), require ind. 1 sg. (1445), 2 pl. (1556), yfere adv. (1234, 2352, 3072, 3589, 4552, 6097 B), preyere (3484, 6298), clere adj. pl. (4198, 7170).

manere: (1) manere, 33 f, 182 f, 291 f, 880 f, 1014 f, 1052 f, 1122 f,

1 Supply [the] in C; [pes] in D.
Observations on the Language

§ 28.

2596 f (matere D), 2628 f, 2664 f, 2812 f, 2893 f, 2935 f, 3058 f, 3273 f, 3676 f (matere BD), 4254 f, 4291 f, 4555 f, 4585 f, 4946 f, 5315 f (-er D), 5580 f (-er D), 5844 f (-er D), 6392 f (-er D), 6549 f (-er D), 7172 f, 8170 f; manère, 1077 AB (-er D).

(2) manère, maner, bef. cts., (a) manère, 1333 (-er B)¹, 1542 (-er CD)², 1937 (-er C)³, 2460 (-er BC), 2560 (-er D, om. † C), 3631 (-er D, -er of C), 4577 (-er C), 4740, 5664 (-er D), 5939 (-er BCD), 6415 (-er C, -er of D), 7115 (-er CD), 7124 (-er BD, -yr C), 7748 (-er CD), 7918 (-er CD), 8014 (C †; -er D).⁴ (b) manër, 313 (-e BD), 5321 (-e CD), 495 (-e D), 844 (-e D, -er of C), 2189 (-e CD), 3159 (-e BD), 3469 (-e BD), 5822 CD (other AB), 7478 (-e B), 7582, 7640 (om. † C).—manière, bef. vowels, 742 B (-er CD, -eres A), 2001 (-er C), 2353 (-er C). (3) manère † vpon, 7751 A (more CD).

Rhyme words.—here inf. (33, 1014, 1052, 2664, 3058, 4585, 5315), dere adj. (33, 850, 2812, 2893, 2935, 4254, 4291, 4946, 6549), chere n. (182, 291, 880, 1122, 2596, 2628, 2812, 2893, 2935, 3273, 4555, 5315, 6392, 6549, 7172), here hie (291, 1122, 3273, 4550), dere inf. (2664), yere adv. (4555), stere inf. (4946), bere bier (5344), clere adj. pl. (7172), spere sphere (8170).

Note.—In most of the cases under 2a. and 2b. above, maner is used in such phrases as no manere routhe, som manere syde, swych maner folk, any manere syde, every manere wyght, youre friendly (l. fremde) manere speche, etc. 313 is an exception, however.

matere: (1) matère, 53 f, 265 f, 1055 f, 1090 f, 1236 f, 1580 f, 2124 f, 2216 f (mat[e]re B), 2332 f, 2514 f, 2596 † f D (manere ABC), 2711 f, 2779 f, 3032 f, 3128 f, 3212 f, 3274 f, 3358 f, 3676 f BD (manere AC), 3751 f, 4148 f, 4251 f, 4503 f, 5313 f (matier D), 5480 f AB (martir D), ⁵ 5746 f (-er D), 7106 f (-er D), 7314 f (matier D), 7359 f (matier D), 7951 f (matier D).—matèrc (bef. cts.), 968 [-e] B, matyr[e] C), 3371. (2) matère, 144 (matyër (dissyll.) and C), 1346 (-yr C, -er D), 1780 (-er C). (3) matère, 4485 AB (thyng C, thing to D), 7685 (-er C, -er D †), 7735 (-er C, matier dissyll. D).

Rhyme words.—dere, dere adj. (53, 1580, 2216, 2514, 2779, 4148, 4251, 4503, 5313), here inf. (53, 1055, 2711, 3212, 5746, 7314, 7951), audio 3032), referé inf. (265), manere (1055, 3274, 4251), clere inf. (1090), clere adj. pl. (7359), stere guberno (1090), gubernare (3751), chere n. (1236, 2216, 2596, 3274, 4503 (clere † A)), yere adv. (1236, 2124, 2332, 3358), here hie (1580, 2711, 3358, 3676, 4148, 7106, 7359), preyere (3128), desire inf. (5480).

¹ Supply [to] me in A. In all read fremde for friendly (etc.).
² Supply [and] in D. ³ In C read [e]m[e]s; in D, all[e].
⁴ In A read arm[ur]e (with Furnivall).
⁵ In D read [a]fur for ferre.
⁶ In C supply [now].
⁷ In C read defet for disfigured.
⁸ The correct reading seems to be martir. C omits the stanza. G has matere. No note in the Cp. collation.
§ 29. Nouns in consonant +re (variants in -er and -ere).


chaumbre, chambre, chaumber, (i.) dissyllabic before consonants, 2004 (-ir C), 2020 (-yr C), 2202 (-er Ç, -ir D); cf. 358, 547, 2258, 3508, 3518, 3630, 4982, 4904, 5014, 5016 CD, 5394 CD, 6655.

(ii.) Slurred before vowels, chambre || and, 1641 (-er B, -ir C, -rö † and D); chaumber ayr, 3698 (-ere a B, -re a D; C (?) ); cf. 2797, 5016 AB, 5394 AB; chambre he, 6565 (-ere he C) (cf. 6363, 6877). But,—But wel ye wot the chaumber is but lite, 2731 (-er B, -ir C). [358 B, 547 D, 1641 D, are to be corrected.]

disclaundre, 5226 (disclaudre B, disclaudyr C, disclauder D).¹

iaspre: iaspre || vpon, 2314 (-ór on C, -ar on D, iapery † vpon B).

lettre, 2298 f (lettere C) (: bettre adv. : n fenetre inf.), 2782 f (lettere C) (: bettre adv.).

Before consonants (all forms dissyllabic): lettre, 656,² 1188 † C, 2148, 2170 AB, 2175, 2205, 2240, 2246, 2261, 2281, 2286, 2303, 2403, 2421, 2787, 3034, 3062 (D †), 5222 (honour † C), 7656,³ 7704, 7758, 7785,⁴ 7792, 7965.⁵ [In 7995 B alone seems to have the correct reading.⁶] Before vowels the last syllable of lettre is slurred. Thus,—lettre I, 171 (-ér C); ⁷ so in 2091, 2146, 2176 ABD, 2178 AB, 2232 (-ór to C, -rö to D), 7732.

¹ In C read mostē for mort.
² Old-style figures indicate that C has lettere (dissyllable). B has often lettre, which also occurs in A 2421.
³ A needs transposition of thow and a lettre.
⁴ In D read [v]to.
⁵ Supply [that] in AC and [why] in D.
⁶ For This lettre this Troylius, Cp. and John's have Trocilius this lettre. G agrees with B, reading This troilus this lettir thouth al strange.
⁷ Metre defective in D.

When the ending rhymes with itself, the rhyme-words are left unregistered. A remarkable verse is 4647, where we appear to have enuyë || ire (see under enuye). Remedye has the by-form remède.

armonye, 8175 f.
astronomye, 4777 f ( := lye inf.).
baudéry, 3239 f (-ye BC, bawdery D) ( := folye := companye).
companie, companye, compaynye, 191 f (-y CD), 450 f, 1171 f (-y D), 2573 f (-y CD), 2798 f (-y C), 3238 f (-y D), 4590 f, 5369 f, 5864 f, 6429 f, 6810 f. [Var. B compaigne, -ye ; CD cumpanye, cumpanye.]
compaigne he, 7580 (-paynye B, -panye C, -pance D).
Rhyme words.—aspie inf. (191), eye n. (450, 6810), hye n. (1171, 2798), thrie adv. (1171), denye inf. (2573), prye inf. (2798), hye adv. (5364), gye inf. (4590), deye, dy e inf. (5369, 5864).
còpye, 2782 (-ie BD, cópi C).
enuye, 4937 f ( := deye inf. := crye ind. 1 sg.), 7119 f, 7842 f ( := lye mentiuntur := dye inf.).—That pride enuyë || ire and auaryce, 4647 ACD (That pride and ire enuye and auarice B).3
espie (cf. spie), esple, 2197 (aspie B, a spie C, a spye D).

1 ABC we have sent, which the metre requires us to emend to sent[e] or sendeth. D reads sent to ; Cp. sente.
2 Cf. also 7702 C, where, however, we might read lokyn (which would still leave a hard line). 7702 is wrongly filled up by the corrector of C.
3 Cp. = B ; E Phillipps 8522 Harl. 2392 = ACD ; G Selden B 24 John's read That pride enuye and ire and auarice ; Durham II 13 reads That ire enuy and aucye.
fantasye, 1567 f (-y D), 3117 f, 3874 f (-y D), 4346 f, 6132 f (C †), 6624 f, 6692 f (-y C), 6721 f, 6824 f (-y C), 6986 f (-y C), 7886 f. [Var. BCD fantasie; CD fantesie; D fantesy.]

Rhyme words.—crye inf. (3117), dye inf. (4346), espye inf. (6132), drye pati (6624), lye mentiri (7886).

folye, 194 f (-y C), 452 f, 545 f (-y D), 1024 f (-y D), 1859 f (-y D), 2158 f (-y D), 2235 f (-y D), 2371 f (-y D), 2595 f (-y D), 3236 f (-y D), 3680 f, 3709 f (-y D), 3721 f (-y D), 3823 f (-y D), 4224 f (-y C), 6132 f CD †, 6173 f (-y C), 6626 f (-y D). [Var. BCD folie.] folye men, 532 (-y C; D †).—folye for, 6688 (folye B, -y C). folye, 5919 (-y C, fooly D); follye he, 821 (-y CD); folly ofte, 3168 (-ye BCD). follye wroughte, 3604 (folye BC). The only case of elision with slur is folye it, 6240 C, where, however, the right reading is fillthe.

Rhyme words.—aspye inf. (194, 1859, 2595, 3680), eye n. (452), multeplie inf. (545), dye inf. (1024, 2158, 2235, 2595), crye inf. (2158), lye mentiour (2371), mentiur (3721), mentiuntur (4224), thrye adv. (2371), drye pati (6626).

frenésye, 727 f (-ie D) (: dye inf.).

glotonye, 6733 f (-enye CD) (: signifie ind. 3 pl.).

ialousye, -ie, ielousye, 1840 f, 3679 f (B †) (: espie inf. : folye), 3829 f (ielosy D), 3863 f (: crye inf.), 3872 f, 7576 f (: dye. inf. : malencolye).—ialousye, 1838 (ielosy D), 1922 (ielousy D), 3852 (ielosye † the D), 3866 (cf. 3867 † D). [ielousye (disyll.), 4010 A (ielousye D), should be ialous (as in B; ielous C).] [Var. C ielusie; CD ielousie, ielousie.]

ianglerye, 7118 f (iangelerye C, iangellarie D).

iupartie, 1550 f (: thrie adv.), 1857 f (-dy D) (: folye : aspie inf.), 3710 f (-dy D), 3719 f (-dy D †) (: folye : lye inf.), 6048 f (: in lye), 6174 f (-dy C), 7064 f (: spie n.), 7279 f (iupardi C), 7893 f (: lye mentiuntur : dye inf.). [Var. B iupartye; C iupardie, -dye; D iupardye, ieopardie. The divided form iu-partye; 6174 B, is interesting.]

lytargie, 730 f (litargye B, lytargye C, litargie D) (: plye ind. 3 pl. : melodye).

maladye, maledye, 419 f (: dye morior), 1568 f (-dy D), 6679 f (-dy CD) (: dye inf.), 7594 f (maledy C, malady D) (: dye inf.).—maladye awaye, 2600 (-dy BCD).

malencolye, 6723 f (-ly C, -lie D malycolye B), 6985 f (-ly C, -lie D), 7579 f (-ly C, -lie D, melencolye B) (: ialousye : dye inf.), 8009 f (-ly C, -lie D) (: dye inf.).
melodie, -ye, 733 f (-dy D) (: lytargie : plye ind. 3 pl.), 3029 f (: hye adv. : glorifie inf.), 6825 f, 8176 f.
nouellerýe, 1841 f (nouelrye BC, nouelry D).
partie, 1479 (-tye B, -ti C).
poësy, 8153 f (-ie B, -y D) (: dye moriatur : enuye inv. sg.).
opetrie, 8218.
prophesie, 7884 f (-cie BD, professye C) (: fantasye : lye inf.) ; -cý be, 7857 C (-cies B -sies AD).
pye, 3369 (pie B).
remédýe, -le, 6285 f (: dye inf.), 6691 f (-y C), 7280 f (-y C), 7573 f (-y C) (: dye inf.).
Remède and red by erbess she (l. he as in CD) knew fyne,2 661 (remèdye and C, remèdy and D).
Remède in this yf ther were any wyse, 5551 (remèdi in C, remèdye in D) 3.
But what is thanne4 a remede vnto this, 5934 (rèmade, remèdie vnto C, remèdye vnto D).
Ther nys non other remedye yn this cas, 6424 (C has a spurious line).
Syn that ther is no remedye in this cas, 7633.
spie (= speculator), a spie, 7066 f (a spye BC, espie D) (: iupartie).5
(Cf. espie.)
surquidrye, 213 (sur(i)quidrie A, súrquíd and C, sûrquyéd and D).
trecherye, 3120 f (-ie CD) (: crye inf. : fantasye).
vilonye, vilénye, vylonye, 1026 f (vilany D) (: folye : dye inf.), 1523 f (welany C, vilany D) (: crye pres. ind. 1 sg. : dye inf.) 6, 4683 f (: lye mentiantur), 6853 f (: hye ind. 3 pl.). [Var. BD vilanye ; B vylénye, vilénye ; C velenyè.]


This list includes (i.) comèdye, tregèdie, paròdye, and (ii.) nine nouns in -rye (following an accented vowel).

augurye,—By sort and by (om. D) augurye (augury D) ek (eke D) trewely (trewly B, truly D), 4778. And treweliche (truely D) ek (eke D, om. C) augurye (augery C, augurrye D) of this (thise B, thes D, these olde C) foweles (-is B, fouls C, foules D), 6743.

comèdye, 8151 f (: tregedie).

consistòrie, consistòrie among, 4727.

contràrye, in his contràrye, 7742 f (D †) (: wàrye ind. 1 sg.).

1 In A supply [ye].
2 In C read he knew for he knyt.
3 In B supply [were]. In D omit the second (in).
4 C om. thanne.
5 In A supply [?].
6 In AB dele ony (any) or that (?).
§ 31, 32. of Chaucer's Troilus.

fûrye, furie,— furie is, 3879; furge of, 6091 (-ye of D); furge as, 6575 (-y as D; C †); furie and, 4915 AD (furie and BC); furie (dissyl.) || sorwyng, 9 (wight † that D).—Any smert dreedē (-e C) furie and ek sikeness, 5507 (ye and BD, -ie and C).

lêtuâr, 7104 f (lat- B, letewarye C) (: carye ferunt).

memorie, 3671 f (-y D) (: transitorie), 6946 f (: storie : victorie).

mysérîe, mysérîe in, 4934 (myn † deth in C).

paròdie, 7911 f (paradie D) (: vnbodye inf.).

stòrie, stôrye, 6948 f (-y BD) (: memorie : victorie), 8014 f (: victorye);

stôry, 3905 † f D (storyes AB, storij C).—stòrye (dissyl.), 3341 (-y CD; B †)1.—stôry (before consonants), 1116, 7400 (-y B)2, 7414 (-y B), 7457 (-i B).—stôrye it, 7197 (-y it B, -i as C, -y as D).

tregëdie, 8149 f (tregeedie D) (: comedye).

victôrie, -ye, 6949 f (-y C) (: memorie : storie), 8015 f (: storye);

victôrye, 3906 † f D (: storye) (victories AB, -ijs C).

Note.—Compare the proper name Mercury,—Mercury for the loue of Hierse ek, 3571 (Mercure B, -rie C, -ry D); Ther as Mercury sorted hym to dwelle, 8190 A (-ie B). Study, 2265 (-ye B, -ie C, dissyl.), is perhaps rather from studium than from estudie.

§ 32. A few Romance words that end in a consonant in French take an -e in the Troilus.

acèsse (O. Fr. aces), 2400 f (: beasynesse), 2663 f (axsesse C) (: sykeness); -e, 2628 (acces C, actis † D).

asûre (O. Fr. asur, azur), 4212 f (: auenture n. : scripture).

aunteyllle (cf. O. Fr. esventail), 7921 f (: by-waylle inf. : mayle).

darte (O. Fr. dart), 5433 f (: departe pres. 1 sg.); cf. 5134 f (§ 36, n. 2).

disioynte (cf. O. Fr. disjoint p.p.), 3338 f (-t D) (: poynte inf.);

disioynte [c], 7981 f (-e B) (: apoynte inf.).

excesse (rather from Lat. excessus than from Fr. excès), èxcessè doth, 626 (-ces C).

mene, meene (O. Fr. meien), 3096 f, 6467 f (meane D); -e, 689 (C † D †), 7914 (-e † out D).

Rhyme words.—I mene (3096, 6467), clene adj. (3096).

pere (O. Fr. per), see note at end of § 28.

trauâylle, trauâylle (O. Fr. travail), 21 f, 475 f, 1088 f, 2522 f, 3364 f, 8215 f. trauayle, 6547.—trauayle, 372 (-H D †)3; cf. trauayl,

6457 † C (l. labour).

1 In C insert [none].
2 In B read teille[th].
3 A doubtful line. "Ymagynynge (-ing D) that (C inserts neythre) trauayylle
(-uaiille B, -nayle C, -ualiille G, -valH D) nor (and D, ne G) grame (gaine C, game D)." Mr. Austin's collation gives grace for grame as the reading of Cp.E, but registers no other variants.
Rhyme words.—anayle inf. (21, 2522, 3364, 8215), sayle inf. (1088), fayle inf. (2522, 3364), rascayle (8215), meruayle n. (475). [Var. B tranaille, tranelle (2522); BD tranaille.]

Note 1.—In 2317 Professor Child has suggested to me that we should read by gynne (dat. of gyn 'contrivance,' etc.) instead of bygynne (ABD) or be-gyn (C) (; with-inne). I find that G actually reads.—And incurability thus ful softly by gynne. The Cp. collation shows no variants.

Note 2.—For feuer, feuer, see § 18.

Note 3.—April, etc. Of Aperil (Aperille C, appaрайlle D, April G, April E) when clothed is the mede, 156 (no variants in Cp. collation); And seyde (seid D) frend yn April (Aperil B, Aprille C) the laste, 3202 (not in G, no variants in Cp. collation); Doun fille (Out ran C, Out ronne John's) as shour (schoure G) in (of C) Aperiff (Aprille C, Aripp DG) swythe (ful swythe C), 5413. Aperille seems to be certain for 156, 3202, and for 5413 C. In 5413 the other MSS. require Aперille. On the forms of April in Chaucer, see Varnhagen's 'Ueber die verschiedenen Formen des Namens des vierten Monats bei Chaucer,' appendix to Freudenberger, Ueber das Fehlen des Auftakts, pp. 33 ff. (Erlanger Beiträge zur engl. Philol., IV). Varnhagen is inclined to believe that Averil, April, Aперille (Averil), Aprilë are all known to Chaucer. See also Murray's Dictionary, s.v. March (L. Martius) occurs in 1850 as Marche AD (March BC).

§ 33. Words ending in Old French in -é and -ée end indiscriminately in -e in Chaucer. (See ten Brink, § 223 V.)

In the following list no variants are registered. Old-style figures indicate that a vowel follows without elision.

aduersité, 25 f, 404 f, 2861 f, 4467 f, 7446 f, 7738 f.

auctorité, 65 f.

beauté, 102 f, 1479 f.—beauëtë, 975, 1421, 1426, 1431, 1433, 1483, 4572, 4583, 7181, 7277, 7618, 7770.

benyguite, 40 f, 1617 f, 2881 f, 4127 f.

bestialité, 735 f.

bounté, 4771 f.—bohntë, 2529, 3724, 4116, 4505; b. hem, 4106.

charité, 49 f, 4096 f.

cité, cytë, 100 f, 129 f, 149, 5867.—cïté, 59, 2231, 5347, 6141, 7206, 7269, 7849, 7850, 7859.

contré, 7837 f.—côntre, 7834; c. hath, 1127.

cruelté, 586 f, 1076 f, 5434 f.

degré, degree, 244 f, 437, 844 f, 6324 f, 7199, 7723 f.

déité, 3859 f.—dête infernal, 6205.

destené, destyné, 520 f, 2176 f, 3576, 5621 f, 5631, 6364 f.

deynté, 1249 f.—deýntë, 3451, 6801 (adj. ?).

duëté, 3812.

dyuersité, 3247, 8156 f.

êtré, 1162 (-ee B).
§ 33, 34. of Chaucer's Troilus.

felicité, 3656 f, 4533, 5142 f, 7126, 8181 f. honesté, 1791, 6238 f.

iolyté, 559. liberté, 1858 f, 2377 f, 6019, 6648 f, 7663 f. meyné, 127 f.—meyné, 1699, 6889.

mutabilité, 851 f. natiuyte, 127 f. meyne, 1699, 6889.

possibilité, 1692 f, 3290 f. predeinstiné, 5628 f.

preuyté, preueté, 2482 f, 3125, 5773 f. proprété, 2649 (D †).

propreté hire, 5054 (properte B, properete C, prosperite † D).2 prosperité, 3659 f, 4469 f.

qualité, 2873 f, 4496 f. quantité, 412 f, 6049 f.

souerynté, 3013 f. soueraynte, 3013 f.

surté, 1918 (seurté BCD); seurté, 4520 (seurte C). súrî, 4520 (seurte C).

cvnité, 2871 f, 8229 D.

vanité, -yté, 5198 f, 5365, 5391 f, 8180 f, 8200 f.

Note 1.—For pardé, cf. 717 f, 849 f, 1754 f, 1817 f, etc., etc. (pàrdé, cf. 2404, 5186, 5203, 5752, pàrdé harm, 3755) (see also § 34, VI.). For benedicite (trisyllable) see 780 f (bendistee B, ben(e)diste C), 3599 f, 3702.

Note 2.—For chimene[ç] (O. Fr. cheminée), see 3983 f (chymeneye B, chemeneye C, chymeny D) : (tweye). For vâley (O. Fr. valée), see (i.) 6430 (-e B), (ii.) 943 (valy C). For noble[ç] (O Fr. noblie, noblée) before a vowel, see 6332.

§ 34. Romance nouns which have no final -e in French show none in the Troilus. (A few Latin words are included in this section.)

In the following list of examples, variants are not regarded except as they concern -e (which some MSS. add sporadically, but which is never sounded). MS. D is usually disregarded altogether. The accent is recessive unless otherwise marked. For convenience the

1 B alone of the four is metrical. Cp. also has piëté. 2 A has his †.
Observations on the Language

examples are classed as,—(I.) words in -er; (II.) words in -our; (III.) words in -ent, -ment; (IV.) words in -aunt; (V.) words in -s; (VI.) words in a vowel; (VII.) miscellaneous words. For nouns in -ion, -ioun, see the chapter on metre.

I. Words in -er:
astrologer, 4257 f (see note below).
auter (O. Fr. alter, autier), 7829.
aualnter, cf. auauantour.
coler (O. Fr. colier), (i.) 8023. (ii.) 7174 (colèr † be-hynde C).
corner (O. Fr. cornier, -e) (ii.) 6938.
courser (O. Fr. corsier), 6448 (curser B, coursir C).
daunger (O. Fr. dangier), (i.) 1469 (-(e) C †), 2328, 2461, (ii.) 1484, 4163 (daunder † A).
dyner (O. Fr. disner), (i.) 2574, 2682. (ii.) 2645.
herber (O. Fr. herbier), 2790 (erber BC).
heroner (O. Fr. haironnier), (ii.) 5075 (goshaук † C6).
laurer (O. Fr. laurier), 3384, 3569; cf. 7470.
leyser, layser (O. Fr. leisir), (i). 1312,1 2454, 3042, 7308. (ii.) 3358; l. haue, 3352; l. had, 4401.
messager (O. Fr. messagier), 4259 f (massangere C, messanger D).
papir (O. Fr. papier), (ii.) 7960 (-er † ful C).
percher (quasi O. Fr. *perchier), 5907 C (l. morter).
power (O. Fr. poeir), (i.) 5120, 6529. (ii.) -ér, 1252.
presoner (O. Fr. prisonier), (ii.) p. he, 4841 (pris- BD).
quarter (O. Fr. quartier), (ii.) 7243, 8061.
soper, souper (O. Fr. soper), (i.) 3437 (A †), 3452. (ii.) 2032, 3449,2 6881.
squyer (O. Fr. escuyer), (ii.) 191 (swyer B).

Note.—In some of the words in this list the ending is doubtless the native -er (A.S. -ere). So also in iapere, 1425.

II. Words in -our:
accousour, (ii.) 4292 (C †; -er D).
auctor, (i.) 394 (autour BCD), 1103 (auter D), 1134 (-our B, autour D); cf. 3344, 3417, 4038, 7451. (ii.) cf. 3858, 4607.
auauntour, (i.) 1809 (-er A). (ii.) 3150 (A †), 3151 (-e A), 3156.
conquerour, 7157 f (-e B).
errour, (ii.) 1001 (-e B), 5655 (-e B).
fauour, 1748, 2221.

1 Insert [this] in A. 2 Insert [the] in C.
flour, 7155 f (-e C).

honneur, (i.) 888, 1442, 1557, 1565, 1823, 2654, 3001, 3859, 4933, 5229, 5323, 6237, 7723, 8098. (ii.) 1382, 1847, 1989, 2517, 2538, 3007, 3786, 6104, 6223, 6328. (ii.) 287, 1967, 2995 (-e B), 3005, 5991 1.—dishonneur, 1816; dishonneur, 7429 (-e B), -our & (slur) C).
lâbour, 965 (-e AB), 4276, 6457 (-e B, travayl C). (ii.) 948, 1035, 2289; labour he, 3917 (l. (that) he C). —labour, (ii.) 5084, cf. 199.

langour, (i.) 5506 (-ur C, -or D), 6405 A (-e B, -or D). (ii.) 6608 (longyng CD), 6631 (-e B, -ur(e) C), 6760 (-ur C).

licour, 5182 (-quore D). 2

myrour, mirour, (i.) 1351 (-e B); (ii.) 365. myrour of, 1927.

parlour, (ii.) 1167.

peyntour, 2126.

rumour, (ii.) 6416.

sauour, (ii.) s. han, 1354 (-aur A).

socour, (ii.) s. hem, 4793 (-e B, mercy CD).

traytour, -or, (i.) 87, 4866. (ii.) 3115 (tractor B), 4542 (-ous A); traytour comune, 4667.

tremour, 6618 (-or A).

tresour, (i.) 4747, 6176 (-or(e) C). (ii.) 3716 (-or C).

vapour eterne, 2853.

vigour, (ii.) 3930.

Note.—Harpour for harper (A.S. héarpere) occurs, see 2115.

III. Words in -ent, -ment:

accident, (i.) 3760. (ii.) a. [h]is, 6167.

accusément, 5218 f (-e B, acusament C).

argument, (i.) 5139, 5841 f. (ii.) 5618.

assént, 5008 f (-e B), 5197 f (-e B, assen C), 5216 f (-e B), 5595 f.

auisément, auysément, (i.) 5598 f (-e B), 5962 f, 8174 f (-e B) (: went p.p.). (ii.) 1428 (-e B).

element, 8173 f (-e B) (: went p.p.).

entendément, 6358 (B †).

hardiment, 5195 f (-e B, hardy † men C).

instrument, 10 f, 631 f (: myswent p.p.), 6805 f (-e B) (: ywent p.p.).

iuggément, 5961 f.

pacient, 1083.

1 Insert [an] in AC. BCp. John’s have an.

2 Insert [out] in A.
Observations on the Language

parlêment, (i.) 4805, 4873 f (-e B), 5006 f, 5326, 5959 f. (ii.) 4880
(-men C); p. he, 5039, cf. 5221.
preçident, 4875 f (president BCD).
sentement, 2885 f (-e B) (: present adj.), 5839 f (-e B). (ii.) 1098.
serpent, (i.) 3679. (ii.) 7860.
talènt, 2987 f.
tòrment, (i.) 6360, 7003 (-e B, tur(ne)ment C). (ii.) 6790 (-e B,
turnent † C); cf. 404, 5473, 5554, 7017, 7955. tormènt, 8 f.

IV. Words in -aunt:
auaunt, (i.) 1043 (-e B), 1812 (-e B)
geaunt, 7201.
graunt, (ii.) 5214 (-e B).
remenaunt, 6038 (-e B).
seruaunt, (i.) 15 † B, 6536, 7708. (ii.) 3825, 4329.
tyraunt, 2325.

V. Words in -s:
auys, (i.) 5078 f (-e C) (: wys adj. sg.). (ii.) 620, 3295.
burges, 5007 (borwis C, burgeys and A).
cas, (i.) 29 f, 271, 568, 836 f, 1370, 1507 f, 1510, 1542 f, 1689, 1814,
2153 A †, 2431 f, 2560 f, 2696, 2765 (B †), 3121, 3125 f, 3683 f,
4461, 4952 f, 5078, 5082, 5456 f, 5542, 6171, 6424 f, 7427, 7633 f,
8001. (ii.) 1843, 2741 (cause C), 3014, 5050, 5233, 5290; cas he,
5311.
choys, (ii.) 5633 (cloys † B), 5642, 5721.
conuers, 8173.
cors, (ii.) 7105 (C †).
cours (O. Fr. cours, course), (i.) 2055, 2470 (coures B), 8108. (ii.)
encrés, (ii.) 2418 (-eas B, encreseth † hope C), 4618 (-ce D), 5919
(-cresse B).
paas, pas, 1705 (-çe B), 1712 (-çe B), 2434 f, 3123 f, 6423 f, 6967 f
(pace B).
pàlais, pùlays, -eys, pàylays, (i.) 324, 1161, 1593, 1701 (l. om. † C),
2018, 2179, 2337 (to p. ward) (payleysseward B), 2622, 4371, 4376,
6564, 6875, 6903, 6907, 6910. (ii.) 6886, 6888, 6905.
paradys, 7180 ; cf. 5526.
pes, pees, (i.) 352, 3899, 4151, 4762 f, 5117, 5266 AC, 6014, 6021,
pows, (ii.) 3956 (pous B, pous(e) C).

průces, (i.) 1509, 2700 (-cesse D), 3176 (-cessē BD), 3312 (cessē D), 4581 (-cessē D), 5080 (-cessē BD). (ii.) 1353 (-cessē BD), 1377 (-cesse B, -cessē D), 1570 (-cesse B, mater C), 1763, 7854; cf. 6946 (before haue).

purs, (ii.) 1266; p. hym, 2670; p. hath, 273.

purpos, (i.) 142, 379, 1062, 1130, 1982, 3172 (therto J C), 3291, 3973, 5396, 5782, 6539, 7117, 7133, 7392, 7939. (ii.) 5, 2700, 4699, 6082, 8162; p. how, 7823.

rembrs, (ii.) 554.

recours, 2437 f.

socours, 2439 f.

solàs, 31 f, 1545 f, 6970 f.

surplus, 4722.

trays (Fr. traits, pl.), 222 (-e) B.

tretis, -ys, 4726, 4798, 5332.

voys, (i.) 1911, 2887, 2934, 6940, cf. 4565. (ii.) 111, 422 (-ce C), 2935, 4079, 4857 (acord C), 5809, 7164; v. he, 725 (-ce B), 6999.

Note.—For ruby (O. Fr. rubi, rubis), see VI., note.

VI. Words ending in a vowel (not -e):

anoy, 5507.

araý, 2349 f, 3378 f, 4640, 6332; a. his, 2352.

assaý, 6170 f; cf. 7672 † C.

asçry aros, 1696 (the acry C, in the skye † D).

cry, 1281.

delay, 3721.

dieu; a dieû, 5292 (adew C, and dey † D); cf. 2170 CD. (Cf. pardieûx, 197; pardeûx, 1844; depardieûx, 2143, 2297; parde, § 33, n. 1.)

lay, 1149 f, 2006 f.

May, 1135, 1197, 3904 f, 6788 f, 7207 f.

merry, (i.) (ii.) 535, 1502, 1676, 2161, 2940, 5811, etc., etc.; graunt

mërcy, (i.) (ii.) 3491, 4147, 5294, 6322; grant mercy, 1324 f.

prow (O. Fr. prou), 333 f (-e B), 2749 f, 7152 f.

tissew (O. Fr. tissu), t. heng, 1724 (-ewe D, C †).

torney, 6331.

1 In AC supply [out]; in D supply [hem]. BECp. have oute; John’s has out.
Observations on the Language [§ 34.

Vertu, (i.) 429, 1078, 4591, etc. (ii.) 438 (-ue B), 4130, 4977, etc.—
Vertue, 896 AB (-u CD). [Cf. vertulæ, § 49, n. 5.]

Note.—For ruby (O. Fr. rubi, rubis), see 1670 (rebe C), 2172 (-ye C), 4213 (-t C), 6912.

VII. Miscellaneous.

Note.—Variants are usually not registered. In none of the following words is there a sounded -e, though -e is occasionally written, even in A. D very frequently adds such irrational -e’s (-e, -ë), B not seldom (as agréfe, appetite, arte, char, conforte, conseyle, conseuyle, covarde, delite, dispaire, desire, demoure (for deuoir), estate, folle, meschefe, ost, porte, poynte, refreyne, reporte, resorte, revarde, scorne, though in the case of most of these words the form without -e also occurs), and in C -e or -ë is sometimes found (e. g., conseuyle, 985; desire, 4324; abile, 109; parte, 5087; effecte, 212, etc.).

Abet, 1442 (abek C).

Agrief (a = on, O. Fr. gref, grief), 3704 f ([a]gref A), 4463 f, cf. 5275 f.

Appetit (O. Fr. appetit, -te), 6339 f (-e BD).

Art (O. Fr. art), (i.) (ii.) 659, 920 f, 1096, 4175 f, 5928; a. hire, 1342.

Atýr (ii.) 181.

Awayt, (ii.) 3299 (om. A).—Awayte, 3421 (-t BC).

Bareoun, 4695 f, 4852 f.

Bayard, 3867 (beschop C, busshell D).

Caytyf, (ii.) 4766.

Char (O. Fr. char, cf. charre), 4546 f (-e BD); charhors, 7381 (-e h. D).

Closert, 1684, 2300, 3505, 3529.

Confort 845, 4736 (confert B), 4980; confort, 7531.—Comfort, 528 f, 50 f, 2840 f, 2978 f. (Cf. discomfort.)

Comparyson, 5112 f.

Conceyt, (ii.) 989.

Counseyl, counsayl (O. Fr. conseil), (i.) 985, 2129, 5101 (A?), 5547. (ii.) 5776, 6793 (-e B).—Counseyl, (i.) 743.

Contek (etym. dub.), (ii.) 7842.

Cost, 3364.

Coward, as adj., c. drede, 6235 (-e B); coward(e) herte, 6071 (-d BD; C ?)

Daun, (i.) (ii.) 70, 4851, 7851, 7852.

Debat, 1838 f (-e CD).

Delt, delyt, (i.) 1794 f, 4218 f, 6330, 6340 f, 6501 f (-yt C). (ii.) 762, 4152, 6198 (-yt C).

Desdaýn, 5853 f.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

 désesper, (i.) 605 (dis[es]pair D).—despeyr, 813 f (dispaýr B; D †); despeyr that, 5616 (-e) D, dispair(e) B. (Cf. also 779 A, 1091, 1615 f.)

desir, (i.) 311, 374, 465, 607, 2419 f, 3328 f, 4105, 4324, 4373, 4477 f 4493, 5235. (ii.) 296, 381, 2422, 3268, 4388, 5057, 5234, 6061; d. hym, 4381.

despeyr, see désesper.

des- dispit, (i.) 1796 f, 2134, 3879 f, 4216 f, 6337 f, 6498 f. (ii.) 207, 4547, 4786, 7606, 8056; d. hym, 902; d. hadde, 4629.

desport, 592 f, 4971 f.

deuoir, (ii.) 3887.

deuyn (O. Fr. devin), 66.

discomfort, 4973 f, 5510 f. (Cf. comfort.)

effect (Lat. effectus, cf. O. Fr. effect), (i.) (ii.) 212, 2305, 2464, 2651, 3188 D (-e B), 3347, 4422, 4657, 5552, 5956, 6541, 6740, 7372, 7786, 7984, 7992, 8147.

ingyn, 1650, 3116 f.

estat, (i.) (ii.) 130, 287, 432 (estal † A), 884, 1290, 1304, 1550, 1746, 1792, 1836 f, 1966, 2223, 5246, 6198, 7388, 8112, etc.

eyr (O. Fr. air), 7034.

facon, fawkon, (i.) 4626. (ii.) 5075.

feith, feyth (O. Fr. feid, feit, fei, apparently with Eng. abstract -th), (i.) 89 (feyt C), 336 (-e) B, fay C), 1254, 2048, 2188 (fey B, fay † vnkele C), 4593, 8027. (ii.) 1247, 1495, 2588 (-e) B), 7622 (feight D), etc.

fol, fool, (i.) (ii.) 532, 618, 630, 1455 (fel A), 1485, 2930, 3741, 4307, 6461, 7149, 7886.

fôrest, 7598, 7600.

fruyt, 385.

fynt, (i.) (ii.) 1510, 1612, 1842, 1879, 2681, 2967, 3355, 3395, 5139 f, 5584, 8191, 8192, 8193, 8194, 8195, 8215.

gardeyn, -yn, (i.) 1899, 2202, 4580. (ii.) 1904, 2199. [With slur, 1905 A.]

greyn (ii.) 3868.

grief, (ii.) 2717. (Cf. agrief.)

growel, (ii.) 3553 (gruwel B).

groyn, (ii.) 349.
guerdon, -oun, 6957, 7752, 8215 AB; g. hire (eam), 818.

habit, 109.

idyót, 903.
Observations on the Language

lambýc (O. Fr. alambic), As licour (-quore D) out (om. A) of a (om. D) lambyc (-bic B, -bik C, -bykè D) ful faste, 5182.

lesson, (ii.) 2893.
mantel, (ii.) 1465.
mýschef, (i.) 755.—chêf, 5276 f; -chièf, 4464 f.
nerf, (ii.) 1727.

nygard (O. N. hnogg-r + Romance -and), n. haue, 4221.
ost, (i.) (ii.) cf. 80, 4691, 5261 f, 6284 f, 6379, 6435, 7115, 7713 (hest(e) C). [Var. B oost, ostë, oste.]
paiet, (ii.) 3071.
part, (i.) (ii.) cf. 918 f, 3148, 3281, 4173 f, 4718, 4843, 5087 (-e C), 5665, 5690, 7681; p. he, 2413.
pencel (O. Fr. penoncel), (ii.) 7406 (-sel BC).

pylgrym, 7940.
quysshon, 2314 (-en B, -yn C), 3806 (-en B, qwischin C).
refreyn, 2656 f (-e B).

refuyt (O. Fr. refuit, refuite), (ii.) 3856 (-fut BC).

resiort, 2976 f.

respect, (ii.) 8181, cf. 4748.
respit, 6500 f.
reward, (ii.) 2218, 8099.
saf cundwýt hem, 4801 C (safe conduýt D, saue-garde sente A, saue garde sente B).
scorn, skorn, (i.) 318, 335. (ii.) 514, 902.

scryt, 2215.
sermon, (ii.) 2050. sermon, -oum, 2200 f, 2384 f, 5499 f.

seson, (ii.) 168 (-on A).
seynt, (ii.) 6916.
signal, (ii.) 5480.
signet (O. Fr. signet, sinet). (ii.) 2172 (synet C).
sort (O. Fr. sort), (i.) 76 (sôt B, byfor D), 2839 f (kankedort:}
comfort n.). (ii.) 3889 ABC (D t), 4778 (D†), 6063 (-e B, -e † to D), 6066 (-e D†).

soun, sown, (i.) (ii.) 732, 1890, 2203 f, 6943.

spirit, (i.) (ii.) 362, 423, 3650, 4193, 4620, 4982, 5373, 5448, 5814, 5861, 5872, 6282, 7575.

Note. The metre requires that spirit (7575 C), sprygt (5448 C), and spryt (C in vv. 307, 4193, 5814, 5872) be expanded to spirit, and 423 C also needs correction; cf. 4620 C.

stomak, 787.

strylf, 1865 f (-ft A, -fe B), 1922 f, 6704 f.

subgit, 1913 (subject C, suget D).

treson, 1878, 8101. tresoun, 107 f.

venym, (ii.) 3867.

ver (Latin), 157 (veer B).

vessël, 6674.

wanley, (ii.) 3507, 7540.

werbul (from the verb, cf. O. Fr. werbler), w. harpe, 2118.

§ 35. The genitive singular of nouns, both Anglo-Saxon and Romance, ends in the Troilus for the most past in -es, irrespective of original gender and declension.

Note.—CD usually have -is or -ys; B has -is in 453 (brestis), but regularly -es. In the following list trivial varieties in spelling are not registered.

Examples are,—

I. aspes, an a. lef, 4042 (-is C, auspen D).

asses, 2127.

beddes, 359, 3524.

brestes, 453.

bryddes, 2006.


dethes wounde, 4539.

dowues, 4338.

emes, 1551, 1557.

horses, 223.

kynges, 226, 889, etc.

loues, 15, 34, 905, 2191, etc.

lyues creature, 4914 (C †), 5429 (other † c. C); lyues ende, 7917 (last[c] † D).

maydes, 3147 (maydëns C, -dënes D).

mouses, 3578.

nyghtes, 1990, 4684.

shames, 180.

someres, 3903 (-eris C, somers D).

sonnes, 4546 (sunnys C, sunnis D), 7602 (sunnys C).

sorwes, 2151 (-owis D).

tales, 1345.

widewes, 109 (wedewys C, wydewys D), 170 (wedewys C); wydewes, 1199 (-owes B,
-ouis D, wedewis C); wydwes, wykes, 6862 (wekes B, woukis C, wookes D).
1307 (-owes B, -ouis D, wedewis C).

wightes, wyghtes, 660, 1280, wordes, 6242, 7257, 7421 (wor[il]des B), 8195, 8214.

Note.—In the phrase *lynes creature* (see 4914, 5429), as well as in that *lynes body* (Hous F. 1063), Professor Skeat regards *lynes* as an adverb (A.S. *lifes*): see his notes, Minor Poems, p. 347, Prioresses Tale, etc., Glossary, s.v. *lynes*. The Anglo-Saxon adverbial *lifes* is, however, never used attributively, and one can hardly believe that *lynes* in a *lynes creature* was felt by Chaucer as very different in construction from *shames deth* (Leg. Good W. 2064, 2072), or *dethes* in *dethes wounde* (Troll. 4539) or *dethes wo* (Arthour and Merl., 2108), or *lynes* (undoubtedly a genitive pure and simple) in *lynes day* (Leg. Good W. 1624), or, especially, *mannes* in the line, *Ector or any mannes creature* (Troll. 1502). For a rather late example of the construction, cf. “Whereby my hart may thinke, although I see not thee, That thou wilt come, thy word so swere, if thou a *lynes man* be” : Tottel’s Miscellany, Arber, p. 154. Professor Bright (Modern Lang. Notes, 1889, col. 363) explains *lynes* (gen.) body as “a living person’s body,” “a living man,” taking *lyf* in the familiar Middle English sense of “a living person;” but this does not explain *lynes creature or lykes man* (unless we regard these phrases as due to analogy) and seems less likely than the interpretation of *lynes* in the sense of “of life”; cf. Byron’s *a thing of life* (=a living thing = a *lynes creature*). On *Lynes* and *dethes* cf. Mätzner, s. vv.

II. disdayn[e]s prison, 2302(-ys C), disdeynous † D).

fortunes, 4467.

Mayes day the thridde, 1141; a [doutës † wenynge, 5654 B (doutous AD).]

Mayes morwe, 2183.

[fûries (dissyl.)] 1521 † C.]

1. In one case the scribe of Ch has formed a genitive (to the destruction of the metre) by adding to a proper name is as if a separate word : *Nisus is douȝyr, 7473 (nîsus ABD)*. Compare with this the form *herteis* (gen. sg.), which occurs at least three times in C (viz., 1620, 2482, 3887). Note 2.—*The goddessse wretche*, 933 C, error for *goddes*, may serve as one more argument, in addition to those mentioned by ten Brink, § 109 a, that *s* in the genitive was unvoiced in Chaucer’s pronunciation. Cf. also *heuennes* for *heuenes, 6256 B*. It is a little odd that ten Brink should cite Mod. Eng. *else* as having a voiced *s* (“dagegen freilich else mit tönendem s = ME. *elles*”).

§ 36. A few words make a genitive without change of form. Thus,—

his lady grace, 1117, 3314 (ladi C), 4672, 4619 † D (ladyes thank AB, ladyis thank C).
this lady name, 99 ABD (ladyis C).

his lady mouth, 812 (ladyis C).

his lady heste, 3999 (his l. liste † B, his ladijs heste C, his ladies heest D).
his lady honour, 7440 (his [lady] h. B?, C; ladies D).

But,—

my ladys depe sikes, 7038 (ladys B, ladijs C, lady D).

any herdë tale, 4076 ACG (hard † B, heerdís D).

oure tongë deference, 395 A (tonges difference B, tungis differens C, spechis † differens D).

hertë blod, 1530 (hertys B later, -[e] D).

myn hertë lust, 1915 (-es B, -is C, -is † lyf D).

his hertë reste, 3973 B (-es A, -is CD), herte . . . suffisaunce, 6302 BC (-es AD).

hire herte variaunce, 8033 (-es AD, -is C).

his hertë botëne, 297 C (-es AB, -is D). [Cf. 6816 C (?).]

But,—

for hertes cf. 1620 (-is BD, -cis C), 2482, 3887, 3973, 8103, 8112.

thi brother wyf, 678 B (brotheres A, brotheris CD).

his fader carte, 7028 B (fadres AD, fadyris C).

your fadir tresoun, 117 D (fadres B, faderis C).

But,

hirë fadres shame, 107 (fadërës B, fadërys C, fadris D).

my fadres graunt, 5214 (faderis C).

your fadres sleughte, 6158 (fadërys sleyt[e] C, fadres sleughtes D).

hirë fadres . . . tente, 7385 (fadërës C).

Note 1.—The following cases seem to be instances of heuene in composition, not genitives (cf. A.S. heofon-cyning, -dréam, -rice, etc.)—heuene blysse, 3546 (hevyn blis[se] D), 4164 BE (blyssyd † A, blis[se] C, heven blisse D), 4499 (heuene B, hevyn blis[se] D); heuen quene, 6256 CD (heuene A, heu(y)nes[se] † B); heuene † egle, 4338 D; cf. the heuene heighe, 1989 (the h. (h)eye B, [the] heuenis eye C, the hevenis eye D); heuëmys † ly3t, 4962 C. (Heuene,-es, etc., dissyllabic throughout.)

Note 2.—Compare also peple speche, 3426 AD (peoples B, puple ? C?); Criseyde dare, 5134 A (-es BD, -[e] C) 4; Criseyde hous, 6891 A (-es BD, -is C). But,—Criseydes net, 4575 (-is D); Criseydes eyen, 4972 (-is D); Criseydes herte, 7138 (-is C).

§ 37. Many proper names in -s have the genitive identical in form with the nominative. Thus,—

the kyng Priamës sone, 2 (Pryamys D).

Tröylus vnsely aventure, 35.

Pandarës voys, 725 (ys C, -is D).

1 Supply [For] in A; [is] in D. 2 Read ye (wrye inf.). 3 C defective. 4 In this verse perhaps the scribes of AC took Criseyde for a nom. and darte for an inf., and this may be right. The Cp. collation has no note.
Observations on the Language [§§ 37, 38.

Tröylhs persone, 1786.
Pándarús byhest, 2414, 3188.
Pandarús lóre, 2426.
Deiphèbus hons, 2599 (déiphèbus (?) D), 2625.
Pándarús reed, 2624 (-is C).
Pándarús entente, 2808.
Venus heriynge, 2890.
Tröylhs seruyce, 4657 (cf. 7369 † B).
Hérculès lyoun, 4694 (-is B).
Calkas ere, 4725.
Calkas doughter, 5325.
Saturnus doughter, 6200 (Saturnes BD, -ys C).
Phebus suster, 6253.
Archymóris burynge, 7862 (archimoris B, arichmoure † C, Archemories D).
Tydeus (Tideus BD, Thedeus C) sone that doun descended is, 7877.

Some other genitives of proper names—
Ioües name, 878 (Ioües B, ievalys C, Iovis D).
Ioues doughter, 2845 (Iovis D).
natal Ioües feste, 2992 (-is C, D †).
Ioues face, 5999 (ioüys C; Ioue in his † face D, = in 's †).
Martes highę seruyse, 3279 (-is CD).
Cupides sone, 7953 (-is C, Cu(s)pides D).
Argyues wepynge, 7872 (arthmes † C).
Penèlopéęs trouthe, 8141 (-ę[ę]s B, Penálopées D).
Palládi0n[ę]s feste, (161 Palladyon[ę]s B, Palas † dionis C, Palládións † D, Palládiónęs G).
Troyes town, 7131 B (-ę AC); Troyęs cyte, 100 (-yis C).

Note.—The Latin genitive aiores may here be added—
Tho woeful teris that they leten falle
As bittre weren out of teris kynde
For peyne, as is ligne aiores or galle, 5797-9
(lignum aiores C one syl. over measure).

§ 38. The plural of nouns (A.S. and Romance) ends regularly in -ęs (-is, -ys) or (if the nominative ends in a weak -e) in -s (Child, § 22; ten Brink, § 202, 206, 210, 213, 225). Examples are:
I. belles, 1890 (-e[s] C, -is D).
foughles, 787 (fowles B, foulys C, foulis D); fougles, 6743 f
(-is B, foulis C, foules D)
(: owlys : foul(e) is).
soules, 5866 (-is C), 8206.
tales, 2017 (-is C), etc., etc.
walles, 7029 (waH = wallis C).
bemes, 7006 (-ys C, -es (?) D).
strcraes, 305 (-ys CD).
lymes, 282 (-ys C), 5844 (leinys C, lymmes D), 5844
(cf. 7164.
pawmes, 3956 (paumys C).
soiie*, 1255 (-ys C, -is D).
stones, 1953 (-ys CD, stonnes B).
sires, 4841 (serys C, sir[e]s D).
shoures, 470 (-is C, -ys D).
speres, 4705 (-is D), 8123.
sterres, 1994 (-ys C, -is D), 6637
(-is C), 8175.
auentures, 3 (-is D); cf. creatures, 7891.
apes, 906 f (-is C, -ys D).
apes (-is CD), 904, 930, 2252
(D f).
shippers, 58 (-is D).
sobbes (-is CD), 4910, 5037.
leucs, 4887 (-ys C, -is D), 6095
(-ys C).
loues, 6707 (-ys C), 8211.
wyues, 6742 f (-ys C, vyues B, wiffes D) (: lyues pl., -ys C, liffes D);
: cf. 1204 f.
bokes, 788 (-ys C, -is D), etc., etc.
sykes, 4999 (-ys C, -is D), etc.
Grekes, 533 (-ys C, -is D), etc., etc.
rokses, 2469 1 (rochis C').
wrecches, 3775 f (wriches B, wrechis C, wrecchis D).
tacches, 3777 f (tecches BD, techis C).
facches, 3778 f (feeches BD, fecchis C).
specches, 3332 (-ë ‡ C).
ages, 1112 f (: vsages pl.).
dogges, 5288 (-is C).
ymâges, 1458 (emagis C, ymagis D).
yates, 7540 (-is C).
nettes, 4197 (-is C).
nyghtes, 4598 f (nyty3s C, om. † D) (: myghtes pl.).
routes, 1705 (-ys C).
rîtes, 8212 f (vyces † A, ri3tes † D) (: appetites pl.).
shotes, 1143 (shottis D).
festes, 7792 f (-is C) (: byhestes pl., -e[s] B, -is C).
abodes, 3696 (abedes, abydis, abodis).
dedes, 4392 (-is CD), 7166 (-is C), 8133.
flodes, 4602 (-is C). 2
gledes, 1623 (-en C, -is D).
goddess, 3226 (-ys C, -is D), 6068
(-is C), 8213, etc.
nedes, 355 (-is CD), etc.
hondes, 3956 f (-is C) (: bondes pl.).
clotes (-is C), 2629, 5440.
monethes, 1135 (monthes B, D †); monthes, 7129 (mony-
this C, monethes D), etc.
othes, 7626 (-is CD), etc.

1 Read my[i]-stones at the end of the line in AD. 2 Supply [o] in A.
II. dayes, 2831f (daiais C) (: de-
layes, -is C); cf. notes 1, 2,
below.
weyes, 1907 f (: aleyes pl.,

III. bowes (=: boughs), 1906 (-is
CD).
bowes (=bows arcus), 4702 (-ys
D).
browes, 7176 (-is C).
clawes, 2012 (-is CD, clewes B).
hawes, 6060 f (-is C) (cf. lawes).
hewes, 2343 (-is D, -is C (l)),
2936 (-is C, -e is D), 5816
(-ys C, hewes D); hewys,
1106 f A (-is BD) (: newe
is).
lawes, 1127 f (-is D) (: sawes pl.),
6059 f (-ys C) (: sawes pl. :
hawes pl).
sawes, 1126 f (-is D) (: lawes
pl.), 6057 f (-is C) (cf. lawes).
thewes, 1808 (-is C, -ys D).
throwes, 6569 (-ys C), 7564 (-is
C).
trewes lasten, 6764 (trens 2 lestith
C).
wawes, 1086 (-is D), 7472 (waH
‡ C).

IV. -arwes, 4706.
pylwes, 3286 (pilous B, pilwis
CD).
sorwes, 54 (sorowë D), 705 ([es]
B, -ys C, sorow ‡ D), 847
(-ys C, sorowes D), 2427 (-is C,
-owis D (l)), 3147 (-ë C, -ow
D), 3747 (-is C, sorow D),
3924 (dayës C, daiës D), 3976
1 Supply [gooede] in D.
2 Dissyllable needed.

Supply [goode] in D.

§ 38.

(-is C), 4014 (-ys C), 4794
(-ys C, sorowis D, sorowes
dissyl. B), 4816 (-ë C, -owis
D), 4910 (-is C, -owis D),
5003 ‡ (peynes AB, teeris ‡
D), 5163 (-is C, -owes D),
5590 (-ë BC, -is D), 6499 (-ë
C), 6561 (-is C), 6567 (-is C,
-ë D), 6628 (-ë C, peynes D),
6629 (-ë C), 7718 (-is C ‡).

V. fetheres, 353 (-ris D, fedëris C),
7909 (fedres D, fedëris C).
fyngres, 2117 (-gëres B, -gërys
C, -gris D), 5399 (-gëres B,
-gëris C, -gers D).
chartres, 3182 (-teris C, -tris D,
charres ‡ B).
lettres, 1188 (-tëres B, ag ‡ C),
3330 (-teris C), 6833 (letterys ‡
C), 7960 (letres B, letteris ‡ C),
7990 (letres B, letteris C ;
D ‡).
candeles, 7383 (-dels B, -delis C,
-deH D).
couples, 4591 (coupelys C).
ensaumples, 760 (examlyp C,
ensaumplis D).
mobles, 6122 ‡ D.
peples, 4589 (pepelys C).
temples, 3225 (tempëlis C, tem-
plis D), so 3957.
heuenes, 3460 (-ys C, -is (?) D).
swenënes, 6721 (supply [al] in
A ; C ‡).

VI. aduocaciës, 2554 AB (-catis ‡
C, -caris ‡ D).
àmphibëlogiës, 6068 f (-gyis C
(: lyes pl.).
fantasyës, 4855 (-sijs C, -sies
D); cf. 6277.
VII. Plurals with synizesis:—

- aduersāries (īe † C), 2520.
- contrāries, 645 (trarijs C).
- ēnemīys, 6615 C (ēnemys AB, ēnemyēs D).
- fūryes, 1521 (iēs B, furīes † gen.
pl. C, furious † D), 7861

(līs B, iēs † C, iēs † D).

ladyes (dissyl.), 186, 1166, 2698, 5063, 6810, 6819 (laydyes AB, ladyys C, ladies D), 7887.

Note 1.—The usual ending of the plural in A is -es; but -ys (-is) occurs.

Thus,— affectis, 4233 ACD (ōs B); cris, 5479 f (ecres B, ecres D); fondyys, 2560 (ēs B, -is CD); herys, 5478 f (ēs D, here[s] B); heerys, 7713 (heres BD, here[s] C); hewys, 1106 (-is BD) : newe(is); lordys, 2698 (-ēs B, -is CD); owlys, 6745 f (-is B, oules CD) : fowelles : fōul(e) is); selys, 4304 (-ēs B, -is CD); tolys, 632 f (-ēs B, -ēs D) : scle is: folyys pl. ; and in the plural of tere, -ys (-is) is the usual ending in A (cf. 700, 2112, 3893, 4287, 4791, 4919, 5002, 5172, 5412, 5746 f, 5508, 6578, 7089 (!), 7278, 7699, 7962, 8053; and for teres cf. 543, 1411, 2171, 7737). The indifference of some scribes to varieties of ending is shown by D in 4706, —arces dārtis averdis macy,s. Instead of -es, -ēs is written in armez, 5581 D, 5909 D; boste3, 3462 A. Afectos, 4233 B is doubtless a mere error for -es. Observe vulturnus, 788 D (voluturis AB, volturinus C) ; dajis (dissyl.), 2831 f C (daies ABD) (: delayis C, -ēs ABD) ; dais (dissyl.), 2436 C, 6760 C; dayis, 2447 C, 6602 C, 7569 C (cf. also the forms in 3924, 7022, 7713).

Note 2.—The following plurals are perhaps worth mentioning for their rhymes (cf. other rhymes of the same kind in the lists above, î. ff.):—

tolyys, 632 f (-ēs B, -ēs D) : folys pl. : (ēs BD) : scle is; 

hewys, 1106 f (-is BD) : newe is.

hayes, 3158 f (-ēs B, halis + C) : may is.

owlys, 6745 f (-is B, oules CD) : fowelles pl. : fōul(e) is.

halles, 7093 f (-is B, -ēs D, witl + C) : wallys pl. (-ēs BC, -ēs D) : galle ys (galles D).

wellys, 7737 f (-is D, weff C) : helle ys : ellys.

stones, 2026 f (-ys CD) : at ones.

bones, 91 f (-ys CD) : onys (cf. 805 f, 2469 f).

desertes, 4109 f (-is CD) : certes.

pleyes, 7862 f : lord of Argeys (Argeyes B, Argeis D).

Note 3.—In some cases s only is written where -ēs (-is) should be pronounced. Thus—

answēris, 2435 D (-ēs A, -ēs[s] B, -is C).

bokēys, 7423 B (-ēs AD, [thes] bokys C). (Cf. 2933, 4041, 4271, 4616, 6382, 6738, 7153, 7162, 7452, 7826, 7841, 7844, 7896, 7925, 8218.)

dorfēys, 6915 B (-ēs AD, -is C). (Cf. 3075, 6894.)

flourēys, 8204 B (-ēs AD). (Cf. 158, 1136, 2052.)

Note 4.—That the s in the plural ending -ēs was unvoiced is indicated by the forms erbes (661 A) and knes(e) (3922 B); cf. also goddesse for goddes (6067 C), and dycce for des (5760 D). Rhymes like wellys : ellys, bones : onys, are also significant (see note 2, above).

1 Hiatus in ACD.

2 Supply [most] in C.
§ 39. Exceptions to § 38. The following words ending in a consonant or an accented \(-e\) sometimes or always make their plural in \(-s\) (\(-s\), \(-z\)) or \(-es\) (cf. Child, § 22; ten Brink, § 226):

I. Words in \(-aunt\, -ent\):

- argument\(_3\), 466 (\(-t\es B, -t\is CD\)), 4009 B (\(-t\, A, -t\is CD\)), 5189 B (\(-[e] B, -t C, -t\es D)\). But,—argument\(_3\), 5631 AB (\(-t\es DGCp.)\); argumentus,\(^2\) 2110 AB (\(-t\is CD\)).

- instrument\(_3\), 4595 B (\(-t\es A, -t\is C, -t\us\)).

II. Words in \(-ioun\, -ion\):

- affecions, 5086 (eff\ecciounys or eff\eccio\u0113n\ys C).

- aysions, 6737 f (auisiounys C).

- complexions, 6732 f (\(-iounnys C\)).

- condicions, 1251 (condisciounys or condlsciouuys (\?) C).\(^4\)

- illusions, 6731 f (\(-ys C\)).

- impressions, 6735 f (enpressiounnys C).

- reuelacions, 6729 f (\(-ious CD\)).

But,—impressi\o[\]n\(_\o[\]s, 2323 (-yon\[\]s B, -iou\[\]ne\)s C).

- p\o[\]ssi\o[\]n\(_\o[\]s, 5130 (\(-iou\[\]s B, p\o[\]si\o[\]n\ys C\)).

III. Dissyllables in \(-en\, -on\, -an\), with the accent on the penult:

- maydens, 1204 (\(-ys C, m\o[\]y\o[\]d\_nis\)).

- resone\(_s, 2932 (\(-s B, werkis\)).\)

- Tr\o[i\a]ns, 2062 (Troy\o[\]s CD), 6152 (Troilus\_ C, Troian D), 6504 troyanys C, Troiauns D). Troi\o[\]ns, 4769 (or Tr\o[i\a]ns). [6485 ?]

IV. Words in \(-r\):--

- loueres, 11, 198 (AB are defect.), 376, 1971, 2836, 5233 B (sg. ACD); louer\(_s, 45 B (lou\_s AD), 331, 344, 516, 919, 2153, 2391, 2879, 4235, 4299, 4310, 7935; loudr\(_s, 22, 4985. In all the above-

\(^1\) Doubtless we should read argument\(_3\) in A, supplying \([\_o[\]\) before blame.

\(^2\) MS. \(t\) with sign of contraction for \(us\).

\(^3\) In A read \(on\[\]).

\(^4\) Dele (\(to\)) in D.
cited passages B reads *lovers* (except 45, 344, 2879, loveres), C *loueris* (or -ys), D *louers* or *lovers* (except *louis*, 45), lolyers (dissyl.), 331, *faytours* 919, loveris 4310.

mâneres, 742 A (manere B, maner CD).
messagers, 2021 D (messagès AB, massagè C).
pòrtyers, 7502 AC (portours B, porters D).
prèyers, 1538 B (prederis C, *sg. in AD*).

ambassatours, 4802 (embassadoirs B, embassatourys C); embassadours, 4807 (-tours B, -dourys C, ambassatours D).

prisonères, 4721 (-êrs BD); prisoners, 4808 (presoneris C).

Note.—In 1321 paramours (-ïs C, *-our* D) may be the plural of paramour = lover; but perhaps the phrase (without paramours) means "not taking the kind of loving that we call 'to love par amours' into account." In "I loue de neuer womanne here byborne As paramours," 6520-1 (-ês B, paramour C), and in "Hath loved paramours as wel as howe," 6695 (paramour CD), we have this adverbial phrase *par amours*.

V. Monosyllables in -e:

des, dees, 2432 (deis C), 5760 (deth D, dyce riht as [there], D).
knes, knees (monosyl.), 110 (kneis C), 1037, 3025, (kneis C), 3795 (knowes B, kneis C, kneis D), 3922 (knes(se) B, kneis C).2 But,—
kneês, 4434 (knowês B, kneis C, kneis D defective).
trejs 7507 C (*sg. ADD*).

VI. benygnitees (*not -ëes*), 8222 (-ës B).3

Note 1.—Many apparent cases of -es (with syncope of -e-) disappear on comparison of MSS. Such are: folés, 217 A (cf. 3171 D) (*for folys footés* cf. 635f, 705, 762, 903, 3166, 4666, 5377); talês, 1344 A, 3456 A (*for talês* cf. 1234, 1342, 1393, 1583, etc.); whelys, 848 C; armês, 4116 B, 6553 B (*for armës* cf. 1038, 3024, 3448, 4029, 4043, etc.); dremys, 7651 C (cf. 6741 D) (*for dremës* cf. 4184, 6680, 6727, 6729, 7640, etc.); amendës (?), 1427 A; effectis, 2305 C, 3188 C (cf. 2587, 7992 C); antiis, 7555 C (cf. 1700, 1702 CD, 6966, 7541); hertës, 4955 D, 6711 D (cf. 235, 2856, 2959, 3039, 3143, 3808, 3892); loundës, 5901 A (cf. 1113); miitës, 5857 D (cf. 4599); sykes, 7397 A, sikis, 7717 C (cf. 3191, 4203, 5037, etc.); tungis, 1870 C (cf. 39, 565); wordës, 5923 A (cf. 540, 561, 736, 754, 1108, etc.); othës, 1384 A (cf. 3085, 3988, 7626); hëstës, 6718 A (cf. 3261, 4587, 7571f, 7572 C); dayis, 6716 (†) C; aleyes, 1905 f C; songis, 6994 C (*for songis*); tidinges, 5524 D; whisperyngis, 2838 C; lesyngis, 3672 C (cf. synyngeis, tidings, 2198f, 2653, 4558f, 4560f, 6609f); peynues, 4058 B, 4300 D, 5791 A (cf. 303, 2984, 4046, 5003, etc.); Grekis, 1209 C, 1596 C, 3386 D (*cf. 802, 1039, 4696, etc.*); fendis, 1981 (†) C; kalendës, 7907 D (-ês A, -as B, -is C), used as a singular (a kalendes) (cf. 1092); workis, -ys, 265 D, 5857 C; desësis, 7783 C.

In 2820 B we may read corinës or corones, but it is better to omit the (with ACD) and coronës. Forms like *hegis* (7507 C, cf. D) and *sorwes* (7559 B) are of course out of the question. In 4439 we should read frendës the alderbeste.

1 In C dele (*as*).
2 In D supply [he].
3 In A read *goode* for *garde*.
4 This is the famous line about the "tale of Wade"—he told[e] *tales* of *wade* A, *he told* tales of *wade* Cp. (no other variants in Mr. Austin's collation), he told[e] *tale* of *wade* B, he told[e] *tale* of *wade* C, he told[e] the *tale of wade* D, he told[e] tale of *wade* G.
Observations on the Language [§§ 39, 40.

not frendes the alderbeste (cf. 1237, 1464, 1888, 5343, 6218, 6706, 7217). Influens (3460 D), eynyn (5760 D, eynyn C), and plesauns (5761 f, -aunce C), seem meant for plurals, but need correction.

But there is good MS. authority for syncope in 264 (ioyes AC) (cf., however, 846, 2870, 3660, 4351, etc.), 1725 (sicerdes AB) (cf., however, 2026, 4706), 2847 (hertes AB). For sithes, tymes, see §§ 2, 14 (but tymes, 2853, 4273, 6739). For thynges, see thynge, pl., below (§ 43). Pens, 4217 (pans BC, peynes + E), and vers, 7 (wordes ± D), deserve notice.

Note 2.—A few Latin plurals occur. These are satyri and fauni in

On satyry and fauny more and (om. A) lesse
That halve goddes ben of wildernesse, 6206-7

(satyri B, satary(e) & fany C, statery † & ferry † D, satiry and fauny G); and manes, 7255 (mannes C). But instead of Parcae we have Parcas (6366). Kalendes, 7797 B, perhaps preserves a bit of the copyist's learning. See also vulturus (etc.) for vultures, § 38, note 1.

§ 40. Plurals of the n-declension which preserve the Anglo-Saxon ending (-an) in the form -en, are the following:—

asshen (A.S. pl. ascan, L. on axen, O. asskess, P.Pl.3 askes), 4781
asschyn C, asshyn D); asshen pale, 1624 B (asschin C, asshyn D, asshé A).

ben (A.S. pl. béon, Ps. bían), 1278 f (ben p.p.; flen fugere), 6018
(ben [flen] C). [Var. B been; D bene.]

eyen, cien (192), eyghen (2056, 5754), eighen (3929, 4194, 5412) (A.S.
pl. égan, L. ænen, eñ, P. Pl.6 eñen, ëyghen, eyghes, 8eyen),
191,1 305 f, 428, 726, 1227, 1338,2 1411 f, 1619 f, 1733 f, 1948 f,
2056 3, 2971 f, 3025 f, 3894, 3929 f, 3979 f, 4194, 4195, 4295 f,
4908 (ey[e]n(e) two D), 4971 (eyen † C correcctor, ey[e]n D), 4972
(ey[e]n D), 4976 (seyn † C, ey[e]n D), 5184,4 5410, 5412, 5531,
5535, 5754 (thy nené semen B), 5821, 5885 (eyé B, ey[en] (?) D),
6583, 6929, 7107 (ey[e]n B), 7178,5 7180 f, 7362 C (eyyn †), 7368
([-en] A (?)), 7522, 7699, 7701, 7736. [eyen (?), 3200 † D; eyyn,
6442 † C.] [eyen †, 3116 f B is error for engyn.]

Rhyme words.—dryen patiuntur (305), dryen pat (1948), dyen mori (also
spelled deyen) (305, 1411, 1619, 3025), spyen, aspien, espyn inf. (1733,
3979, 4295, 7180), lyne (lye) mentiri (1411), by-wryen inf. (1619), cryen
inf. (1733), pres. subj. 3 pl. (1948), wryen p. p. (4295), syen viderunt
(7180). [Var. B eyen, yên, eyghen, eighen; C eyen, eyen, eyyn, eyyn,
eyeýen, eynyn (2971); D eyen, yên, yhen, ijen.]

foon (A.S. ge-fán), 8229 f (foone D) (: oon : eurychon). But,—foos,
994 (foes B, fois (to) C, foos [to] D), 2513 (fois C).

1 In the following list all forms are dissyllabic unless the contrary is noted. No
distinction of eyen before consonants from eyen before vowels has been made.
2 Supply [to] in D. eyen † D
3 Supply [her] in D.
4 Transpose in D.
§ 41. Plurals in -en by imitation (Child, § 24; ten Brink, §§ 215, 217).


doughtren (A.S. pl. dohtor, dohtru, dohtre, dohtres, P. Pl. b douţtres, c douhtres), 4684 (doghtryn D).

sustren (A.S. pl. sweooster, L. sustren, sostres, P. Pl. e sustres, susteres, sustren), 3575 (-tərn C, -trin D), 4651 (-tryn D), 6366. his bretheren and his sustren, 7590 (his(e) bretherên † his sistəren C, his brethryn & his sisters D).

children (A.S. pl. cild, cildru, L. childere, children, childdres, O. chilldre), 132 (schildəryn C, childryn D †).

housen (A.S. pl. hūs), 6910 ‡ D (-es AB, -is C).

Note.—Gamen (1123 B), gleden (1623 C), bonden (2061 f A), sorwyn (3763 C), dremen (6741 B), tenten (7033 A), are merely errors of the scribe.

§ 42. Plurals with umlaut (Child, § 26; ten Brink, § 214).2

feet (A.S. fēt), 359, 1488 (-e)B), 2127. [Var. C fet.]

men (A.S. menn), 241, 279, 3438 f (: ten), 7105, etc., etc.; fomen, 4704.


1 In C read also for as.
2 No distinction as to the word that follows the plurals cited in this section is attempted.
§ 43. In the following words plurals occur identical in form with the singular.

wynter (A.S. n. pl. wintræ, winter), twenty wynter, 811 (-yr C, -ir D).
yer (A.S. n. sg. gær, gær, W.S. gær), 60, 1108 (gære B, gære D).¹
yerès two, 2383; lengthe of yeres, 6343. [Var. B ernes, CD erezis.]
yght (A.S. f. sg. neah, niht), a (ek B) wonder last but ix. nyght neuer in townes, 5250 AB (dayis C, nyghtes D). But,—
over the nyghtes, 4598 f: (myghtes)²; lyk the nyghtes, 5910; er nyghtes ten, 6347; al Æ this nyghtes two, 6683. [Var. C nyztys, nyztis, nyty3s, 4598; D nightes, niȝtes.]
folk often has a plural verb. Cf., e.g., 34, 199, 241, 243, 1888, 1973, 2592, 2693, 2815, 2874, 3860, 3865, 4204, 4271, 4680, 4710, 4864, 6707 (How don this (thes C, thes D) folk (folkês D) that seen herë loues wedded), 6778, 7124, 7541, 7641 (inæ A), 7942.

Cf. also: Whi alle thes(e) folk assembledin in this place, 2652 C (al this folk assembled AD, al this f. assemblde B).

If that I may and alle folk be trewe, 2695 (al[le] f. BD, allē f. ben C).

(Pandarus) Seyde alle folk for goddes lone I preye
Stynteth right here and softely yow pleye, 2813-14 (D †).
Swowneth not now lest more folk aryse, 4032 (cf. 6050).
As (For BC) wys[e] (wyse B, wise C, thes D) folk (folke D)
in bokes it expresse (expres C), 7153 (cf. 3169).
The (for C) folk (folke D) of Troye as who seyth (wis sithe † C) alle and some in preson ben, 7246-7.

If that I may and alle (al[le] BD) folk be (ben C) trewe, 2695.

Note.—In general folk is apt, as a noun of multitude, to take plural constructions, and, of course, in many cases it is impossible to determine whether a singular or a plural is meant. A good case of a certain singular is: Whil (wilk C) folk is blent lo al the tyme is wonne, 2828.

For other examples of folk in various constructions cf. 26, 138, 160, 169, 176, 179, 251, 308, 319, 354, 357, 560, 1164, 1704, 1860, 1995, 2242, 2279, 2732, 4275, 4637, 6486, 6951, 6965, 7219, 7332, 8144. The word is regularly spelled folk, though folke or folke is occasionally found (as 160 B, 169 B, 179 C, 319 B, 1704 B, 2242 B, and often in D), but not in A; fok is found in 26 A and 176 C.

A plural in -es is also found,—folkes, 6002 (folkês C, folkês D), 8198; folkis, 4275 D; folkes, 6707 D. Folkes is genitive in good for sykê folkes eyen, 3979 (-ês B, -is D, follys C).

thing. Chaucer sometimes uses thing as a plural; but it is not always easy or even perhaps possible to distinguish this use from

¹ Both cases before a vowel.
² Word omitted in D.
idioms in which the singular may be employed (note, e.g., variants in 3605, 5358).

Cf., however:—And letten other thing collateral, 262 (thing(e) B, thyngis C, thinges D).

And morë thyng than thow deuysest (demys C†, demist D†) here, 5205 (thyng(e) B, thyng C, thing D).

Nece al[lê] thing hath tyme I dar avowe, 3697 (allë thyng(e) BC).

But the ordinary plural is thinges (cf. 134, 1993, 2197 f, 2260, 2276, 2350, 2471, 2858, 2874, 3427, 3765, 4103 f, 4208 f, 4820, 5322, 5356 f, 5667, 5669, 5681, 5995, 6499, 7905, 7975, 8086).

thinges seems to be right in 2453 A (-ës B, -is D; C†) (cf. 2001 † D, 2319 † C, 3248 † C, 3605 † C).

The phrase all[e] thing seems to deserve some special attention. Ouer al[le] thyng he stood [for] to byholde, 310 AD (allë thing(e) . . . for to BC). Consideréd all[e] thyng it may not be, 2375 (al[le] thyng(e) B, allë thyng(e) C, al thing we[ë] D†). Considered allë thinges as they stode, 3765 (allë thyngis C, al[lê] thinges D). That wost of allë thing(e) the sothfastnesse, 5742 AD (al this thyng(e) B, al this thyng C).


Whan that he sey that al[le] thyng was wel, 3598 (allë thyng(e) B, woste allë thyng(e) was C, wist that al[le] thing (? D).

The last cited example is particularly surprising. May we not, however, suppose that allë thing, originally plural, became a stock phrase, of which the syntax was forgotten or obscured, so that even when a singular was used the plural form allë might be retained?

Note 2.—God is used with a plural verb in 1919 ABC John’s, The blissful god han me so wel best (god have D, god hath G); but Cp. has ze blissful god han, which is no doubt right, god being vocative (cf. lord in the same stanza, 1922). For the regular plural goddes cf. 151, 3432, 4045, 4101, 4514, etc.

Note 3.—Gere is the A.S. fem. pl. gearwe; see 2097 f (: there : were subj. 3 sg.), 3185 f (ger D) (: elles where : there); gere him, 1720 (ger C). (Cf. ten Brink, § 210 Anm.)

§ 44. The genitive plural does not differ in form from the genitive singular.

seyntes lyues, 1203 (-is CD). the goddes wyl, 3465 (-is CD);

nayles poyntes, 2119 † B. the goddes ordenaunce, 7968

foles bost, 3140 (-is CD). (-is C).

foles harm, 3171 B (-ys C, A tonges ianglerye, 7118 (-is C).
defect.). crowes feet, 1488.

1 rh. tidýnges. 2 A thing[es]. 3 rh. wynges.
4 rh. rynges. 5 rh. thing is. 6 But C by accident omits [he].
7 In 2001 the proper reading is certainly at this thyng (sing.) thou. D has all the things.
frendes gouernaunce (-is C, clerkes lawes, 6059 (-is C, frendes generaunce† B, -is clerkysshę); clerkes speche, sustenaunce D), 2527; frendes myght, 6708 (fryndis C); clerysshe), the lettres space, 7993 ([the] B, frendes help (-is C), 7390.1
teris kynde, 5798 (es BD).

Grekes ost, 80 ABD, 5261, 6284, 6379, 6435, 7030 AB; Grekes yerde, 1239; Grekes route, 1698; on the Grekes syde, 6128; Grekes gyse, 7224. [C usually -ys or -is; D -ys, -es.]

But, at Grekes requeste, 4719 A (-ys D, a grek f requeste B).
pay ens corsed olde rites, 38212 (paynymes D).
rauenes qualm, 6745 (-ys C).
sweuenes signifiaunce, 6725 (sweuenys C, sweuenys significauns D).

§ 45. Dative plural (Anglo-Saxon -um):
whilom (A.S. hwflum), 508 (whilhom C, somtyme D); cf. 5402, 5731, 5817, 6904, 6907, 6910, 6927.
sithe (A.S. sf3um), see § 14.
fote (A.S. fōtum), see § 14.

ADJECTIVES.
§ 46. Anglo-Saxon adjectives that end in -e or -a in the indefinite use preserve a vowel in Chaucer.
(Child, § 29; ten Brink, § 230).
In the Troylus such are (i.) of the jo-declension, blithe, breme, clene, dere, ethe, grene, kynde, lene, mylde, newe, shene, sterne, stille, sweete, thikke, trewe. To these may be added (ii.) lame (A.S. lama, regularly used in the weak form) and allone (A.S. eall ána), for which see § 47. (iii.) smythe, and softe (A.S. smóxe, sófte, adverbs, but also used as adjectives instead of sméxe and séfte, see Sweet, 2051, 2081, Sievers, § 299 Anm. 1), and swoote, soote (A.S. swót adv., swóte, adj. in comp.). For merye, mery, see the end of the list.

blithe, blythe (A.S. bləxe, L. O. bliše), 7746 f (: a thousand sithe : swithec adv.); -e, 4160.4
breme (A.S. bréme, O. breme), -e, 4846.
clene (A.S. cléne, L. clène), 1665 f, 3099 f, 4008 f. [4071 † ? D.]

Rhyme words.—I mene ind. (1665, 3099, 4008), mene n. (3099), bene A.S. bēan (1008).

1 Perhaps singular, cf. frendes loue, 7443. 2 Possibly singular.
3 vyces † A (: appetites).
4 Supply [lue] in A.
der, dere (A.S. déore, W.S. diere, dyre, L. deore, dure, O. deore, dere), 32 f, 51 f, 434 f, 877 f, 1336 f, 1415 f, 1559 f, 1579 f, 1679 f, 1893 f, 2057 f, 2188 f, 2217 f, 2295 f, 2444 f, 2516 f, 2561 f, 2778 f, 2809 f, 2845 f, 2895 f, 2937 f, 2969 f, 3081 f, 3114 f, 3172 f, 3336 f, 3487 f ([deerde † A]), 3762 f, 3788 f, 3817 f, 4052 f, 4131 f, 4146 f, 4197 f, 4253 f, 4290 f, 4335 f, 4395 f, 4505 f, 4947 f, 4969 f, 5074 f, 5203 f, 5312 f, 5557 f, 5871 f, 5973 f, 6014 f, 1 6112 f, 6236 f, 6507 † D, 6523 f, 6550 f, 6581 f, 6670 f, 6705 f, 6777 f (C † D †), 6830 f, 6884 f, 6930 f, 6939 f, 6999 f, 7016 f, 7274 f, 7589 f, 7678 f, 7703 f, 7820 f.

Rhyme words.—here inf. (32, 51, 2188, 3336, 3762, 3817, 5203, 6330, 6999, 7678, 7820), y-here inf. (5973), ind. 1 sg. (6939), here adv. (1336, 1579, 1679, 2057, 2188, 2217, 2295, 2444, 2516, 2561, 2778, 2809, 2845, 2969, 3081, 3172, 3487, 3788, 3817, 4052, 4131, 4146, 4335, 5074, 5346), here adv. (6330 A, here BCD), clere inf. (1893, 6884), clere adj. sg. def. (7016), adj. pl. (2845, 2969, 4197, 6581, 6930, 7703), adv. (6236, 6670, 6939), lere inf. (6523), require pl. (1559), manere (32, 877, 2809, 2895, 2937, 4253, 4290, 4947, 6550), matere (51, 1579, 2217, 2516, 2778, 4146, 4253, 4505, 5312), ryuere (5074), preyere (2295), chere n. (434, 877, 1415, 1559, 2217, 2444, 2809, 2895, 2937, 3172, 3336, 4197, 4335, 4505 (4506 A has clere for chere), 6550, 6777, 7274, 7589), spere sphere (4335, 7016), fere comes (4335), y-fere adv. (2561, 3114, 5871, 6014, 6112, 6705), to yere (3081), to the fyre (fere BCD) (3817), stere n. (4131), inf. (4947), bere feretrum (5871).

ethe (A.S. éþe, éþe, L. æþe, O. æþ), he was eth eynowth to maken dwelle, 7213 (C †).

grene (A.S. gréne, grüene, L. grene), 816 f, 1145 f, 2003 f, 2790 f, 2852, 3904, 6606 f.

Rhyme words.—tene (816, 1145, 6606), queene (816, 2790), shotes kene (1145), the mone shene (2003), by-twene (2790), sustene inf. (6606).

grene as sbst.,—with newé grene, 157; in grene when, 3195; roteles mot grene soné deye, 5432 (ertheles grene † mot C).

kynde (A.S. cynde, but usually ge-cynde), 6079 f, 6489 f, 7283 f; -e, 8006 BC (trewe † A, kynde as [that] D).—vnkynde, 4678 f, 4928 f, 7804 f. (Cf. if ye be vnkynde, 6102 f; beth me not vnkynde, 6314 f).

Rhyme words.—I fynde ind. (6079), fynde inf. (4678, 4928, 6489, 7283), mynde n. (4678, 7804). [Var. Con-kynde.]

1 Old-style figures indicate that D has der.
Observations on the Language

lène (A.S. hléne, L. P.Pl. lene), 1217 f (leene B, C ⊕ D ⊕) (: mene pl.) ; -e, 7584 (leen B).

mylde (A.S. milde, L.O. milde), And stod forth mewēt (meyth ⊕ D) myldē ([e] D) and mansuete, 6557 (line om. C, And stode forthe full mylde and manswete G).

newe (A.S. néowe, níowe, W.S. niwe, niwe, L. neowe, niwe, O. neowe, newe, P. Pl. newe, nywe), 157 (-[e] B), 1390 f, 1873 f (new D), 4246 (-[e] B, E ⊕), 4496, 5084 (-[e] BD), 6484 f (new D), 7511 (-[e] D, -[e] ⊕ al C), 7618 (-[e] B, om. ⊕ C), 7632 (-[e] BD); span newe, 4507 ; And vpon newē (newe BC, new D) cas (cause ⊕ D) lyth (lyēth D) newe (new D, a newe BC) auys, 5078.—newe is (new is BD)¹ (: hewys).—made this tale of newe, 5324 f (al newe B, this talē newe C, thes tidinges new D).

Rhyme words.—newe n. (1390, 5324), trewe indef. adj. sg. (1390, 6484), vntrewe pred. adj. pl. (1873), trewe adj. pl. (5324), rewe subj. 3 sg. (1873), knewe ind. 2 pl. (6484).

shene (A.S. scene, scýne, scóne, L. scene, scone, L.² scene, O. shene, scone), 6094 f (she[ne] A) (: bi-twene : leues grene), 6639 f (: sterres werē sene) ; ayen the monē shene, 2005 f (: grene indef. adj. sg.).

[Var. B shene, C shene.]

smothe (A.S. smóðē, adv., but also used as adj. instead of smóðe, smóðē (cf. Sweet, 2051), O. smepe), -e, 942 ABD.

softe (A.S. sófte, adv., but also used as adj. instead of séfte, séfte (cf. Sweet, 2081), L. softe, O. softe), 137 f (perh. pl. ?) (vnsoft ⊕ D), 942 f (-t D) ; he[r] streyght[e] bak and softe, 4089 f ; with soft[e] voyes, 6999 (e C, lofte ⊕ D).

Rhyme words.—ofte (137, 942, 4089), on lofté, a-lofte (137, 942).

sterne (A.S. sterne, W.S. stierne, styrne, L. sterne, O. stirne), 7164 (sterne B) ; -e, 5846.

stille, stylle (A.S. stille, L. stille, O. stille, still), held hire s., 126 f (: wyle) ; -e, 723 (stil D)², 1685 (stil D ⊕), 8092 ; stille, 7183 ⊕ C.

swete (A.S. swēte, swēte, O. swet), 385,³ 3350 f, 4087 f, 4367 f CD, 4400 f, 4510 f, 4662 f, 5151 f, 5169 f, 5441 f, 5588 f, 5936 f (B ⊕), 6252 f, 6554 f, 7552 f ; -e, 4126; swet[e], 4061 f (-e BCD) ; swete || how, 4120.

Rhyme words.—mete mélan inf. (3350, 4087, 4367, 4510, 5936, 6554), subj. 1 sg. (5441), mete mélan inf. (4400), grete grélan inf. (4400), flote inf. (4510), ind. 3. pl. (4061), ye his sorwes bete subj. (? (5588), strete (5588), quiete (3350, 4662, 5151, 5169, 5441), Ariête (6252, 7552), mansuete, (6554). [Var. D suete, swette.]

¹ Supply [e] in D.
² Supply [as] in AD.
³ Supply [seed] in A.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

Note.—Of the above the following occur in forms of address (herte sweete, my dere herte sweete, and the like) : 4120, 4367, 4400, 5441, 5588, 5936, 6252, 7552.

soote, 7034 f (soot B, swote CD) (: bote A.S. bót); soth, 4036 f (soot B, sote CD) (: in his fote (foot B): I mot ind. (-e BCD)).¹—

soote, 942 AB (swete † C).

thikké (A.S. picce, L. thicke), 941 f (thekke C, thik D) (: the wedys wykke); -e, 1278 (thik D).

trewe (A.S. tréowe, W.S. tréwe, trýwe, L. treowe, O. trowe), 1391 f, 3175 (-[e] B), 4490, 5043 f, 6079 (-[e] † D), 6082 f (true D), 6101 (-[e] D), 6190 f, 6487 f (trew B), 7014 f (true D), 7069 f, 7434 f, 7694 f (drewef † C), 7728 f, 7764 f (myn owenë hertë trewe), 7948 f.—Trewë as stel in ech condicion, 7194 [-e] B, if not a 9-syl. line.—vntrewë, 3148 f, 3895 f, 5108 (-trow[e] B), 6213, 7660 (vntruë D), 7933 f, 8137 f.—trewë, 593 (-w BD, trowe C), 950 (-w D), 1424 (-w D), 1913 (-w B), 3843 (-w B, trew † with D), 4859 (soth C, sothe D), 5100 (trowis † C), 6272 (-w B, -e I [haue] D), 8006 A, 8075 (-w B, true D).

Rhyme-words.—hewe n. (1391, 3148, 5043, 7764, 7933, 8137), newe adj. (1391, 3895, 6190, 6487, 7660 perh. adv.), adv. (7014, 7933, 7948), inf. (3148), knewe ind. 2 pl. (6487), ind. 3 pl. (6082), rewe inf. (6190, 7434), thou rewe (7069), rewe subj. 2 pl. (7728). [Var. C ontrewë.]

merrye, mery (A.S. mirige, mirg), a mery someres day, 3903 (merie C, mery D); merye, pred. sg., 4515 f (: herye inf.); with mery chere, 1234 (merie C), 3072 AB; this murye morwe, 4405 (merie C, me[r]y D); we shulle ben alle merye, 3794 f (merie C) (: herye laudo); merye dayes, 2831 (merie C, mery D). (All forms dissyllabic.)

Note 1.—fremde (A.S. fremde, fremde) occurs only in the definite use and in the plural,—youre friendly manere speche, 1393 f (frende BCp., friendely C, friend D, frende G, friende John's), where fremde alone makes sense; In this matere bothe (both B) fremed and tame, 3371 ABG (frend C, frende D), where we should read fremede. Dreye (A.S. dryëge) occurs only in the plural,—Han . . . ded[e] ben and dreye, 3194 f (drye BCD) (: pleye inf. : to seye); He gan the tèris wypen of ful dreye, 5835 (drye D, dreye inf. † C) (: seye inf. : preye inf.).

Note 2.—In fawe, which occurs once,—he desirseth fawe, 5549 f (: slawe p.p. : with-drawe p.p.),—a final -n has been lost (cf. O.L.G. fagan, -in, A.S. fagen, and see ten Brink, § 44. a).

Note 3.—For the adj. fre, free (A.S. fréo), invariable in form, cf., for examples of all sorts, 840, 1073 f, 1402 f, 1856 f, 2206 f, 2970 f, 4364 f, 5633, 5642, 5721, 6214 f, 6507 f, 7032 f, 7186 f, 7725 f, 7753 f, 7768 f, 7838 f.

§ 47. In allone, lame, -e goes back to the Anglo-Saxon weak ("definite") ending -a.

¹ The right reading is soot, noun, which A mistook for the adj.
allone, alone ¹ (A.S. call ána), 97 f, 178 f, 358 f (allon B), 547 f, 694 f (allon B), 907 f (alon CD), 1602 f, 1640 f, 3255 f (alon CD), 3382 (aboue † C), 3506 f, 4882 f (alon C), 4943 (D ?), 5530 f (alon C), 5609 f, 5770 † C, 6585, 6612 f, 6834 (alle one C); -e, 1021 (-n B), 1695 (-n B), 1775, 2301 (om. D), 2486, 4960 (allas † A), 7389 (-n B); alone here (hic), 806. (All singular except 907.)

Rhyme words.—mone moan n. (97, 694, 1640, 5609, 6612), euerichone (178, 907, 3255, 3506, 5530, 5609), echone (4882), grone inf. (358, 547, 907, 1602, 1640, 6612).

lama (A.S. lama, L. lome, lame), 1102 f (: blame n.).

§ 48. Lyte, muche belong in a category by themselves.

On their relations to A.S. lyt, lytel, micel, mycel, see especially Bright, American Journal of Philology, IX, 219.

lyte (A.S. lyt, adv., lytel, adj.) is said by ten Brink, § 231, to be “im Sing. wohl nur substantivisch gebraucht,” but this is shown to be an error by two places in the Troilus: the chaumbre is but lite, 2731 f (: wyte blame acc.), and yn place lite, 7992 f (light † D) (: write scribo : endite inf.) ; compare also 2288 f and 7653 f, though in these two cases the word may well enough be substantive. In the definite use AB have my litel closet in 3505 AB (litil CD). In 826 f, 1339 f, 1354 f (lite(l), A), 1469 f, 2112 f, 2302 f, 2363 f, 2731 f, 3582 f, 3675 f, 3740 f, 7653 f, -e, 291 (lyt-il C † D), 1517 (D ?), 5992 B, 6539 B, lite, lyte is apparently substantive. Old-style figures indicate that the reading is a lite,—a phrase sometimes used adverbially.—That is litë fors, 7290 C, is a wrong reading for my birthe accurse. In 7290 C reads a litë with, doubtless for a lite wight (litel wight AB, litel wight D). lite, 4410 f (a † lite D) (: words white), is adverbial; lyte, 4092 f, is plural (: white pl.: delyte inf.).

Rhyme words.—wyte blame inf. (826, 1469, 2363), noun (2731, 3582), delite ind. 3 pl. (1339), endite subj. 1 sg. (1354), inf. (1339, 2112, 7653, 7992), plyte inf. (2288), mynte inf. (2363), byte inf. (3582), write ind. 1 sg. (7992), subj. 2 sg. (2112, 7658), inf. (2302), myte (3675, 3740), white pl. (3740).

Note.—For lytel, litel [Var. B litil; C lityl, litil, lytil, lytyl; D litle, litel, litil, litill, litilel (5256)], adjectival, adverbial, and substantive, cf. (i.) 179, 216, 1241, 1327, 1730, 1590 BCD, 2163, 2165, 2420, 3389, 3443, 3935, 4252, 4401, 4453, 4457, 4530, 4663, 4860, 5243, 5385, 5546, 6109, 7289, 7403, 7408, 7818, 7865; (ii.) lytel, litel, cf. 5046, 5256, 5992 (lite B), 6539 (lite C); litel hed, 5095; litel hertes reste, 8112 (cf. 5243 C): litel hath, 5352; a litel here (acc. sg.), 5265 (a lite B, a † litell D); a lytel his, 6577 (a lite vnswelle B).

¹ A almost always has allone (alone, 2390).
muche (A.S. micel), 386 (muchen B, mech C, myche D), 442 (el B, mechil C, mych[e] D), 1313 (muchen B, meche C, D †), 2156 (muchen B, meche C, mychil D), 3480 (B †, meche C, mich[e] D), 4529 (meche C, mich D), 5561 (el B, meche C, moche D); thou hast so meche don, 3228 (much i-do B, myche † for D); meche knowe, 1260 C.—muche,—as m. as, 796 (meche AC, mych D), 3840 (meche C, mich D), 5156 (meche C, moch D); as meche as, 5998 C (wyd A, wyde BD); thus muche, 2948 (meche C, mych D), 7361 (meche C, much D); in as m. as, 7428 (meche C, much † D); so m. as, 1327 (meche C, mych D); for as m. as, 7715 (meche C, much D); ¹ so muche honoure, 2981 (muchenel B, mechil C, D om. †).—so mych † grace, 1070 D (?).—miche of 2744 (muchen B, meche C, mychil D). (Non-adjectival uses, substantive or adverbial, are indicated in the above list by old-style verse-numbers.)

§ 49. Several adjectives which in Anglo-Saxon end in a consonant, sometimes or always take -e in the Troilus.

(Child, § 30; ten Brink § 231.)

Some of the -e's in the following list are perhaps to be explained on grammatical grounds. In brode Phebus, false Poliphete, proud Bayard, heighe God, heyghe Ione, we perhaps have a petrified vocative like that recognized by ten Brink (§ 236. Anm.) in goode fayre Whyt she heet (B. Duch., 948), cf. fierce Mars, 2864 (-[e] D). (Cf., however, Zupitza, Deutsche Litteratur-Zeitung, 1885, col. 613, and Freudenberger, Ueber das Fehlen des Auftakts in Chaucer's heroischem Verse, Erlanger Beiträge zur Engl. Philol., Heft iv, pp. 37-39.) Is it not possible that salute se, false worldes brotchynesse, and wode ialousie (or read the wode?) are to be referred to the same idiom? The relation between a vocative and a constant epithet is in some respects sufficiently close. The exclamatory form goode grace may also be of the same vocative nature, but harde grace has nothing to do with address or with constant epithets. Observe gon sitthen longe while, etc. (see longe) and of olde tyme.

bare (A.S. bar, L. bare, bar, P. Pl. e bar, bc bare), 662 f (: care n. : snare n.), 1195 f (: care n. : fare pl.), 4888 f (: wel-fare: care n.), 5830 f (: yfare p.p.); -e, 5887. [For definite form, cf. 3941, 6184.]

brode (A.S. brád, L. brad, brod, O. brad, P. Pl. abc brod), brodë Phebus, 7380 (broodë D, the † brodë Phebus C).

¹ Supply [me] in D.
faire, fayre (A.S. fæger, L. fœr, fire, O. fæzerr, P. Pl. fayre), the thriðde euene faire, 2844 f (: débonaire : reparaire inf.); in a ful faire † wyse, 5472 B (seeré † A, sècre(e) D, sècreé G).—faire, 1309 (glad CD), 3253 (-r D, fayr nor C), 3564 (fair D).—faire, 101 (fayr C), 1669 (-r BCD).

... faire, fayr, feyr, (i.) 815 f (-e BCD) (: despyr n.), 882 (-e B); (ii.) 115 (-e BD), 277, 294 (goode B, good CD), 900 (-e B), 4448 (-e B, -e † so D), 5073 (fayr † see C), 6535 (-e B), 6810 (-e BD). [faire extra metr., 1171 AB.] [In address : goodly fayrē fressē may, 7775 f.]
false (A.S. fals, late, P. Pl. fals), falsē worklōs brotelenesse, 8195 (-[e] B, -e D); falsē Poliphete, 2552 C (that fals † polyfete D, fals[e] AB).

fals, sg., 87 AB, 593, 3656, 5278 (-e D), 5725 (-e D); cf. 6199, 6209, 6319, 7642, 7889)³; false, pl., 5321 (-[e] B, C †), 8144 (-[e] B).


fresche (A.S. ferse, L. freche, frech, O. fresh), Yong freschē (fressē B, frosch † C, freissē D) strong and hardy as lyon, 7193.

fressh, fresch, (i.) 1721 (-e D); (ii.) 166 (-e B, frosch C, fressh † lady D), 816 (-e CD), 1637 (-e BD), 1972 (-e BC), 2007 A (-e B), 2182 (-e B), 4626 (-e D), 5817 (frosche † pl. C), 7207, 7473.

In address,—o goodly fressē fre, 2970 (-[e] B, fressh and D(?)); fressē wommanliche wyf, 4138; cf. 7680, 7775.

Var. B fresh; C frosche, frossche; D freisshe, -e.

goode (A.S. gød, L.O. god), And seyde On suche a mirour good[e] grace; 1351, (goodē B Cp., gode E, good[e] G). Good[e] gouernuance, 1552 CD, is an error for goddes g. Goode, 44 AB (om. † D), 6549 (god CD), and goode, 52 (D †), are mere accidents. Goode Alcestē, 8141 (good BD) may be a "petrified vocative." Everywhere else good (var. B good(e)), except in plural and in definite forms, where grammar requires goode (cf. 335, 336, 627, 1247, 1254, 1556, 1667, 1763, 2743, etc., etc.).—goud, 1337 A (goodē B, gode C, good D). (Cf. the substantive, § 14.)

grete (A.S. gréat, O. græt). I find no good case of grete except, perhaps, ym purpos gret, 7939 f (grete BD) (: contrefete inf.).

---

1. Secre is no doubt right (see the John’s, secreē E Cp., secret Harl. 2392).
2. Supply [ye] in AB. Cp. and John’s have ye, ye; Cp. has falsē.
3. For cases of sing. fals (var. -e CD) before vowels, cf. 3140, 3646, 5043, 5656, 7061.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

117


Note 1.—Such -e's as there are in A are none of them sounded. They are the following,—a ful grete care, 1016 (a wol grete C, [a] ful grete D); in grete dishese, 2072 (gret C); a grete decuyneresse, 7885 (gret C); a bor as grete as, 7832 (gret CD).

Note 2.—In 515 B (gretē), supply [a] and read grete (gret AC, grete D); cf. also 1252. In 1903 BD a grete rowte might be read (And other of hire wommen || a grete rowte), but gret is the reading of AC.

harde (A.S. heard, L. heard, herd, O. harrd), no morė harðē grace, 713 (hard[e] D).—hard, (i.) 836 (e B, -e C), 2321 (e B, D †), 2326 (e B), 2356 (-e B †, hard here D), 2990, 3776, 6119 (-e D); (ii.) 4199 (-e E). (Cf. 4757, 5802, 6035.)


heigh, heygh, (i.) 1717 (hey C, hye D), 3128 (hey C; D †), 3739 (hi C, hie † D), 4165 (hey C, high † is E), 5853 (hey C, high D), 6799 (hey C, hie D), 7330 (hey C, high D), 7342 (hy C, hie D), 7872 † D (high). (ii.) 4113 (hi C, hi D), 5220 (hey C, high D).

longe (A.S. lang, long, O. lang), gon sithen longē while, 718 (sith gone long while (? D); nought go (gon BC, gonē D) ful long[e] while, 1592 (-e B); longē tyme aгон, 1807 BD ([e] A (?), [e] C);⁵ longē tyme agon, 7688 ([e] D (?)). Cf. the A.S. accusative phrases lange prāge (hwile, tīd.)—In Or that it be ful longe, 832 f (long D) (: honge inf.), and Ten dayes nys so longē not tabyle, 6716 (-e(? D), longe is perhaps adv. longē lette, 7214 BCGCp. John's (more A, lenger D). [longē here (hie), 3661 C]. longe (adv. ?), 4698 (long D).

¹ Old-style figures indicate that B and D have -e; an asterisk indicates that B alone has -e.
² Supply [a] in A.
³ "For gret powe and moral vertu here." In B we might read: "For grete power and," etc.
⁴ Old-style figures indicate that B and D have -e (elided); an asterisk indicates that B alone has -e (elided).
⁵ Supply [And] in A, and read long[e].
Observations on the Language

§ 49.

long, (i.) 143 (longe? B), 2384 (-e B), 3337 (-e B), 5555 (-e B, longe † D), 1 5944 (mak[i] long(e) sermon B, -e D).

ole (A.S. eald, ald, L. ald, alde, olde, O. ald), of oldé tyme, 6833 BD (old[e] A, oftyν † C°).—olde, 1481 (old CD); olde (in address), 4992. (Cf. old, (ii.) 6031, 7647.)

Note.—All the other cases of olde (not oldé) that I have noted are either definite or plural. Definite cases (singular) are the following,—3189, 3537 (wolde † C, old[e] D), 4766, 4789, 4803 f (BC defect., the old D) (holde inf.), 6128 (D†), 7489, 7499; The newe lone out chaceht (cacheth † A, shakynth † C) ofte the olde, 5077 f (holde p.p. : colde inf.); myn oldé hat, 3162. (Oldé in all these except as indicated.) For the plural indefinite, see the following verses,—130 f, 160 f, 2933 f, 3199 f, 4041 f, 4728 f, 5086, 5634 f, 6921 f, 7009 f, 7015, 7571 f, 7822, 7841, 7844 (C†), 7874 f, 7925, 8212, 8217. (In all of these the reading of all the MSS. is oldé except as follows: -e (elided), in 5086, 7015 A (old B) [-e], in B in 7841, 7844 (C†), 7925, 8212; [-e], in D in 3199; old, 4728 f D; olde, 4041 f D; olde, 7822 B. [old[e] †, 969 D].—Plural definite,—-e, 6742 ([-e] B), 6743 ? C, 8116; -e, 760 (old D), 6118 ? D (?).

proude (A.S. prút, L. prut), prouðe bayard, 218 ([-e] D); proud (before vowels), 210 (-e B), 214 (pryde † B).

salte (A.S. sealt), In heuene and helle in erthe and saltē se, 2850 ([-e] BD).

wode (A.S. wōð), Which that men clepeth wode ialousie, 7576 (the wodé A).—wood, wod, (i.) 499 (-e B, D †), 3635 (-e B), cf. 2639; wod, (ii.) 3240 (-e B, om. † A), 4892 (-e B, om. † D), 5579 (-e B), cf. 5010, 6201.

Note 1.—Some adjectives show an -e which is grammatically unjustifiable and never sounded. In B this is very common; in A, however, it is pretty rare. Thus,—sike, 575 (sik B, sek C); syke, 7587 (sik B, in † seek C, sike D); but,—syk, (i.) 2601 (sike BD); (ii.) 2608 (-e D), 2614 (sek C, sek D), 6776 (-e D, sek C).4 See also faire, gode, grete, highe, olde.

Note 2.—It wulbe be to hiru leue, 5267 f C, is an error for leue inf. (ABD): (greue inf.).] cf. 27:8, 3487, 5273 f, 6581. Of monosyllabic adjectives, which in Anglo-Saxon end in a consonant and which take no -e in the Troilus in the uninfreshed forms, many examples are given in §§ 53, 55, 67, 69. Cf. also bold (2830, 4695, 7158), brown (109 f), payn (6556, 6788, 6851 f, 7376 f), hoores (5509), hor (7647 f), lyk (2125 f, 5910, etc.), tough, tough (2110 f, 2929 f, 6464 f), wuwar (549), wunwar (549) (cf. note 3), wun (1636 f, 4897 f, 5854 f), warne (2732 f), worth (2163, 4382, 5160), wyld (5289). In some of these words there are variants in -e (not sounded): thus, hoorn(e) (7647 f D), wunam(e) (1636 f D), etc.

Note 3.—For dissyllables in the indefinite use, singular, cf. heu̇nyssh, 8176, cf. 104; holson, 4588; open, 1125; siker, syker, (i.) (ii.) 673, 920, 2455, cf. 4079; sonnyssh, 5398; sotthas, 5532; stedefast, 5651 (stedefast BD); vnuwar, 304; a wonder thyng, 621, cf. 1120 D; yonder sonne, 2322; on ydel, 948 f, 6457 f, 6685; yuel, 8000; ywār, 1483 (i- B, war C, ware D); as Argus eyd, 6121 f; rosey hewed, 2283; horned, 7013; lewed, 3240; blisful, blysful, (i.) 1765, 1917, 2176, 6323 (voc. ?), cf. 5778;

1 C out of order.
2 Old-style figures indicate that BD have old[e].
3 In B we must drop (ep-) and read on with A.
4 Sike y me feyne, 2613 D, is an error for syklyche, etc.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

§ 49. 119

dreful, 2130, 2343, d. herte 2186, 7694, B has dredeful in 2186, 2343, 7694; lefel, 3862 (leuffel C); skylful, (i.) 1477, 3780, (ii.) 3129; vuskilful, (ii.) 790; woful, (i.) 13, 1518, 2945, 5406, 5500, 6106, 6684, (ii.) 7683.

Sorweful is usually dissyllabic; sorwefull (dissyllabic) is the regular pronunciation and spelling in AB, sorweful is favored by C, and D prefers sorwefuff (cf. 14, 1149, 1548, 5036, 6604, 6770); but the word is sometimes trisyllabic: thus,—Cryseye ful of sorweful (sorweful C, sorwe-fuff D, sorwoful John's) pite, 5393, where, however, Cps. has sorweful and pite (cf. also 7591 D, 7996 D); see §§ 57. c, 84. Cf. erneftful, 2812.

Note 4.—For adjectives in -y (A.S. -ig), indefinite, singular, (i.) before consonants, cf. almyghty (5355), angry (562), bodly (5289, 7865 C), bysy (1359, 3884, 6307), cloudly (1533), dcdly (5533), drey (13), hardly (2159, 7165), hasty (3981), lusty, -i (157, 165, 951, 1837, 2184, 6147, 6756), myghty solt, 1673, mysty (3902), redy (2081, 3545, 4027, 5870, 5873, 6378, 6420), sondry (440, 957, 5174), sory (14, 1179, 1549, 2141, 3886, 6503, 6990, 7445, 7461), thrifty (1943), vnweri (410, 1924), vnworthi (4126, 4991), wery (1296), worthy, -i (226, 979, 1256, 2784, 4011, 4701, 6696, 7226). For examples before vowels (with and without slurring of -y), see the Chapter on Metre. For the plural, see § 70; for the definite use, see § 57. d.

Note 5.—Adjectives in -les are the following (sing. and indef. unless otherwise noted): (i.) (ii.) boteles, 7825 (bootelles B) (see graces); botmles byhestes, pl., 7794 (bottemeles C, botumles D); drykellles, 1803 (drenkynees B, drenykeles C, drinkelles D); endelles, 2168 (enfeyned + C, infynyte + D in a rather later hand); gilteles, 1413 (gilteles BC (perh. adv.)); the glit[l]es in distresse, 2457 (gilteless B, gitles C, giltes D) (sg. or pl. ?); graces, 781 f (: causes adv. : boteles); heles, 7956 (hecles + A); hertcles, 7957 (I herde + telle C); knottelles, 7132 B (-[e]- D, knot[l]les AB); lyghtles, 3392 (leces B); mkeles, 172 f (: nathles : prees n.); restelles, 4426; rotes, 5432 (rootelles B, ertheles + C); rowtheles, 1451 f (-les B, routelles C, rowtheles D); specheles, 5032, 5829; ster[l]es (= without helm; Ital. word here is governo), 416 (sticreles B, stereles C, ster[l]es D); vertuelles, 1429 f (vertuellees B) (: routheleses).

§ 50. The following adjectives of Germanic origin also show an -e in the Troilus:

badde (A.S. baedel (?)), souned in-to badde, 6338 f (: ye hadde ind.); cf. sownen ynto gode, 1029 f.

lowe (O.N. laqr, L. laih, O. lah), But hold hym as his thral lowe yn distresse, 439 (low BI)\(^1\). Cf. the definite form,—my lowe confessiou, 1613; lowe, pl. or adv., 2869 (lawe B, low D).

meke (O.N. mjukr, O. meoc, P. Pl. meke), 8210 f (: seeke inf.).

schere (O.N. skær, cf. A.S. scir), an arwë schere, 6210 f C (clere AB, cler D) (: here adv.).

wykke, wikke (cf. M.E. wiche, A.S. wicce (a/ wizard, wicce 'witch'), -e, 403 (C om. ↑, wykkyd D); now is wykke iturned vn-to worse, 3916 (wyk D, wikked torned B, like ↑ C); fro wikke I go to worse, 5502 (wo ↑ A, wikked D).

Note 1.— Cf. the following cases of the plural in the indefinite use.—wykke, 239 f (wyk D) (: thikke indef. adj. sg.), 1543 f (weke C, wyk D) (: thikke adj. pl. or adv.).

\(^1\) Supply [his] in D.
§ 51. Romance adjectives preserve their final -e in the *Troilus* (Child, § 19; ten Brink, § 239). (A few Latin adjectives are included in the following list.)

I. Miscellaneous:

benigne, benūigne (O. Fr. benigne), 8232 f (: digne pl.); -e he was, 4644 (beninge B, -nyng D). (For pl., cf. 431 f, 2868 f.)

contraire (O. Fr. contraire), 212 f A (contrarie BD, -rye C) (: on the staire : debonnaire). (Cf. necessaire.) See also § 31, to which add references to 418, 637. Contrarie, adj., 5690 f (: tarie inf.); cf. 5665. debonnaire (O. Fr. debonere, -aire), -e, 181 (-ar B, -er CD); cf. o goodly debonnaire, 2846 f (-eyre D) (: clere pl.).

digne (O. Fr. digne), 429 f (: benygne pl. : resigne *ind. 1 sg.); digne, cf. 961, 3856. (For pl., cf. 2865 f, 8231 f.)

eterangan (O. Fr. eterne), 2853 f (: descerne inf. : werne inf.), 3217 f (: gourne inf. : yerne adv.).

huge (O. Fr. ahuge), 3498 (D †), 6049, 6428. [Var. heuge C.]

juste (O. Fr. juste), 1612, 1812; iust[e], 4069, 7619 (-e BCD).

large (O. Fr. large), 7167 f (: Arge n. pr.).

mansuète (Lat. mansuetus, cf. Ital. mansueto), 6557 f (l. *om. † C) (: swete : mete *inf.):

necessaire (O. Fr. necessaire), 5683 f (: fayre adv.) (necessarie AB, -rye D, C cut out). (Cf. contrarie.)

nice, nyce, nyse (O. Fr. nice), 1808 f (: vyse (A †) : cherishe *inf. *ice BCD), 1942 f (: vice), 2585, 5198, 5260 f (: vice. (For pl. cf. 3166 f, 4235 f.)

pale (O. Fr. pale, palle, pasle), 5402 f (: smale adj. pl. : bale n.), 6899 (C †).

pryme, —at prymē face (=Lat. prima facie), 3761.

strange (O. Fr. estrange), 6483 f (: chaunge *inf. ), 7223 (D †), 7995 f (strong † C) (: chaunge n.); his manère estranging, 1077 f (strange D) (: chaunge *inf.).

trine (Lat. trinus, cf. Fr. trine), trine † vnite, 8229 D.

II. For Adjectives in *-ble*, of all constructions, singular and plural, compare the following words in the places cited (C is fond of the spelling—*bele*, but sometimes has *-el, *-il*).
able, 1292, 1821, 1988. impossible, 4153; cf. 783.
charitâble, 7186. inuysible, 8229.
côunâble, 2222 f. muâble, 3664 f.
discordâble, 4595 f. noble, 1404, 1416, 1732, 1822, 3739, 6747, 7342, 7686, 7920, 8115.
double, 1, 54, 7261. rêmuable, 6344.
éeçusâble, 3873. rèsonâble, 2220 f, 2991.
feble, 7585. stable, 4593 f.
hônourâble, 6798 f. humble, 124, 433, 1913, 2154, 2214, 2938, 2983, 4197, 4329, 4790, 6161, 7683.
visible, 8229. remuable, 6344.
humble, 124, 433, 1913, 2154, 2214, 2938, 2983, 4197, 4329, 4790, 6161, 7683.

Note 1.—For the treatment of these words before vowels (elision or non-elision depending upon accent), see 1821, 2938, 3739, 4790, 6747, 7186, 7342, 7920, 8229. For symple cf. 181, 7183.

Note 2.—For tendre (O.F. tendre), see tender of, 3746 (tendre BD, -dir C); cf. sobre vas, 7183 (-ere C). For transuorie (memorie) see 3669 f.

Note 3.—French -e is of course preserved. Thus,—take that atempre be thy brydel, 946 (atempree B, atemphere + wel C, that thou + attendre be thy b. D); see, secré, cf. 744 f, 3128, 3154 f, 3601 (cf. also secré, sécrét (?), (ii.) 2749, 2984, 3320); prýne, 3763 (prýne B, pryve D, prime + C), cf. prýny, 3629 (pryue BD, priye C).

§ 52. But some Romance adjectives take an -e in the Troilus that have none in French. In a few of the following instances one might be inclined to suspect the influence of a French feminine ending (cf. § 63). Some of the forms are vocative, but such are always indicated.

aduërse (O. Fr. advers, avers), fortune aduërse, voc., 5854 f (: worse : diuerse pl.).

asure (O. Fr. azur), a broche gold of asure, 4212 f (g. and asure BCD) (: auenture : scripture).

clere (O. Fr. cler), 6210 f (schere C, cler D) (: here adv.); -e, 3368 (cler C, -e D ?); cler, 5653 (-e BD). [For def. form clere, cf. 7018 f; for pl. clere, cf. 2843 f, 2971 f, 4195 f, 6097 f, 6372 f, 6583 f, 6929 f, 7173 f, 7178 f, 7362 f, 7701 f.]

comune (O. Fr. comun), fortune ys commune, 843 f (: fortune); she...

comune astrologer, 4257 (C ?); by commune + assente (?), 5008 D (on AC, on B). [Cf. pl., 5054 f.]

diuërse (O. Fr. divers), in diœrse wyse, 61 (diuërse + D). (Cf. Freudenberger, Ueber das Fehlen des Auftrags, p. 39.)
Observations

§ 52, 53.

dyuyné (O. Fr. divin), of dyuyné purveyance, 5623 A (de- BD).
fyne (O. Fr. fin), of fyν[ῦ] force, 6784 (-ũ BD). [fyne, 5139 f C (: myn) should be fyν n.]
mené (O. Fr. meiuen), Crisyde mene was, 7169 (-e] B). [Cf. the def. form,—this mené while, 2892; in this mene while, 3618 AB (in this wyse † C, in this while D).]
pure (O. Fr. pur), for pure ashamed, 1741 (-ũ schamyd C). [Adverb?]
queynte (O. Fr. coint), swetě harmę so q., exclam., 411 f (-D) (: pleynę n. : feynę pres. ind. 1 sg.).
secunde (O. Fr. second), 7199 f (pred. masc. sg.) (secunde B) (: founde p. p.); cf. Ector the secunde, 1243 f (-ounde B, -ound D) (: wounde n. : abounde indf.).
soureyne (O. Fr. souvérain), o lady soucreyne, 4978 f (-ayne B, -aigne D) (: peyne n.).

Note 1.—Here may be added,—the blood Thebăne, 6964 f (Theban C) (: bane n.). The parallel form Tröīan Trōīan (regularly troyian in C) has no -e, whether adj. or sbst. (cf. 1910, 4715, 4734, 4994 f (: man), 6489, 7240, 7272, 7275, 7283), except perhaps in the plural (cf. 145).

Note 2.—Recreáunte has an adventitious -e due to the scribe: Or be recreáunte of (-e for B, recreant for C, recreant of D) his owne tene, 814. So pleyne, 5522 AB (pleyn C).

Note 3.—For examples of the singular of Romanic adjectives in the indefinite use, see the following (accent recessive except as indicated):—
ëternāl (5734 f), funeral (6665 f), frynāl (4807 f), general (163, 893 f, 919 f, 4644 f, 4804 f, 7185 f), infernāl (6205 f), moral (1252, 6334), mortal (2860, 3218), immortāl (103), natal (2992), ogāl (2970), royāl, reïl (432, 435 f, 4642 f, 6329 f, 8193); angwysshower (3658), bounteous (883 f), cheu-āl(espous (7165), cōrageous (7163 f), coueytoys (4215) etc.; disdroyous (151, 2186), deynoys (290), disdroyνs (2302 D), droughts (5654), envyous (1942), enuyous (4532), gneuous (6154, 7594, 7967, cf. 5560), heynous (2702), ilanos, iléous (3741, 3983), pitous, petous (111, 113, 422, 3760, 5345, 6161, 6918), dispitous (6652 f), traytos (4542 A; traytour BCD); absent (6524, 7000 BCD), absent (3330 f, 7000 A), diligent (2986 f, 3327 f), innocent (2647, 2808), present (4810, 7110), present (2887 f, 4142); caytif (rather sbst. than adj.), 3224 B; castif A, captif CD), ententīfy (1923 f), testif (7165), cf. gylfif (3861, 3891); ãngelýk (102), cérteyn (2633, 3374, 4601, etc.), yn certeyn, cérteyn (697, 5570, 5607 C, 5667 f), vnċerteyn (5651), clos (2619), confus (5018), mat (5004), curteys (81), defect (6891, 7582), discreet (3319, 3785), esy (1083, 1705), ēxpert (67), felon (6562), fortunat (1365), infortunat (5406 D; -ел AB, onfortūne C), fūfur (7111), ġentil (3746, 6336, 7294), ioly (2184, 7537), malaper (2929), pāfrif (4221, 7282), pepelysh (6339), preignant (5841), sêcret (2749, 3320), sēcret (2984), sōdeyn (1752), soir (4036 ˚ A), sūbjet, -git (231, 8153), stubil (1342), vnapt (971), in veyn (4254, 4976, 7736). Some of these occasionally show variants in -e (not sounded). For adjectives in -ious, -nous, -ial, -ant, -nel, see Chapter on Metre. For adjectives in -ay, cf. gay (2067 f), vérøy (6267, very D).

§ 53. In the definite use (that is, when preceded by a possessive or demonstrative pronoun or by the definite

1 In C supply [hirc].
2 D om. for (purē ashamyd).
3 Dissyllable †
article) monosyllabic adjectives take an inflectional
-e (Child, § 32; ten Brink, §§ 232, 241).

I. Ordinals:
our first[e] lettre, 171 (-e B, our cheff[e] l. † D); the firste syght[e], 1754 (the first[e] C, the first † D); the firste tyme, 2841 (-[e] D).
(Cf. also 280, 2298, 4615, 6603, 7303.) the alderfirst[e], 2939 (the oldir ferste C; D †); with the firste || it cam, 4725 (the first hit D). But,—the firste || that, 7430 (see § 54).

the thridde ferthe fyfte sixte day, 7568 (C † D †); Mayes day the
thridde, 1141 f (-d D) (: bytydde ind. 3 sg.); the thridde heuene, 2844 (-[de] D). (Cf. also 4660, 5353.)
this ilke ferthe book, 4688 (this † ferthē b. D). (Cf. also 6839, 6856.)
the seuenthe spere, 8172; herc seuenthē hows, 1766 (seuëntē C, vij. D).1

that ilke nynte nyght, 7466 (tenthe † C). (Cf. also 7044.)
the tenthe day, 6787 (the x[the] d. D). (Cf. also 6257, 6260, 6787, 7005, 7048, 7205.)

with his tenthe some yfere, 2334 (his t. sonne † B, his tensum † C, his x: somme D).

II. Monosyllabic superlatives:
for the beste, 5812 f (-t C), 2409 f, 3890 f, 4171 f, 4831 f, 5539 f, 5950 f (-t C), 6090 f, 7969 f, 8113 f; the beste, 2533 f (-t C), 3295 f
([-the] beste C), 3514 f (-t C), 3689 f, 3769 f, 5319 f, 5782 f (-t C),
6265 f (-t C), 7892 f (-t C); the best is 830 AD (-e BC); the
faireste and the beste, 4122 f; my beste, 597 f (-t BC); thi beste,
1021 f (-t C, for the best D); the best[e] post, 993 (-e BC); the
beste knyght, 1074 (-[e] BD); my best[e] frend, 1497 (-e C); thi
beste grene, 2097 (-[e] D);3 the best[é] harpoure, 2115 (-é C); his beste
wyse, 4436 (-[e] D); the beste wyec, 5954 (-[e] D); o frendes the alderbeste, 4439 f (no article in CD, which read aldryr
best, altherbest). (Cf. also 474, 947, 1467, 3797, 5470, 5947, 5987, 6188, 7670.) But,—the best, 1825 f ACD (-e B) (: the thryftiest :
the worstiest).

Rhyme-words.—I ne lest (leste) pres. subj. (581), leste, lyste pres. subj. 3 sg. (1021, 2533, 3514, 3689, 3890, 4171), leste pret. 3 sg. ind. or subj. (3295, 4531), reste inf. (597, 2409, 4122, 5950, 8113), pres. ind. 1 sg. (5319), noun (3769, 3890, 4439, 5782, 6265), vnreste (5539, 7969), wreste inf. (6090), moleste inf. (5539), in geste (3295), breste pres. subj. 3 sg. (597), Alcest (7892).

1 Or,—Sat in herc seuënthe hows of heuene tho.
2 Old-style figures indicate that D reads best.
3 Insert [ryght] in A.
Observations on the Language

at the laste, 916 f (att[e] laste B),\(^1\) 1040 f (at † last D), 1230 f (att[e] laste B), 1484 f, 1776 f (-t C), 3938 f (-t C), 5185 f (-t C), 8002 f (-t C), 8182 f; at the last[e], 8093 (-e BD); at the last[e], 2023 f (-e BC); at the laste, 5885 (-e as C, -t † D); at the laste her-of, 3407 (-t b) (cf. also 1584, 1599, 1909, 3457, 3961, 4417, 5097, 6796, 7509); to the laste, 1340 f; April^2 the laste, 3202 f (-t C); my laste, 537 f (D †), 1955 f (-t C); his laste, 3640 f; the last[e] shour, 4709 (-e B). But,—at the laste the, 2009 (-tê dede † D); at the laste this, 5034; at the last this, 5914 (-e BCD).

Rhyme words.—faste ade. (537, 916, 1040, 1230, 1776, 1955, 2023, 3938, 5185, 8002, 8182), laste inf. (537, 1040, 1955), caste inf. (1340, 1776, 3202), pret. ind. 3 sg. (1230, 3938, 5185, 8182), paste pret. ind. 3 sg. (1484), Horast[e] (3640).

at the lest[e], 1447 f, 2293 (-e BD), 2415 f (-t C), 3156 f, 4002 f, 6439 f (at lest[e] † D), 6888 f, 7313 f (att[e] lest[e] B), 8041 f; at the lest[e] how, 4678; oon the lest[e], 4152 f (oon † of the lest[e] E); the leste ioye, 4162; the leste poynt, 4356 (-e D).

Rhyme words.—heten, beheten, byheten (1447, 2415, 3156, 4002, 8041), feste (1447, 4002, 4152, 6438, 6888, 8041), requeste n. (7313), at the meste (7313). [Var. B leste, leest[e]; D leest.] at the meste, 7310 f (att[e] meeste B) (-r requeste noun: at the lest[e]); the moste wondir, 2228 C (-e D, the grettest wonder AB); for the moste part, 3281 C (-e D, more AB); her[e most[e] fer[e], 4183 (-e CE); my most[e] nede, 6194 (-e CD); compare,—now is most[e] nede, 3259.

the nexte word, 2942 (-e B; D †); this next[e] wyke, 2358 (the nexte C); the nexte wise, 697 BC (-e D).\(^3\)

the worste, 1452 (-e D); the worste, 341 (-e so † C, -t so † D); the worste poynt, 342 (the worst y † D); the worste trecherye, 3120 (-e D); the worste kynde, 4468 (-e D). (Cf. 1389, 1622, 6459, 7090.) [Var. ABCD worste.]

III. Miscellaneous:

the bente mone, 3466 (-e B).
her[e blake wede, 177 (-e BD); cf. 2405 f. (For indef. blak, cf. 309, 642, 1619.)
the blynde lust, 8187; thy blynde and wynged sone, 4650 (blynd † D).
(For indef. blynd, cf. 628, 1106, 3370 f).
her[e brighte face, 4670 (-e D); the bright[e] mone, 7011 (-e C);
Crise ye de the brighte, 6879 f (-t CD): a-light (-e B) pret. ind. 3 pl.

^1 Old-style figures denote that D has last.

^2 Three syllables (April AD, Aperil B, Aprille C).

^3 A reads: For this nys not yn certeyn the next wyse. Omit yn (with BCD Cp. John's) and read the next[e] wyse.
of Chaucer's Troilus. 125

nyghte inf.). (Cf. also 5325, 7071, 7379, 7602.) herē fadres faire bryghte tente, 7385 (faire bright[e] D).

herē colde mouth, 5823 ([-e] B); my cold[e] care, 612 (-e C, the † cold[e] D). (Cf. 2052 † C, 5173.)

the dede slep, 2009.

his fixe and depe impressioun, 298 (B †, fyx C).

thi derke wede, 4273. (Cf. 5016.)

And nexst the derk[e] nyght the glade morwe, 944 (derk[e] D).

the foule netle, 941 (C †, foul[e] D); thy foule enuye, 4937. (For indef./ttZ, cf. 1981 and see § 55.)

that glade nyght, 3071 (cf. 944, 4488).

this olde greye, 4789 f (gray D) (: his eycn tw[e]ye).

his hote fyr, 445 ([-e] D). (Cf. 490, 6870. For indef. hot, hoot, cf. 1977 f, 2361, 2618, 5925 f, 7465.)

his lighte gost, 8171 ([-e] B).

my righte lode sterre, 7755 ([-e] D); my right[e] l. s., 6595 (-e C);

thi righte place, 4970 ([-e] BD); his right[e] lady, 21501 (-e C), 4505 (-e C); my right[e] lady, 6930 (-e C), 7016 (bryzte C, my right lady † D); her right[e] cours, 2055 D (kynde ABC); the right[e] lyf, 1936 (-e C). (For indef. right, vpright, cf. 1418 f, 3823 f, 3840 f.)


the strong[e] cite, 7849 (-e BCD).

the swyfte fame, 5321 (C †).

My goode brother Troylus the syke, 2657 (D †) (: like inf. : syke inf.).

the white and ekē the rede, 4226 f (: drede n. : rede inf.).

Antigone the white, 1972 f (: syke inf. : endite inf.); cf. 2147 f.

his wod[e] Peyne, 2440 (-e BC); the wode ialousye, 7576 (wode BCD G Cp. John's, without the article).

the fayrē bayē stede, 7401 f ([-e] BD); his bay[e] stede, 1709 (bayze C); but,—his stede bay, 1066 f (: day : ay).

this blewē rynge, 3727 ([-e] D, blowe C).

IV. Some examples are here given of the definite form of words which occasionally show an -e in forms not obviously definite (cf. § 49):

1 Insert [here] in A.
this false world, 1505 ( [-e] BD); thi fals[e] gost, 7884 ( -e CD).

the good[e] wyse worthi fressh and fre, 1402 (goode BC); my goode brother, 2657 (my good trew brothir † D).

here goode softly wyse, 2752 (hire goodly soft[e] w. BD, hire goodeli softe w. C); his gode gouernaunce, 3269 (wise CD); his goode[e] gouernaunce, 3323 (-e C); my good[e] lone, 3851 A (my good[e] myn B, myn goode C, goode hert C, good hert D); his goode chere, 6547 ([-e] D).

yourse grete trouthe, 3834 (good[e] D).

his heigh[e] port, 1077 (liiegho B, hy[e] D); the heigh[e] worthynesse, 4451 (liye C, hi$e D).

V. owene, owen, owne (A.S. āgen), is found only in the definite use. I. Singular. (i.) Before consonants; always dissyllabic, however spelled. Thus,—myn owené lust, 407 (owne BD); thin owené cheyne, 509 (own[e] BD, own C); his owené curtasye, 2571 (own B, owné D); myn owené lady, 7032 (swene f B, 2ougnc D)


Note.—For myn owené throte, 1410 A, read my throte. The form owené (6111 C) is no doubt due merely to the omission by the scribe of the sign of abbreviation.

§ 54. Occasionally, however, -e is dropped in the definite form of monosyllabic adjectives.

his good wil, 2294 (-e BC).

this good plit, 3981 (-e B, thus good p. A).

my good wörd, 7444 (godde C); youre good wörd, 7985 (C †).

1 Read [e]stramge in D.

2 This form occurs several times in B; as, 4025, 4327, 6412, 6581, 7032. Cf. swoene, 2586 B.
§§ 54, 55. of Chaucer's Troilus.

In these cases the phrases were perhaps felt as compounds; cf. O.N. goda-vili, goda-virki, etc., and notice the accent. But not so in—

this heigh mater, 3358 (he B, hey C, hye D).

yowre heyghe seruyce, 4130 (heigh B, heye C, D †).

here heyghe compleynete, 5467 (heigh B, hire hye pleynt C ; D †).

thy wrong concyte, 692 (e B, wrang D, C †).

my lowe confessioun, 1613.

Al be I not the firste that dide amys, 7430 (the firste C, the firste D).

the pleyn felicite, 8181 (e B); this menenge while, 3618 AB (p. 122).

Cf. the substantive use in:

Criseydé whichè that is thi lef, 5273 f (lef B, lyf C, the Iefe D) (: a- 
gref : myschef). (For lef, lief, indef. sing., cf. 3706 f, 4461 f.)

Note 1.—Cases before a vowel, such as hire old wyage, 150 (olde C, the † 
old D), and here playn entente, 2645 (pleyne BC, pleynt D), of course prove 
nothing. The next wyse, 697 A, is an error.

Note 2.—In

For which these wise clerkes that ben dede

Han euere yet pronerbed to vs yonge

That firste vertu is to kepe tounge, 3134-61

([e] BC, The first vertu is to kepe wel the tounge D), the definite form is 
used by a sort of constructio ad sensum, though the demonstrative word 
(bird) is omitted. Cf. Parforme it out for now is most[e] nede, 3259, and 
perhaps also And thanne at erst[e] shal we ben so fayn, 5983 (at erst
B, att erst D †, tte erst[e] G), but here note att[e] in G.

§ 55. In vocative phrases monosyllabic adjectives appear 
in the definite form when they precede the noun (as 
in A.S. leofa Béowulf) (Child, § 34; ten Brink, 
§ 235).

o blake nyght, 4271 ([e] D).

o blynd[e] world o blynd entencion, 211 (e . . . -d B, -e . . . -e C).

o bryght[e] Lathon, 7018 (-ë C).

thow foule daunger, 4163 BE (fole C ; A †).2

Graunt mercy good[e] myn wyys quod she, 6322 (goodë B, go[o]ll[e] 
D, Graunt mercy Iwis goode myn quod sche C).

goodë nece, 2288 ([e] D), 3473 ([e] D); good[e] nece, 1468 (-e C); 
gode nece dere, 3817 (!) ([ë] B, -ë C, good (!) D).3

gode brother, 3106 ([e] D).

1 From the Roman de la Rose : Sire, la vertu premeraine . . . C'est de sa langue 
refrener, 13117-21, II, 48, ed. Michel.

2 For foul, ful, in the attributive and predicate uses (indef.), cf. 213, 1981, 5656, 
6402, 6746 (foule A).

3 Now doth hym sitte (sitten John's) now (om. BCGCp. John's) gode nece dere A.
goodē swetē, louē me, 6935 (-[e] D).
Now good[e] em for goddēs loue I pray, 1394 (-ē BG, my good eem † D John’s HL 2392, myn em † C, And good[e] em Cp.); 1 o good em, 1584 (-e BC); good hert myn †, 3851 D.
leue brother, 3172, 5120 (derē † D), 5203, 6670, 6840 (-[e] D).
leue nece, 1336 (louē † B), 5588.
leue Pandare, 5114 (C†).
o quyke deth, 411 (-[e] BCD).
Cf. the exclamatory line,—
o trust o feyth o depe asûraunce, 7622 (depe àssuraunce † C, déph assurauns † D).
In 458 good is used in the voc.: Good (-e B, God CDG, Goode? HL 2392) goodly (godely B, god HL 2392) to whom serue I (I serue CG) and (om. BD Cp.) laboure (-r DG).
But in definite or vocative phrases in which the adjective follows the noun no -e is added. Thus,—
myn owenē lady bryght, 4327 f (: knyght) (cf. 7285 f).
o luftsom lady bryght, 6826 f (-e B) (: nyght), etc., etc. (Cf. ten Brink, § 235.)

§ 56. For adjectives of more than one syllable which do not stand at the end of the verse 2, the following rules as to -e in the definite and vocative constructions may be collected from the usage of the Troilus:

Of adjectives of more than one syllable those alone take -e which have a primary or secondary accent on the ultima, and are followed by a word accented on the first syllable.

The special cases of which the Troilus furnishes examples may be stated as follows:

I. Dissyllabic paroxytone adjectives take no -e when the following word is accented on the first syllable. The verse will not bear such an arrangement of accents as x’ xx’.

Example: the wykked spyrit. (See others in § 57.)

II. For the same reason dissyllabic oxytone adjectives take no -e when the word that follows is accented on the second syllable.

Example: his sodcyn commynge, 380. (See § 58.)

1 C has but nine syllables; AB Cp. become 9-syllable lines if good (goodē) be read.
2 The Troilus affords no certain means of judging how such words were treated at the end of a verse except in the case of some plurals (see § 71).
III. Trisyllabic proparoxytone adjectives ('x') take -e unless the word that follows is accented on the second syllable.

Example: the vostulleste wight. (See others in § 59.)

IV. But trisyllabic proparoxytone adjectives take no -e when the following word is accented on the second syllable. The verse will not bear such an arrangement of accents as 'x' xx'.

Example: his excellent provisse (see § 60).

V. For the same reason trisyllabic paroxytomes take no -e when the following word is accented on the first syllable.

Examples under I.—V. follow (§§ 57—61).

Note.—Adjectives of more than three syllables are not common in the Troilus. The accentuation of philosophical is interesting in “To the, and the, philosophical Strode,” 8220 (D†).

§ 57. I. Dissyllabic paroxytone adjectives take no -e in the definite and vocative uses when the following word is accented on the first syllable. (Cf. Child § 35; ten Brink, § 246.)

(a) Superlatives:

the grettest wonder, 2228 ([the] g. B, mostē C, most[e] D).
myn alderleuest lord, 3081 (-e C†); myn alderleuest lady, 6939
([(myn) aldyr louelyest † C]).

The following of course prove nothing:—

the hardest is, 1814 (-e B; D†).
the faireste and, 4122 (-t BD), cf. 1832.
the grettest of, 4854 (-e C).
the kyndest and, 7892 C (indef. ABD).

Cf. in the plural,—

the worthiest and grettest in degre, 244.
the fresshest and, 4564 (-e B; C†; D†).

(b) the best[e] sounded ioly harpe, 2116 (the beste sowned B, the best † sounded(e) C, the best † sownyd D).
thilke couered qualite, 2873 (couerd B, thilk[e] couerid q. D).
this furrëd cloke, 3580 (-ed(e) C, furrid † D (?)).
the heped(e) wo, 4898 (-ed B, -id D).

Note.—Compare on of the beste entched creature, 7195 (on the best (? B, on of the beste entched(e) C, on(e) of the best entched D) (dure inf.).


1 Or, leueste.
my nakede herte sentement, 2885 (-d BD, hertis D).
that fals and wikked dede, 93 (wekedę C, eursyd † D).
that wykkedę dede, 3133 (-d BD).
that wikkedę wyuere, 3852 (-d B, the wikkid serpent † wythir D).
the wykked spyrit, 7575 (wekedę C).
my sorwful, 4952 (reuful C), 4963 (woful C, sory(e) D).
my woful, 5505 (sorweful C), 7733; here woful, 5814 (his tw. B).
the woful, 5447 (sorweful C), 5801 (tho tw. B); this woful, 703 (thi w. BCD), 2446, 5022 (sorweful C), 5027, 5034, 6560, 7077; his woful herte, 6997; here w. h., 5884 ABD; the lassé wofulle of hem, 5794 (woful BC, woofuH D). [Var. D woofuH.]

my sorwful, 4952 (reuful C), 4963 (woful C, sorowfuli D); this sorwful, 596 (sorweful C, sorowful D), 4895 (sorweful AC, sorowfuli D), 5456 (woful C, sorowfuli D), 5822 (sorweful C, sorowfuli D), 5914 (woful C, woofuH D), 6359 (woofuH D); his sorwful herte, 6893 B (sorweful ACD).

my woful, 5505 (sorweful C), 7733; here woful, 5814 (his † w. B); the woful, 5447 (sorweful C), 5801 (tho † w. B); this woful, 703 (thi w. BCD), 2446, 5022 (sorweful C), 5027, 5034, 6560, 7077; his woful herte, 6997; here w. h., 5884 ABD; the lassé wofulle of hem, 5794 (woful BC, woofuH D). [Var. D woofuH.]

the holy, 3384, 7860 ([the] C).
the holy, 3384, 7860 ([the] C).

---

1 Supply [ek] in C.
2 Read ielous in AD for ialousye (ielousye).
3 Omit (On) in D.
4 Insert [to me] in A.
5 Insert [his] in B.
ouré lusty folk, 560 (-i B)\(^1\).
his manly, 2955 (-i C).

his rosy, 4597 (-i C; E †), 6641 (-i B; D †)\(^2\).
the sely, 4033 (-i C); this sely, 6892 (sely B), 7456.
that smoky, 3470 (this smokè reyn C, smokis † D).
the mestè stormy, 1563.

the sturdy ok, 2465 (stordy B, sturdi C, sturdy pl. † D).
here tery face, 5483.
the wel willy planète, 4099 (the welè wylly p. D).
this worthi, 7924 (the worthy B); this ilkë worthi, 8129. (Cf. 1243, 1402, 1416 CD, 2413.)

Note.—For merye see above, § 46.

(e) youre bittre,\(^3\) 3021 (-tyr C); the bittyr, 5372 C (hir bitter D);
that bittre \(^3\) hope, 7276 (-tir C, the bitter D).

the gilt[les] \(^5\) in, 2457 (giltleses B, giltles C, giltles D).
this litel, 8178.

thin yuel fare, 2086 (euele C, evil D).

(f) Romance and Latin adjectives:

that noble gentil knyght, 1416 (nobele and worthy CD, noble worthi D).
this gentil man, 3805 (gonë g. m. C).
that wysë gentil herte, 3789 (that g. wisë h. C, wys[e] g. D).\(^8\)
this myddel chaumbre, 3508 (-il CD).
the fatal, 6364 (fathel B).
here crûël, 839 (om. † C); this cruvël, 6107 (cruël BD, crewel C);

myn aspre and cruwel payne, 5509 (cruele B, asper and crewel C,
aspre † crueH D); the crûël herte, 250 (crewel CD).

his rèal pâlais, 4376 (rial C; D †).
the cèrtayn, 5674.

this sôdeyn Dlomède, 7387 (cf. his sodeyn comỳnge, 3801).

thilkë sôueseyn (dissyl.) pûrueyaunce, 5732 (souereyn D).

youre ioly wo, 2190 (-i C, om. † D).

his pitous face, 5023 (pi(e)tous † fate D).

\(^1\) Dele (in) in D. \(^2\) D may be emended by reading carte (as in ABC) for char.
\(^3\) Dissyllable. \(^4\) Supply [in] in A. The word is in this line used substantively
\(^5\) Sbst., insontem or insontes. \(^6\) In C omit (al). \(^7\) Line too short in D.
\(^8\) Supply [good] in A.
yourre verry humle trewe, 2983 (humbele C); his verry slouthe, 1371 (owene C, owne D).
the parfit blysse, 1976.

§ 58. II. Dissyllabic oxytone adjectives take no -e in the definite use when the following word is accented on the second syllable.
here natyf beauté, 102.
his sodeyn comynge, 3801.
his syklyche manère, 2628 (sinklych B, seklyche C, sikly D).

Note.—Cf. Com(e) hire to preye yn his propre persone, 2572 (propere B, his (owene C) p. C), and I com my-self in my propre persone, 4745 (in [my] p.p. D).

§ 59. III. Trisyllabic proparoxytone adjectives ('x x') take -e in the definite and vocative uses, unless the word that follows is accented on the second syllable.

(a) Superlatives:
the frendlyèstè wyght, 1072 (-[e] BD).
the frendlyest[e] man, 1289 (-ë BC).
the fèrfullèstè wyght, 1535 (ferefullèst[e] B,1 sorwefullèstè t C,2 frelyest t D).
the goodlyèstè mayde, 1965 (good(e)lyest[e] B, god(e)liestè C, goodliest[e] D).
the wôrthièstè knyght, 3623 (-[ë] BD).
the wôrthièste, 1846 f (-t D) : lyst, -ë B3: at reste).
the wôfullèstè wyght, 5178 (-[ë] BD); the wofullestè, 4965 f (-t CD)
( : vnneste inv. sg. : breste inf.).
the gentilèstè trewèly, 7438 (-[ë] D). [gentileste, 3100 B, should be gentilnesse.]
on the gëntilèst[e], 7419 f (-e BCD) : on(e) the worthyest[e], 7420 f (-e BCD).
the thriftiest[e], 1822 f (-ë BC) : the best[e] (-ë B). (In these lines the worthièst[e], 1824 f (-ë B) we may safely read -ë, with B.)
I am one (oon B, on C) the (of the C) fairest (-ë BC) out of (withoutyn D) drede
And goodlyest[e] (goodèlyestè B) who-so (ho so CD) taketh hede, 1831-2. Cf. the dredfúllèstè thingës, 6611 (dredfúllèstè B, dredfúllèst[e] D).4

1 Or, ferëfullest.
2 Or, sorwëfullestè.
3 lyste should doubtless be read (pres. subj. 3 sg.).
4 C reads thynge for thynges.
Elision is seen in:
the konnyngest of yow, 331.
the gentileste and ek, 1073 (genlyest † B, gentillest D).
the thriftiest and oon, 1074 (-t B, trustiest ‡ D).

Cf. the plural,—
the worthièst and grêttest in degré, 244.
the fresshest and, 4564 (-e B, fossest [and] C; D †).

Note.—Alderfrest[e] and alderbeste are of course treated like monosyllables (see vv. 2939, 4439 f).

(b) Other adjectives, Romance as well as Saxon:

this fórknowyng[ë] wyse, 78 (-ë BC, in this ‡ wyse D).

Bygan for ioyë the amorousë daunce, 6093 (thamarousë B, the amerous[ë] CD).

O cruel god o dispitous[ë] Marte, 1520 (dispituse C, O thou c. g. o dispitousë martë B, thou being above the line).

Cf. also, the Troiâné gestes, 145 A (the troyan BC makes a bad 9-syl. verse, read -[ë]; troianys D).

§ 60. IV. But trisyllabic proparoxytone adjectives take no -e when the following word is accented on the second syllable. The verse will not bear such an arrangement of accents as ’x’xx’.

the tèmpestuos matère, 1090 (this tempestuos m. D).
his èxcellènt provësse, 438, 1745. (But,—your èxcelléntë doùghter, Sq. T. 145.)

§ 61. V. For the same reason trisyllabic paroxytone adjectives take no -e when the following word is accented on the first syllable. Thus,—
th errâtyk stèrrës, 8175 (the erratyk B).
his vnhàppy dède, 6003 (-i B); cf. myne vnresty sorwës, 7718 (C †).

§ 62. The following may serve as examples of the vocative of adjectives of more than one syllable.
O moral Gower, this bok(e) I directe
To the, and, the, philosophical Strode. 8219-20 (D †).
o thow wykked serpent, 3679 (welked C, wikkid D).
o cruel day, 4292 (cruewel B, cruel C, cruel † ladi D).
despitous day, 4300 (dis- BC, dispitouse D).
inmortal god, 3027 (immortal D, o immortal god with slur C).
enuyous day, 4296 (C †).
Thou mysbeleued and enuyous folye, 3680 (mysbeleuyd CD).
o paleys desolat, 6903 f (-e D).
o paleys empty and disconsolat, 6905 f (-e D).
o thow woful Troylus, 519 (-H D).
o blysful light, 2843 (cf. 1007, 2145, 3547, 4159, 6945, 6962).
o brotel wele, 3662 (bretil C, Bbrotul J Q-syl. D).
O oldé vnholsom (on- C) and mysbyleued (-yd C, myslyued B, mysleuyd D) man, 4992.
rely to, 2847.
Thow myghty god and dredful for to greue, 6953 (dredeful B, miȝty . . . dredfuH D) (cf. 2842, 2908, 5748, 6970).
lufsom lady, 7274 (louesom CD) (cf. 6828).

§ 63. The Troilus shows few traces of the French inflection of adjectives.

Seynt Idyot, 903, and the seynt [i.e. Criseyde] is oute, 6916, throw no light on the vexed question of the forms seynt, seynte (which are discussed by Child, § 37, and ten Brink, § 242). In o bele nece, 1373 (beale B, CD om. o), and a blauyne feuere, 909 f (-[e] D) (: keuere inf.), we surely have to do with the intentional use of a French feminine adjective. Against o lady souereyne, 4978 (-ayne B, -aigne D) (: peyne n.) may be cited my souereyn lady queene, C. T. 6630 T. Of dyuyne purveyaunce, 5623 (de- BD) is comparable with the seruyse divyne, C. T. 122 (see ten Brink, § 242, Freudenberger, Ueber das Fehlen des Auftakts, p. 39). Compare also the list of French adjectives that have an inorganic -e (§ 52).
§ 64. Adjectives in the Comparative Degree usually end in the Troilus in -er (var. -ere). Thus,—

(a) fairer, 454 (-est † A), 6843; no fayrer creature, 7171; pl., faiere,
5064 (-er BD). (In all these C has fayrere.)
frendliour, 885 (frenlyer B, frendlyere C, frendlier D).
gladder, 884 (D †, -ere C), 3199 (-ere BC).
gretter, 241 (-ere C); grettere help, 2531 (-er D); grettere hardinesse,
566 (-er BD).
hardere, 5567 (-er D).
hotter, 1005 (-ere C, hatter D); h. is, 449 (hatter B, hattere C, hatter
he is D). (Cf. pl., -ere, 1623 (-er B), 4999 (-er D).)
leuere, 1027 (-er D), 1437 (B † D †), 3433 (-er D), 3949 (C †, D †),
4332 (-er D), 5227, 2529 (-yr D); -ere han, 5232 (-ere hit † C,
-er † than D); lèuere a, 3416 (-er a BD).
liker, 3870 (-ere C, like † or D).
proudder, 1223 (-ere C).
rather, my r. speche, 4179 (-ere C); my rathere speche, 8162 (-er BD).
outer, that outer hous, 3506 (other † A, this vttir C, this † litil D).
swyfter cours, 2470 (-ere C).
wiser be, 986 (-er of B, -ere C); wysere, 2087 (-er BD, -ere than C).
worthier of, 251 (-ere C), plural.

So in the Romance adjective—
straungere, 5050 (-er BD, strengere † C).

(b) lenger (A.S. lengra), 3541 (langer B, moré CD), 4703 (leng[e] A), 7025 (-ere C, longer B), 7214 D (moré A, longé BC); lengere,
1377 (-er D, longer B), 2050 (-er BD); lengere, 7022 (-er D, longer
B). (So lengest, 474 (adv. † D).)

c) bettre (disyll.) (A.S. bet(e)ra, bettra), 1262 (-er D), 1445 (-ere
B, -yr C, -er D), 3772 (-ere B, -ire C, -ir † D), 5964 (-er B, -ir
D), 7308 (-er BD), 7432 (-er B, -ir † D); my b. arm, 2735 (-ere C,
-ir D). (In all these, unless otherwise indicated, C has -ere.)
bet, (i.) 257 (betir is † D), 1211 (bettyr † C, worth † A), 1213, 1315,
1514, 2539 (B †, D adv.), 2736 (betir † to D), 3963 (bet(ir) mynde
D, bet adv. A), 4065 (betir † than D), 7634 (best † C, bettir †

1 Supply [set] in C, [it] in D. 2 CD insert ben (be), necessitating a harsh slur.
3 Insert [wel] in A. 4 Read withouten for woth in C.
Observations on the Language

(§ 64.) (ii.) 5253 (betere (it) is C, -ir is D), 5593 (-ere is C, bettrir is D), 6404 (beste † D).

lasse, lesse (A.S. leása), 703 f, 796 f, 1009 f (lesse(d) C), 2803, 2947, 3988 1, 5140 (allas † CD), 5465 f, 6981 f; for the lesse harm, 4000; l esse, 5240. (Cf. plural, 6206 f.) lasse nede, 2617 C (A † B †, the lessë nede D), a doubtful line. 2 Cf. other lässe folk (?), 4716. In lesse he koude, 2163, l esse has an adverbal force.

Rhyme words.—Nouns in -nesse (drerynesse, etc.) (703, 796, 5465, 6981), destresse n. (1009, 5465), gesse inf. (6981).

more (A.S. mára), I. as adj. indef. sing. in connection with nouns and pronouns,—nomorë hardë grace, 713 (n. m. hard[e] g. D); more vërtu, 1264; 3 more feste, 1446 (festis † C); nomore feste, 6887; no more sorwe, 1491 (C †); routhe more, 1649 f (: sore adv. : lore n.) 4; withoute more speche, 1582, 2506, 4352, 6751, 7494, 8079; more peyne, 2316; moreh help, 2540 D (perh. adv.); the 5 mórë thank, 2551 6; morë pres, 2728; thi wo wax alwey more, 3084 f (: sore adv. : lore n.); the 7 more fere, 3414; withouten more lette, 3541 CD, 7214 A; his sorwe is mucho more, 5561 (moore D) (: sore adv.); strof ... ay which of hem was more, 7182 f (mor D) (: euerë more adv.); more wo, 7415; Thorough more (mor[e] B) wode and col the more fyr, 2417 8.—more folk, 4032, and morë thyng, 5205 (C † D †), are doubtless plural. II. more, moore, substantive use, 6452, 7772, 7974 (-[e] D); withouten more, 3815 f (: sore adv.) 9, 3998, 4795 f (: sorwes sore), 5038 f (: sore inf. : sikes sore), 6160 f (: yore adv.); withouten ony moore, 7560 f (moor D) (: sykes sore); cf. now is there litel morë for to done, 3389 (A erroneously inserts but); no more 10 (sbst.), 1044, 3032 (-e as B), 3192 f (: sikes sore), 3515, 6689 f (: yore : lore noun), 7161, 8094 f (moor D) (: euerëmore adv. : of yore), 8106 (na mor[e] B).

Note.—For more (of both kinds, adj. and sbst.),—and one or two in which the adverb-line is perhaps passed), cf. 796, 3518, 5187, 5933, 6047, 6321, 6363, 6492. Cf. what sholde I more seye, 1406, 2219; what sholde I more telle, 3435; what myght I more do or seye, 3892; what hym lyste he seye vn-to it more, 5785 f (: sore adv.); what wolde ye more, 7274; the harm that myghte ek fallen more, 1539 f (: sore adv.); not o word spak she more, 3899 f (D †) (: sore adv.).

1 Read [o]this in D.
2 And hast the (so DG Cp. John’s, om. ABC) lasse (lesse D) nede to (om. BD, th to C) countrefete.
3 Supply [he] in B.
4 As neuere of thyng ne hadde I routhë more ([ne] D, no r. m. B, not r. m. C).
5 The A.S. by-construction.
6 Dele (me) in AD (or slur).
7 The A.S. by-construction.
8 Supply [the] in B. D reads,—The morë wode.
9 Insert [him] in C.
10 Sometimes written nomore (B namore).
more, I. adj. use, more nede is, 3699 (¢ now † B, it nedith more (i.e. potius) sodeynly C, D †); Ech(¢) set by other more for other semeth, 643; more reward, 2218; out of more respite, 6500 (without † more respite D); cf. the more harm is, 7299 (C † D †). I. no more (obst.) in there is no more to done and similar phrases, 574, 2511 (-e of CD), 3532, 7672; I kan no more but, 3232, 4035, 4115, 41561, 7731 (moor D); yet was there more to done, 7455; yet sey I more therto, 5734 (-e herto BD); nor axen more that, 1232; yf I more dorste prey (†), 2521 (moore C, more y D)2; was worth more than, 4382 (worthy CD)3; withoute more to, 2751 (-e is † B, l. to).

mo, moo (plural) (A.S. mæ, mæ, adv.), 613 f4, 614, 2490 f, 2566 f, 2651 f (sg. † C), 3076 f, 3212 (more C), 4356 f, 4881 f, 5162, 5490 (moore D), 5787 f, 6303 f, 6592 f, 7127 f, 7626 f, 8044 f5. (Cf. 6521 f.)

Rhyme words.—wo, two, tho, so, fo, go, also.

Note.—Several of the passages contain the formula,—withouten wordés mo. This occurs also in the form, withouten wordés moré (cf. 5326 f, 6419 f, 8035 f). worse (A.S. wiersa, wyrsa), 4542 f (wors D); I go to worse, 5502 f (wors C); i-turned vnto worse, 3916 f (-s CD); in worse plyt, 1797 (-[e] D); with worse hap, 4088 (vois † B); ye may do me no worse, 5856 f. But,—wers though, 1950; wors that, 5144 (-e D); wors than, 7056 (-e D); wors of, 1947; pl. wers whi †, 1820 C (wors [why] † D).

Rhyme words.—acurse (acorse) inf. (3916), 1 sg. ind. (5502, wors : fors C), curse (corse) 3 pl. ind. (4542), aduerse (5856), diuerse (5856). [Var. BC worse; D wurse, wurs.] (Cf. 2880 f.)

§ 65. The Comparative and Superlative of adjectives are sometimes formed by means of more and most (Child, § 38, d). Thus—

more bounteous, 883 f.
more gracious, 885 f.
the more worthi part, 2413.
the more swete [e], 4061 f (more swete BC).
more fayn, 6851 f.
more parfit loue, 7282.
more kynde, 7283 f.

1 Supply [these] in A.
2 But supply [now] in C and read more.
3 Worth(y) more than CD (if worthy be kept, we must slur more than (mor'n).
4 The cases cited are adjectival unless the line-number is in old-style figures: in that case, the use is substantive.
5 In A read othes for other.
most meke, 8210 f.
most is to hym dere, 4947 f.
the mestē stormy life, 1863 (cf. § 87).
the most[ē] fre, 1073 (cf. § 87).

§ 66. The Superlative of adjectives ends in -est. Thus,—
best (cf. 828, 2570, 2649, 2738, 4746, 4863, 5341, 6381, 6904, 7717 f, 8210); fairest, 5817 (fayrē ‡ C); leuest (cf. 1274); lothest am (cf. 1322); shortest (7137 BD); trewest, 4665 (trusty ‡ D), etc. B, C, and D sometimes show a scribe's -e, which, however, is of course never sounded (for 6664 BD is to be emended).
For superlatives in the definite use or in the plural see §§ 53, 57, 59, 70.

Note.—In one case we may perhaps suspect that a single -est serves for two adjectives,—

And thus she lith with hewes pale and grene
That whilom fressh and fairest was to sene,

5816-17 (frosche and fayrē ‡ were C).

§ 67. The Plural of monosyllabic adjectives ends in -e.

In the following list no definite or vocative forms have been included without notice. An asterisk indicates that the adjective follows its noun (as, eyen bryghte); old-style figures indicate that the adjective stands in the predicate (as, eyen are bryghte)¹. No cases are included (without notice) in which the adjective refers to a plural ye singular in sense. For bare, fresshe, etc., see note at the end of the section.

(a) blake (A.S. blæc. Sg. blak, cf. 170, 175), my clothes everychone
Shul blake ben, 5441.
bygge (etym. dub.), bygge bowes, 4702 (big[ge] D).
colde (A.S. cald, ceald. Sg. cold, 5839 (-[e] BD); cold(e), 1783 f

¹ But these marks are not used with the singular forms given.
(cold CD), cf. 7465 f, *264 f (cold D), *4044 f, *4102 f, *6354 f, *7705 f, *8110 f (all these in the phrase carës colde); -e hem, *4611 f (tolde t E).

dede (A.S. déad. Sg., ded, cf. 723, 1494 f, 1527 f, 1739 f, 1930 f, 2135, 2441, 2784 f, 2921 f, 3923 f, 4414 f, 5162 f, 5819 f, 7609, 7866, etc.; dede, cf. 5041, 6922), *1624 f (sg. in A, but read asshe[n]; as lede t D), 3134 f, 3194 BD([-e] AC), 3734 (a dedé t man A), *4781 f, 5754 f, 5894 f (D t), 6178 f; floures . . . that winter dedé made, 1137; shulle . . . liggen dede, 5288 f (deed D).

Rhyme words.—rede adj. pl. (1624), rede legunt (3134), dede n. (3134, 5894), dede n. (5283), drede n. (5754, 6178), sprede inf. (4781), lede inf. (6178).
depé (A.S. déop. Sg. dep, 1236 C (-e ABD)), my ladyes depe sikes, 7038 (C t).
donne (A.S. dun(n)), 1993 f (dunne C): sonne solœm : y-ronne p.p.).
dyme (A.S. dim(m)), -e, 1993 AB.
fayre (A.S. fieger. For singular, see § 49), floures fayre, 8204 f (fair D) (: a fayre n.).
felle (A.S. fel. Sg. fel a dede, cf. 6413), fel[l]e, *4706 f (felle BD)
( : quelle ind. 3 pl. : telle inf.).
glade (A.S. glæd. Sg. glad, cf. 592, 2623, 3489, 3493, 4633, 5067, 5349, 5387, 5471, etc.), *1135 f, *1233 f, *1583 f, 2436 f (glad C; D t), *2857 f, *3453 f.

Rhyme words.—made ind. 3 sg. (1135, 1583, 3453), ind. 2 pl. (2857), wade inf. (1233), Wade nom. pr. (3453), hadde ind. 3 sg. (2436).
goode (A.S. gôd. For singular, see § 49), good[e], *8222 f (garde t A) (: Strode nom. pr. : on rode); -e, *1808 (om. t D). But,— of good condiciōns, 1251 AD (-e BC) ²; in good t chaunces, 2432 D.
grete (A.S. greāt. For singular, see § 49), *4722 f, *5630 (B t, grete clerkes D), *6499 f, *7601 f, *8122 f; grete attendaunce, 339 (gret C); gret t effectis, 7992 C (sg. ABD).

Rhyme words.—strete (4722), hete n. (7601, 8122), trete inf. (4722, 6499), bete inf. (8122).
leue (A.S. léof. Sg. lef, leef, lief (var. B leu(e); D leef), lef(e)), cf. 3302, 3706 f, 3711, 3712, 4461 f), 4744 f (: acheue inf. : leue credo).
lyghte (A.S. leoht, liht, shortened from leóht. Sg. lyght, cf. 5072 f, 5146 f, 6232, 6437 f, 6715 f, 7047 f, 7481 f), *2323 f (-t CD)

¹ Supply [my] in A. ² Omit (te) in D.
Observations on the Language [§ 67.]

(± to the flyghte, -t BD), *2471 f (-t CD) (± wighte weight). [Var. C lyzt; D light.]


prowde (A.S. prút. For singular, see § 49), alle prowde (= omnes superbae), 1487 f (al[le] proud D) (lowde adv.).

quyke (A.S. cwic, W.S. cvucu, cuscu, see Sievers, § 303. Gg. quyk, 2921), -e, 1137.

rede (A.S. réad. Sg. red, cf. 86, 1730, 1737 f, 2924 f, 3798 f, 4412 f, 7288 f), *158 f, *1136 f, *1623 f, *2936 f (sg. D †).

Rhyme words.—mede pratum (158, 1136), drede n. (2936), dere adj. pl. (1623), rede ind. 1 sg. (158), sprede inf. (1136).


sharpe (A.S. scearp. Sg. sharp, cf. (i.) 1876, 3268, 4373; (-e), 5560 (-p BC); (ii.) cf. 786, 4467; (-e), 7632 (hardly adv.), *470 † A (definite BCD), 3906 ([-e] D †); it maketh sharpe kervyng toles, 632 ([e] D)1; -e, 7564.


sleye (Icel. slegr), *7261 f (slye C, slie D) (± lye mentior : yë); sley arn clerkes, 5634 (sleghe B, slye were D).

Note.—The rhymes show that sleye (not sleye) is the correct form.

smale (A.S. smael), *2276 f (± tale), 4304, *5399 f (± bale : pale);
-e he[ř], *4089.

smerete; sorwes, peynes smerte, 794 f (-t D), 3792 f (-t D), 4910 f, 5088 f (-t D), 5803 f (peynë † smerte D), 6163 f, 6561 f (-t C), 7087 f, 7412 f (-t C), 7689 f, 7783 f (-t C).

Rhyme words.—herte (everywhere), sterte inf. (3792), he sterte pret. ind. (6561).

Note.—Skeat seems to regard smerte in sorwes (peynes) smerte as a noun. At any rate he puts Compl. Pile 13, B. Duch. 593, Compl. Mars 10, H.F. 316, along with the wounde smerte (H.F. 374), under smerte sbst. in his Glossarial Index (Minor Poems, 1888, p. 440). But his sorwes ver so smerte, B. Duch, 507, and Were ny sorwes never so smerte, Id. 1107 (cited ibid.), surely make against this. Besides, the substantive seems to be

1 In D supply [yit].
2 With short[e] laryinge, 7137 A Cp. (short[e] C, shortest BDG John's), is the only case which seems to countenance shorte in the sing., but in this line the superlative is clearly right. For cases of the singular shorte before vowels, cf. 2578, 2743, 3298, 4598, 5552 (f), 5598.
**§ 67.**

*of Chaucer's Troilus.*

*3* smert in the *Troilus* (cf. 5035, 5128, 5507; smert, 6780, may be a verb; C. T. 3811 T. is indecisive). Cf. also the entirely similar phrase *soruces sore* (2427 f., 4794 f., 7718 f.).

sore (A.S. sár. Sg. sor, 7002 (soor(e) B; D †); sor(e), 4263 (soor B)), *2427 f., 3191 f1, 4794 f, 5037 f, 7038 f, 7559 f, 7718 f (C †); -e, *4613, 7397 BD (-ë doun C, herë sorë sykes † A).

Rhyme words.—more (all cases), lore n. (2427), rode *inf.* (5037). [Var. BD soore.]


stronge (A.S. strang, strong. Sg. strong and, cf. 7165), *57 f, 7051 f, 7227 f, 7564 f; -e, *4692 (strong D).²

Rhyme words.—longe *adv.* (all cases), *inf.* (7051), honge *inf.* (7564).

swyte (A.S. swift), 4909 AD ([-e] B).

syke (A.S. séoc, Dur. Rushw. séc), 2903 f (sbst.), 3979 ³, *4014 f, 4204 f⁴, *7717 f (C †).

Rhyme words.—syke *inf.* (2903, 4014, 4204), pyke *inf.* (2903), lyke *inf.* (4204, 7717). [Var. BCD sike; D sijke.]

tame (A.S. tam), 3371 f (sbst.) (: letté-game : frame *inf.*).

wete (A.S. wét, wét), *7472 f (C †) (: heté *noun*), *8053 f (: lete *inf.*).


wronge (Icel. vrang-r. Sg. wrong, 4851, 7524 ([-e] B), *3646 f (wrong CD) (: longe *adv.*), *4233 f (: longe *pl.* : stronge *adv.*).

wrothe (A.S. wráð), 140 f (: bothe), 4784 f (: bothe), 6504 f (: th BD) (: bothe). (Cf. below, § 69.)

wyse (A.S. wís. Sg. wys, cf. 630, 1798, 5076 f, 5749, 7183, etc.), *954 f, 984 f, *3694 f, 3784 f, *4392 f, *4533 f, 7942 f. Cf. yf ye ben wyse, 4031 f (: aryse *pres. subj.* 3 *pl.*).

Rhyme words.—wyse n. (954, 984, 3694, 3784, 4392), servise, seruyse (954, 984), suffice, suffise *inf.* (3694, 4533, 7942), aryse *inf.* (3784), deuyse *inf.* (4533), degyse *inf.* (7942).

yone (A.S. geon), withinne 3one † wallis, 7096 C (the yonder AB, yonder D).

yonge (A.S. geong, etc. Sg. yong, (i.) 1721 (yung D), 7193; (ii.) 1837 (yung D)), 1204 ([-e] D); to vs yonge, 3135 f (g B)

¹ Supply [his] in B.

² This line affords an excellent instance of the disregard shown for -e by D: "The grekys strong[e] about[e] troy[e] tonn."

³ Read *folk(e)s* in B, *folkys* (for *follys*) in C.

⁴ Supply [that] in C.
Further examples of the plural may be seen in:

In May that moder is of monethes glade.

That fresshë flores blew and white and rede
Ben quyke a-gayn that wynter dedë made
And ful of bawme is fletynge every mede
When Phebus doth his bryghtë bemes sprede
Right yn the white bole so it bytydde
As I shal synge on Mayes day the thriddle, 1135-41.

(b) fele (A.S. feola, fela, Ps. N. feolu, -o; really old neut. adj.), on of so fele, 4772; thow sleest so fele, 5174. [fele, 4706 f A, is f. l. for felle.]

fewe (A.S. féawe, -a, Ps. féa). I. Without a,—fewe lordes, 2672;
fewe folk, 2732 (-e B); wommen fewe, 7051 (few B). II. With a,—a sely fewe poyntes, 338 (C f); a fewe wordes, 3743 (-e B); a fewe bryghtë teres, 3893 (-e B); of wordes but a fewe, 6996 f (shewe inf.); a fewe of olde storyes, 7822 (C f, sue f); in a wordes fewe, 5942 f AB (in [a] w. f. CD) (shewe inf.).

(c) So in the plural of monosyllabic superlatives:

meste and leste, 167 f (B f; A f); the moost and ek(e) the leest D) (feste); most and leste, 4721 f (requeste n.). (For “definite” plural phrases, the meste and [ek] the leste, with the firste and with the beste, cf. 6803, 7202.)

(d) Cardinal numerals (Child § 39. c; ten Brink, § 247):
tweyne, tweye (A.S. masc. twégen, Kent. Rushw. twégen, North. tuége, tuége, etc.).

(1) tweyne, *1705 f (twene C), *2800 f, *2820 f (-n D),
*3957 f, *4332 f, *5410 f (-n CD), *5804 f, *7634 f, *7711 f; a nyght or tweyne, 3392 f (-n D, twey(e)ne C); we tweyne, 4049 f, 5138 f, 5450 f (-n D), 5920 f (tweyne B), 7042 f; vs tweyne, 5965 f (tweyne B); tweyn (: peyne), *5412 f C. [4976 f A, 5064 f C.]

Rhyme words.—cheyne n. (1705), Eleyne (2800), peyne n. (2820, 4332, 5410, 5450, 5804, 5920, 5965, 7042, 7634), to seyne inf. (1705, 3392, 3957, 7711), reyne inf. (3392), streyne inf. (4049), compleyne inf. (5138, 5450, 7634, 7711), subj. 3 sg. (5920).

(2) tweye, *1255 f, 1267 f (swychë tweye), 1896 f (absolute use),

1 Jong occurs in 184 C,—hyse yongë knyrtis (jonge AD, zonge B).
2 monthes gladde B.
3 fressch[e] B.
4 bryght[e] B.
5 bool B.
of Chaucer's Troilus. 

* 2917 f, 3665 f (absolute) (twyen B), * 4791 f (twye A, tway D), * 4976 f B (tweyne † A, twye C †), 6075 f (a day or twywe, cf. 6045 f), * 8091 f (twy B, tuey D) (cf. * 4820 f, * 4909 f); vs, ye, yow, bothë twywe, 2242 f (to † C), 2277 f (twayne † C), 2739 f, 3982 f, 7670 f (tweyne B) (cf. 5771 f, 6165 f, 6991 f); a day or twywe, 6276 B (two A, too C, tweyne D). For the definite use (as, the twey, this ilke tweye), cf. 494 f, 4035 f, 4156 f, 5032 f. 

—twy, with twywe always has twey (but cf. 2383 f, 3074 f); C has twey in 6075 f, 7670 f.

Rhyme words. 1—deye inf. (1255, 4909, 6075, 6991), seye inf. (1255, 2739, 2917, 3665, 4820, 4909, 5771, 6045, 6165, 7670, 8091), ind. 1 sg. (1267, 2277), pleye inf. (1896), subj. 2 sg. (3665), preye inf. (2739), ind. 1 sg. (2242, 6165), ind. 3 pl. (6045), leye inf. (2917, 7670), purywe 2 pl. inv. or subj. (2242), a-tweye (2277, 4976), chimënëye (3982), this olde greye (4791), what weye (4820), by the weye (6991).

Note.—For two (var. C to, too; D tuo, to), cf. 614 f, 645, 1671, 2777 f, 7736, 8226, etc.; a-tweo, 4317 f (on to C, a twoo D), 6543 f (oto C, in tuo D), etc.

fyue (A.S. fif), * 2117 f (: vpon lyue), * 6760 f (: dryue inf. : blyue adv.), * 7252 f (: on lyue); suchë fyue, 1211 f (: thryue inf.); swych[e] fyue, 1213 (D †). [Var. BC fiue.]

sixe (A.S. sex, W.S. siex, syx), set the world on sixe and seuene (six B, sexe C, vi D), 5284.

seuene (A.S. seofon, siofon, -an, -en, Ps. seofen), the blysful goddes seuene, 4045 f (: to heuene); seuene (disyll.) kynges, 7858 (vij BD); on sixe (q.v.) and seuene (seue C, seuen D), 5284 f (: to heuene).

nyne (A.S. nigon, R.² nîone), ix. (= nyn) nyght, 5250 (nyné dayis † ? C); ye sustren nyne, 4651 (ix that D); and othere of here wommen nyne or ten, 3440 (nyñë or (? ) C), ³ a .ix. or .x. D.⁴.

twelue (A.S. twelf), * 1193 f, * 2484 f (twelwe C), * 6460 f, * 7287 f (.vij. † C); swych[e] twelue, 5064 f (tweine † C). (All rhyme with my-, thi-, hym-se-.)

Note.—But ten (cf. 60, 5982, 6602, 7569, 7713). Other numerals,—thrs (cf. 2021, 3051 f, 3155 f, etc.), twenty (cf. 6069), fyfty (cf. 7856), sixty (cf. 441), thousand (cf. 55, 457, 531, 546, 819, 1227, etc.), thousands (8165, -es BD).

Note.—In Anglo-Saxon, when the cardinal numerals from 4 to 19 are used absolutely, they form cases according to the i- declension (see Sievers, § 325 and note).

¹ No cases of the definite use included.
² Supply [the] in A.
³ But supply [other] and read nyne.
⁴ Supply [of] in D.
(e) Monosyllabic participles (see also § 68):

with bygge bowes bente, 4702 f AB (bent D) (: mente 3 pl. : wente 3 pl.).

with herte and eerys spradde, 6084 f (: he hadde).
But cf. wommen lost thorugh, 3140 (C †).

(f) Romance adjectives:

preste wynges, 5323 ([-e] BD).  (For sing. cf. 3759, 4824.)
tuskes stoute, 7817 f (: aboute : doute n.).
knyghtes stoute, 7856 f (: route n. : aboute).
floures blew and, 1136 AB.

Note 1. For examples of the plural of adjectives that end regularly in -e in the singular, cf. grene (1906 f, 5816 f, 6095 f, 6374 f), kene (1143 f), kynde (7333 f), nece (2554 f, 3893 f, 6192 f), trewe (2695 f, 2959 f, 4613 f), wntrew (1871 f). For examples of the plural of adjectives that come under § 49, cf. bare (7910), fayre, fresche (1136, 3453, 8198), goode, grete, kyne, hegyhe (3460 f, 4910, 7093), old(e) (see note s. v.), proude (1457 f). For the plural of Romance adjectives that end in the singular in -e, cf. pale (3466 f), straunge (1109 f), nyce (1109), ryche and pore (6406 f), square (7164 f) (sg. not in the Troilus).

Note 2. Bonde (A.S. bona, weak noun) is used as an adjective (in the plural apparently) in “For as herë lyst she pleyth with free and bonde,” 840 (bond D) (: withstonde inf.). For the singular, also adjectival, see “She wolde nought ne make hire-self bonde In loue,” 2808 f (: vnderstonde inf. : in honde).

§ 68. Monosyllabic perfect participles standing in the predicate regularly take no -e in the plural. Thus—

(i.) Before consonants and at end of verse:

they be gon, 2243 f (-e BD) (: anoon, or noon A).
they were born, 4064 f (-e BCD)  ( : by-forn).
bothë two be lorn, 4065 f (-e BD)  } ( : by-forn).
they were born, 5913 f (borne BD, bore C).
we be lost, 3937 (cf. 3140).
ye be brought, 3980 f (-e B, broust CD) (: nought : thought n.).
ben . . . laft, 4180 f (last † C, lefte E) ( : by-raft p.p. pred. pl.) ;
cf. 4887 f, 4889 f.—ben wzyst, 5739 (-e B), cf. 5681.
they ben met, 4523 f (mette C") (: was it bet). So,—i-met, 1671 f (ymette D)  ( : net n. : set p.p.).
this wordes seyd, 5573 (-e BD ; seydë † dixit C).
Til we be slayn (sleyne B) and doun ourë walles torn, 6144 (torne D)  ( : lorn p.p. : sworn p.p.).
thei be wont to, 7023 (wonte BD, wonë C) ; cf. were woned to,
4553 (wonte B, wonë C, wont D).

(ii.) Before vowels:

thei ben met, 1237 (mette C ; D †) ; ben set, 4986.
§ 69. Monosyllabic adjectives standing in the predicate do not always take -e in the plural (Child, § 41; ten Brink, § 234). Thus—

(a) hem that ben not worth two fecches. 3778 BCD (sing. A).

Cf. 3696, 4009, where worth pl. is followed by a vowel.1

wysé men ben war by folys, 635 (-e D, ware † of B).2
dedé were his iapes, 1076.

shal we ben so fayn, 5983 f (feyne B ; D †) (: ayen : seyn inf.).
tonges ben so prest, 1870 f (-e B) (: lest n.).
O verrey loues nice and blynde be ye, 202 (fooles nice and blynde B Cp. John's ; C † ; ãλλος D †).

(b) So particularly when the adjective in the predicate refers to a subject ye (expressed or implied) used in a singular sense. Thus—

be ye mad, 1198 f (made B, madde C) (: adrad p.p. sg., adradd(e) C).

Note.—In,—Be ye (so C G Cp. ; ye DF John's, om. AB) nought (not CD) war (ware BD) how fals (false Cp., that fals D) Polyphete, 2552, ye is necessary to the sense. We should read war and falsé. Cf. § 49. Cases before vowels (as, glad, 3019) of course prove nothing.

ye be wroth therfore, 1385 (-e D). Cf. p. 141.

Now beth nought wroth my blod my nece dere, 1679 (-e D); beth not wroth with me, 6508 ; so, before vowels, in 7972, 7977. [For sing. wroth, cf. (i.) 349, 842, 1012, 2158, 3127, 3572 f, 3886 f, 3924, 3952 f, 7827, 8138 ; (ii.) 581 (be † ye wroth C), etc.]

( ye that) ben so loth to, 2996 (-e D). [For sing. loth, cf. (i.) 3211, 3574 f, 4181 ; (ii.) 1893, 6384.]

beth al hol || no, 3010 (-e D, hoolé B).


1 For sing. worth, cf. 3675, 4382, 5428, 7245.
2 For sing war, see p. 146.
Observations on the Language [§§ 69, 70.

beth glad now, 5978 (-e D; C?).  
Beth wel war, 4022 (-e D); beth war of men, 8148 (-e D). [For sing.  
war, cf. (i.) 203, 1360, 2266, 4544 f; (ii.) 2103, 3426, 4464, 7922;  
ware, 6896 (war CD).]  
and ye so feyr, 6533 (-e BD).

So occasionally when the plural adjective is used attributively.

Ten Brink's remark, "Im Plural des attributiv stehenden Adjectivs (gleichviel ob starker oder schwacher Flexion) tritt die Apocope [des flexivischen -e] kaum ein; niemals, wenn der Adjectiv voransteht" (§ 236) is not borne out by the Troilus MSS. The following lines are significant:—

And ben of good condicions ther to, 1251 A (goodë B, goodë condicioynys C, And to be of good c. therto D). We have no warrant to read condicion.

Ne for no wyse men but for foles nice, 3166 (no wis man C, wyse man D). Here one is tempted to read man. (No note in the Cp. collation.) But wyse men is a quasi-compound, cf. 5749.

Hath lordes oldë thorugh which withinne a throwe, 7824 (old C, high D).

Note.—Cases before a vowel (as ful, 4223, 8176) of course prove nothing.

§ 70. For adjectives of more than one syllable which do not stand at the end of the verse, the rule as to -e in the plural is the same as that already stated as to -e in the definite and vocative constructions of such adjectives (§ 56).

Of such adjectives those alone take -e which have a primary or secondary accent on the ultima, and are followed by a word accented on the first syllable (cf. Child, § 40; ten Brink, § 233).¹

Note.—For convenience, words in -re (-er), -le, have been included in the following list. A few sporadic cases of -ë (as in lowëde) or -e (elided) will be observed.

(a) the worthiest and grettest in degre, 244.
the freshest and, 4564 (-e B; C † D †).
strongest folk, 243 (cf. alderwisest han, 247).

¹ In the list that follows, no definite or vocative examples, or examples before a vowel, or h, are given without notice.
(b) conorted most, 249 (-id C, -yd D) (predicate).
thonked be ye, 1935 (sg. CD).
tresses vubroyden hangen, 5479.
twynned be we, 5138, 7042.
here dorres sperid alle, 6894 (-ed BD, -ede C).
feyned loues, 8211.
payens corsed olde vyees, 8212.
(Cf. also 3931, 5670, 6186, 7482, 7702, 7907, 8143, etc.)

(c) 3our lewéde observaunces, 198 C (3our lewdé observaunnce † D).
hiré wykkedé workes, 997 (-ed B, -id D).
these wikkedé tonges, 1870 (-yd D).
we wreched wommen, 1867 (wreche[d] C ; D †).
these wreched worldes appetites, 8214 A (this B, the D).
(Cf. also 1905, 1906, 1907.)

(d) the blysful goddes, 4045 AB, 7613.
maisterful or (pred.), 1841 (mastirful C, maystreful D).
sorwful 2 sykes, 4203 (soryful C, sorowful D), 7717 (sorweful CD).
sorweful 2 teres, 7737 (sorwful D).
the sorwful, 6346 (sorwful D).
wilful tacheches, 3777.
o wofulle eyen, 4971 (woful B, cruél † C, wofuH D).
hisé woful wordes, 1658.  (Cf. 5002, 5797.)
here woful wery gostes tweyne, 5804 f (wery wofuH D).

(e) goosish peples speche, 3426 B (gos(y)lych † A, C † om., gossishé D) 3.
here sonnyssh herys, 5478 (e here B 4).

(f) her sydes . . . fleysshly, 4090 (flessly C, fleschly C, fleishely D).
shaply ben, 6114 (shapely B, shapely D).
gyddé † apis, 906 C (goddës apes ABD).
many wordes, 1233 (-ye BC, meny D).
In sondry londes sondry ben vsages, 1113 (sundry D).
sondry formes, 8076.
to yow angry Parcas, 6366 (angurry D).
vnthryfty weyes, 6192.

(For other cases, definite and indefinite, of the plural of adjs. in -y,
cf. 233, 251, 742, 1112, 1203, 1233, 2171 A, 2324, 2436, 4046,
4208, 4223, 4287, 6532, 7164, 7332, 8122, 8133, etc.)

1 Supply [tho] in A.
2 Dissyllable throughout.
3 A and D have peples speche, haplography for peples speche. The textus receptus has goosish, see Mätzner s.v. gofisch. G has goosish. E has gossish. Cp. has gossish peples.
4 Read here[s] in B (: teres : eeres).
Observations on the Language [§§ 70, 71.

Note.—For merye, see above, § 46, p. 113.

(g) bittre 1 bondes, 3958 (bittere 1 C, bittir D); bittre teris, 5800 (bittere C, bittir D); bittre weren, 5798 (-tere C, bitter D); thi bittre peynes smerte, 5088 (-tere ? C, bitter D †).

with-inē tho yonder wallys, 7096 (with-innē zonē wallis C, with-innē yonder D).

(h) certeyn tymes, 4273; certeyn folk, 6396.

ye do hem cōrteys be, 2868 (curteis B, curteys D).

esie sykes, 4205 (esie C).

tho that ben expert in, 2452.

ye humble 1 nettes, 4197 (vmbele 1 C).

parfit and, 7333 (-e B; C †; perfite D 2).

the subtile stremes, 305 (subtyl C, sotil D).

dye sykes, 4205 (esie C).

the subtile sternes, 305 (subtyl C, sotil D).

foul vngiltyf suffren, 3860 (ongilti C, vngilty D †).

his throwes frēnētīk and madde, 6569 (feraentike † B, fren[ē]tīk D, frentyk † he made C).

The plural -e is shown in

the Troiānē gestes, 145 A (the troyan[e] BC, the troianys † D),

and perhaps in

Fy on yourē myght and werkes so diuerse, 5857 f ( : thow fortune aduerse : no worse) (cf. § 52, above; Child, § 42; ten Brink, § 241).

Cf. otherē besye (dissyl.) nedes, 355 (-y CD); cf. however, 7352 (A †).

Note.—In amoreux hem made, 2859, we have a French plural (amerous D).

See also § 63.

§ 71. The treatment of the plural of adjectives of more than one syllable at the end of the verse, is illustrated by the following examples. (Cf. also § 70, at the end.)

hem that falsēly ben apeyrred, 38 f, rhyning with
hem that ben des(es)peyrred, 36 f (despeyrred B, dispēired D).

alderwisest han . . . ben plesed, 247 f (-id C, -yd D) rhyning with
thei . . . han ben . . . esed, 249 f (-yd D) ( : apesed p.p. sg.).

the feste and playes pālestrāl, 6667 f ( : funeral).

1 Dissyllable throughout.

2 In C read parfit (printed, parfit) and supply [and]; in D supply [and].
of Chaucer's *Troilus.* 

the thynges têmporêl, 5723 f (temporal D) (: eueriel : éternêl). 
other thyng collateral, 262 f (thinges D, thyngis collateral C).

Note.—*Thei be rungen, 1890 f A, should read *Thei be runge.*

§ 72. Adjectives in A.S. -lic (-lic), O.N. -ligr, appear in the *Troilus* with the ending -ly or -lich.

Ten Brink (§ 270) seems inclined to recognize a tendency on Chaucer's part to use -lich instead of -ly when the following word begins with a vowel ¹, but the *Troilus* MSS. do not give evidence in favour of such a tendency: one can only say that the ending -ly remains unchanged in the definite use, in the plural, and in the vocative, and that when the poet wishes for metrical or other reasons to add an inflectional -e, he employs the form in -lich.

In the following list *old-style figures* indicate that a vowel follows; *def.* = definite use (singular); *def. pl.* = definite use (plural); *pl.* = plural (indefinite use); *voc.* = vocative singular. Examples not distinguished by any of these signs are in the indefinite use, singular number, and are followed by a word beginning with a consonant. It will be observed that the *Troilus* affords no instance of an adjective in -ly or -lich (-liche) at the end of a verse.

For forms in -lich, -liche, see under estatlýche, goodly, keenlíche,ゴosylýche, гryslý, syklycJ, wommanlíche.

dedly, 5533 (dedely B), 5560 (dedely BC).

etherly, 5543 (erthly B, wordely C).

estâtlíyche, 7186 (-lichë B, statlícë (? C, estâlíc D).

fleøsshly, 4090 (fleøsly B, fleçhly C, fleishly D) (pl.).

frendly, 538 ², 1234 (pl.), 1417 (lovelý ÿ D) (def.), 5060. [Var. B frendely, frendely, freendely; C frendli, frendlî.]

goodly, 162 AB ³ (def.), 173 (def.), 277, 373, 405 (sauery B, sauery CD), 446 (def.), 458 (voc.), 1070, 1366 (goodliche C), 2031 (perh. adv.) ⁴, 2113, 2210 (C ÿ D ū), 2353 (def.), 2752 (goode A) (def.), 2846 (voc.), 2970 (D ū) (voc.), 3975 (def. pl.), 4315 (D ū) (voc.), 4448, 5072 AB, 7081 (def. pl.), 7185. [Var. B godely, goodly; C goodëli, godli, goodli.]

ɡōsylýche peple speche, 3426 (goosish peoples s. B, gosisshe peple s. D; Če ū). (See p. 147, footnote 3.)

gryslý, 2785 (grýsely B, gresélîčë C) ⁵, 4817 (griselý B, gresely C).


¹ "Aus einem genauen Studium der Übelieferung . . . ergiebt sich u. a., dass Chauce . . . vor anlaentdem Vocal . . . vielfach -lich und -liche statt -ly gebräucht."

² In 538 C read gladelyth for gladede.

³ In AB the line is too long; CD Cp. Harl. 2392 om. *goodly.* G reads: And to the temple in her goodly best wyse

⁴ In Č read haste for laste.

⁵ But in C supply [?] and read græslicJę.
hœnliche, 104 C (heœnysb B, heœnyssh B, heœnly D).

holy, 1203 (pl.).

homeli, 2644 C (apparently adv. in ABD, homly).

knyghtly, 1713 (e BC).

lovely, 1417 (def).

lykly, 4112 (I lykly was to sterue) (lyke to (?)) D.

manly, 2348 (-li C), 2955 (-11 C) (def).

oonly, 6330; sain only Ector, 1825 (oonely B, onli C); oonly worthiness, 6330 (oonely B, onely D).

shaply, 6114 (-e B, shappely C) (pi).

softly, 2752 (soft[e] BD, softe C) (def).

sunnelich was, 5398 C (sonnyssh ABD).

syklyche, 2613 (sikliche B, sekly C, sike D) (?); his syktyche manère, 2628 (siklych B, seklychc C, sikly D).

well willy, 4099 ABC t (wel(e) wylly D) (def).

wommanlychef wyf, 2948 A (-lich[e] BD, -liche C) (voc.); wommanlich wylf, 4138 (women lich[e] C, womanlich[e] D) (voc.); tho womanlich thyngis, 5356 (wommanyssh[e] AD, womman[ī]sshe B);
yourë fresshe wommanlyche face, 6607 (-liche BC, womanly[che] D); wommanly, 287. (In 6940 wommanly is apparently an adv.)

worldly, 3655 (wordly B, wordeli C), 4478 (wordly B, wordelis C), 5497 (wordly BD, wordely C).

wortheli, 1424 (worthi A, worthy BD).

With these may be compared:
sely, 338 (om. C) (a sely fewe poyntes), 871, 1768, 4033 (def.), 5165, 6152 (pl.), 6892 (def.), 7456 (def.). [Var. B cely; C seli.]
vnsely, 35 (vnsceely D).
weldy, 1721 (worthi C).

PRONOUNS.

§ 73. I. Personal Pronouns.

I (A.S. ic). Usually I or y in all four MSS. But the following cases of ich have been noticed: 678 ABC, 864 A (iche here B), 2143 B, 2145 BD, 3474 B, 3549 B, 3715 B, 3770 B, 4319 B, 4660 AB, 4733 B, 4762 B, 4976 B, 4991 B, 5245 AB, 5287 AB, 5294 AB, 5411 B, 5419 B, 5467 B, 5585 B, 5727 A, 5999 A (iche B), 6053 AB, 6213 AB, 6312 B (ych A), 6403 AB, 6493 AB, 6589 AB, 6590 AB, 6781 B, 6928 B, 6933 B, 6942 B, 7062 B, 7110 B, 7234

1 In B supply [so].
AB, 7296 B, 7624 B, 7710 A, 7718 A, 7959 A (iche herte B), 7988 B, 8130 B. *ych also occurs, 6312 A, 7745 A; and, iche hym, 5594 B (cf. above 7959).

As *I best kan to yow lord yeue *ych al, 1914 (I . . . Ich B, I . . . I † 3ow . . . I al C, y . . . y D †).

Clippe *ich yow thus or elles *I it mete, 4186 AB (ech † . . . [ellis] ich C, I . . . I D).


Note.—*I occurs in rhyme as follows: (1) with adverbs in-*ly, 416, 430, 1103, 1269, 1629, 2087, 2511, 2619, 2760, 2910, 3594, 5351, 5545, 5679, 5928, 7436; (2) with *cery, 983; (3) with by, *therby, 1629, 5679.

thow (A.S. þu), 894, 909 (thou C), 933 (thou CD), 6633 (thou C, thou D), etc., etc.; thou, 898 (thow BD), etc. (In rhyme,—two cases,—thow, 2088 (thou C) (: now : how), 6695 (gow C, thou D) (: nowe, now BD.).

*Thow in the reduced form -*ow is very often attached to verbs. Thus:—

artow, 509 AB (art thou C, art(e) thou D); eartow, 5079 B (thow art A, are thou D); cf. 731, 5195, 5303, 5757. But,—art thow, 507 (artow B, art thou C, art(e) thou D), 3579 (art tow B), etc.

hastow, 554 (hast thou CD); cf. 617, 904, 962, 3145, 3861, 4297, 4301, 4453, 4945, 5039, 5057, 5145, 5158, 5301, 5751, 5755, 6588 † B, 6951, 6952.

sholdestow, shuldestow, 6714 (schuldisth C, shuldest thou D); cf. 7651.

maystow, 623 (mayst thou CD); cf. 673, 2101, 3738, 4927, 7522, 8074. But,—mayst thou, 5208 (maistow B, mayst thou C, maist thou D); cf. 7493.

myghestow, 4924 (maysth C, maist thou D).

dostow, 5177 (dost thou C, dost(e) thou D); cf. 7097.

ne hastow, 5512 (ne hast thou ? C, ne hau ye ? D).

ne haddestow, 4938 (ne haddyst thou C, ne haddisth thou D).

wiltow, wyltow, 1011 (wolto B, wilt thou CD); cf. 4931.

wolto, 2446 (wiltow B, wilt thou C, wilt thou D); cf. 5513, 7520. But,—

wolt thou, 2532 (wiltow B, wilt thou C).

nyltow, 792 (nylt thou C, nelt thou D), 8071 A (nyl to B, nil thou D); cf. 4269, 4912, 4965, 5151.

nyltow, 792 (nylt thou C, nelt thou D), 8071 A (nyl to B, nil thou D); cf. 4269, 4912, 4965, 5151.

nyltow, 792 (nylt thou C, nelt thou D), 8071 A (nyl to B, nil thou D); cf. 4269, 4912, 4965, 5151.

neltow, 5150 (nyltow B, nylt thou C, nylt(e) thou D).

noldestow, 4106 (noldest B, noldist thou CD).

wostow, 588 (wost thou C, w. thou D); cf. 611, 775, 781, 843, 851, 855, 901, 956, 967, 3091.

wistow, 4486 (wististh C, wist thou D).

oughtestow, 6908 (aujististh C, oughtest thou D).

canstow, 757 (canst thou C, canst thou D †); cf. 5122 (canstu C), 5192.

darstow, 7642 (dastow A, durst(ist) thou C, darst(e) thou D).

dorrestow, 767 AB (durystst thou C, trist thou D).

shallow, 803 (schuldysth C, thou shalt D); cf. 5271 (shaltow(e)) B, 6391.

blamestow, 841 (-yst thou CD).

gabbestow, 5143 (-ist thou C, -est thou C).

intendestow, 6841 (entendisth C, entendest thou D).

listow, 5056 (-yst thou C, liest thou D).

profejestow, 4303 (profrestow B, profilerst thou C; D †).

sekestow, 4297 (-yst thou C, -est thou D).

sectow, 2888 AB (seest thou D).
Observations on the Language

It will be seen that these forms are common in AB, very rare in C (canstu, 5122) and hardly found in D. AB have, however, full forms in -est, -st thou (thou), as well as the contracted forms.

Once the affixed -ow (= thou) is reduced to -e,—Wher arte ?


he (A.S. hé), 21, 1164 f, and passim. he Íxiôn, 6575 (the ∥ I. D; C†).

Note.—The colloquial contraction written a occurs (cf. a for have), but not in A. And on the Grekes ofte a wold a see, 7039 D (ost he woldę se A, oost he wold[ę] se B, ofte wolde se C). Perhaps the scribe intended a tough, 3260 B, for he tough (and low AC, or lowe D). For elided or slurred e in he, see § 125. In 6440 C, Antenbré = Antenor he; but cf. 5327 f.

she, 178 (scho B, sche C), 679 (sche C), 1166 f, 1689 f (sche C), 2832 f (sche C), 3995 (sho B, sche C ∥ D), 4369 (sche CD), 5829 (see C), 7479 f (sche C), 7667 (che B, sche C), and passim; she Criseyde, 3968 B (cf. 1901 f). For the elision or slurring of -e in she, see § 126.

it (A.S. hit), nom., acc., and with prepositions.

Usually it in all four MSS., cf. 5686 f (: sit sedet : yit), 5765 f (: yet : wit), 7124 f (: wit : yit), and passim.

But hit occasionally occurs (as, 297 D, 346 D, 1545 D, 2222 D, 3244 D); yt, 57 A.

Note.—Ten Brink’s rule “dass Chaucer nach einem auslautenden Vocal, der nicht elidirt werden soll, stets hit—nicht it—schreibt” (§ 270) is not observed in the Troilus MSS.

me (A.S. mé) dat., acc., and with prepositions. (a) Dat. without prepositions, 142 (?), 403 f, 828, 1120, 1274, 3152 f, 3416, 4744, 5497 f. (b) Other oblique uses, cf. 1578 f, 4324 f, and passim. For mé with a preposition, see by me, 2076 f (: tyme : pryme). For elided or slurred -e in me, see § 126.

the (A.S. þé), dat., acc., and with prepositions. (a) Dat. without prepositions, 829, 2177, 4299 (thee D), 8094, 8100 f. (b) Other oblique uses, cf. 6771 f and passim. What eyleth the, 4993 f.

hym (A.S. him), dat., acc., and with prepositions. (a) Dat. without prepositions, 82, 188, 694, etc., etc. (b) Other oblique uses, passim.

[Var. him.]

hire, here (A.S. hire), dat. and acc., monosyllabic, not distinguished in spelling from the possessive (cf. (i.) bef. consonants; 126, 131, 177, 286, 315, 361, 370, 388, 454, 481, 840, 976, 1050, 1360, 1687, 1778, 1999, 2010, 2069, 2205, 2239, 2450, 3311, 3398, 3523, 4094, 4824, etc.; cf. (ii.) bef. vowels, 974, 1749, 3408, 3972, 4029,
7223, etc.). Forms without -e occur even in A: thus,—her anoon acc., 116 A; to hyr spak, 3972 A; as hir lyste, 3974 A; sen her laughen, 7144 A.—Notice the following cases in rhyme: here (eam), 2876 f (: to were = weir); of here, 3109 f (hire C) (: swere inf.); here (eam), 4484 f (hire BC) (: bere inf. : tere inf.), 5274 f (hire BC, her D) (: swere inf.).

It may be that when hire was emphatic it could be disyllabic, even in the middle of a verse. Thus—

For-thi sou grace I hope yn herë fynde, 973 A (hyrë C, hirë Cp., in her y D, in hyrë to B, in hir to G).

Biseching herë syn that he was trewe, 7948 A (hirë B, hire that C, hir that D, hir[e] that sithe he Harl. 2392). [Here is not really emphatic. No variation in Cp. collation.]

In the following cases, however, a comparison of MSS. shows that the disyllabic form is to be rejected: 977 C, 1056 A, 2159 C, 4827 A, 5365 C, 7212 C, 7226 C, 7454 AC, 7905 C.

Note.—In the light of the rhymes just cited, I cannot understand ten Brink's remark (§ 250, Anm. 3): "Sicher, dass fur den Sing. Fem. ihm [Chaucer] bloß hire hir [not here her] geläufig war."

we (A.S. wé), 3707, 4856 f, 6176, and passim.
ye (A.S. gé), 26 f (3e B), 198 (3e CD), 202 f A (3e BC), 340 f (3e BCD), 5996 f (3e BC), 8055 f (3e BC, yee D); cf. 1364 f, 1373 f, 1667 f, 2860 f, 3441 f, and passim. For yé with a preposition, cf. yow. they, thei (O.N. þeir), 60 (theye B), 136 (thai B, the C), 763; cf. 134, 1167, 1260, 1302, 4224, etc., etc.

us (A.S. ús), dat., acc., and with prepositions, 1034, 1412, 1526, 1585, 6488, and passim. For examples of the dat. without prepositions, see 1181 f (: Pandarus : thus), 1868, 6010. (Us rhymes with -us in Pandarus, Troylus, Deiphæbus, Tydeus, and with thus: cf. 620 f, 1181 f, 1207 f, 1286 f, 1517 f, 2273 f, 2404 f, 2563 f, 6842 f, 7400 f, 7414 f, 7841 f, 7925 f.)
yow, you (A.S. ëow), dat., acc., and with prepositions, 331 f (jow BCD) (: prow n. : how), 1329 (jou B, jow C, om. † D), 4975 (jow B, you D), and passim. For examples of the dat. without prepositions, cf. 342, 431, 1421, 7728, etc., etc. [yowe, 4763 f (jowe B, jou D) (: nown).] you rhymes with now, prow, how (cf. 331 f, 2523 f, 2746 f, 3165 f, 3853 f, 4322 f, 4406 f, 4491 f, 4763 f (yowe A), 5540 f, 5988 f, 6492 f, 8103 f).

Yé in fro ye, 5 f (: Troye : ioye), is apparently a reduced yow (cf. arte for artow), whatever one may say of ayeyn ye, 334 AB (C †, 3e D), where, on the whole, ye prob. = yea.
§ 74. II. Possessive Pronouns.

my, myn (A.S. mfn). I. Sing. (a) my before consonants: my fo, 837 (myn C, my wo † B); my brother, 2496 (myn C); my lord my brother, 2535 (myn ... myn C) (cf. 2711); my dere brother, 2760 (myn C), etc., etc.; mi spirit, 423 AB (myn C, the D). (b) myn before vowels: 16, 407 (D †), 432 (C †), 683, 772, 1134, 3081 (myn D), 6112 (myn D), 8081 (myne D), etc., etc. (c) myn before h: myn herte, 599, 606, 1652, 1664 (myn D), 6593 (myn D), etc.; myn hod, 2195 (myne D); myn hows, 3037 (myn D); cf. 530, 1845, 1954, 3001, 3157, 6866; my dere hert allas myn hele and howe, 461 (myn B, myn ... myn C); myn herte ayens my lust, 1560 (myn hest † ... myn C, my hert ... my D). (d) myn before consonants: myn peyne, 1560 AC (my B); on myn byhalue, 2543 AC (my BD); myn dere herte, 3685 AC (my BD); go litel myn tregedie, 8149. C, so far as I have observed, uses only myn, whether before vowels or consonants2; cf. 527, 612, 616, 2188, 2366, 2705, 2711, 2735, 3018, 3085, 3713, 3788, 3838, etc. (In some of these cases the n is written in C; in others it is represented by the familiar stroke.) Cf. myn sweté herte, 5973 B (myn owne AD, myne C.) (e) my before vowels: my auctor, 394 (myn BCD); cf. the variants under b, above. (f) When the possessive follows its noun, myn is of course the only form used. Thus,—Com(e) nece myn my lady queene, 2799 AB D (uncé mynne myn C); cf. 1510, 2280 (myn B), 2320. And so when the possessive stands in the predicate (cf. 21, 3835, 5141 f (myny BD) (in fyn)), and when the noun is omitted (cf. 3849, 6960). II. Plural: myn pynes, 2984 (my BD, myn C); my sorwes, 4014 (mynne C); my cares, 7705 B (D †, myn C, [my] A); myne othere lordes, 2566 (myn D).—myne wordes, 4173 ABC (my E);3 cf. 6680 † C.—lordes myne, 4733 A (myn BD).—myne eyen, 7699 AB D (myne C).

thi, thy, thyn, thin (A.S. ðín). I. Singular. (a) thi bef. cons'ts.: thi brotheres wyf, 678 (thyn C, thy D); thi bed, 2602 (thin C); thy destene, 520 (thi B, thyn C), etc., etc. (b) thy thyn bef. vowels: thin

1 "Som of hem took on hym."
2 myne (5973 C) is merely a graphical variety.
3 No variations noted in Mr. Austin's collation. 9-syl. in E.
owené cheyne, 509 (thyn CD); thyn aventure, 2604 (thin BD); cf. 513, 795, etc.—thi synne and thyn offence, 556 (thi . . . thin B, thyn . . . thyn C, thi . . . thyn D). [thine, 5751 D.] (e) thyn bef. h: thyn help, 672 (thi BD, that † C); thyn hert, 928 (thin BD); thyn hod, 2039 (thin BD). (d) thyn bef. cons’ts.: thyn peyne, 589 (thi B thy D). C, so far as my notes indicate, uses thyn exclusively,1 whether before a vowel or a consonant (cf. 346, 524, 587, 653, 677, 801, 926, 935, 1018, 1916, 2481, 2588, 2597, 2696, 2723, 3237, 3580, 4829, 4946, 5079,2 etc.). The other MSS. usually have thi before a consonant (but cf. thin lif, 5079 D). (e) I have observed no instance of thy before vowels. (f) When the possessive is in the predicate, thyn is of course used, cf. 861, 1036, 3118 f (-e C) (= engyn), 4354, 6303, 6950. So when it follows its noun: cf. 8232. Cf. to han for thyne, 3255 A (thyn BC, thin D). II. Plural: thi prowerbes, 756 (thynë C, thy D); thi sorwes, 794 (thynne C); thi bryght eyen, 4295 (thynë C).—thyne olde ensamples, 760 (thin BD); thyne eeres, 2107 (thyn B, thin D); thyne hestes, 3261 (thine B, thyenne C, this † D); thyne † heuenes, 3460 C; thin hordes, 7015 (thyn B, thine D, thyenne C); thyne eyen, 7522 (thynne C, thine D); thyne owenë folk, 6951 (thynnë C, thin D).—thyne nedis, 2039 C (thi AD, thy B); thynne † dremys, 7651 C.

his (A.S. his), so passim as possess. pron. with both masc. and neut. nouns sing. and plu. Cf. especially a friend of his, 548, 3638 f (: this); a man of his, 4883.

Note 1.—No MS., except perhaps D, by far the worst of the four, is free from the spelling hisse (-e of course never sounded) for the possessive with plural nouns. Examples are: hisse aventure, 3 AB (cf. 471 AC, 2430 AC, 5535 A); hisse foos, 994 A; hisse besti iapes, 2252 A (cf. 1658 AC, 1808 A (hyse C), 2117 A (heze C), 2121 A, 2436 AC, 3339 AC, 7410 BC, 7452 AC); hisse hondes, 3026 AB; heze worthi dedes, 8133 A; heze eyen, 1948 C; heze hondes, 2059 C, 8165 A; hyse bony[s], 305 C.—C even uses hisse for the singular: hisse chere, 7591 C.3

Note 2.—Is is occasionally found for his. Thus, 637 B, 4206 C, 6071 A, 6167 A. Dethes = deth his in 469 C (Lo here his lyf and from the dethes cure).

hire, here, possessive (= hor) (A.S. hire).

In the attributive use before consonants A varies between here and hire: for here, cf. 839 (C †), 5764, etc., etc.; for hire, cf. 95, 107, 975, etc., etc. Varieties are, BC hyre; BD hir; C hyr; D her. (Cf. also, for further examples, 102, 108, 126, 173, 281, 282, 285,

1 thynn fo, 4823 C.
2 In some of these cases the n is written in C; in others it is represented by the familiar stroke.
3 Supply [so] in C.
Observations on the Language

427, 542, 846, 1150, 1304, 1688, 1699, 1759, 1853, 1911, 2717, 3439, 6944, etc.) An examination of these cases, which are fair examples of the use of here, hire before consonants, will show that A has -e in all of them (here or hire); that the usual form in B is hire; in C hire or hyre; in D her. Forms without the -e are not common except in D, and are hardly found in A.

Good lines to illustrate this word are:—Hire wommen soonë til hire bed here broughte, 1999 (hire . . . hire? . . . hire B, hire . . . hire . . . hire C, her . . . her . . . her D). Hire gouernaunce hire wit and here manere, 3058 (hire BC, her D). Al thoughtë she here seruaunt and hire knyghte, 3825 (hire . . . hire BC, her . . . her D). 3

Note.—Cases before vowels present no interest, for there elision would in any case reduce the word to one syllable. The spellings are in general the same as those already noted. (Cf. e. g. 305, 347, 1835, 1619, 1737, 3060, 3408, 6426, 7228. For cases before h, cf. 127, 655, 1742, etc.)

Absolute use:
A kynges herte semeth by hires a wrecche, 889 AB (hire C, her D).
And that I thus am herës dar I seye, 4450 (hirës B, zouris † C, her[ë]s D).
Shal han me holly herës til that I deye, 5106 (hirës B, his † C, hirs D).

Note 3.—It is doubtful if the possessive singular is ever hire (disyllabic) in this poem. The following cases, which seem to require, or admit that pronunciation, disappear as evidence on a comparison of MSS.: 1350 A, 1903 C, 1995 A, 1999 B, 5221 C, 7132 C, 7316 C, 7413 C †, 7510 C.

The following two passages admit of a dissyllabic hire, but may also (if one likes the sound) be scanned as lines of nine syllables:
With a certayn of here owene men, 3438 (hire own B, hire owene C, her owne D).
I comende hire wysdom by myn hood, 7514 ABC (hir witte D).
oure (A.S. úre), gen., as singular possessive. In the attributive use the regular spelling of ABC is ourë, D usually has our (cf. (i.) before consonants, 171, 558, 559, 1518, 1728, 2506, 5985, etc.; cf. (ii.) before vowels, 710, 1448, etc.). But ourë is also found in D (as, 5721); and neither A nor B is free from our (thus, our wreche, 7259 ABD (oure C), cf. 965 B, 8157 B, 8186 B).

All these cases are monosyllabic. Indeed, there seem to be no

1 This and 847 illustrate the indifference of A with regard to hire and here: That as here ioyes moten ouer gone So mote hire sorwes passen enerychone (hire . . . hire B, hyre . . . hire C, her . . . her D).
2 hire is rare in C (see 1853); hire is rare in D (see 6944).
3 In B, read though[të s]he ; in D, thought[ë].
4 hyr B.
5 In most of these A has here.
cases of dissyllabic attributive ounre (sing. or pl.) in the Troylus (see 5906, where ounre would give an intolerable verse, and 3598 C, where comparison of MSS. restores the monosyllable). Cf., however, the following predicate use: she shal bleuen ounre, 5201 f (our D) ( : owre = hour). In the plural possessive use the attributive form is the same as in the singular. Thus,—ounre hierdes, 3461 (our D); ounre walles, 6144 (our BD); ounre † cruel foone, 8229 D; cf. 1598, 2017, 4109, 4955, 5866, 8206.

your, youre (A.S. éower). (a) Attributive position:
Both forms are found in A before consonants. Thus: your, 429 (your BD, 3ore C), 4955 (your B, 3oure C); youre (in A the usual form), yowre, 122, 1180, 1219, 1307, 1426, 1508, 2190, 2523, 2801 (oure † C), 3051, 4018, 4830 (-e B), 7099, 7236, etc., etc. [Var. BCD 3oure; BD 3our; D your, yowr, 3owr; B ioure, 3owre; C 3ourre.] (For youre, cf. 337, 2526, etc.; for youre where h follows, cf. 334, 1378, etc.) Youre is monosyllabic in the attributive position, except perhaps in 2687, 3509; other exceptions (as, 198 AB, 1388 C, 5548 C, 7267 C, 7985 C) vanish on a comparison of MSS.

(b) In the predicate:
he is youre, 1672 f (3oure BC, 3oures D) ( :oure horam); yourës is Mj spirit which that aught[ e ] yourë be, 422-3 (3oure[ e ]s . . . 3our[e]s B, 3oure . . . 3oure C, your[is] . . . youris D) ; he that is . . . yourës fre, 2206 (3oures B, 3ouris C, youris D); 3 I haue ben yowrës also, 2944 (3oures B, 3ouris C, youres D) ; 4 cf. 4450 † C; I was youre and, 6342 (3oure B, your D); I am yourë † ah, 6303 D (thyn ABC); I am 3oures † bi, 4354 D (thyn AC, thin B).

hire, here, = their (A.S. hire), monosyllabic, not distinguished in spelling from here = her. Cf. (i.) bef. cons'ts., 49, 63, 149, 151, 154, 705, 763, 907, 997, 1126, 1260, 1286, etc., etc. Cf. (ii.) bef. vowels, 51, 150, etc. The variant heir (5804 D, 7323 D; heire, 8218 D) deserves notice. Their is sometimes found in D (cf. 4861, 5369, 8123); there occurs in C 5803.

In,—Of here teris and the herte vnswelle, 5808 AC (hire B, om. † D), one has one's choice between herë and a 9-syl. line. 3304 A, however, should be corrected.

§ 75. III. Reflexive and Intensive Pronouns. The compounds of self (A.S. self, sylf, etc.) appear in the

1 rh. houris D.
2 In B supply [that] in 423; in C dele (the) in 423.
3 In C supply [al].
4 Supply [al] in D.
Troilus in the forms -self, -selue, -seluen. (Child, § 46; ten Brink, § 255. Cf. also § 79 below.)

my self, myn self, my selue, my seluen.

myself, (i.) 537 (my silf D, myn selue C), 669 (-e B, myn self C), 2286 (myn seluen the † C), 5204 (myn selue † C; D †), 5286 (myn s. C, my selfe D); cf. 3729, 4495, 4940. (ii.) 628 (myn selue † sen C, my seluen † sen D), 927 (myn s. C), 7637 (myn seluyn C); cf. 2225, 3632, 4745; my self hate, 5501 (-e D, myn self C).

myn self wil, 2094 (my s. BD); myn † silf vnethe, 7770 C.

my selue, 1191 f (myn s. C) (: twelue), 7286 f (meselfeue B, myn selueue C, my silf D) (: twelue); my selue I, 5903 (my silf D, myn seluyn wolde C).1

my seluen, (i.) 5439 (myn self[e] C, myselfe † D), 6108 (myn selue C, my self[e] D), 7635 (my self[e] D, myn self † to C).

thi self, thy self, thy selue, thi selue, thy seluen, thyn seluen.

thi self, thy self, (i.) 963 (thy s. C), 4466 (thy s. C, thi silf D),2 6750 (thy s. C, thin s. D); cf. 717, 768, 2450 CD, 4098, 5079 A, 5266 BD, 5282, 6633. (ii.) Cf. 882, 2542, 5252; thi self hire, 2450 (thi selft B, thyself preye C, thy s. pray D). thyself fordon, 5753 (thi s. B, thy s. C, thine s. D).3

thi selue, 3101 (-en B, thyyn C, thy -yn D), 5062 f (thy s. C, thi silue D) (: swych[e] twelue).—thi self[e], (i.) 5253 (thi seluen B, thyself ? C †, thynself[e] D); thi self[e] helpen, 5190 (-en B, selue (?) C; D †). (ii.) thi selue, thy selue, thi selue, cf. 3141 (-yn † C), 3212, 5513 (†), 8074.


hym self, hym-selue, hym-seluen.

hym-self, (i.) cf. 320, 896, 1460, 1864, 2163, 2249, 2558 BC, 3270, 3397, 5787, 5890, 6401, 6704, 6869, 6969, 6986, 7031, 7536, 7894. [Var. C hym selfe (320); CD hym silf.] (ii.) Cf. 457, 745, 815, 1544, 5746, 5824,4 6626, 6980, 7135 (seluyn C ?), 7148,

1 Metre doubtful: My (Myn C) selue (self B, seluyn C, silf D, selfe G) I wolde (wolde I C) haue (han B, a C) slayn (slave C, slayne DG) quod she tho. (No variations in Mr. Austin's collation.)
2 Supply [æ] or read silf[e] in D.
3 Supply [ɔ] in C.
4 Supply [ɛ] in C. D, himselfe (?)
7233. [Var. CD selfe; C selue.] Before he, his, cf. 662, 5890 C, 6572, 8184 AB.


here-self, (i.) 7079 (hire-s. B, hire saille D). (ii.) hire-self, here-self, 3619 (h. seluyn C, her self D), 5299 (hir self D, hire self[e] wolde † C), 5418 (h. selue C, hire selfe D); heres self hym, 2716 (hir self BC, her self al D).


our seluen se, 2416 (-yn C, our seluyn D).

your self, yow self, your selue, your seluen, yow seluen.

your self, (i.) 2368 (your BC, your D), 3751 (3. BC, your D). (ii.) 118 (yourself B, youre s. C, your s. D), 5896 (3. B, 3. sylf C, your silf quod D); your self, 3621 (jour s. BC), cf. 5513 D; your selue †, 2951 C.

yow self, (i.) 1308 (jour s. B, your s. D, youre self[e] † C), 2245 (jour s. BC; D †), 3847 (jour s. BC). (ii.) 1323 (jour s. C, your self D, youre seluen B).—yow seluen lest, 4172 (jour s. B, youre † seluen C, your self[e] D).

yore selue, (i.) 3510 (3. seluen B, 3. seluyn C, your selvn D); yore silf[e] (?), 5512 D.


1 Supply [e] in A.
2 If we read make (-yn C), we shall have hire-self in two syllables.
3 In this v. ABC have dane, D diane, for Daphne. In D read daphne her self[e] shet.
4 Supply [ye] in B.
5 Yow self † D (9-syl. ?).
observations on the language

§ 76. IV. Demonstrative Pronouns.

that (A.S. þet), as demonstrative pronoun, passim. That = the, that 
on(e), 5349 A (that oon B, that on C, the toone D).

tho (A.S. þá), plural demonstrative (in substantive and adjective uses),
cf. 924, 1078, 2452, 3272, 4016, 4223, 4285, 4813, 5087 f, 5293,
5356, 5797, 5835, 6025, 7033, 7096, 7569.

thilke, sing., 185 (the ilke C, that D ?), 2 939 (-[e] D, thynke † C), 2873
(-[e] D), 3305 (-[e] B, the ilke C, that D ?), 2 4387 (-[e] BD, theilke
C), 4501 (-[e] B, ilke C, that D ?), 2 5732, 6196 (ilke C †), 6213
(that ilke CD), 6318 (theilke C), 7550 (theilke C), 8053 (-[e] B,
that ilke C), 8202; thilke harme, 3560 (-[e] D). 3 [Var. B thylke,
thylk[e].]

thilke, pl., 4114 (ilke CD), 5377 (theilke C), 5667, 5711 (-[e] B).

that ilke, sing., 2347 (-[e] D), 5409 AB (that ylke D), 5435 (-[e] B,
that ylke D), 5898 (-[e] B), 7466.

this. Singular of course monosyllabic, and almost always written this
(cf. 424 f (: is: i-wys), 484, 551, 1035, 1509, etc., etc.). Thisse,
1010 f A (this BCD) (: i-wysse : ysse est), is perhaps due to an
attempt to indicate the unvoiced sound of final s.

Plural variously written: this (7, 540, 5090, 5537, 5573, 6683,
etc.), these (169, 561, 1188, 2350, 5952, 8086, 8116, etc.), thise
(2110, 3460); 4 but always monosyllabic, as well before consonants
as before vowels.

For further examples of the plural, cf. 705, 742, 893, 903, 995,
1086, 1870, 1875, 2152, 2391, 2469, 3134, 4299, 4533, 5333, 5347,
5642, 6359, 6707, 6742, 6743, 7423, 7502, 7599, 7711, 7935, 8091,
8142, 8214.

Note 1.—2350 C is corrupt. In 2153 A, transpose alle and these. In 3193
A, insert [ae]. In 4332 A, read verë and these.

this ilke, sing., 2791 (-[e] CD), 4688 AB, 6401 (this ylke D), 7232,
7876, 8115, 8129; cf. 1822 AB.

this ilke, thise ilke, these ilke, pl., 3349 (this ilk[e] BD), 4180 (-[e]
B), 5915 (thes ilke D), 7674; cf. 4035, 4156, 4236, 5032, 5810.

1 Supply [ther] in C. 2 9-syl. in D. 3 Supply [ar] in C. 4 This and these are common in A; this and thise in B; D has often thes (561,
etc.). Varieties are,—thyse (919 B, 2110 B), thecse (1971 C, [h]ese (5090 D).
Note 2.—A remnant of the A.S. demonstrative þéon, þéon, þéon, is seen in the phrase for the none (561, 2460 f, 4847 f, 5090). The A.S. instrumental þe appears in forthi (cf. 445, 973, 1127, 4471, 4984, 5052, 5067, 5279), forthi (cf. 691, 1114, 1952, 5585).

Note 3.—For the written attè, see § 53. II. Cf. toother, attother, § 79.

§ 77. V. Interrogative Pronouns.

who, nom. (A.S. hwá), 551 (ho C), 2338 (ho CD), 3593 (ho CD), 7626, etc.

whos, gen., 2275 (whas B, hos C), etc.

whom, dat., 6598 (ho nom. † C ; D †).

whom, acc., 3428 (hom C, what † that D), etc.; whom that I loue, 717 (hom that C).

what, I. Subst., nom., 828, 1214 f; acc., 320, 356, 3159 f. II. Adj., nom., 401, 3512, etc.; acc., 552; of what man, 3992; what = why, 1347, 1377, cf. 1308. (Rhymes with that and hat.)

Note.—Remnants of the instrumental hw$ are seen in why (cf. 1760 f, 3992 f) and in for-whi, for-whi, 714, 1097, 2601 (also occurring as a variant of forthi).

which, see under Relatives.

§ 78. VI. Relative pronouns (and pronominal adjectives), and the interrogative (etc.) which.

that, passim. that = id quod, 7567. ho at = who that, 3861 C.

whos, gen., 532, 700 (C †), 787 (whois C), 5025, 7680 (whois D), etc.; the whos, 7339 (whos C †, the woos D), 7722 (whos (!) C).

whom, dat. and acc., 189 (whan C), 533 f (-e D) ; from, 937, 2802; cf. 98, 1244, 1912, 6676, etc.; for whom that, 766 (C †).

who so, 147 (ho so C); cf. 77, 603, 857, 2880, 4104, etc.

what so,—in what wyse so yow lyste, 3889 (that sow C ; D †).

what, as a "general relative,"—of what it be, 2418; evey gentil womman what she be, 8136; or of what wyght that stont, 3338.

which.

I. Interrogative (in both direct and indirect questions and in exclamations).

A. Singular. (1) Adj., which hous, 2274 (wich C, whiche D); to enqueren which thyng cause of which thyng be, 5672 (which . . . whiche B); whiche † opynyoun, 5635 D (whos AB). (2) Subst. which of, 3040 (wich C). (3) = qualis, interrogs., which a labour, 199 BC (swych l. A, such a l. D); what thyng and which is he, 401 CD (-e B, what A); into wich helle, 5374 C.
(vnro which heH D; st. not in AB). (4) = qualis, exclam., which a thonk, 803 (wych C; D †); which a dede, 5893 BD (swych A, wych a drede C).

B. Plural, which (= quales †) dountances (ind. quest.), 200 (‐e B, with † D, which dotauce[s] C).

II. Relative.

A. Which (without the).

(a) Which is used as a relative pronoun for all genders, with or without a following that. In the following examples the which is a simple relative (not attributive adj.); the presence of a following that is indicated by old-style figures in the verse-number.

(1) Singular, which, bef. cons'ts., cf. 74, 78, 94, 106 (wiche B), 206, 527,¹ 1471, 7217. [Var. BC whichè; C wiche, whych, whichè]—which, bef. vowels, cf. 261 (wych C), 7925 C; in which he, 366 (‐e B, wich C); of which hym, 3345 (wich C, of the which D).—whichè, 54 (the whichè B), 1121 (whichè B, om. † D), 1415 (wich C; D †), 2231 (which [that] † B; 1. om. † C), 2492 (which BCD), 2677 (wiche B, wiche C, which D), 2689 (which CD), 2843 (which BD), 3374 (which D, whichè = which she, haplography, C), 5273 (which BD, wich C), 7578 (of which † he C, for which † cause D).—which he, 1712 (wiche B, quych C, which D).

(2) Plural, of wiche that, 4236 C (whom AB, wyche † I E; in which that, 8199; which er, 3575; which I, 7569 (‐e B, the wiche C); ² whichè that 2858 (which B), 3427 (which as B, wich that C, which that D).

(b) Which as a relative adj. (not = qualis). (1) Singular, by which reson, 5710 (whichè D),³ cf. 7578 D. (2) Plural, of whichè † sykis, 4207 C (wych[ë] † D, swichè A, shwich[ë] B defect.).

B. The which. Used either (a) as a purely relative pronoun, or (b) as a relative adjective (not = qualis).

(a) (1) Singular, the whiche, 3565 (the which BD; C †); bef. cons'ts., the which, 603 ([the] whichè C), 7241 (‐e C). (2) Plural, the whichè he, 4884.

(b) (1) Singular, the whiche tale, 5328 ([ë] BC); the which[ë] cote, 8016 (‐e C, ‐e? D †); the whichè thyng, 4331 (the which

¹ C has the wheche for to wheche.
² Supply [øf] in A.
³ 9-syl., exc. in D; but we are hardly to read which[ë].
B, the whiche C).  

(2) Plural, the whiche frendes, 6046 ([c] BD; C †).

Note 1.—In 5930 we are apparently to read: "Soth is the wo the which that we ben inne," but the MSS. vary. Which is sometimes miswritten by the scribe for swich, as 3299 D (cf. 2435 D).

Note 2.—Which . . . his is equivalent to whos in "The kynges dere sone, The good[e] wyse worthi fressh and fre, Which alwey for to do wel is his won," 1401-3. Cf. "Which with a thred of gold she wolde it bynde," 7175 C (but read wolde bynde). Cf., perhaps, "Er deth . . . Dry out the gost which (so in ABD John's, whiche G, that CCp.) in myn herte he (so in ABDGcp. John's, ow. C) beteth," 5572.

Note 3.—As is used as a relative pronoun (= that) in 3244 C,—this as thou dost (this that AB, [this] that D), and in 3427 B,—thynges which as neuerc were (whiche that A, wich that C, which that D).

swich, such (A.S. swile, swelc). Examples are,—

I. Singular:

In A, swich, swych, such, (i.) 475, 550, 1794, 1970, 2153, 3338, 6627, 8001, etc.; (ii.) 296, 369, 521, 619, 762, 985, 1750, 1813, etc.—In B, swich, swich, shwich, swich, (i.) 127, 475, 550, 777, 1794, 1879, 1970, 3338, 3604, etc.; (ii.) 369, 521, 1351, 1750, 3320, 3382, 3604.—In C, swich, swych, swych, (i.) 412, 1794, 1879, 1970, 2153, 3338, 4070, etc.; (ii.) 296, 369, 521, 762, etc.—In D, such, (i.) 1794, 2153, 3338, etc.; (ii.) 2245, etc.

Note.—Forms in silent -e occur in all four MSS. Thus,—in A, swiche (412)2, suche (1351); in B, swiche (291, 475, 562, 935, 1088, 2216, 2355, 3002, 3236, 7314, 7926), swiche (412), swiche (1603), swiche (619, 762, 955, 985, 1713, 2245, 3176), swiche (296), shwiche, (2784); in D, suche (550; cf. 2355, 4070). Cases in which we have an apparent -e (before a consonant), as, swiche, 227 B, 4581 B (cf. 1393 C, 1970 D, 3306 C, 6627 D), all depend on bad readings; so also swych[e] aventure, 5991 A (swich[e] C, suchè D), in which we should read swich (swych) an (with B cp. John's Hl. 2392; swiche an G).

II. Plural2:

The plural ends in -e. Thus,—swych fyue, 1211 ([e] D, A †); swyche tweye, 1267 (such[e] D); suche tales, 1393 ([e] B, [e] D, [e] tale[s] C); swiche sikes, 4207 ([e] B, whiche C, wyche[e] E). So we should read,—swych[e] fyue, 1213 (-e BC; D †); swych[e] sorwful kykes, 4203 (-e BE); swych[e] twelue, 5064 (-e D, -e tweine † C). Before vowels this -e is elided and often not written: cf. 1292, 2435, 3523, 3696, 3985, 4009, 4205, 6192, 6737. Cases of apocope occur: swich thornes, 2359 (swychè C, suche ? D); 4 if ye be swych youre, 1426 (swiche B, swich C,

1 Either the whiche thynge trowely, or the whiche thynge trowely.
2 Supply [the] in A.
3 Variations in spelling not registered except as they concern final -e or MS. A.
4 It is possible to read swich[e] if we read sende (mittat); BD have send.
such D); swych festes, 7792 (swich B, sw ech C, such D). For
suche thyngis, 562 C, read sw ech thyng.

§ 79. VII. Other pronominal words.

same (O.N. samr, definite sami; cf. A.S. same, adv.), selue (A.S. sylf, self, definite -a), in the definite use,—the same prys, 1266; the same thing, 1269; cf. 2606, 4390 (the selue wyse C), 6087 (C †, the self[e] wit BD), 8018; the same hele, 7779; this same wyse, 5706 (the s. D); that selue wyse, 3197 (selwe C, self[e] D); this selue swerd, 5902 (seluyn C, the same D). (Cf. myself, etc., § 75.)
som (A.S. sum), adj. and subst. I. Sing. (i.) 33, 555, 844; cf. 973, 1215, 1344, 2210, 2884, 3333, 4658, 7068, 7115, etc. Irrational e’s are sometimes found, even in A: as, in some łond, 1123 ABD; sommę swych fantasye, 3874 A (som B, sum C, somé D †). [Var. BD somę; C sum; D sommę.] (ii.) 1197 (-e D), 2079 (sum C, some D †). II. Plural, some, (i.) 240 f (: ynome p.p. : overcome p.p.), 2234 f (: by-come pres. subj. 3 sg.), 3449 f (: ycome p.p. : nome p.p.), 5630 f A (some † B, som D) (: to come : overcome p.p.), 5730 f (C †, som D) (: come inf. : ouer-come p.p.), 7246 f (som C, somme D) (: come inf.); somme, 5657 f A (some B, som D) (: to come); som men, 1132 (some B, somē grane D), 1341 (sum C, some D), 2503 summę C, some D); 1), 7123 (somen CD, somme han A), 7167 (-e BD); some, 1866 † D, 2669 † D, 3333 † D; some, 1132; som, before vowels (var. BCD some, D somme), 911, 1042, 2257, 2523, 4403; some han, 913; somme han, 7123 (som men B, somen CD).


And som (some BCD) thow seydest hadde a blaunchë feuere, 907, 909.

somwhat, sunwhat (A.S sumhwaet), sbst. (used also adverbially), cf. 672, 1646, 2078, 2394, 2410, 5187.

other (A.S. ðéer). I. as adj. (a) singular, other (var. B oother; D othir), both definite and indefinite, before both vowels and conso-

1 Read wold[e] in D.
2 Othere is sometimes found in the singular; see 352 C, 489 C, 4055 A, 4826 C, 7039 A. In 348 C, read othir enchesoun for othir entencion.
of Chaucer’s Troilus.

nants: cf. 348, 352, 444, 489, 577, 702, 707, 709, 1574, 1592, 1639, 1894, 2079, 2251, 2537 f, 2747, 3506 f, 3586, 3953, 4050, 4573, 4826, 6180, 6493, 7573, 8044 A, 8055; non other wyse, 5955 (not otherwyse C); o tyme ek and other, 2537 f (: brother); the tother side, 7050 A (that other BCD); at the other out it wente, 5096 (atother C, at other? D); noon nother, 7039 B.

(b) In the plural of the attributive use (whether definite or indefinite), other (dissyllabic) is the regular spelling of AC, other of B, and other or other (var. odir) of D: cf. 179, 355, 463, 465, 1583 (othere B), 1854 D, 2152, 2260, 2430, 2527, 2566, 3777, 4716, 5539, 5995, 8139 A. But other also occurs in A: cf. 26, 314 (other thing) (?), 1860.

II. As substantive: (a) singular, other, another, regularly: cf. 203, 643, 1449 (neut.), 2063, 2703 f, 3093 f, 3521, 3819, 4888, 5068 f, 5118 f, 5271 f, 5792, 5911, 7871 f. [Var. D othir.] othère occurs: cf. 203 C, 3093 fB, 5253 A (prob. plural); an other in, 3618 (a nother B, another C, a nothir D), cf. 5351 A. (b) Plural.

Forms as in I. b: cf. 1903, 3440, 5310, 6305, 6735 (othere B), 6738 (other D); but I have not noted other in A.—these othère in (pl.), 893 A (other B; C?; other vertus D). For othère seyn, 6735 C, read othère seyn [that].]

Note.—For the genitive singular otheres (dissyllable), see 3792, 4532 (othir + D), 8127 (other + D); otheris, 3586 + D. [Var. C otheris dissyl.] For the genitive plural otheres (dissyllable), see 8139 BD (othere dissyl. A).

ech (A.S. élc), adjective and substantive; eché, 510, 2703 (ich B, ééryche + C), 3031 (ich B, iché C); cf. 637, 643, 1127, 3263 A, 3266, 3850 D, 4182, 4890, 5069, 5911 A, 6204; ech for, 5074 (iché C, eché D); eché rakel dede and eché vnbrylded chere, 3271 (ech . . . ech B, eché . . . eché C, eché . . . eke D). eché, 1432 (ech BD, vch C), 1479, 3819 (ech BC), 4532 (ich B), 4888, 5000 (ech B), 6149 (ech BD); cf. 2063, 2567, 3263 C (ich B), 3792, 4074, 5911, 7871, 8112; eché hym, 1071 (ech B, ééry wight D f); eché a del, 3536 (ech B); iche, 3275 C (eché D; ééry wyght AB); eché, bef. vowels, 1078 (-e D), 4644 (-e BCD).—echone, 4880 f (echon C, éérychon + D) (: allone).

Note.—The Troilus MSS. give no evidence for a dat. eché (see ten Brink, §§ 255, 260 β).

eché (A.S. echtre + A.S. élc) counts as a dissyllable (cf. ten Brink, § 262). The usual spelling is ééry (cf. 84, 101, 185, 268, 328,

1 Another is variously written an other, another, a nother, a-nother, cf. 577, 709, 1894, 3953, 6493.
Observations on the Language [§ 79.]

382, 397, 444, 844, 1097, 1273, 1280, 1478, 1613, 1675, 1686, 1800, 1889, 1975, 2033, 2074, 2262, 2472, 2663, 3023, 3068, 3196, 3275, 3339, 3369, 3445, 3469, 3670, 3850, 4527, 6012, 6341, 6998, 7121, 7478 (var. euerei, as 3074 1 C, 3322 C). But euerich (2251 B (euere-ich), 4338 B, 6533 AB), euerych (6180 ACD, 6533 D, 7683 B), euerich (512 D, 2703 C †), and euerycche (6533 C) also occur. In the following lines we must read euerych, euerly as a trisyllable, or regard the verses as consisting of nine syllables:

Euerthing that sounded into badde, 6338.

Euerych (euer C) ioye or ese (ese (is) C) in his contrarye, 7742 (D †).

Note.—Certain apparent instances of trisyllabic every (euerei) disappear on comparison of MSS. Such are 2676 A, 3074 C, 3334 C, 3362 A, 3671 A.

everychon rhymes sometimes with words that have no final -e, sometimes with those that have. Thus,—euerichon, euerychon, 154 f (-oun B) (: Palladion), 5633 f (: on : noon); euerichone, 176 f (-ychon B, echên † D) (: allone); euerychone, 847 f (-on C) (: ouer gon(e) inf.), 905 f (-on BCD) (: allone : grone inf.), 5611 f (-on CD) (: allone : mone n. moan) (cf. also 2683 f, 3254 f, 3507 f, 4880 † f D, 5529 f, 5440 f, 8230 f).

any, ony (A.S. onig), sg. and pl., cf. 20, 23, 848, 963, 1259, 8044, etc. [Var. C oni ; D eny.]
eyther (A.S. ægær), adj. and sbst., (i.) 4792, 7869 (D †), 8127. (ii.) 5695. [Var. BD either; D eythrir.]

Note.—For eyther in your euyther long, 4330 B, A has bothe, C botheis, D bothe, EG Cp. brother †, John’s bother, Harl. 2392 bothes.

neither (A.S. ne + A.S. ægær), sbst., (i.) 5033; (ii.) 5792 (other † C). [Var. BD neither.]

bothe (O.N. bæðir), adj. pl., 139 f, 4782 f, 5698 f, 6506 f (both BD, bethe C); bothe yow, 983; vs botho two, 1034; hem bothe leste, 4521 (hem ‡ two † D), 1284 (bathë † B), 1412, 1526 AC, 1572, 1585, 2277, 2373 (bathë B), 2825, 3262, 3784, 4007, 4065, 4160 BCD, 4312, 5254 † D, 5794, 5894 (-[e] D), 6176, 6512, 7497); bothe, 1414 (-[i] apaire † D; bethe C), 2961 (both BD), 4528 (both BD), 4955 (both BD, bothe † joure C), 5546 AD (both B), 5592 (both † with D), 5595 (both B); bothe his, 2059 (both B); -e here (gen. sg.), 2914 (both B, -ë † D).

1 Read woyld[ed]. 2 brought[e] C, or supply [that]. 3 Old-style verse numbers indicate that B has both[e]. 4 Supply [we] in D.
owene, Owen, owne, see § 53, V., p. 126.

The use of men as an indefinite pronoun (= Ger. man) is seen in men is nought alvev (y)plesed, 3288 (man is C, men be D), and in men was won, 5528 (men were wonè C). In such cases as men clepeth, 6674 (callyn † C, clepe † an D), 7576 B (-eth A, -yn C, -ë D), men seyth (seyn BD) (see other examples in § 97), the verb may be regarded as plural (cf. of whos folye men ryme, 532 f, and see 241, 748, 7105 f). The form me does not occur in the Troilus (but see 5496 † C).

oon, on, o; noon, non, no (A.S. án, nán). I. The full forms are found in all substantive constructions; so also in adjective constructions when the adjective follows its noun or stands by itself in the predicate. Thus—

of yow oon, 350 f (on(e) BD, on C); to louè swych on, 369 (oon B); so goodly on, 373 (on(e) B); quod first that oon(e), 5349 (oon B, on C, the toon(e) D); I loun oon(e) best, 667 (on C, on(e) D); cf. 203, 521, 619, 626, 955 (an B), 1668, 1923, 2259 f, 2666, 2770 f, 7271 f, 8227 f, etc., etc.

oon (neut.) thenketh the bere, 6115; oon (neut.) of the tweye, 494 (on BC; D †); auauntoure and a lyere al is on, 3151 f (oon(e) B, on(e) D, is al on C); euere yu oon, 816 (oon(e) B, on C, on(e) D); they felle at oon, 3407 f (atton(e) B, at on C, at on(e) D); on(e) of tho (neut.), 5087 (oon B, on C, oon(e) D).

whan ye ben on, 2825 f (oon B, on(e) D); cf. 4247 f, 5254 f.

oon the best, 474 (on(e) D, on † of the beste C); oon the beste knyght, 1074 (oon(e) B, on D); on(e) the fairest, 1831 (oon B, on(e) D † (?), on † of the fayreste C).

clerkes grete many on, 5630 f (oon(e) B, grete cl. m. on(e) D).²

nas noon so faire, 101 (non BC, so fair was non(e) D); cf. 188, 1287, 1587, 1830, 1862, 2826 f, etc.; non(e) of tho, 924 (noon B, non C); thenk not on smert and thou shalt fele noon, 5128 f none B, non C).

tes ther may be noon, 6021 f (non BC, non(e) D); other bote is noon, 4050 f (non BC, noon(e) D); other wolè she non, 3153 f

1 Cf. ten Brink, §§ 247, 264, 270. ² B † omits clerkes.
Observations on the Language

§ 79.

(noon B, non(e) D); swyech a ryng I trowe that ye hauȝ non, 3735 f (noon C, none D); nor other cure canstow noon, 757 (non(e) B, non C, om. † D); cf. 1451 f, 1702 f, 1809 f, etc. cause non, 3993 f (noon(e) D); storye noon, 3341 (B † C †, non(e) D); lady noon, 6308 f (non C); bote noon, 7690 f (non BD; C †):

Pl., But whether that sche children hadde (hadde † c. A) or noon, 132 f (non BC, non(e) D) (: goon inf.).

II. In the attributive position, o, no are the forms usually found before a consonant (but C is fond of non); on, oon, non, noon, before a vowel or h. Thus,—

o day, 1573 (a B, oo C); o thing, 3725 (on C); not o word, 3899 (a B, on C; D †), cf. 1023; o god, 6506 (on(e) D, on † good C); cf. 673, 1122, 1253, 2118, etc.

no deuocioun, 187 (non C); no man, 238; no shame, 374 (ne † CD); no maner weye, 495; cf. 437, 590, 600, 631, 640, 670, 685, 689, 714, 722, 733, 737, 1281, 4118, etc.

Pl., no dremes, 7644; no suche tales, 1393 (non swich tale † C); cf. 7089.

oon entente, 61 (on D); on assent, 5008 (oon B, comune † D), etc. noon other bote, 352 (non BCD); non yuel, 1666 (non BCD); non other wyse, 5955 (not † C); cf. 1538, 3826, 6805, 7039, 7451, 7573, 8055, etc.

Pl., none other fownes, 465 (doon † A, non C, non othir † fantȝye D).†

noon helpe, 695 (non BCD); non hosbonde, 1839 (noon B, none (?) D); noon harm, 1886 (non CD), cf. 1661; noon hope, 3257 (non BC, no D); non heuy thought, 3981 (no B); noon hede, 4671 (non BD); noon honour, 6771 (non BCD); non(e) hate, 477 (non CD).

Note 1.—As indefinite article a is used before consonants, an before a vowel or h; an other, 540 (another C, a nother B, other pl. † D), cf. other, above; an a, 171 (D om. † an); an asse, 731; an error, 1001; etc., etc.; an heuuenysh, 104 (a † perfît D); an heuene, 1722, 1911; an hors, 223; an hauk, 671; an hows, 1058; an hed, 1952 (han hed B); an herte, 2956; an hard request, 2990; an heigh matere, 3128 (D †); an halle, 3698; an helle, 7759; etc.

Note 2.—In 645 ABD, Sith thus of two contraries is a lore (on lore C), a apparently = the numeral rather than the article (see also the variants in the examples under o, above).

ought (A.S. ðwulht, ðêt, ðwuhlt, ðêt), (i.) cf. 578, 3309, 5947, 8100, etc.; (ii.) cf. 123, 1028, 3366, 7485, etc. [Var. B aught, ought; ¹ In C, read desyre for desyred.
C ought, ought; D aught, ought.] Woot ought my lord... this matere, 2711 (-e) B, ought C, ought D); that I haue out myswent, 633 (ought B, ought C, ought D).

nought (A.S. næwht, etc.), (i.) cf. 444 f, 1690 f, 5180, 5729 f, 6463 f, 7483, 7527 f, etc.; (ii.) cf. 4878, etc. [Var. BC nouȝt; D noght.]

For nought, nought, as a strong neg. particle, cf. 576 f, 807 f, 4344 f; an interesting "transitional" case is 1660 f: But for to saue his lyf and elles nought (-ȝt C, not D) (: wrought p.p.)

§ 80. Al, singular.

I. In its strictly adjective use al (sg.) is commonest before the definite article (cf. 212, 1192, 1224, 1506, 1833, 1966, 2626, 2844, 3220, 3277, 7581) and other more or less definite words. Thus,—

before this (cf. 504, 551, 1101, 1262, 1383, 1509, 1934, 2405, 2446, 2580, 2675, 2685, 2798, 2892, 3173, 3302, 3358, 6764); before that (cf. 1036, 3071, 4751); before thilke (cf. 2873, 3560); before thi (cf. 522, 589, 830, 2401, 2597, 3205); before my or myn (cf. 721, 873, 1954, 1956, 2083, 2770, 2977, 3020, 3085, 3235, 3843, 4140, 4146, 4749, 5602); before his (cf. 265, 327, 665, 994, 1142, 1419, 1657, 2442, 2623, 2637, 3278, 3726, 6438, 6927, 7902); before here (poss. sg.) (cf. 2214, 2555, 2752, 2757); before hire (poss. pl.) (cf. 63); before swych (cf. 2824, 4241, 7125); before youre (cf. 4741).

Note.—In these uses the word is regularly written al; but alle (alle) is also found. Thus,—alle this thynge, 2001 A (BC, alle the things D); alle this matere, 2514 AB (of þ this m. C; D (?) ); ale the richesse, 3191 (al BC, al the þ rethynge D (?)); alle this work, 3544 (al CD); alle that tale, 4245 (al BD; C þ ); alle oure labour, 948 (al C); alle his fulle mynt, 1419 C (alle his ful[e] C, al his fulle A, al his ful[le] D) (cf. 7046). Cf. also, for alle in these uses, B 212, 1192, 1506, 1509, 1934, 1954, 2083, 2405, 2824, 3220, 7125; for alle his, B 265, 994, 1142, 2623, 3726, 6927.

II. The half substantive use of the singular al (as in: here is al, al is wel, etc.) requires no special notice. The proper form is of course al (cf. 544, 952, 1045 f, 1406, 1757, 2000, 2297, 2583, 3101, 3148, 3370, 3482, 3494, 3687, 4459, 4641, 7378), but alle is sometimes found; the final -e, however, has no significance, and is never sounded (thus: alle, 2583 B, 3370 B; alle, 1406 B, 1757 B, 3482 B, 3687 B, 4459 B, 7378 B). For the substantive use of al (sg.) as object of a verb, where the proper form is of course al, cf.

1 For cases where no noun follows the this, cf. 351, 386, 2544, 2591, 2716, 4638, 5062, 5734.
2 Remark 1914 f.
3 B 2626 is unmetrical, unless, with Furnivall, we supply [w].
4 Supply [his] in B.
170 Observations on the Language

1302, 1914 f, 2409, 2680, 3102 BCD, 3766, 4027, 4166 f, 5636, 8180. Here too alle is found, both at the end of the verse (cf. 4166 f B) and elsewhere (for alle, cf. 1302 B, 3102 A, 3766 B; for alle, cf. 4207 B), but the -e is never sounded. For al (sg.) used substantively after prepositions (as, yn al, for al, over al, with-al, etc.), cf. 396, 437 f, 921 f, 1129 f, 2306, 2494, 2655, 2709, 3306, 3319 f, 7183 f, 7682 f. As before, the variants in -e are merely graphical (cf. 921 f B, 1129 f B, 2655 f B, 7183 f B, 7682 f B; for alle, cf. 396 B, 3306 C). Exception—with alle, 288 f (: falle inf.). This is the only case.

Note 1.—Observe: he al hool, 3855; thy lady vertuous is al, 891 f (alle B) (in general : yn special); whos I am al and, etc., 4449 (alle B); this (= this is) al and som, 5855 (alle & somme D), cf. 5936.

Note 2.—The spelling of AC is almost uniformly al (aff occurs, however, in 386 A, for example). In D aff is very common.

III. The form allè in the singular is found or required in the following verses:

In whom that al[le] vertu lyst abounde, 1244 (all[e] B, euerly D; C is diff. †).


To euerly wight that alle prys hath he, 1273 (al the prys C, al[le] pris D).

By al[le] right it may do me no shame, 1848.

In al[le] ioyle and surète out of drede, 1918 (alle . . . seurte B, al[le] . . . seurte CD).

Thourgh which is al[le] sorwe fro me ded, 1930 (Thorugh [which] is allè s. f. m. d. B, Thour wiche as † al sor f. m. d. C, Thourgh which is al[le] sorow fro me dede D).


And in despit hadde alle wrecchednesse, 4629 (al[le] C, despite had al[lè] D)

And alle worldly blisse as thenketh me, 5497 (And (and) alle B, And euerly wordely ioye C, all[e] worldly blisse D).

By alle right and in a wordes fewe, 5942 (al[le] BC).1

1 In CD supply [a].
§ 80.

of Chaucer’s Troilus.

171

As I that al[le] trouthe in yow entende, 6311 (all[e] D).

Thus Pandarus with al[le] peyne and wo, 6861 (alle D).


And here I dwelle out-cast from alle ioye, 6978 (cast out C, out(e) cast(e) D).

And thus despeired out of alle cure, 7076 (oute BD; 7 lines om. † C).


But subgit be to alle poesy, 8153 ABD (not in C).

It will be observed that in all these cases alle has a natural accent, and consequently needs an ietus, and that the noun that follows is accented on the first syllable. In these circumstances the form al is obviously impossible. In other words, the verse will not bear such a phrase as al sorwe when al is emphatic: the poet must use a form alle, or give up the phrase. Child (§ 30) has cited several cases of this alle. Ten Brink ignores the idiom. Freudenberger, Ueber das Fehlen des Auftakts in Chaucers heroischem Verse, 1889 (Erlanger Beiträge, iv.), p. 35, remarks that Chaucer “vor Abstrakten im Singular häufig die schwache Form alle setzt, was auch die bessern Hss. meist haben,” referring to ten places in the Canterbury Tales and to eight in the Troilus (1848, 1950, 3311, 3447, 4629, 5942, 7980, 8153). As to the grammar of the final -e, one hardly dares to hazard a guess.

If the noun that follows allows an accent on the second syllable, alle is of course unnecessary. Thus,—

As to my dome in al Troyes cyte, 100 (alle B).

To al honoûr and bounte to consente, 2529 (alle BC).

Note.—In al nyght, either al or nyght receives the accent, but not both. Hence,—al nyght, 3705 (C (!), alle B), 4308; al nyght, 3710 (alle B), 3715 (alle B, al† wold D).

IV. Al, whether adjective or substantive, has in the plural (1) regularly the form alle, which is of course elided to alle before (2) vowels, and (3) h in certain cases. When such elision takes place, we sometimes find (4) the -e left off, as in the case of all other words in elided -e.

(1) ye wysé prouve . . . folkês alle, 233 f (folk[es] alle C, folkys alle D) (: thralle inf. : bifalle inf.).

alle ye, 340 (al[le] D),

of allë louers, 376.
Observations on the Language [§ 80.

Mystrusten alle or elles alle leue, 688 (al . . . al[le] C, aH . . . al to leue D).

the Grekes alle, 1039 f (falle inf.).
alle prowde (omnes superbae), 1487 (al[le] D).
herë brighte thoughtes alle, 1854 f (aH D) (falle inf.).
this otherë terms alle, 2152 f (calle inf.).
alle folk, 2695 (al[le] BD); cf. 2813.
hem alle thre, 2805 (C (?); al[le] D) (cf. 987, 3051).
on alle syke, 2903 (al[le] D).
thyne hestes alle kepë, 32G1 (this hestis aH D).
alle tho that lyuen, 3272 (al[le] BD).
of vs alle, 3600 f (of hem alle BC, of hem aH D) (calle inf. : falle inf.).
as ye wommen demen alle, 3614 f (aH D) (calle inf. : calle reticulum).
amonges alle, 3700 f (aH D) (halle n. : falle p.p.); cf. 6614 f.
we shulle ben alle merye, 3794 (al[le] BD).
in alle nedes, 4614 (alle the B, al the D).
the goddes alle, 4930 f (aH D) (calle inf. : falle p.p.).
of sorwes alle, 5163 f (byfalle inf. : calle ind. 1 sg.).
hom they wenten alle, 5392 f (aH D) (out of the halle : falle inf.).
alle, 5670 f (aH D) (falle accidunt); cf. 5712 f.
among vs alle fynde, 6488 (al[le] B).
houses alle, 6910 f (aH D) (out falle p.p.).
this drede I most of alle, 7067 f (aH D) (by-falle accidat : falle cadam); cf. 5762 f.
herë corn and vynes alle, 7833 f (aH D) (in stalle).
(Cf. also 56I f,1 903 f, 3527 f, 3530 to B, 5090 f, 5130 f, 6143, 6533 f,
6561, 6725, 6894 f, 6955, 7426 f, 7542 f, 7783.)
(2) men myghte on vs alle y-se, 1439 (alle se C ; om. † D).2
the goddes alle, 3226 (al D).
his(e) wordes alle, 3339; cf. 4384.
I speke hem alle vnnder correccioun, 4174.
myn otherë things alle yfere, 5995 (al B, aH D)3; cf. 8134.
to fayllen alle yfere, 6114.
(Cf. also 240, 463, 688, 2858, 3449, 3608, 4109 † D, 4609, 5730,
6141, 7246.)
(3) alle herë (poss. sg.) lymes, 282 (al D).

1 In all the cases in rhyme cited is this parenthesis the rhyme-words are
infinitives.
2 Supply [myghte] in B.
3 Supply [ek] in B.
§ 80. of Chaucer’s Troilus.

alle here (poss. sg.) wommen, 3530 (al D, alle ♢ wommen B); alle here sore sykes, 7397 (aH D); cf. 2513.
alle his goodly wordes, 7081 (7 lines om. ♢ C, aH D).
alle hirë (poss. pl.) goddes, 8213 (aH D).

(4) ye lyue al yn lyst, 330 (loue al in rest C).

al and some, 1448⇑, 2234 (alle C).
al hire (pass, pi.) goddes, 8213 (aH D).
yo lyue al ynst, 330 (loue al in rest C).
al all the folk, 1995 B (alle C, aH D); cf. 1704.
aH hisë fyngres, 2117 (alle BC, al D).
hirë folk weren al aweye, 2279 B (alle C, om. ♢ D).
thei slepten al ifere, 3588 (alle C).
Don olde affeccion al ouer go, 5086 (alle BC, aH D t).
late hym haue al yfere, 2562 (alle B).
[Singular ?]

brethren al yfere, 5868 (alle BCD).

V. But alle is the plural form before the, this, etc., when these words count as a syllable (ten Brink’s rule, § 255). Thus,—
alle ♢ the ladyis, 186 C (ay ABD).
alle youre observaunces, 337 (al D).
alle the men, 838 (al D).
alle these othere, 893 (alle this other B, al the other ♢ D ♢).
alle the othes, 1384 (al C, aH D ; othës B, othis CD).
alle the weyes, 1907 (al D).
alle the folk, 1973 (al BD). [Plu. verb.]
aH the thinges ♢, 2001 D (sg. is right).
alle the dores, 3075 (aH D).
alle the temples, 3225 (al D).
alle these thynges, 3641 (al this wonder B, of this wonder CD); cf. 2405 C.
alle youre wordes, 4409 (al B, alle these C).
alle the goddes, 4514 (al the goodnes ♢ D).
alle the nedes, 4614 B (al the D, alle nedes AC).
alle youre frendes, 6218 (alle ♢ oure C).
alle this nyghtes two, 6683 (al B, alle these C, aH thes D).
alle these thynges, 8086 (al B, aH D).

Note.—Alle these loueres (?), 2153 ♢ A, needs transposition (these l. alle).
al the peple, 1743 (alle B).
aH the thinges, 2001 D ♢ (alle this thyng A, al BC).
aH these thynges, 2350 (al this B, C ♢, al this thing[es] D).

1 Can this al be adv.?
2 Singular ♢
3 A ♢ omits alle.
4 Supply [and] in C.
al this folk, 2652 (allē thisē folk C); al the world, 3119 (al BC, al the peple D)\(^1\); cf. 1463, 3119, 3264, 3318, 4765.

al the prophesies, 7857 (allē D, -cy C).

Ten Brink (§ 255) leaves the impression that *alle* pl., is usually apocopated before "syllable-building" article *the* (or pronoun), but *not otherwise*. This is surely not accurate. We should expect such apocope as well when *the* is reduced to *th\(^{\prime}\)*, if the word following the *th\(^{\prime}\)* is accented on the second syllable. Thus we have,—

This yard was large and rayled a\(\text{ff}\) the ale\(\text{ys}\), 1905 (alle thalēyes B, alle the ale\(\text{ys}\) C, D om. al).\(^2\)

Indeed it is hard to see how we can in any circumstances have the order "*allē \(\times \)’" without apocope. Accordingly we find,—

Another day\(\text{y}\) shal törne vs alle to i\(\text{oye}\), 6293 (a\(\text{ff}\) D, com vs al D).

This is a word for al, this Troylus 4502 (al, that B). [Sing. !]

Now hem he hurte and hem alle down he caste, 1284 (cf. varr. *l*.),

is not a sure case. *Alle* may be merely the adverbial *al*. Similarly the construction of *al* is not entirely unambiguous in,—

And of the furyes al she gan hym telle, 7861 (furie\(s\) also † C, furie\(s\) she † D). [Should we read *als†*?]

Me from disesis from alle peynys smert, 7783 C, should be emended to *disease of allē peynys*, &c., as AD indicate.

On hys by-haluë which that vs alle sole\(w\) sende, 2819 A, is also clearly wrong. The reading of G: On his half which(e) that soule vs alle sende, seems right, and is rather supported by B † and C. Cp. and John’s read: On (Of J) his halfe (half J) which (om. J) that soule vs alle sende.

In 688 D, read *allē leue for al to leue.*

Note 1.—In 3765, *Considerēd allē thingēs as they stode (al[lē] thing[is] D)*, is of course to be read, not,—*Considerēd allē thingēs*, etc. But cf. *Considerēd a\(\text{ff}[\text{e}]\) thyng it may not be*, 2375 (a[lē] thyng(e) B, allē thyng(e) C, al thing vel(e) D). In 1920, al is doubtless a collective singular.

Note 2.—In the following lines *thynge* is probably to be regarded as a plural.

Our [al[lē] thynge he stood [for] to byholde, 310 (alle thing(e) . . . for to B, alle thynge(he) [he]\(^3\) . . . for to C, al[lē] thing (e)he stood [for] to D).

Nece [al[lē] thing hath tyme I dar avowe, 3697 (allē thynge(e) BC).
In alle thyng(e) is myn entente clene, 4008 (al[le] B, alle thyng . . .
That wost of allé thing(e) the sothfastnesse, 5742 (of al this thyng(e) B,
of al this thyng C, of allé thing(e) D).
As to: Whan that he sey that al[le] thyng was we[1], 3538 (alle thyng(e) B,

§ 81. The genitive plural of al (cf. Child, § 44; ten
Brink, § 255) remains in the Troylus in,—
alderbeste, 4439 f (alder beste B, aldyr best C, altherbest D).
alder best (adv.), 1001 (alder best(e) B, aldyr best C, althermost D).
alderfirst, 1062 ¹ (altherferst D), 4736 (alderfirst(e) B, alther first D);
alderferst, 5494 (aldirfirst(e) B, aldirfirst D ² ); alderfirst[e], 2939
(aldir ferste C, altherferst[e] D ³ ).
alder-lest, 604 (alderlest B, althere f lest C, altherlest D). ⁴
alderleuest, 3081 (aldir leueste C, alther levest D), 6939 (aldyr loucé-
lyest † C).
aldermost, 152 (althermoost D), 248 B (addermost A, aldyrm ost C,
althermoost D), 996 (aldyr most C, althermost D); ⁵ althermost,
4107 † D ⁶.
alderwisest, 247 (aldyrwysest C, altherwysest D).

ADVERBS AND OTHER PARTICLES.

§ 82. Anglo-Saxon adverbs in -e preserve their termin-
ation in the Troylus (Child § 69; ten Brink, § 246,
Anm.).

Note.—Besides Anglo-Saxon adverbs, the following list includes a few
later analogical formations. For blyue, inne, oute, thane, whanne,
see § 88.
blythe, 4836 f C, is an error for blyue.
bryghte (A. S. beorhte), 7333 f (-nt C, light † D) (: alighte pret. 3 sg. :
myghte pret. 3 sg.); bryght and shene, 4700 (-e B); shyneth bright,
1849 f (-e B, -nt C) (: put . . . to flyght).
clene (A.S. cléne), -e, 4672, 7417, ⁶ 7561, 8058.
depe (A.S. déope), 1655 (-e C), 3434, 5251 f (: wepe pres. subj. sg.),
6621 f (: wepe inf.); -e, 272, 4341 (-e † D).
dere (A.S. déere, W.S. díere, dýre), 8164 f (: pere n. : here inf.); -e,
810, 7329 (der D); -e haue, 4953. [Var. B deere.]

¹ A 9-syl. verse in ABD (C cut out).
² Supply [me] in D.
³ Supply [the] in D.
⁴ Supply [him] in D.
⁵ For Arn (are) C (D), read erren.
Observations on the Language [§ 82.

faire, fayre (A.S. fæg(e)re), 1413 f (: apéyre subj. I pl.), 4398, 5684 f (: necessarie 1); -e, 1971, 6710 (om. † C).

faste (A.S. fæste), 534 f (-t B), 748 f, 917 f, 1038 f, 1229 f, 1282 f, 1361 (om. † A), 1742 f, 1773 f, 1957 f (-t C), 1983 f, 1985 f, 2022 f, 2239 f (-t C), 2249 f (-t C), 2360 (-[e] B), 2443 f, 2650, 2795 (-[e] B), 2999 f (-t C), 3936 f, 4029 (-[e] B, -[ë] † went D), 4609 (-[ë] BE), 4779, 4792 2, 4884 (-[e] B), 4916 (-[e] B), 5182 f, 5336 f, 5576 (-[e] B), 5892 3, 6901, 6959 (-[e] B), 7317 (-e † hadde C), 8004 f (-t C), 8185 f; fast[e] for, 962 (-e C); -e, 3069 (-t BD), 4705 † A (sharpe B, sharp C), 6736 (-t BC), 6817; fast (before vowels), 1174 (-e C) 4, 2789 (-e C), 7019 (-e CD); fast he, 190 (-ë † he C) 5; -e he, 360 † D, 2180 AB, 7598; -ë here (gen. sg.), 7374 (-t B; om. † C); -ë hadde, 7317 † C; -ë homward, 2388 (-t BD).

In all cases registered above in which faste occurs at the end of a line has fast*, except in 5182 and in 8185 (which is not found in D). Old style figures indicate that D has fast[e]. In 1361 D it is possible to scan fast.


foule, fowlle, -e, 5684, 6239 (foul B); -e his, 6129; -ë falle(?), 5124 (-ë CD; -ë B †). 6

fresshe, 2985 D (frosch[e]? C, fresshly A, freshly B).

harn[e] (A.S. hearde), hard or, 1353; hard hym, 4373 (-ë C).

heighe, heyhe, hye (A.S. héah, héage), heighe, 1486 f (hie C, hy D); hye, 3026 f (highe B, hye C), 5861 f (haye B, high D, in † hye C); heighe, 5658 (heigh B, high D), 6371 (?) (heigh B, hie † D), 6622 (heighb B, hye C, hie D); heyhe, 4985 (heigh B, hey C, high D).

Note.—For hygh and lowe, 3260, and hye or love, 2869, see note to love.

Rhyme words.—eye (l. ye) (1486), prye inf. (1486), glorie inf. (3026), dye inf. (5861), melodie (3026), companye (5861):

hoote (A.S. háte), drenken (l. dronken) hadde as hoot and stronge, 4232 (hote B); cf. I hadde it neuer half so hote as now, 4492 (hoote B, hoot D, ofte † C).

i-lyke (A.S. ge-lise), To seruen (-yn B, -e D) and ben (ben[e] D, ay ben C) ay (om. CD) i-lyke (i-lik C, y-lyke D) diligent, 2986; Was euere y-lyk[ë] (i-lik[e] C, yholde † B) prest, 3327. (Cf. lyk, § 83.)

1 So AB; -rye D. We must read necessaire.
2 Read ran[ne] in D. 3 Supply [hire] in B, [her] in D.
4 Supply [seyde] in D. 5 But supply [full] and read faste.
6 But hath in A is the corrector’s insertion.
late (A.S. late), 3310 f (: yate n.), 7104, 7504 f (: yate n.); late, 1483 (lat B, -ë war C), 3218, 7106; latë † is, 7433 (-ë BC, -ë † it (!) D). 2

longe (A.S. lange, lange), 59 f (long D), 617 f, 1487, 1630 f (long D), 2212 (langë B), 2325 f (long D), 2330 (-ë D, -ë B), 2475 (-ë! D), 2680 (-ë D), 3043 (long † shal. D), 3647 f (long D), 4988 (-ë D), 5133, 7054 f, 7225 f, 7495, 7565 f (long D); -ë, 2008, 2075, 3207 (-ë † ich B) 4, 4159, 4270 (-ë as BC -ë [as] E), 5770 (alonië † be C), 6350 (-ë † D), 6659 (lenger † endure D), 6795; -ë he, 723 (long D) 6; -ë hadde, 5832 (-ë † hire (sg.) C) 7; longë † of, 2807 A (-ë his B, long his D, -ë here (pl.) C); longë here (hic), 3661 C 6 ([ë D, alwey AB]).

Rhyme words.—longe inf. (617, 1630, 7054), honge pres. subj. 2 pl. (2325), inf. (7565), wronge adj. pl. (3647), stronge adj. pl. (59, 7054, 7225, 7565).

Note.—In some of the following cases there may be confusion between the adverbal and the adjective construction:

For it was a long disgression.

Fro my mateere and you to longe to dwelle, 143-4 (-ë dwelle C, for yow long to dwelle D).

Or that it be ful longe (long D), 832 f (: longe inf.).

Long streyght he hyre leyde, 5825 (-ë B, a long ! C, longë streyt(e) D).

Ten dayis nys so longe not tabyde, 6716 (-ë to † C, -ë to D).

How longe it was bytwene, 7449 ABD (how) longe C).

Thenk not longe to abyde, 7518. 8 (Certainly adj.=Don't regard it as tedious.)

To longe were it for to dwelle, 7847 (long it B, [al] to longe C, longe it D).

lowe (O.N. adj. lág-r), heng here hed ful lowe, 1774 f (lawe B) (: throwe n.); stounen on hirc stalk[e] lowe, 2053 f (: rowe n.: throwe inf.); lowe lowte, 3525 (-ë † to D, low † risit (f) C); she stood ful lowe and stille alone, 178 (low BD); I . . . wol . . . folowe here spirit lowe or hye, 5861 (low B, forth † C).

Note.—In "For hygh and low withouten any drede I wol alwey thynë hestes alle kepe," 3260-1 (heigh + a lough B, hye and low C, hye or lowe D), and "And hye or lowe after (after that D) a wyght entendeth The ioyes that he hath youre myght that senteth," 2869-70 (heigh or lawe B, hye or low D), the construction is probably adverbial rather than adjectival.

lowde loude (A.S. hlûde), 1485 f (-d D, froude † C), 2005 (-ë D), 2162 f (-d D), 3520 f (-d D), 3585 (-ë D, -ë † C), 7868 f; -ë, 390 (-d D) 9; -ë † he, 6568 C (dethe ABD), 7607.

Rhyme words.—proude adj. pl. (1485), the proude sg. (7868), koude ind. 3 sg. (2162, 3520).

1 "But al to latë cometh the letnarye." 2 AD easily emended so as to read late.

3 Old-style figures indicate that D has long.

4 But read, longe ich [id].

5 In BC supply [when] and read longe.

6 Supply [æ] in B.

7 Supply [for] in C.

8 Dele the first (to) in A.
Observations on the Language

§ 82.
narwe (A.S. nearwe), narwe ymasked, 4576 (harde † C, narwe yma[ş]ked A).
newe (A.S. néowe, W.S. n(e)we, L. neowe), 222 (-[e] B, new y-shorn D), 440 f, 2985 f, 4541 f, 6628 f, 7013 f, 7020 ([-e] BD, -e † C)1, 7696 f (new B), 7935 f (anewe † C), 7946 f; newe and newe, 2958 f (new and newe BD); newe, 364 (new B), 1907 (new BD), 5119 (new D), 7373 (new D, newly † now C); -e his, 2766 (new B, now † D); new hym, 4388 (-e BCD).

Rhyme words.—newe n. (440, 4541, 7935), trewe adj. sg. indef. (7696, 7946), ag. def. (2985), pl. (2958, 7013), vntrewe pred. sg. (7935), rewe inf. (2958, 6628), knewe ind. 3 pl. (4541).

rathe (A.S. hraðe), 2173 f (: bathe inf.), 4867 f (: skathe n.: bathe inf.), 7300 f (: skathe n.).

rowe,—loken rowe, 206 f (loryd row D) (: browe n.).

sharpe (A.S. scarpe), 729 f (: harpe n.), 2119 f (: harpe n.: harpe inf.); -e, 4705 (sharp D, faste † A). [Var. B charpe; C scharpe.]

shene (A.S. adj. sci(e)ne, scéne), 4700 f (: bytwene), 5901 f (: quene). [Var. B sheene; C schene.]

shorte; short[e] for to syke, 2900 (schorte C). Cf. This (= this is) short and pleyn theeffect of his message, 5552 (-e B, schort C, Thus shorte D).

smerge, 4905 f (: herte: sterte inf.).

smothe (A.S. smóðe), That han here top ful heighe and smothe y-shore, 5685 (smooth D).

tonse (A.S. sófte), 195 f (soft D), 279 (-[e] B, -e he C, soft he D),2 914 f (soft D), 2113 f, 3284 f (soft B), 3450 (-[e] BD), 3509 f, 4480 f (-t B), 5202 f (soft B), 5884 † C, 6710 f (soft B), 6982 f; -e, 1735 (softly † synk D), 2914 (-t B, om. † D),3 4377 (-t B), 6446 (-t B);4 soft vnpyyne, 3540 (-e C); softe he, 3408 (-t BD). [soft † gan, 5024 B.]

Rhyme words.—ofte (all); a lofte, on lofte, o lofte (914, 3509, 6710).

sore (A.S. sáre), 667 f, 751 f, 827 (-e † to D), 1080 f, 1540 f, 1642, 1647 f, 2182 B (so[re] A; do † C; om. † D), 2988, 3082 f, 3654 (-e † to D), 3748 (sor[w]e C), 3814 f, 3842,5 3898 f, 4370, 5378 f, 5487 f (soor D), 5559 f (C?), 5783 f, 5848, 5879 (for † B),6 6425, 6495, 7101 f, 7241 (D†?); -e, 95 (therfor † D), 1200; -e he, 3964 (e † he B, -e I † D), 4313 (soor B); -e hath, 1618.—sore, 1404 † C.

Rhyme words.—more adj., adv., sbst. (all except 7101), soore inf. (667), lore n. (751, 1080, 1647, 3082, 7101), of yore (5378). [Var. BD soro.]

1 Perhaps adjective.
2 softe he may be right.
3 softe [vp]on C.
4 Supply [he] in B.
5 In C read sore [that] I.
6 In C read therwith[al].
stille (A.S. stille),\(^1\) 752 (stil[le] BD),\(^2\) 2213 f (stille inf.) ; stille, 178 (stil D), 2000 (stil BD), 2579 (stil D), 3541 (stil D), 3790 (stile C, stil D), 5016,\(^3\) 5183 f (stille inf.) ; stille \(\dagger\) gan, 1627 A (\(\sim\) BC, stil awey D).\(^4\) [Var. BC stille.]

stronge (A.S. strange), 4232 f (longe pl. : wronge pl.). [Cf. hoote.]


swote (A.S. swóte), swooth[e] smellen, 158 (swote B, swete C, swete smellyng flouris D).

thikke (A.S. piece), 1541 f (thekke C, thik D) (wykke pred. adj. pl. (weke C, wyk D)) ; thikke, 6018.\(^5\) [Var. B thykke.]

vnneth, vnethe (A.S. uncæSe), 3876 ([-e] B), 7583 (vnethe hym (?)) BD) ; \(-e\), 354, 1089 (\(-e\) \(\dagger\) set D),\(^6\) 5485 (th B, vnnethis D), 6394 (vnethe\(\dagger\)s B), 6762 (th B, -thé \(\dagger\) vs D),\(^7\) 7770 (th D) ; \(-e\) he, 4095 (th B, -thís D), 6398 (th B, -th \(\dagger\) for D). [Var. C oneithe.]—oneithe, 4920 \(\dagger\) C (wonder is the AB, wondre is the D). (Cf. vnnethes, § 91).

In 1089 the accent is on the first syllable ; in all the other cases, on the second.

warne, though thou sitté warne, 4472 f (: harme inf.).

wete, ybathed was ful wete, 5477 f (: trete inf.).

wyde (A.S. wide), 629 f (: gide inf.), 1700 f (: ryde inf.), 7458 f (: chyde inf.) ; wydë where, 3246 (wyde C)\(^8\) ; wyde, 384, 1260 (meche \(\dagger\) knowe C, wyde know D). [Var. BD wide.]

yerne (A.S. georne), 2993 f, 3218 f (3e[r]ne B), 4774 f, 4863 f.

Rhyme words.—werne inf. (2993, 4774), yerne inf. (2993, 4863), gonerne (gonerne A) inf. (3218), descerne inf. (4863), eterne (3218).

To these may be added the Romance words clere and ferme.

clerc, 1910 f, 6237 f, 6671 f (cler D), 6941 f.

Note.—In "cler stod on a ground of sykernesse," 3824 (cleré B ; cleré D," which om. a), cler is doubtless an adjective.

Rhyme words.—dere adj. (6237, 6671, 6941), here inf. (1910), here ind. or subj. 1 sg. (6941). [Var. B cleere.]

ferme,—and thow this purpos holde ferme, 2610 f (: conferme inf.).

---

\(^1\) Some of the cases cited may be adjectival. It is impossible always to distinguish between stille adj. and stille adv. even in Anglo-Saxon (cf. Grein, s. v.).

\(^2\) In C supply [thar].

\(^3\) Dele (ony) in A.

\(^4\) Transpose in A and read stille ; in B supply [lo].

\(^5\) Supply [fen] in C.

\(^6\) A has comyng, D comyng, for comynge.

\(^7\) In D supply [id] and read vnethe. Supply [wel] in A.

\(^8\) Supply [so] in D.
Observations on the Language [§§ 82, 83, 84.

Note 1.—Deuoute appears to be an adverb in

Hire old vsage wolde thei not letten
As for to honour thei godees ful deuoute,

150-151 (: aboute : doute n.); but it is possible that the construction is
adjectival. In 5552: This (= this is) short and pleyné the effect of my
message (pleyn O, Thus . . . pleyné D), the construction is perhaps
adjectival.

Note 2.—Scarce (with hiatus), 1128 D, should be scarcely.

Note 3.—For maugre (O. Fr. malgré, maugré), prep., cf. 4713.

§ 83. Exceptions to § 82.

ryght (A.S. rihte), cf. (i.) (ii.) 99 f, 171, 288, 307, 1022, 1200, 2090,
2636 f, 3070 (? f, 4674, 7614 f; vnright, 7024 f.

Arigh (A.S. on riht) has of course no -e: cf. (i.) (ii.) 2085 f (-e B), 2346 f,
3070 f D, 3494 f, 5073 f, 6125 (-e B), 6919, 7480 f, 7943.

lyk (cf. A.S. gelice), (i.) 5322 (-e BD); (ii.) 1080 (-e D), 1129, 2700
(-e B, as † D). vnylk that, 2741 (-e BD). (Cf. ilyke, § 82.)

Note 1.—For fayn and loth in an adverbal sense, see § 85, note 1. For
adown, see §§ 85, note 1, p. 201.

Note 2.—Lest (A.S. by lès pe, L. leste) has lost its -e. Thus,—(i.) lest
319, 4013 (-e B), 4032, 4253 (list B, last C, lesté E), 4815 (list B), 4828
(-e B), 5333 (-e D, stif f C); lyst ye, 2680 (list B, lest C, lest y y D); (ii.)
lest, 2133 (-e B); I. he, 5091 (list B); lyst it, 321 (lest BCD).

§ 84. Adverbs in -liche, -lich, -ly (A.S. -lice, -lice, O. N.
-liga).

Ten Brink (§ 270) thinks he has discovered a tendency on
Chaucer’s part to use -lich or -liche before a vowel or h. 1 The
following lists (I. and II.), which are meant to be exhaustive,
exhibit the testimony of the Troilus MSS. on this question.

List I. contains all the adverbs which in any of the four MSS.
show a form in -lich or -liche. When the same adverbs have also
a form in -ly, references are added for that form.

List II. is intended to contain all adverbs in -ly not already
included in I. Old-style figures indicate that the word that follows
begins with a vowel or h. Variants in any way significant are
registered, but trivial irregularities in spelling are not always noticed.
It will be observed that occasionally some MS. has a form in -lye
or -lie (see under bisly, fermely, hardyly, lustily, preuely, shortly,
sikerly, straungely, unhappily), but this spelling is unknown to A
and is chiefly affected by D.

1 "Dass er vor anlautendem Vocal oder h vielfach -lich und -liche statt -ly
gebraucht."
§ 84.]

of Chaucer's Troilus.

181

The somewhat reckless insertion or omission of an interior e deserves attention (see especially trewely and softly). Some of these interior -e's are due merely to analogy (cf. Child, § 71; ten Brink, § 262).

An examination of I. and II. shows that, so far as the Troilus MSS. are admissible as testimony, there is no tendency to use -liche or -liche before vowels and h to the exclusion of -ly, but that, on the other hand, -lich or -liche is not common before consonants. In A -lich (-liche) occurs 25 times before a vowel or h; in B, 39 times; in C, 16 times; in D, 8 times; whereas -lich (-liche) before a consonant is found only twice each in A and C, three times in B, and once in D. In all MSS. -ly is far commoner before a vowel or h than -lich (-liche). In the following cases (a—c) none of the four MSS. has -lich (-liche):—(a) before vowels, 771, 978, 1064, 1357, 1369, 1448, 2200, 2335, 2451, 2691, 2936, 2972, 2998, 3062, 3180, 3201, 3296, 3312, 3351, 3591, 3642, 3643, 3723, 4028, 4187, 4385, 4561, 4656, 4840, 4886, 5042, 5615, 5668, 5950, 6263, 6382, 6423, 6846, 6853, 6922, 6941, 6950, 7189, 7197, 7300, 7304, 7445, 7527, 7656 BCD, 7728, 7853, 8067, 8171, 8209, cf. 1578; (b) before he, his, hym, hire (poss. sg.), heres (sg.), hastow, have, hadde, 89, 209, 274, 306, 366, 1645, 2157, 2344, 2378, 2409, 2504, 3398, 3496, 3632, 3922, 4169, 4416, 4424, 4430, 4458, 4752, 5057, 5106, 5474, 5586, 5612, 5617, 5787, 5855, 6100, 6579, 6869, 6885, 7899, 7947 (-ly(e) D), 7998, 8007, 8169; (c) before helpe, 2315; before how, 7449. In all, then, we have nearly a hundred instances of -ly before a vowel or h, not counting those places in which one or more MSS. have variants in -lich (-liche).

In most of the cases of -lich (-liche) before a vowel or h, the adverb is polysyllabic, and an ictus falls on the termination (as, certurendliche). One might be tempted to conjecture that under such circumstances -lich would be preferred to -ly as a means of avoiding an hiatus which the ictus would make particularly noticeable; but even here -ly is very common (see bisily, blisfully, cureysly, etc.). In the present state of our knowledge, therefore, it is hardly safe to formulate a rule as to -lich or -ly before vowels and h, even in the cautious words of ten Brink (cf. also supra, § 72).

When the metre requires an additional unaccented syllable, the full form -lichë is used, never -lyë (see sodeynlyche, tendreliche, wonderliche). In rhyme -ly only is found.
Observations on the Language

1. certeinliche, 6463 B (-ly ACD). certaynly, -ceynly, (i.) cf. 713, 1257, 1571, 2763 f, 3401, 4616, 5295, 5459 † D, 5622, 5681 f, 5714 f, 6681, 7197, 8079; (ii.) cf. 2451. cèrtaynly † I (with slurred -y), 1531 A (cèrtein adv. B, sèrteyn C, cèrteyn D).

craftyliche, 2111 C (craftily AB, craftly D).

cruwellyche, 5966 A (cruely B, crewelly C, cruelly D). cruellyly

(i.) 8119 (cruely B, cruelly D).

1. cèrteinliche, 182, 6463 B (-ly ACD). certaynly, -ceynly, (i.) cf. 713, 1257, 1571, 2763 f, 3401, 4616, 5295, 5459 † D, 5622, 5681 f, 5714 f, 6681, 7197, 8079; (ii.) cf. 2451. cèrtaynly † I (with slurred -y), 1531 A (cèrtein adv. B, sèrteyn C, cèrteyn D).

craftyliche, 2111 C (craftily AB, craftly D).

cruwellyche, 5966 A (cruely B, crewelly C, cruelly D).

1. cerneinly, 6463 B (-ly ACD). certaynly, -ceynly, (i.) cf. 713, 1257, 1571, 2763 f, 3401, 4616, 5295, 5459 † D, 5622, 5681 f, 5714 f, 6681, 7197, 8079; (ii.) cf. 2451. cèrtaynly † I (with slurred -y), 1531 A (cèrtein adv. B, sèrteyn C, cèrteyn D).

craftyliche, 2111 C (craftily AB, craftly D).

cruwellyche, 5966 A (cruely B, crewelly C, cruelly D). cruellyly
pitouslyche, 6676 B (-ly ACD). pitously, pytously, (i.) cf. 2161, 2438, 2584, 5476, 5564, 5574 f (pitusely C), 5836, 6442 f (pitously C), 6623 f, 7244, 7787; (ii.) cf. 5042, 5911, 6922; before h, cf. 6100, 6579, 6885, 7947 (pitously he D); dispitously hym, 8169 (ful † pitously D).


rowfullych his, 6353 A (rewfulliche B, pitously D).² rowfully she, 7092 (reu- C, rue- D, joyful † B); rufully, 2907 f (reu- BC, rew- D).

scryvenlich † or, 2111 D (scryuenyssh A, sryuenyssh B, coryously ne C). secundelich ther, 2826 A (-ound[e]ly B, -undeli C, -ondly D).³ sobrelyche he, 1733 A (-liche B, sobirli C, soberly D), 6656 A (-lich B, sobirly D, sobërlîchê † grette C)⁴; sobrelîch he, 6869 (sobrelly D, soft[e]ly B, softely C); sobrelîche he, 7536 B (-ly AD, sobrelly C)⁵; sobrelîch on, 7292 A (-liche B, -ly D, sobirly C). sobrelly, (i.) 3796 (-irli C), cf. 3000 f D, 6444 f; (ii.) 3201 (sobrelly C), 4840 (-irly D); sobrely he, 4430 (-irly C); s. hym, 4458 (-rely C). [sobrelîy for, 7372 D (read shortly).]


sorwfullyche he, 7996 B (sorwefully AC, sorwëful he D).—sorwfully, (i.) 114 (sorwful † D), 596 A (sorwful adj. B, sorweful C, sorwful D), 605 (sorwful (!) C, sorowfully (!) D †), 1513, 4012, 6421, cf. 1603 † D; (ii.) 3643, 6423 (sorwely † D); s. he, 3922 (sorwfulli [he] sight D). [Var. B sorwofuly, sorwofully; C sorwfully, -li; D sorwofully, sorwofully.]

sternelych it, 3519 A (-lich BD, -liche C).

tendrelîche wepte, 5015 A (-lych[e] B, tenderely † (!) C, tendirly † (!) D)⁷; -lyche, 5031 (-lich B, entirely C, tendirliche D). tendrely,

¹ In B supply [te]. ² Leaf cut out of C. ³ In CD read deynmeth for denyth C, deignith D.

⁴ In 6656 C supply [tho] and understand sobereliche as = soberelich he. ⁵ In B supply [ful]. ⁶ Accent in D.

⁷ A certainly has the right reading.
(i.) 111 (-elry BC, pytous † and D), 7088 (-elry C, -irly D), cf. 6445 f; (ii.) tendrely he, 5612 (-elry B, -erely C, -irly D).

trewelycè the, 7414 B (-ely ACD); -elyche, 6773 (-iche B, -ly CD); -elyche, 1249 B (-ely C, -elry A, tru[é]ly D), 2246 C (-ely AB, tru[é]ly D); -[é]liche, 6773 B (-ich [?] C, truëly [?] D, -ewe[ely] A); -[é]liche as, 7350 B (-ely ACD); -elyche it, 246 (-liche C -elry B, -irly D); -elyche he, 6476 BC (-ely AD); trewelyche, 6743 (-elyche † C [?], truëly D). [Var. D truëly.]}—trewëly, (i.) cf. 1326 f, 1713 f, 2909 f, 3001 f, 3020, 3677, 4331 f, 4778 f, 15349 f, 5601 f, 5717 f, 5725, 6112, 6509, 6857 f, 7179, 7438 f, 7986, 8083; (ii.) cf. 5950, 6382, 6846, 7189, 7350, 7445, 8067; t. how, cf. 7449. [Var. B trew[é]ly (common); C trewely; D. truëly, tru[é]ly, trew[é]ly, truëly, trewëly, truëly † (6846), truly † (7445).] trewely, (ii.) 1578 (trorwely † C, trew[é]ly D); trewely, (i.) 6537 † A (-ely BC, truëly D), cf. also 8067 (truëly ye[if] D).

vnkyndelich and, 617 D (-ely A, -elry B, onkendely C).


womanliche, 2753 C (-ly AB, -ly † him D). wommanlly with, 6940. wonderliche, 729 B (wondyrliche C, wonderly A, -urly D); wonderlyche loude, 3520 A (-lichë B, -irlëchë CD).

Note.—In 5466 C child licheva deface should be chyldisshly deface. In 6899, with changed deedly pale face (deelich † B, duff & D, pale deedly was ‡ C), deedlych is apparently an adjective.

II.

bisily, bysily, bysly, cf. 771, 2442, 3995 f, 5148, 5331, 5384, 5603 f, 6815, 6933 f † C, 7046. [Var. C busily, busly, besly; D besily, besily(e).]

bitterly, cf. 4543.

blysfully, 6933 f (busly † C), 8171 AB.

brennynly, 607 (brennyngly B, brenyng [?] C, brennyng D †).

byhouëly, 1346 f (be- CD).

coryously (trisytl.), 2111 † C, see scryvenlich in list I., above.

cowardly, 5858 (couragey C).

curteysly, cf. 5252 ABD.

debonairly, 2344 (-erly CD), 2998 f (-erly CD).

dredfully, 2213.

1 In 4778 trewëly is much more probable than trewëly.
2 In C read saliwce for seluyn.
falsely, 84 (falsely B), 89 (falsely C, falsly D); falsly, 5855 (falsy CD).

falsely, 518 (falsly B, febly CD).

feithfully, feythfully, cf. 1348 f, 2662, 4514, 4776 f AB, 7439 f (feithfully C, feithfully D).

f onely, 4330 f (f onely C, f onely D).

fiebly, 3855 (fiebly B, febly CD), feithfully, feithfully, cf. 1348 f, 2662, 4514, 4776 f, 5547 f, 6089, 7377, 7398, 7790, 7818, 7998, 8007. finall y, 682 (fynal C, finally C, final AD). 7373; feithfely, 2972 f (fersely C, fersely A, fersely D).

frcshly, freshly, cf. 2985 (frcshfoly C, fressely B), 2972 f. [Var. C fresschely, frcshely; D fresschely.]

generally, 86 (line om. C).

gentilly, 1272 f.

gladly, cf. 1336, 3484 AB, 4187, 6936 f B.

godly (goudly, 3832 A), cf. 253, 2347, 2575, 2691, 2805 f, 2936, 3496, 3832, 3877, 4627, 6936, 6941. [Var. B godely, goodely; C godly, goodely, goodli.]

gostly, 7393 (gostely D).

hardely, 1389 (-i C, -ily D), 2510 f (-i C, -ily D), 3055 f (-ily BCD), 6182 (-ily B, -eli [ne] C, -ily [ne] D), 7527 (-ili C D), 7669 (-ily BC); hardely, 2097 (-ily BCD), 2802 f (-ily BD, -ili C), 7487 f (-ily IC). [Var. CD holty.]

heighly, 2818 (holy D, heily C).

heytily, 3484 (-i C, -ily D), 2762 f (-eli C, -ily D); heytily, 7304 (hertily B).

holly, hoolly, cf. 366, 2206, 2818 D, 2987, 3118, 4169, 5057, 5106, 5474, 6950, 8209. [Var. CD holly.]

humbly, 2342 (humili C); humbely, 2804 f (humble ty B, vmbely C, humbely D), 7717 (humili C).
inly, 640 AB, 4448.

1 In A read hau as = haue ye.

2 Scansion ? In A read goodly]

3 In A read hardly [right] un.
Observations on the Language

inwardly, 1349 f; ynwardly, 2817 † D.
largely, 2792 (-li C).
lightly, lyghtly, cf. 1374, 1753, 2324, 2473, 2732, 3062, 3646, 5131.
[Var. B lightely; C lytely (-li).]
lowly, 2207 (louli C), 6537 (lawe- B, loué- C, lou- D); lowely he,
2157 BC (lowly D, loué- A).¹
lustily, 6931 f (-li B, -ly(e) D).
manly, 5284 (nameli J C), 6393.
mekely, HOlf.
myghtily, 428 f, 6625 f (-i- D, -ely B).
myghtily, 428 f, 6625 f (-[i]- D, -ely B).

meekely, 1101 f.
myghtily, 428 f, 6625 f (-[i]- D, -ely B).

nedfully, 5666, 5716 f (nedè- D); nedè-, 5736 (ned- B).

nedly, 5632 (nede- B); nede-, 5668 (ned- B, nedfully as † D).
nedfully, 5666, 5716 f (nede- D).
§§ 84, 85.] of Chaucer's Troilus. 187

softely is no doubt the right reading. [Var. C softeli; D softly.]
softly, cf. 4350, 5459, 5627, 6850, 7372 † C. [Var. BD sothely.]
straugely, cf. 7318 (-li(e) D); cf. 2508 f.
thryftly, 3053 f.
vnfelyngly, 1104 f.
vnhappily, -ply, 666 (onhap[i]ly C, vnhappy[ly] D), 7300 (vnhap-
vulgarly, 6175 (-[l]y A, wolgly C).
warly, 3296.
wikkedly, 1526 (wekedely C).
wofully, 1603 (sorow- † D).
worthily, 1271 f.
wrongfully, 414 f (wronge- B), 2504 (wrongli † C), 7853.
wylfully, cf. 1369.
wysly, cf. 205, 949, 1064, 1459, 6710 (wisely (l) C), 7654 (wisē † D). [Var. BD wys-; BCD wise- .]
wysly, cf. 2315, 3555 † D, 3632, 3767, 4343, 4360, 4495, 4752, 5043,
6026, 6106, 6519, 7728 (wisely as C †). [Var. BC -w; D wiss-, wisse- .]
Rhyme words.—Adverbs in -ly rhyme usually with each other, but the
following rhyme-words also occur: I (428, 1101, 1104, 1271, 1272, 1626,
2089, 2508, 2510, etc.), by, therby (380, 382, 1626, 2362, 4776, 4778,
5574, 5577), why (1758), grant mercy (1326).
Note.—In 2111 AB, one -ly seems to be used for two adverbs (cf. Shak-
speare's fresh and merrily): "Ne scryuenlysh (struyenlysh † B, curyously
C, scryuenlilch D) or (ne C) craftily (craftylche C, craftly D) thow it
(om. C) wryte."

§ 85. The following adverbs which have -e neither in A.S.
nor in the Troilus deserve notice:
amys (see Mätzner), cf. 491 f, 1398 f, 2133 f, 2593 f, 3015 f, 3112 f,
3687 f, 3876 f, 3967 f, 4022 f, 4471 f, 5933 f, 7102 f, 7430 f, 7549 f,
7641 f, 8047 f, 8090 f.
Rhyme-words.—is, ywys, this.
Note.—Cf. that yet is mys and, 5929 (that is amys D); that is mys, 6010 f
(that is amis D) (: is: this); al that was mys, 7789 f (amys † CD).
anon (A.S. on án), (i.) (ii.) cf. 75, 324, 349 f, 2096 f, 2636 f, 2840,
3396, 3406 f, 3516 f, 3545 f, 3991 f, 4704, etc., etc. CD occasionally
have anon(e); B sometimes has anon. (Accent in 2636 ?)
ful (A.S. ful ade.), (i.) 151, 167, 3589, 5472, 6630, 6633 (fullę BD),
7614, 7998 ; (ii.) 378, 626 ; ful humble, 124. [Var. D fuh.] Note.—Ten Brink, § 246 Anm., notices that "das steigernde ful (ful vel,
ful hard u. s. w.)" has no -e. Of the above-cited cases all but two are
instances of this "steigernde ful." These two, however, do not come
under ten Brink's category: they are,—"Who koude telle sright or ful
discryue," 6630, and "But fynally he ful ne trowen myghte," 7998.
nygh, neigh, neih, ney, *adv. and prep.* (A.S. néah, néh, *adv. and prep.*),
(i.) (ii.) cf. 108, 180, 499, 543, 582, 2325, 3345, 5019, 5035, 5894, 6895. [Var. B negh, neyghë; C ny3, nyh, ny3h; D ny, nye, nï (4404 + D).]

streyght, streyt, straught (A.S. streht, *p.p.*); streyght, (i.) 53 (streght B), 4802 (streght B †, streyt C), 5905 (streghte B, strey3t C, streite D), 6655 (streght B, streyt C, streyte D); (ii.) 324 (streght B, styrte † C), 607 (streght B, streyt C), 6351 (streyte B, stroite D); streygh[t], (ii.) 2258 (streght B, streyt C, streight † D); streyght he, 5825 (streght B, streyt C, streyte = streyt he D).—streyt, (ii.) 2546 (streght B, streight D, [as] streit C).—straught, (ii.) 3394 (streght BD, streyt C).

wys (really neut. adj. used as adv., cf. *y-wys*), god so wys be my saluacioun, 1466 (wis CD); god so wys me saue, 2063 (wis CD); as wys as I the serue, 3555 (wis C, wisly † D); as wys I neure, etc., 6317 (wis BC, wisse D).

ynough, ynowgh, y-nowh, ynow, inow (A.S. genōg, genōh), (i.) 2108 f, 2675 f, 2927 f, 3039 f, 4471, 4796, 5058, 5720, 6462 f, 6654, 7213, 7357, 7459, 7533 f; (ii.) 5346 (inow (of) C).

Rhyme words.—towh, towgh, tough (2108, 2927, 6462), lowh, lough *pret. ind. 3 sg.* (2675, 3039, 7533). [Var. B inowh, ynowh(e); D ynow(e), inough, inowh.]

*y-wys*, i-wys (A.S. ge-wis, *adj. neut.*), (i.) cf. 425 f, 802 f, 1213 f, 1313 f, 1814 f ([y-]wys A), 5353 (i-wiss(e) D), 8095 (i-wiss(e) D), etc., etc.; i-wysse, 1012 f (i-wis BC, ywys D) (: this(se): ys(se)).

*Cf. wys.*

*Note.*—In *cuele, yuete, -etc* merely represents syllabic *-l.* Thus,—*ful yuele* fare, 626 (cuele C, evil D). This becomes consonantal before a vowel; as, *cuele apayed, 5304* (yuēl B, cuif D), cf. 649; *yuete as, 6601* (yuēl B, inele C, yuēl D).

A few Romance words are used adverially without termination:

certeyn, -aï, -ain, (a) with accent on the ultima, (i.) cf. 492, 1475, 1476 † B, 2654 f, 3631 f, 4118, 5720 f, 5780 (-(e) D), 7491 f; (ii.) cf. 5266. (b) With accent on the penult, (i.) cf. 674, 1809, 3996, 4782; (ii.) cf. 3938, 5864 (-(e) D). *Cf. the use of syker in 2076.*

complët, cf. 7191 (perh. rather adj.).

egàl, 5322.

plat, cf. 681, 1664.

seur, al so seur as day comëth, 5083 (sure D).
Several adjective formations in -les (A.S. -lēas) are used adverbially (cf. § 49, note 5). These are (i.) (ii.),—

causeles, 779 f (-lees B), 3853, 6139 ABD.

douteles, 1499 f ([e]- D), 1579 C ([e]- AD, trew[e]ly B), 2614 f, 4220 ([e]- E), 1 4630 ([e]- D), 4764 f ([e]- D) 2, 5092 (dought[e]les D), 5161 C, 5897 (doub[e]les D).

dredles, 1027 B ([e]- ACD), 3368 ([e]- AD) 3, 3844 ([e]- AD), 4738 B ([e]- AD), 5940 ([e]- A) 4; -lees, 1041 B (dred[e]les AD), 1270 B (dred[e]les ACD).

endeles, 4685.

gilteles, 1413 BC ([e]- AD) (perhaps adj.).

knot[e]les, 7132 (knotteles C, knott[e]les † out D). 5

nedeles, 2612 f.

Note 1.—Fayn and loth.—The adjective fayn (A.S. fæg(e)n) is used in connection with wol and wolde with the force of an adverb. Thus,—
wolde I fayn remene, 691 (fayne B); I wol right fayn with al my myghte brenn, 2770. Examples of this use may be seen in 3064 f (fayne B, fayn CD) (: avene : seyn p.p.), 3497 f (: agayn : rayn n.), 7358 f (-e BD) (: ayen) ; cf. 3769, 3854, 3945, 4359, 6432, 6550, 6914, 7595, 8104, in most of which the word that follows begins with a consonant.

Fayn in this idiom has no proper -e, though B and D sometimes add one, which, however, is never sounded (so 2310 A). 6 (Cf. fawe, note 2 at end of § 46.) Similarly the adj. loth (A.S. lāx) is used with an apparently adverbial force: God wot of thing full ofte loth bygone Cometh ende good, 2319-20 (lothe D †); For trewely ther kan no wight yow serue That half so loth yowre wratte the wolde deserue, 6509-10 (soth † C).

Note 2.—Wonder in connection with adjectives and adverbs (wonder blyue, wonder wel, etc.) is sometimes regarded as the first part of a compound; but it was apparently felt as a separate word (cf. the adjectival use of wonder in such phrases as this wonder maladye, 419). For examples cf. wonder blyue, 7912; w. cruwel, 7831; w. faste, 5336 (marvellous lyuerly D); w. ofte, 189 † A; w. sore, 751, 1540, 3964; w. stronge, 7564; w. wel, 288.

Note 3. For ser wynsas as craftyly, see note at end of § 84.

Note 4.—For half used adverbially (cf. A.S. healfe instruc. with compar.; healf - in comp. half-dead, etc.), cf. (i.) 6510 (-q D), 7101, (ii.) 1152.

Note 5.—The following adverbs, etc., of various formation, are for convenience thrown together in a note:

ay (O.N. ei, cf. A.S. ā, āwa, and see o below), (i.) cf. 186 (alle † C), 2488 f, 3376 f, 6515 f, 7074 f, 7158 f, 7985 f; for ay, cf. 4454 f, 4655 (aye D); the forth ay, 1069 f; (ii.) cf. 180, 5593; for and o, 2167 f C (and oo D).

eft (A.S. eft), (i.) 137 BC, 4322 (-e CD), 4374 (-e D), 4395 (-e B, ofte † D), 4525 † D (erst ABC), etc.; (ii.) 6391 (-e D), 6679 (-e D), etc.

est (A.S. eaest). See west.

fer (A.S. feorr), (i.) 853, 2203; (ii.) 18 †, 451, 565 (ferre [as] D), 888, 1301, 2395 (fayre † C; om. † D), 3275, 3325, 3502 8; fer han, 4653 (B †);

1 In E read o[?]s[?]o.
2 In D, read 3e for 3s (yes †): otherwise dou[e]les is adj. †.
3 9-syl. verse.
4 In C † perhaps adj.
5 In C read thour[ou]t.
6 For 7595 D is to be emended by transposition. In 2310 C we are to insert [to], not to read fayn[e].
7 Supply [I] in A.
8 Read lyggen for lyn in C.
fer henne, 5908 (fere B); from a fer his, 313 (from after C, from ferre her 9-syl. D).1 [D has usually ferr(e), ferre(e).]

forth (A.S. for), cf. 2345, 4809; tho forth ay, 1069 f; emforth, -(e), cf. 1328, 2082, 3841; fro this forth, cf. 1094, 1529, 4976; ferforth (accented on either syllable) in the phrases, —so ferforth, as f, as, so f, that, thus f., how f., cf. 121, 2045, 2191, 4336, 5553, 5960. (In these examples no note as to whether a vowel or h or a consonant follows.)

on . . . along (ylong) (A.S. on (set) . . . gelang), On me is nought ylong thin yuel fare, 2086 (along CD, along(e) B)2; but it wer on hym along ye, 3625 (-e) B, on al † a long ye D)

tho (A.S. þo), cf. 1600 f, 1766 f, 2290 f, 2487 f, 2913 f, 3968, 5402, etc., etc.; er tho, 6811 (or this C, or tho D).

wel (A.S. we!), cf. (i.) (ii.) 12, 57, 68, 76, 131, 167, 288, 1177, 1677 f (wele ABD) (: del: stel), 2297 f, 3538 f, 3552 f, etc., etc. (Often written wele in BD and sometimes in A (cf. 246, 837, 1677 f), but of course the -e is never sounded.)

west (A.S. west), est or west, 7795 f (est or weste B, est and west D) (: best adv. : lest ind. 3 sg.) ; est and west (as sbst. acc.), 2138 f (est and weste B) (: lyst ind. 3 sg.); by est or west, 7114 f (weste B, be(n) est or west C, by este or west D †) (: lest ind. 3 sg. : best pred. adj. sg.) ; by west and ek by este, 7556 f (by weste . . . bi este B, he † west . . . he † est C, by weste . . . by est D) (: byeste n.).

yond. See note at end of § 86.

§ 86. Comparison of Adverbs (Child, § 70; ten Brink, p. 134). Comparative degree.

Of the "old" adverbal comparatives, A.S. bet, wiers, má, lás, nér (nýr), ór survive in the Troilus (a); for sé, see § 88, p. 196. Other adverbal comparatives are adjective forms: (b) (I.) bettre, more, lasse, derre; (II.) A.S. comparatives in -or and their analogues.

(a) bet (A.S. bet), (i.) 2753 (b. hire † C)4, 1363, 2524, 3963, 6832 (but † C), 7284, 7629 (beste † B), etc.; the bet, 481, 1177 f (bette BCD) (: let p.p., lette BCD), 1589 (C †), 1921 f (bette B, bete C) (: beset p.p.), 2600, 3819 (the b. † other (l) C); cf. 746, 3318, 3332, 4406, 5562, 6020, 7347, 7405; For yf it erst was wel tho was it bet, 4525 f (bette C) (: met p.p.). [Var. B bett; BD bet(e).] bet, (ii.) 3264, 3965 (B † C †), 4333 (the bettir † endure D); bet and bet shal, 3556 (. . . wil C).

wers (A.S. wiers, wyrs), wers bygon, 7691 (wors B, wers C, wurse D); wors(e), 2703 (wers(e) B, wers(e) C, wors D).

In 5856 f, no wers(e) (wurse D) (: adverse voc. : divers pl.) is an adjective.

mo (A.S. má), euerë mo, 1465 f (-more † D), 4268 f, 4603 f (euer morë † moo E); cf. 418 f, 787 f, 6088 f, 7026 f, 7418 f, 7502 f. neuerë mo, 2498 (neueuermore † C; D †); cf. 5645 f.

1 Or supply [a] in D.
2 Old-style figures indicate that D reads better, betir, bettir, betre, though the metre calls for bet (cf. 746 C).
3 Supply [gan] in A.
Rhyme words.—to and fro (418, 6088), two (418), also (5645), so (1465, 4603, 7502), wo (787, 1465, 4268, 7418), go inf. (4268, 4603, 6088, 7026, 7502), ago p.p. (7418), tho adv. (7026). [Var. BE moo.]

les (A.S. lēs), preserved in nathēles (A.S. nā þē lēs), (i.) cf. 19, 170 f (: makeles : prees), 750, 916, 923, 1552, 3011, 3214, 3424, 3827, 3925, 4327, 5185, 5716, 6098, 6462, 6546, 6872, 7141, 7232, 7932, 8002; (ii.) cf. 5536, 5629; n. he, cf. 4814, 7547.

C usually has neuere the les (trisyllabic, as if ne’ertheless). Other variants are nathelles, 750 B, 916 B, 3011 A; nathelles, 5536 B; nathelles, 3925 D, 4327 D; nathellesse, 5716 D, 7292 D; nath[s]elles, 6872 C; nath[e]les, 6098 A.

Note.—For lest (A.S. þē lēs þe), see § 87, n. 3.

ner (A.S. nēr, nýr), the ner the fyre, 449; the ner he was, 448.

Ner I come, 1647, may be either positive or comparative, and there is a similar uncertainty with regard to 2902 (ner D)¹, 4404 (ui3 D), and 6443 (neer B, nere he D). For the positive ner, neer, cf. 451, 582 C.

(b) II. bettre, betre (A.S. bet(t)re, neut. comp.), 2300 f (betere C); b. plese, 3728 (better BD, betere C); bettre his, 3729 (more BC, better D); the bettre, 2780 f (better BC); the b. pleyne, 2616 (bettere B, betere C, betir D); the bettre at, 6013 (betteire C, better D). (All dissyl. except 3729, 6013.)

Rhyme-words.—lettre (2300, 2780), vufette inf. (2300).

more, (A.S. már, neut. comp.), 647 f, 669 f, 753 f, 883 (C?), 885 (ê C), 931 (ê C ? D ?), 1082 f, 1820 AB, 2413 (D ?), 2424 f, 4061, 5380 f, 5488 f (mor D), 6007 f (D ?), 6387 f, 6851, 7036 f, 7282 (C ?), 7283, 7716 f, 7719 f, 8096 f (cf. 2540 C, 5610 D); -e, 2556, 3324 (D ?), 4021, 4494 (ê ? me C), 4919 (om. ? D), 6007 (mor B; D ?), 7036, 7329 (ê ? to C; D ?), 7744, 7751 CD (manere ? A); more he, 448; more here (sing.), 2717 (C ?); but,—nomorê hane, 3013 (namorê hau B, no more han C ?).

more than, 376 ², 532 (ê ? D), 537 (mor B; D (?)), 578 (ê C (?); mor ? D), 1425, 3162 (ê B; C ? D ?), 3873, 4389, 5654; the morê that, 406 (ê C ? D); morê ? thrust, 406 D; ne morê desirede, 567 (ner morê D); nomorê com, 1515; for euere morê myn, 1915 (mo BC); euere morê whan, 4243 (mo BC); nomorê come, 6130 (nomor B, no morê ? C); euere morê lo, 4946 (cf. 2498 C).³

But,—more than, 1226 (ê C), 3289; morê that, 4493; morê thing, 539 (morê ýe C, mor ye D).

Rhyme words.—lore n. (647, 753, 1082, 2424, 6387), sore adv. (669, 753, 1082, 5380, 5488), adj. pl. (2424, 7036, 7716), soore inf. (669), of yore (5380 8097), restore inf. (6007), more adv. (7716), no more sbst. (8096). [Var. BD moore.]

¹ Supply [in] in A.
² We can avoid more in this verse, but only by reading alle louërs instead of allë louers.
³ I kan no more but, 4654, seems to be substantive.
Observations on the

192

lasse (A.S. Is&sse, neut. comp.},
1986 (las[se] D, lesse hire B)

284
1
;

Language
(lesse

lasse

86.

[

B; Ct), 651

hadde, 886; the

(lesse
lasse,

BD),
2928 f

CD), 5278 f, 5794 (the lesse C), 5971 (the lesse I), lasse B,
C); the lasse, 967 (the lesse, B, [the] lasse D).
Rhyme- words. masse missam (2928), passe inf. (2928, 5278).
derre (A.S. deorre, neut. comp.}, boughten they ... it derre, 136f
to ben presed derre, 174 f (: sterre).
(dere BD) (: wcrre n.) ;
(the les

lesse

2

deppere (A.S. dcoppor), 1570 (depter f B, depper D).

II.

ferther (A.S. furBor),

5689 (further

o.

f.

go,

3123

(-ere

D, further now B)

C, forther

BD)

no ferthere

;

3

out,

ferther-ouer,

;

5969

(forther

B, further D).
gladlyer (dissyl.),

(ii.)

8140

(-Her B, gladder D).

hyer (A.S. hea(h)or), 2671 (heighere B, hey^ere C, hier D).
1683
lengere, lenger, longere (A.S. leng) ; lengere, 1065 (langer B),
4
(neuere C, neuere (?) D), 2478, 2699 (D f), 3010, 3183, 3400 (-er
5

D), 6370, 7273, 7562 (cf. 5370 C (-er D?) ;
6
8029 (langer B) ; lengere
2707
2603,
lengere,
(line om. f C), 4870
here (hie), 4970 ; longere, 2327 (lengere C).
(In all the instances

B,

-ere

C,

-er aftir

,

so far cited, unless there
lenger,

lenger}.

B, more

C

(i.)

is

a note to the contrary,

5610 (nothyng

C, more

f

\

B

has longer,

D

D), 5852 (langer

t).

leuere vnwyst,

2594

(lever D).

rathere, rather (A.S.

hraSor),

cf.

(i.)

835, 865, 3221,

3415, 4825,

5186, 5256, 5589, 5701, 6410; (ii.) rathere, 5650 (-er BD)
here (hie), 6111 (-er BD) ; -ere anoon, 5102 (-er sterue B, -ere

;

-ere

C

s.

;

om. f D).
sonner, 1771 (sonere C).
For after (adv. and prep.) cf. 30, 1581, 2434, 4888, 5597, etc. for
Note.
for whidcr, whcder, cf.
heder, Mder, hyder, cf. 5594, 6022, 6849 f, 6977
for yonder, ycnder, cf. 2231 f, 3505 f,
3233, 4944, 5309, 6791, 6849 f
6928 (yende A), 6931, 7032, 7033 (for yonder as an adjective cf. that
yonder place, 6943 the yonder hill, 6973 pndir^ he, 2369 C (yend A,
7
jonde B, y.nd D )
ycnder $ /, 6975 D (yond A, $onde BC) ymdir is,
7525 C' ($ond is B, yond nys A, yonde nys D) 8 for outlier, outher (other
or, cf. 1501, 2433, 2436, 5193'; for other (= or), cf. 3665 A (or
;

;

;

;

;

;

;

;

.

.

.

BCD)
5926
cf.
1

This line

transpose
2

BC

lesse

;

for neyther (neither} . . . ne (nor), cf. 312, 1370, 3364, 5433,
for whether, cf. 425, 1398, 2237, 5673 ; forwher, where (
whether),

;

=

270, 2348, 2551 C, 2736, 2908, 3888, 5493, 5824, 6356.
is

best scanned

and

"And

ay gan lone hire

lasse for to agaste."

In B,

hire.
3

Supply \icol} in A.
This stanza is not in AB.
7 In A
blis[se]).
supply [ye].
8
In 6928 B for Bonder saugh ich (ycnder saugh D, jondyr say C, yende saugh A)
read yond saugh ich.
6936 B for Bonder so (-ir C, yonder D), read yond so (with A)
in 7521 C for $ondir sche, read yond sJte (-e D, $onde B).
For yond, cf. also 5685.
4

6

om. the.
Read may for make in A.
D ? (supply [in] and read

5

;


§ 87. The superlative adverbs best and most, when preceded by the definite article, may take an -ē after the analogy of adjectives (cf. Child, § 70; ten Brink, p. 137, Anm.).

The following are all the cases in which the is used with these superlatives in the Troilus:
the beste ynōrishéd, 7184 (best BD); the beste entēchēd, 7195 (best BD); [the] beste yprēysēd, 7836 (the beste C, the best D, the best [y]preysed B).
the most[ē] fre, 1073 (moost[ē] BD).

When no the precedes, the forms are best and most. Cf. for best (i.) (ii.) 47, 332 f (: lyst n., lest B, rest C), 718, 1001 (alderbest), 1322, 1914, 2481 f (: yf the lyste, lest B, lyst CD), 2515, 2667, 2697, 2758, 3196, 3208, 3454, 3901, 4107, 4494, 4822, 4951, 6752, 6792, 6995, 7137, 7145, 7440, 7630, 7677, 7793 f (: west : lest lubet), 8064. For most, cf. (i.) (ii.) 152, 230, 242, 720 f, 1332, 1748, 2235, 2453 f (: wost scēs), 2495 f (: wost), 3523, 4617, 4628, 4947, 5223, 5259 f (: ost : wost), 6283 f, 6955, 7067, 7426, 8120, 8143, 8210, etc.

Note 1.—In none of these cases is best or most preceded by the or by a demonstrative or possessive pronoun. In all of them A has the form best or most. Variants in -ē occur, but the -ē is never sounded (for most(e), cf. (i.) 1332 B, 2235 B, 5259 f D, 6283 f, etc.; for best(e) (i.) (ii.), see B in 1001, 2515, 2667, 3454, 4494, 7740, 7793 f).

Note 2.—For almost almost (A.S. cal- æl-mést), cf. (i.) (ii.) 1855, 2906 f, 2995, 3138 f, 5368.

Note 3.—Best and most excepted, no superlative adverbs take an -ē in the Troilus. Examples are (i.) (ii.) : first, first, first (cf. 381, 659, 1875, 4076, 4834, 6318, 6930, 6944, etc., etc.), var. BD first(e); last (cf. 7550 (-ē) B; D (?) )); erst (cf. 299, 842, 2425, 4389, 4512, 4518, 4525, 4830), var. BD arst; next, next, as adverb (cf. 2067, 3386, 4098, 4100), as preposition (cf. 399, 941 (9-syl.), 943, 944, 1729); lest (cf. 1925, 2236, 4110 1); strongest feythed, 1000 (strengthen B, strengthenest ficht C); see also alderfirst, alderlest, § 81.

§ 88. The following particles, of various formation, appear in the Troilus sometimes or always with an -ē (cf. Child, § 72).

In this list are thrown together, for convenience : (i.) particles in A.S. -an, -on, —aboute, aboven, -e, byforn, byefore, toforn, byhynden, -e,

1 Perhaps substantive in the accusative case.
Observations on the Language [§ 88.

bitwene, selde, sithen (etc.), withinne, withouten, -e; cf. aside, byside;
(ii.) particles in A.S. -a,—soone, yore; (iii.) inne, oute, out, thanne,
whanne; (iv.) nonthe (A.S. mā þþ); (v.) -mele (A.S. méllum); (vi.)
atwynne, yfere, bylye, bothe; (vii.) therfore, -for, wherfore, -for.
For down, adown, gruf, asunder, see notes at end of list. For by
weste, see § 85, note 5.

aboue, abowte (A.S. ymbútan, onbútan), 149 f., 268 f, 1819 f C
1904 f., 2478 f, 2556, 3523 f, 3950, 4692 ([-e] D), 5063 f, 5342 f,
5364 (C †), 5377 f, 5937 f, 6231 f (C †), 6448 f, 6463, 6763 f, 7483
(abouþe C †), 7657 f, 7814 f, 7859 f, 8008 f; -e, 2553 (-t D, -e
for C †), 4072, 6586; -e his, 3911, 4575 (D †), 6618, 7588,
7595; -e hym, 4562 (hym aboute alwey A, which transpose); -e her
(sing.), 3642 (-yn C), 5479 2, 5531 (-e (f) † B); aboue thin, thi,
863 (-t C), 7019; -é the, 4904; but,—abowte this, 3380 (-én B,
[-e] D, -yn his C).

Rhyme-words.—doute n. (149, 1819, 2478, 5063, 5937, 6231, 7657, 7814,
8008), route n. (268, 1904, 5063, 5342, 5377, 6448, 6763, 7859), denoute
(149), lowte inf. (3523), with-oute (268, 3523), stoute adj. pl. (7814,
7859).

abouen, aboue (A.S. on-bufan); aboue, 230 f, 3720 f, 3869 f, 7367 f,
8193 f, 8207 f; aboué euery, 6517 (-én B, -yn C, -e? D †); aboue,
3617 (vpon † C), 8182; aboué † thi, 3580 A 3; -é the goddes, 4930
(-yn goddis C); abouen, (ii.) 6341, 6561 (-é C, -yn D).

Rhyme words.—loue n. (all), shoue p.p. (3869).

aside, asyde (as if A.S. on sidan), -e, 291 (on syde D; C †), 5886 (om.
† C); -é his, 7290 (-é a BCD).

a-twynne (cf. O.N. tvinnr), 4508 f (a twyn D) (: bygynne inf.), 6276 f
(a-twyn C) (: wynne inf. : with-inne). (Cf. atwo, etc., 6893 f.)

blyue (A.S. bi liffe), 595 f (blyue B), 958 f (blyue B), 1222 f, 1293 f,
2622 f, 2690 f, 3067 f, 4836 f (blyue † C), 5157 f (blyf C), 6017 f,
6526 f, 6759 f (bliue B), 7912 f; b[e]lyue, 2598 f (belyue C,
blyue? D).

Rhyme-words.—thrue, thruye inf. (958, 1222, 1293, 2690), dryuye inf.
(2598, 2622, 3067, 5157, 6017, 6759, 7912), stryue inf. (4836, 6526,
7812), al my lyue (595), my lyue (1293), yn al his lyue (2622), his lyue
(6586), on lyue (1222, 5157), of lyue (2690), hyue n. (6017), fyue (6759).
[Var. D blive.]

bothe (bothen) ... and (O.N. báðir pron. ; cf. A.S. bá, bá-twá);
bothe thow and I, 711 (bothen B); bothe fals and foul is, 6746
([-e] B); so bothe ... and in 168 (D †), 7131 (-[e] B), 8077 (-[e]

1 Old-style figures indicate that D has about.
2 Supply [æl] in D.
3 BC have vpon, D has on (l. vpon).
4 In D read a[Æ]þ[o].
5 Expressing time.
§ 88. of Chaucer's Troilus.

B); bothe . . . and ¹, cf. 97, 130, 167, 264, 464, 1396, 1397, 5340, 5705; bothe he . . . and, 1718 (D†); bothe heroner and faukon, 5075 (both B, bothe † goshauk and C°): But,—As sayden bothe the meest and ek the leeste, 6803 BD (bothe meste = both the meste C, A om. ek); cf. 167 AB (-e C), 1862 † D, 2423 † D.—bothen worship and seruyse, 82 AB (bothe C; D †).

byforn, bifor (A.S. beforan), 221²f (afore C), 376f (byforme D), 1226f (byfor D), 2356f (before C), 3144f, 3917f (aforene C, byforn D), 4062f (biforne D), 5022f (afore C, biforme D), 5636f, 5755f (byfory: born A, biforn C), 5910f (byforc, biforn D), 6520f (byforme D), 6644f (biforme D), 7806f (byforc C, biforn D); b. withouten, 5646 (-forné B), 5663 (biforé B); b. oure, 5641; b. haue, 7485 (before BCD).


byfore, 5660f, 5701f, 6389f (to-bore B); byfore, 2051 (beforn C, byfor † he D), 3582 (byforme B, afore C, byfor D), 6120 (biforme B, to-forn C); be-foré certeinly (?), 5681 D (? byfor A, bifor B); byfore the, 1428 (bifore D); -e that, 5739 (-e the BD); -e to, 5639 (befor B, biforn D). [Var. BC bifore; CD before.] (Cf. 5755f A.)

byfor noon, 7485 (biforé C, before D).


byhynden, byhynde (A.S. be-hindan); byhynde, 1604f (-d D), 1724f (-d D), 2192f (-d D), 7174f.—byhyndēn othere, 179 (-yn C, [en] D).

Rhyme-words.—mynde (1604), fynde inf. (1724), pl. (2192), rynde n. (1724), bynde inf. (7174). [Var. (at end of line) C behyn, -hinde; D behinde, -hind, -hynd.]

byside, bysyde (A.S. be-sidan), 1161f (: gyde pres. subj. 2 sg.), 4623f (: ryde inf.); -e hirę (poss. sg.), 1819 A, 3464, (poss. pl.) 1819 B; -e hym, 7045 (-ę B⁴, -ę was D⁵); there be sỳdỳn schal, 3510 † C. [Var. C besyde; D beside.]


¹ Var. BD both . . . and.
² Old-style figures indicate that B has byforme or biforme.
³ squo A, sworne B, sworn D. ⁴ But supply [this] and read -e (elided).
⁵ But supply [him] and read -e (elided) (?).
Observations on the Language

Rhyme-words.—grene adj. sg. and pl. (1908, 2791, 6092), shene adj. def. sg. (1908), adj. pred. sg. (6092), shene adv. (4698), I wene pres. ind. (3343, 7449), queene (2791), contene inf. (3343). [Var. BC be-twene.]

inne 2 (A.S. inne), 387 f (in C, yn D), 821 f (yn D), 1091 f (yn D), 1936 f (in C, yn D), 1960 f (ther † yn D), 3499 f (in C, yn D), 3753 f (in C, yn D), 5422 f, 5568 f (in C), 5921 f, 5930 f; inne, 7882 (in D).


ther-inne (A.S. þé-r inne), 3537 f (-in D), 4474 f (-ynne D), 5447 f (-in CD); ther-yn but, 1354 (-in BCD).

Rhyme-words.—bygynne inf. (3537), vnynne inf. (3537), wynne inf. (4474), twynne inf. (5447).

mele (adverbial termination, A.S. -mælum, dat. pl. of mæl, mēl, n., m. (?)), stundëmele (A.S. stundmælum), 7037 (stormyal † C).

nowthe (A.S. nú þá), 978 f (nouthe CD, nought † B): youthe : kouthe posset.

Note.—Now is sometimes spelled nœce, even in A, but the -e is never pronounced (cf. 2357, 4674, 5691, 6993 f, 8101 f).

oute (A.S. úte, út, út of), But at the yaté there she shoulde outè ryde, 6395; the seynt is oute, 6916 f (out D) (: route n.); thow art oute, 7882 f (: doute n.); oute of, 3857 (out C, out † hym D), 4672 (out D); out of, 3894 (-e B).

out (adv.), before consonants, 1061, 4701, 4708 3, 4872 (-e D), 4874 (-e (?)) D), 4919 (-e BD), 6912 (-e D), 7733 (-e D).

thurgh-out, thurgh-out; t. a, 3443 (throw-out C ?); t. the, 4566 (thourout C); t. Troye, 5323 (thour-out C †).

selde (A.S. seld-, seldan), 1462 f (seld D) (: behelde pret. subj. 3 sg.);

seldè sêýnge, 5085 (perh. adj.); seelede, 1253 (selde B, selde seyn C, seldom seyn D).

sithen, sethen, sith, syn (A.S. sîn þám, siðsan, etc.).

I. In causal sense:

A almost always has syn. Thus, (i.) 520, 1665, 2144, 2953, 3108, 4324, 4954, 5215, 6859, etc. etc.; (ii.) 721, 1133, 1380, 1856, 3429, 4006, 4767, 5081, 5107, 5164. Other forms found in A are: sith, 4 (i.) 645, 696, 1345; (ii.) 598, 1380, 1524,

1 A has she[me].

2 Either pure adverb (as in this Diomede is inne), or prepositional (in such phrases as inf that I am inne).

3 Read brayn[es] in D.

4 That no rule can be formulated as to syn or sith according as th does not or doe, begin the following word may be seen by comparing 645 and 696 with 520, 2144, 2953, 3108, 4324, 6859.
1527, 3211; (before h) 1794, 3422; sithe, 719; sithen that, 934; sithen I, 720.

B, like A, commonly has *syn*. Other forms are: sith, (i.) 645, 696, 1665, 2144, 3256; sith, syth, (ii.) 598, 720, 1380, 1524, 1527, 3211; sith he, 1794, 3422; seth, (i.) 520; sen, (i.) 3993, 6859; seyn, (i.) 3980; (ii.) 4006; sithen thow, 934; sithen thende, 1345.2

C has usually *sythyn* or *sithe* before consonants (for sythe, sithe, before vowels, see 598, 1380, 1524, 1527, 4006). Other forms are: syn, (i.) 4319, 4954, 5057, 6859, etc.; (ii.) 5164; sith, (i.) 3422, 5171; (ii.) 3429; sith, (i.) 520; sithë, (i.) 960, 2953 †, 3256 †, 5231 †, 6717 † (cf. 1345); sythyn † thyn, 891; sythyn that (or sythyn that ?), 4971 †; sythyn al, 721.

D commonly reads *seth*. Thus,—(i.) 645, 696, 1665, 2144, etc., etc.; (ii.) 1524, 1527, 1856, etc.; before h, 1794, 3422.4 Other forms are: syn, (i.) 4971, 4975, 5057; (ii.) 5087; syn your, 4977; sen, (i.) 4954, 4994; sith, (i.) 520, 6909; sithë, 5146, 5171, 5215, 5254; sythë, 5174; sithë, 5107, 5164; sithë † we, 6887; sithen, (i.) 3980 †, 3993 †; (ii.) 4006; sithen † that, 4319, 6859; èn I, 5231.

II. Temporal (= *cum*):

sith that, 2354 (-c C, seth D), 4064 (syn they B, sithë they? C, sethen thei? D); sith I, 3627 (syn C, seth D).

III.

gon sithen longë while, 718 (-c C, seth? D); sithen honge, 833 (sythyn B, sethyn D, sythë † me C); sethen do, 3086 (sythë C, seth[c] D, sithen B †).

IV. Preposition:

sith that day, 2497 (seth the D; C †); syn mydnyght, 3444 (sen B, sin C, tul D).

soone, sone (A.S. sōna), 234 (-[c] B, C †), 524 f, 553, 1160 f, 1296 f (D †), 2376 f (soene B), 2395 f, 3185 (D (?) ), 3500 (-[ë to] B, -ë † for to D), 3515 f, 4376 f, 4548, 4551 f, 4727 f, 4812 (-[c] B), 5432 (C(?); -[c] B), 5455, 5743 f, 5789 f, 5838 f, 5922, 5935 (D †), 6074 (C(?); -[c] B), 6432 f, 6641 f, 6754 f, 6958 f, 7008 f, 7210 f, 7265 f, 7454 f, 7574 †, 7578 (D †), 7662 (-[c] B 8; D †), 7671 f, 8082

1 Read, *sith* [that] thow.
2 Read, *sith* the ende.
3 Dele [that].
4 Supply [that].
5 Supply [To].
6 Supply [in] in A.
7 Supply [for to] in A.
8 Or, *write* (pres. subj. 3 sg.) and soon sc.
Observations on the Language $^8$.

(cf. 1999, 5317 C †); soone, sone, 41, 1531 $^1$, 2693, 2951 $^2$ (D †), 3410 $^3$, 4309, 4358, 5938, 8204, etc., etc.; soon as, 2769 (-e CD);$^4$ soone he, 6657, 7595 † C; -e hope, 3794 (soon B, -e y D); soonē on, 7727 (-e vpon CD); soonē, sone, 2954 (soon B),$^5$ 4368 (-ē C e; D †), 8030 † A (-ū BCD).$^6$—eft soones, eft sones, 2553 (-ē † D, -ys † aboute? C), 2736 f (eftt sones C): (what to don is); eft-soone hym 4843 (-e hem C,-ēs hem B, wel † son e hym D.

Rhyme-words.—one, moone moon (524, 1160, 2395, 6641), to done (1160, 1296, 2876, 3515, 4376, 4551, 4727, 5789, 6432, 6641, 6754 f, 7008, 7210, 7265, 7454, 7671), bone boon (4727, 6958), trone (5743, 5883).

thanne, thenne, than (A.S. ponne), temporal and illative$^7$; thenne, 409 f BC (thanne A, than D †) (: brenne subj. 1 sg.), 1295 f (thanne C) (: henne adv.), 2638 f (than C, then D) (: renne inf.), 3471 f (than C, then D) (: henne adv.); thanne, 7790 f (than CD) (: whanne). Before consonants: (1) thenne, 865 (thanne B, than D; C †), 1052 A (than B, tho D); (2) then, 529 (than BD, thanne C), 803 (than BD, om. † C); (3) thanne, 849 (D †), 2000 (than B, tho C; D †), 2247 (than BD) (cf. 2510, 3048, 3474,$^8$ 4922, 5218, 5496, 5741); (4) than, 221 (thanne B), 349 (get † D), 2167 (thanne C) (cf. 2461 † D, 2710 † D, 2832, 3347, 5249, 5686, 5693). In the following instances thanne (temporal or illative) seems to have two syllables before a word beginning with a consonant,—498 ([ne] B, -ne † D), 2966 ([ne] B; D †), 7354 ([ne] BD); than[ne], 7652 (ne C); cf. 4585 † C, 5138 † C, 6622 † C. Before vowels: (1) thanne, 1489 (than D) (cf. 2973, 3158, 3255, 3346, 3485, 3718, 4845; (2) than, 874 (thanne BC) (cf. 1435, 1670, 2710, 3658, 3927). Before h: thanne he, 4313 † D, 4459 (than B), 4585 (than D, thanne † wolde he C); than haue ye, 1413 (thanne C); than hastow, 4945 (thanne C); thanne hastow, 5301 (than CD).

than = quam (A.S. ponne, pon), (i.) 532 (D †), 537, 614, 1226, 2471, 2671, 3014, 3289, 3415, 3873 (thanne B), 4065 (thanne B), 4825, 5050 (then B, than † is D), 5253, 5257 (C †); (ii.) 1425, 3988 (D †), 4497 (er † A); than he, 819, 3332 (thanne B, as C).

whanne, whan, when (A.S. hwonne); whanne, 2067 (when B, when D), 3874 (when B, when C, wher D †), 4001 (when B, when C), 5355 (when B, when CD) (cf. also, 71, 1002, 1237, 1672, 1689, 1849, 2095, 2255, 2386, 2577, 3445, 3925, 4001, 4257, 4665.

---

1 Read certayn for certainty in A.  
2 Old-style figures indicate that B has soon.  
3 Supply [to] in D.  
4 Supply [I] in B.  
5 Before that.  
6 Dele (forth) in A, and read soonē.  
7 In 2107 A, than = when (than CD, when B).  
8 Supply [I] in A.
§ 88.]
of Chaucer's Troilus.

4693, 4989, 5790, 5909).—whan (bef. cons'ts), 155, 1139 (when B), 2278 (when B), 3386 (when B, whi † C), 3513, 4071 (when B, whanne D), 4801 (cf. also 358, 545, 876, 914, 1369, 2107 (than A), 2185, 2209, 2569, 2669, 2805, 2825, 3036, 3044, 3294, 3418, 3450, 3985, 4043, 4076, 4237, 4243, 4423, 4521, 4624, 4915, 5207, 5482).—when (bef. cons'ts), 3195 (whan CD), 5249 (whan CD).

Before vowels both whanne (whenné) and whan (when) are found. Thus,—whanne, 85 (when B, when C †), 4239 (whan B, when E) (cf. 4270, 4321, 4755); whan, 1483 (when B; C †), 1868 (when B) (cf. 2000, 2471, 2474, 3074, 3437, 3698, 4668, 4811); whanne, 404 (whanne C, whens † D); when, 3083 (whan CD). Similarly before he, here (poss. sg.), hem: whanne 505 (when B, whan D) (cf. 1820, 2630, 5330); when he, 323 (when B) (cf. 750, 1731, 2941, 3907, 4080, 4634).

Note 1.—When is the usual form in B, whether before a vowel or a consonant; but whan also occurs in B (as, 155, 3513, 4239, 4801).

Note 2.—No good case of whanne (whenné) or whau[né] occurs in the interior of the verse. Apparent cases are to be corrected, usually by the insertion of that (cf. 196 AD, 351 AB, 545 C, 1880 A (D †); 2386 D, 3446 BD (C †); 3925 C, 4624 D (C †)). Whanne (whan CD) occurs once in rhyme, in 7791: thanne.

therfore, therfor (A.S. þær + A.S. fore)1; wherfore, wherfor.1—therfore, 5661 f, 5699 f (there- B); wherfore, 2496 f (where- C, wherfor D).

Before consonants,—therfore, 813 (-for B; C †; therfor † hym (?)) D), 855 (-for B) 2, cf. 5662, 7365, etc.; therfor, 17 (-ε B, om. † D), 574 (-ε C), 576 (-ε BC), etc.; wherfore, 430 (-for[ε] B, wherefor[ε] C, wherfor[ε] D).3 Before vowels,—therfore, 472 (there- B, therfor D †), 680 (-for BD), 761 (-for D †), cf. 133, 1385, 1480, 3180, 5467, 5702, etc.; therfor, 488 (-ε C), etc.; wherfore, 981 (wharfor B, therfore C, therfore D), 1100 (-for BD), 2423 (-for BD, wherefore C), cf. 3676; wher-fore † er, 3123 (-for BC, wherfor D) 4; cf. wherfor he, 311 (war for C).

Rhyme-words.—to-fore (-form A) (2496), byfore (5661, 5699), bore p.p. (2496), y-shore p.p. (5661).

to-form,5 to-fore (cf. by-form, by-fore); to-form, (i.) 1381 f (biforne B, before C, byforn D), 1042 (-ne B, -foré † D), 1516 (-ne B), 2448 (-foré C, -for D), 3177, 3691, 4481 f (-ne BC); (ii.) 2077 (-ne B,

1 These words are accented indifferently on the first or the second syllable.
2 In C supply [what]; in B read be[sc]ehe.
3 BCD omit [my] (not necessary to the sense) before lord.
4 But supply [wol] in A, and read wher-fore.
5 Commonest in the phrase God to-form.
Observations on the Language

§ 88.

-for D), 4168 (-ne B, -form [I] E), 7326 (-ne BD).—to-force, 2494 f

BCD (to-form † A), 5381 † f C, 6418 † f C.


whanne, whan. See after thanne, than.

wherfore, wherfor. See therifore.

with-inne ¹ (A.S. wið-innan), 1061 f (-yn D), 2462 f (-yn D), 2815 f (her yn D †), 3818 f (-yn D), 4206 f, 4620 f (-in C, -yn D), 6277 f (-in C), 7332, 8023 f; -e, 1108 (-yn D), 1167 (-yn D), 5940 (-in B, that † in C), 6075 (-in D), 7818, 7824 (-in D) (cf. 3443 D); -e here (sg. poss.), 1745 (-in BD), 1762 ² (-in D); -e his, 6837 (-in D) ³; -e hym, 7135 (with[in] C).—with-inne the, 267 (-in D), 305 (-yn D), 7544 (-e nyght BC); -e tho, 7096 (-e zoné C, -e yonder D); -e myn, 8060 (-in D).

Rhyme-words.—bygynne inf. (1061, 2462, 2815 (?), 3818), wynne inf. (1061, 2462, 4620, 6277), blynde inf. (4206), twynne inf. (8023), at-twynne adv. (6277).

Note.—The form in-with is found in in-with myn, 4341 (rixt † in D), and in-with here (poss. sg.), 7385 (with-inne CD); and this may perhaps be the right reading in some of the cases where the MSS. have with-inne or with-inne.

with-outen, -owten, wit-outen, ⁴ -owten ⁵ (A.S. wið-utan), (i.) 1714, ⁶ 1799, 1922, 2477, 3308, 3590, 3815, 4105, 5038 (-e C), 5162 (-e D), 5787 (-en(e) D), 6020 (C †), 6303, 7681 (-e CD), 8035 (-e C), etc. [Var. CD -yn.] (ii.) 1757, 3077, 3260, 4655, 5066, 5646, 5663 (-e D), 5733, 6255, 6258, 7127 (-e † wordis C), 7560, 8166. [Var. CD -yn.] with-outen awayte, 3421 (B †; -oute C; D †); -en answere, 5820 (-oute C); withouten his, 2365 (-yn C, -out D); -èn here (sing.), 5756 (-yn C); -èn ho, 2168 AB; -ën hond, 3030 (-yn CD).

with-oute, -owte, 270 f (-t D), 1321 (en B), 1696 f (-t D), 2506 (-en B, -yn C), 3076 (-en B, -yn C), 3526 f (-t D), 3587 f, 4703 (-en B) ⁷, 4795 (-en B, -yn C, without † (? D), 5257 (-en B), 5427 (-en B) ⁸, 6033 (-en BD, -yn C) ⁹, 6430 f, etc.; without[e], 1838 (-en B, -yn C, -out † (? D)); -é, 4827 (-en B, -out thassent D) ¹⁰, 7142 (-out B,

¹ Preposition in 267, 305, 1108, 1167, 1745, 1762, 3443 D, 5940, 6075, 6837, 7096, 7135, 7382, 7818, 7824, 8060.

² Here is dative in ABO (in all of which the line seems to consist of nine syllables), possessive in D. The line needs considering.

³ Supply [and] in C.

⁴ 6020.

⁵ 3590.

⁶ Old-style figures indicate that D has without (which, before consonants, makes the line short by one syllable in the cases in question).

⁷ without cny † D.

⁸ Dele (or slur) I in A.

⁹ Read where[with] in C.

¹⁰ Supply [ne] in AD.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

1 Supply [nat] in D.
2 Note.—It will be seen from the foregoing examples that our MSS. use without & without indifferently before a consonant, the reading often varying in the same line. Compare also the following cases, in all of which a consonant follows: (1) (A has -en) 361, 2 2490, 2563, 2586, 3332, 3541, 3998, 4150, 4200, 4583, 5362, 5389, 6363, 6385, 6419, 6900, 7214, 8038; (2) (A has -e) 1668, 2651, 2725, 2751, 2974, 4352, 4851, 5326, 6160, 6654, 6751, 7494, 8079. It is to be observed that all the instances of without, -en, cited are prepositions, except the four in which without (never -en) occurs at the end of a verse. These last are adverbs.

§ 89. To the list in § 88 may be appended: I. atwixen, -e, bytwyxen, -e, awaye, eke, often, -e, saue; II. there, where, and their varieties,—particles in which the form of the termination has been influenced by various analogies (cf. Child, § 72, b.).
Observations on the Language

atwixen, atwixe (cf. by-twyxen), atwixen noon, 6835 (attwixen B, betwixe CD); -e here (sg.), 5483. (See variants under bytwyxen.)

aweye (A.S. onweg, aweg), 1208 f (-y D), 2279 f (-y D †), 4977 f, 5019 f, 5544 f (-y A, to dey C, to deye D), 6456 f (-y D), 6820 f (-y CD).

[Var. BD awaye; C awoje.] awey, awai (i.), 572, 2600, 6263 f, 7431 f. [Var. C. awoy.] (Cf. 574 † C, 1195 † C, 1196 † C.)

Rhyme-words.—pleye inf. (1208), deye ind. 1 sg. (1208), seye inf. (5019, 5544, 6456), seye ind. 1 sg. (2279), tweye (2279, 4977 †), weye (6456), pley inf. (6820), keye n. (6820). —day (6263), way (7431), weylawe (7431), may 3 sg. (6263).

bytwext. See by-twyxen.

by-twyxen, by-twixen, bi-twixen, be-twixen (A.S. betwix, betweox, betwuxt), 417 B (betwehe C, bytwixe D, bytwenxe A), 585 (betwehe C), 2 1896 (-e C), 3096 B (betwixe C, bytwene A), 3248 betwixe (? C †), 4157 (betwixe C, betwyne B, bytwixe E), 7249 (atwixen B, betwixe CD); -en hope, 2392 (betwixe C), 6993 (atwixë C, betwen[e] D), 7570 (betwixe CD); -ën hem, 135 (betwixe C); bytwixen hem, 7219 (betwethe C, betwixe D); bytwixe vs, 5771 (betwixe C, bytwen D); bi-twixën Orcades, 7334 (betwixe C, betwen[e] D). [Var. B betwixen, bytwexen, betwixen.]

bytwext vs, 6165 (bytwixe B, atwixe C, bytwixe D).

ekte (A.S. éac, éc, cf. A.S. tó écan), 2761 f (ek C) (: byseche ind. 1 pl., bisahe B, besche B), 2918 f (ek C) (: besche inf., byseke BD, besek C), 4790 f (ek B) (: cheke n. : byseche inf., -seke BD, besche C), 6296 f (ek C) (: besche ind. 1 sg., besche BD); ek, 3571 f (ekte BCD) (: byseck ind. 1 sg., bisahe B, besche C, byseke D); ekë, 475 (ek C, echë D), 1720 (ek BC), 4226 AE (ek BC), etc.; ek, (i.) 32 (om. † D), 1827 (ekte D), etc.

ofte (A.S. oft), 135 f (-t D), 196 f, 212 (-en B, -e † D), 625 (-en C, -yn D), 912 f (-t D), 940 f, 1145 (om. † D), 2114 f, 2319 (-en B, -e (!) C, om. † D), 2406, 2466, 3127, 3286 f, 3511 f (-yn † C), 4091 f, 4361 (-e E), 4479 f, 4485 (ofto B, al day CD), 4799, 4876 ([e] B, ofte D), 5204 f (-t B), 5793 C, 5828 C, 5881 f, 6331 B, 6373 f, 6708 f, 6980 f (-t B), 7030 C (ofte a wold a = ofte wolde he D, ost A, oost B), 7945 (-t † and B); ofte tyme, 913 ([e] D), 1850 (-yn C), 1877, 3971 (-yn C; B †), 5823 ([e] B), 7939 ([e] B), 7946 ([e] B), 8121 ([e] B); oft[e] tyme, 7172 (-e CD); ofte, cf.

1 twayze(n) e A.
2 Old-style figures indicate that D reads by-twixe[e].
3 In D read des[e] perceave.
4 In D read Troy[e].
5 Old-style figures indicate that B and D have off[e].
6 Supply [hem] in C.
7 Variants of tyme not registered, see tyme, § 2, p. 3.
§ 89.

of Chaucer's Troilus.

203

344, 646, 740, 1782, 1876, 2419, 3168, 3903, 4561, 5164, 5166, 5400, 5828, 6037, 6351, 7052, 7078, 7589, 7685, 7931; ofte he, 506 (-t B, ofte D), 4579,² 6100 (-t B, -e † pitously c, -e † ful D), 6969 (-t B); -e his, 445, 2343 (eft † C), 3976 (-t B), 4625 (-t B; D †); ofté hastow, 904 (-en B, -[e] C); ofte, 346 (-t BD), 137 † A (-t † (l) D), 139 † A, 4395 † D, 5828 D (cf. 3171 † D, 4561 † D); ofté tymë, 5986 (oft B, oftyn † there C, ofte ther D).

Rhyme-words.—softe adj. and adv. (135, 196, 912, 940, 2114, 3286, 3511, 4091, 4479, 5204, 5881, 6708, 6980), on loftë, a-lofte, o loftë (135, 940, 3511, 5881, 6733, 6708).

often as, 3143 (-t D); -en here-byforn, 3144; -en here (came), 5387 (-[en] B, -ë D; C †); -en harme, 333 (-ë C, -[ë] D).—often for, 2331 (-e C, -[e] D); -en myght[e], 3351 (-[ë] † (l) D; C †); -en peyne, 4058 (-e CD, oft † peynës (!? B)); -en gan, 5024 (oftte D, soft † B); -en was, 7465 (-[e] B, -e CD); -en seyde, 583 (-e C, -[e] D) (cf. 625); -en se, 4056 (-[e] B); oftyn † tymë, 6833 Cë; oftyn as, 3168 C. (Cf. 1876 † C, 2419 † C.) [Var. CD -yn.]

saue (O. Fr. sauf), -e, 395 (-ë † that (? D), 1241 (D ?), 1825, 3351 (C †, D †), 3632, 3729 (saf D), 4617, 4754, 7040, 8167, 8168; -e here (poss. sg.), 7176 (saf C); -e his, 1710 (saf C) ¹ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶, 6573; saue Troylus, 2489. Cf. Myn honour sauf I wol, etc., 3001 (sauny † C, savë † I D).

here (=hie) (A.S. hér), 121 f, 292 f, 399 f, 1124 f, 1183 f (heere B), 1252 f (her D), 1337 f, 1577 f, 1680 f, 2058 f, 2189 f, 2714 f, 2729 f, 2836 f, 3355 f, 3483 f, 3489 f, 3661 f, 3678 f, 3790 f, 4053 f, 4149 f, 4690 f (heere B), 4970 f, 5102 f, 5205 f, 5558 f (heere B), 5582 f (heere B, her D), 5865 f (yfere † A, her D), 5870 † C, 5976 f, 5993 f (her D), 6212 f (her D), 6297 f (her D), 6829 f BCD (there † A), 7108 f (her D), 7361 f (her D), 7538 f. [1281 f D † (see there), 4990 f D † (see there).]⁵

Rhyme-words.—chere n. (121, 292, 1124, 3483, 6297), manere (252, 1124, 3678, 5582), materë (1577, 2714, 3355, 4149, 7108, 7361), preyere (3483, 6297), here inf. (121, 399, 2189, 2714, 2836, 5205, 6529), yhere inf. (5976), lere inf. (2729, 5102), ye me lere inve. or subj. (1183), yfere adv. (1252, 3355, 3661, 4690, 5856, 5870 † C, 5993), dere adv. sg. (1337, 1577, 1680, 2058, 2189, 3489 (dredé † A), 3790, 4053, 4149, 4970, 5205, 5558, 5587 † C, 5976, 6829), clere adj. sg. and pl. (6212, 7361), of fern[e] yere (7538).

¹ In most of these cases B reads oft; so sometimes D, and once, at least, C (7931).
² Old-style figures indicate that BD have oft (for ofte).
³ In D read [y]dred.
⁴ In D supply [ful].
⁵ For the rhymes of these two lines see under there.
Observations on the Language

Before consonants here apocopes its -e, which, however, is regularly written except sometimes in D. For herë (var. B heere; D her), cf. 868, 1054, 1096 (A †), 1115, 1188, 1282, 1409, 1462, 1515, 1728, 2076, 2208 (hire B), 2338, 2815 (D †), 3235, 3953, 4303 (hire C), 4844, 4902, 5139. Cf. also, here byiforn, 2356 f, 5910 f (there C, her D); herë-to, 3362 B (herto CD, herë † myghte A); hertô, 5734 f BD (thertô A); here with al, 6441 CD (ther-with-al AB). For here, cf. 432, 1406, 1525, 1569, 2405, 2688, 2814, 2990, 3341, 3476; for here in compounds (here after, and the like), cf. 938, 3377, 3515, 4805; for her in such compounds (the second member beginning with a vowel), cf. 984, 1094 D, 1193, 3407; for here before his, hym, hawe, cf. 469, 1544, 4415 A.

Instances of herë in the body of a verse are at any rate very rare. The strongest case is: “Intendezow that we shul here bleue,” 6841 AB (but: here beleue C, her be-leue D) where here is emphatic (or at any rate has the ictus). In the following apparent cases comparison of MSS. shows a better reading: 3362 A (l. here-to), 5594 A (l. hyder), 6826 C.

there (A.S. per, pér), 1281 f (thare B, here D), 2095 f, 3366 f (thar B), 3411 f, 3428 f, 3469 f, 3593 f, 4162 f, 4990 f (here D), 5305 f (ther D), 5359 f (ther D), 6024 f (ther D), 6146 f (theere B), 6186 f (ther D), 6829 f † (here BCD) ³, 7242 f (ther D), 7273 f (ther D), 7543 f (ther D), 7721 f (ther D).

Rhyme-words.—ere, eere n. (1281, 3593, 5305), gere n. (2095, 6186), were ind. 2 sg. (1162), ind. 3 pl. (3428, 3469, 7543), subj. 1 sg. (4990), subj. 3 sg. (2095, 3366, 3411, 5305, 6024, 7242, 7721), ere n. (3411, 3428, 3469, 3593, 4162, 6024, 7273), fere inf. (6146), ellys where (5359, 6186), tere n. (7242, 7543).

there, 3993 (ther BD); cf. 4049, 4198, 4227, 4368, 4570, 4658, 5111, 5760, 5761, 6022, 7033, 7455, etc.—ther, (i.) 4483 (-e C), 5606 (-e BC), 5614 (-e D); cf. 5505, 5630, 5649, 5685, 5843, 5859, 6021, 6156, 6308, 6316, 6509, 6532, 7085, 7609, etc.; ter mot, 5698 A (ther BD).

In compounds before consonants: thërby, 447 (tharby B); therby, 383 f, 5682 f; thërfore, 472 (there-fore B, therfor D †); thërfore, 133 (therfor D); cf. for further examples, 17, 243, 247, 266, 274, 488, 574, 576, 627 f, 680, 761, 813, 855, 1161, 1251 f, 1385, 1434, 1480, 1576, 2094, 2137, 2935, 3180, 3378, 4232, 5467, 5662, 5702, 5734 f, 7365, etc., etc.

1 See also § 88, under byforn.
2 Cp. John's appear to agree with A, but III. 2392 has beleue.
3 For the rhymes see under here, which is the right reading.
there, 273 (ther BD); cf. 892, 1960, 2604 (thare B), 3247, 3406, 3415, 3510, 4902, 5048, etc.; ther, (ii.) 5243 AB (ther but D; C †) (cf. 7541).—there he, 1282 (thar B, that † C) (cf. 1418); there have (pres. ind. 2 pl.), 3042 (ther B); ther helpeth, 5962 (-e CD). In compounds in which the second member begins with a vowel ther is usual: thus, ther-after, 5208; ther-inne, 5447 f (therin CD); cf. 333, 1354, 1454, 1703, 2282, 4474 f; there-vp-on, 4805 C.

The strongest cases of dissyllabic therē are: That he cam therē || and that he was born, 3915 (ther[e] B, therē or CD) ², and And ther[e] lat vs spaken of oure wo, 5906 (therē C).³ In 604 † C, 3420 A (l. therof), 5357 C (l. thennes), 6737 C (l. therof), comparison of MSS. affords a corrected reading.

Note.—ner (= *no ther †) occurs in 1262 A, but is perhaps merely a slip of the pen for per.

where (A.S. hwēr, hwēr), 4239 f (whare B), 6582 f (wher D); euery where, 4724 f; ony where, 3534 f; ellys where, elles where, 5360 f (ellis wher D), 6183 f (ellis wher D), 7407 f (elles wher D).

Rhyme-words.—feere n. (4239), ere n. (4724), gre n. (6183), tere n. (6582, 7407), were ind. 3 pl. (3534, 4239, 6582), subj. 3 sg. (5360), there (5360, 6183).

wher, (i.) 357 (-e [that] C), 1880 (-e C) (cf. 1291 A, 3874 † D, 5795); no where, 4302 (no wher B, nower C, nowhere † D); and in compounds of wher in which the second member begins with a consonant (as, wher-so, wherby, wherfor), cf. 311 (wherfor A, war for C), 409 (where-to B), 430, 436, 981, 1100, 1387 f, 2423, 2496 f, 3123 (A ?), 3620, 3676, 5774 (whar-with B).

where, 3501 (whare C, wher D); wyde where, 3246 (wher CD); wher, (ii.) 1164 (-e B); where as, 1357 C (wher D, there A, ther B); wher as, 3358 BD (-e C, there A). In composition (wher-on, etc.): wher-ôn, 1776; where-of, 4489 (wherof BCD).—where he, 1285 (wher BD); wher he, 1461 (-e BC), 2236 (-e C); wher hym, 1291 BD (-e C, wher that A), 2034 (-e C); where hastow, 5158 (wher BD); wher hastow, 276 (-e BC); no wher hool, 954.

There are no cases of where. All apparent cases yield to comparison of MSS., as in 357 C (where † hem), 1291 C (where hym), 1932 A, 4302 D.

Note.—From a comparison of the rhyme-lists to here, there, and where (which are complete), it will be seen that these fall into two classes which do not cross: (a) rhymes to here and (b) rhymes to there, where. A

1 Seems to be a 9-syl. verse.
2 But the reading of Cp. is certainly right: therē || and that that.
3 No note in Mr. Austin's collation.
striking instance of the difference in the sound of (a) and (b) is shown by 6581-5, where, the order of rhymes being ababb, the rhyme-words are: dere, where, clere, were (erant), lere (n.).

§ 90. **Ever** and **never** (A.S. ðfre, nêfre) are (as a rule) dissyllabic before consonants and monosyllabic before vowels and weak h.

The usual spelling, whether before vowels or consonants, is *euere, neure* in ABC (and so often in D); but *ever* and *never* are not uncommon in BD, and *ever* is found in C 3605, *neuer* in A 2843, C 1362.

For the spelling *ever*, see B, 9, 418, 2299, 2494, 2681, 4243, 4268, 5772, 6785, 7892; for *neuer*, see B 294, 501, 554, 675, 910, 970, 3199. There are some petty variants: as, *nevir* (4942 D), *euere* (7992 C), *cweyr* (6025 D).

I. Before consonants both words are regularly dissyllabic: cf. for *euere*, 418, 584, 638, 1151, 1465, 1864, 1915, 1925, 1958, 2117, 2656, 3086, 3121, 3354, 3473, 3519, 3556, 3653, 4021, 4243, 4268, 4440, 4603, 4681, 4942, 4946, 4966, 5049, 5161, 5179, 5772, 5984, 6082, 6126, 6387, 6405, 6593, 6781, 7026, 7181, 7418, 7502, 7691, 7719, 7892, 8096.

For *neuere*, cf. 37, 294, 534, 539, 586, 639, 641, 675, 774, 910, 959, 1219, 1228, 1386, 1653, 1671, 1813, 2316, 2354, 2498, 2545, 2692, 2968, 3093, 3199, 3229, 3331, 3409, 3427, 3626, 3706, 3711, 3712, 3717, 4088, 4503, 4550, 4869, 4961, 5002, 5059, 5135, 5521, 5858, 5862, 6022, 6142, 6486, 6788, 7139, 7143, 7187, 7238, 7341, 7724, 8045. So before consonant *y* in the phrases *euere* yet, *neuere* yet: cf., for *euere* yet, 1325, 2080, 3135 AB, 7123; for *neuere* yet, cf. 657, 812, 1278, 1916, 3161, 3548, 3682, 3896, 4288, 4447, 7991.

II. Before a vowel both words are regularly reduced to one syllable by slurring: cf., for *euere*, 9, 318, 513, 541, 816, 1290, 1633, 2229, 2238, 2299, 2494, 2681, 4685, 5749, 6025, 6264, 6306, 6785, 6814, 7119, 7439, 7745, 8224. For *neuere*, cf. 501, 622, 1329, 1362, 1522, 1574, 1643, 2183, 3000, 3236, 3550, 3605 (neuere thoughte A), 4356, 4375, 5250, 6243, 6518, 6804, 7198.

III. Before he and his the same slurs take place as before a vowel: cf., for *euere*, 541 † C, 2958, 5095, 6799 (C †), 7136, 7534; for *neuere*, cf. 1946, 4188.

But before other h's, the dissyllabic pronunciation seems to be the rule: thus, *euere* haue (*subj.* I sg.), 1225 (euêr B); *neuere* han (*inf.*), 3414 BC (neuere the AD); cuêre help, 1040 D †; neuêre
how, 2954 ; 1 neuère half, 4492 ; neuère herte, 7746 AC (-er D).
Cf., however, neuère haue (inf.), 6104 AB (neuère haue C, -er D f) ;
neuère han (inf.), 900 B (neuère a A ; C f).

Note 1. The only case of ever or never in rhyme is 7442 4, — neuere, 7742 f
(-er D) ; euere, 7444 f (-er D).

Note 2. — The following lines in which there are various readings (some
MSS. following the word with a vowel, others with a consonant), may
be compared, but are of little utility (presenting no instances which
transgress the general rule, except for a manifest corruption or two) : (1)
for euere, cf. 296, 787, 1205, 5461, 6807, 7003, 7305 ; (2) for neuere, cf.
1755, 3605, 5101, 6317, 6528, 6811.

The rule, then, is clear enough. Euere and neuere are disyllabic
before consonants; monosyllabic before vowels. This is the enun-
ciated (as to euer) by ten Brink, Compleynete to Pite, p. 176, n. to
v. 33, who indeed makes it so stringent that he changes euer to ay
in that verse. It seems doubtful, however, if the present state of
our knowledge allows us to emend in this way (and this is admitted
by ten Brink, Ch’s. Spr. u. Versk., § 263). The Troilus contains
some cases which seem to show that Chaucer allowed both euere and
neuere to count for a single syllable before consonants. I give the
sure, or tolerably sure, cases first :

Quod Troylus for al that euere ye konne, 776.
To ben hire helpe yn al that euere they myghten, 2709 (om. f D).
As euere she was shal I fynde yn som route, 5065 (As she euyr was D).
She wolde come as soone as euere she myghte, 6874 (ener D).
Nas neuere yet thing seyn to ben presed derre, 174 (B f ; -er C, -ere g
seyn D).
So hyd it wel I telle it neuere to mo, 613 (neuer D).
Were hise nayles poyned neuere so sharpe, 2119.
Now goode nece be it neuere so lyte, 2258 (-er B).
For she was wys and louned hym neuere the lasse (not = natheles), 2928
(neuer C ; D f).
To knowe of this ye were it neuere so lite, 7653 (D om. ye ; neuer D).
Cf. Be she neuere so faire or (ne so C) wel ishape (schape C), 3253 (no note
in Austin).

Cases that are easily emended by comparison of MSS. are : (1) for
euere, 897 BC, 3316 BD, 4620 C, 7420 C ; (2) for neuere, 739
BC (but perh. BC are right), 883 C, 1655 A, 2461 D, 7056 A,
7356 C, 7791 C ; and some cases of neuere the lès in C (as, 170 C,
750 C, 916 C) where natheles is the correct reading. Very doubtful
is 1144 ; and one does not like to dogmatize on 3253 or 4406.

Such of the above cases as are certain (for it will be observed that
emendation to ay is impossible in the four cases 776, 2709, 5065,
6874, and no emendation for neuere can be devised) seem sufficient
to show that ten Brink’s rule is not rigid.

1 That is, if we read sone (soon B) that. If we read sonë that, we have neuere
how.
On the other hand in a few cases the dissyllabic forms are found before vowels. Thus,—

God helpe me so I neuer other mente, 1449.
Fro this forth shal I neuer eten bred, 1529.
And neuer other creaturé serue, 5110 (neuer D).
The obseruaunce euere yn youre absence, 5445 (C +, euér D).
Less secure are 897 AD, 4763 BD ¹; and certainly to be emended (as comparison of MSS. easily allows) are 3103 D, 3146 C, 6816 C.²
Similarly euere his, 6799 C + and neuer his, 4181 C +, are to be corrected.

Note 3.—Such monstrosities as euere and neueré, sometimes perpetrated by this or that scribe, mean nothing, of course, and are easily corrected by comparison of MSS. (cf. e.g. the various readings in 2525, 2623, 3234).

§ 91. The following particles end in the Troilus sometimes or always in -es, -s (Child, § 73). This is sometimes an A.S. -es, sometimes a formation by analogy.

(i.) ayens (ayeyns, ayen, agayn, afornyeyn), elles, nedes, to medes, towards (etc.), vnethes;
(ii.) hennes (hene, hens), thennes, whennes;
(iii.) ones (vones), twyes, thries (thrie);
(iv.) alweyes (alweys, alwey), other weyes, amonges (among), togederes (to-gedrés);
(v.) algates (algate), ascaunces, certes. In the following list the examples cited occur before a consonant (not k) unless there is a note to the contrary.

afornyeyn (A.S. foran, on-gegnes), afor yeyn vs, 2273 (a-for-zeynes B, aforn [ ] C, aforyns D). (Cf. byforn.)
algates (cf. O.N. alla gotu, adverbial acc.), algatës hem, 2866 (-is D);
algatë, 2049 (-e D); 2754 CD, 7434.
alweyés, (cf. A.S. ealne weg, adverbial acc.), alweyës arise, 2754 A (alwayës B, algate CD); alweyës a, 6415 (alweyës B, alwoyë C, ah-woey D). (Cf. weyes.)
alwey, (i.) 782, 1403 (D †);³ 1468 (-e C, -e D), 3084, 4477, 4942 CD (euëre AB), 6503; alwey here (hic), 3661 AB (cf. 1818 † B);
alwey, (ii.) 1122, 1803. alwey (i.), 1847, 2437 B (A? C?; alwey C; D †), 5618 f; alwey hym, 2169 (alwey D †). [Var. B alway; C alwoy; D alwey.] (Cf. alwey, 6288 f C †; alwoy † his, 3328 C.)
amonges (A.S. ongemang, onmaneg), (i.) 7835 (omanges B, among[e] C); (ii.) 893 (amangë B, among[e] C, among D †), 2260 (-e B, -is C, [is] D), 3700 (-is CD), 6614 (omanges B, amongis C, amongë D); among[e] al, 4765 AD (-e B).
among, 1970 f (-e B) (: song n. (-e BC)), 3110, 3702 (-e B), 4658 f

¹ Where A seems to have two light syllables before the caesura : neuéré || ylf.
² So probably 7807 A. In 3327 read euere ylyk[e].
³ Supply [his] in C.
(§ 91.) of Chaucer's Troilus. 209

(: song n. (-e B)), 4727 (omane B), 6148 (omane B, amone D), 7051 (-e D, omange B), 7944 (-e D, omange B); among (before vowels), 6488 (-e D, amang B, amongis C), 7911 (-e D, amange B); among his, 5037 (amang B); among him, 5359 (-e D, amange B, amongis C).

ascaunces (etym. dub.), 205 (ascauanis C, askauns D), 292 (aschaunis C, askauns D).

ayens, ayen, agayn, 9-syl. 1

I. As preposition:

(a) Before consonants,—(1) ayens, 603,5 1316 (a3enis B, ayen D), 1561 (a3eyn B, azin C), 2142 (a3eyn B). [Var. B azeins; CD azens.] (2) ayeyns, 3831 (a3enis B, azenys (? C ǂ, ayens (?) D ǂ). (3) ayen, 2005 (a3ein B, azin CD), 5029 (a3ein B, azin C, aynst D). Cf. here ayens, 2465 (a3enis B, azen C).

(b) Before vowels,—ayen, 4837 (a3eeyn B, azin C); ayeyns, 2499 (a3eins B, azens C, ays D); aforn yeyn vs, 2273 (a-forzeeynes B, aforn ǂ C, a forynes D). Cf. ther ayenís, 1454 (a3eyn B, azin C, ayens D). 6

(c) Before h,—agayns his, 4362 (a3eeyns B, azin C, azen D); ayen hire (poss. sg.), 5175 (a3eeyns B, azin C).

II. As adverb.

(i.) ayen, 1476 (certeyn ǂ B), 1606,7 1694, 3061 f, 4425, 6972 (ayen ǂ D), 7277, 7964 8 (cf. 5980 f, 6588 f, 6848 f, 7373 f, 7493 f, 7661 f); agayn, 3495 f (-e BC, ayen D), 5665 f (agayne D); ayen, 7360 f (a3eynnen B, a3eyn C, ayen D). (ii.) ayen his, 280; agayn hym, 1533 B (ayen D; hym ᗈagayn by A 9). [Var. B a3eyn, a3ein; C a3eyn, a3eyn, a3eyne, a3ein, azin, a3yn, azin; D azen.] ayenward, 3592 (a3eeynward B, a3yn C), 6243 (a3in C, a3eynward B, om. ǂ D).


certes (O. Fr. certes), (i.) 572, 773 (D ǂ), 1618, 4108 f (: desertes pl.), 4138, 5652, 5687; (ii.) 3651, 4320. [Var. BC certys; CD certis; C certis, sertys.]

1 Supply [the] in D. 2 Supply [what] in C.

3 If the reading of D were to be kept, both these lines would consist of nine syllables, and we should have to accent askauns.

4 In 292 ascuaunces translates Boccaccio's quasi dicesse.

5 Perhaps 9-syl. Supply [the] in C.

6 9-syl.

7 Supply [now] in CD.

8 Supply [ne] in ACD.

9 Transpose, and read agayn.
elies, ellys, ellis (A.S. elles), (i.) (ii.) 345, 1 688, 728, 948, 972, 1564, 1660, 2160, 2237, 2 7755, 3 3408, 3433, 3661, 3811 (D t), 3933, 4 3996, 4183, 4186 (om. t; C), 4204, 5 4268, 6 4353 (C t?), 4622 (om. t D), 5085, 5718, 5729, 7 5931, 7 7740 f (cf. 1501 C t, 5992, 5999, 6418, 6 7011, 7033, 7067, 7407, 7519, 7664, 7844, 8160). [Var. C eH (= ellis).]—elies-where, ellys-where, ellis-where, 5360 f, 6138 f, 7612, 7681. [Var. C eH (= ellis).]

Rhyme-words.—wellys pl. (7740), hellie ys (7740).

Note. I do not think a good case of elles (monosyllable) occurs (cf. 371, 3517 D, 4268 E, 4353 C).

hennes, henne (A.S. heonon, L.W.S. heonone); hennes, 4679 (nis D), 7624 (henys t C, hens t D); hen[ne]s, 3009, 6766, 6970, 7016 (hens t (? D), 7254 (henne D), 7258, 8080 (leaf gone in C) 8; hen[ne]s hye, 6852 (hennes B, henys C) 9; hens away, 572 (henne B, hene C); hens (before consonants), 574 t D, 4267 A t (hennes B, henys C, hen[ne]s E), 7220 t D (L. he).—henne, 1294 f (thenne), 3472 f (hende t B, hen CD) (: thenne), 5908 f (: brenne inf.).

medes, in to medes (A.S. tó médes, Siev. § 320), Myself to medes wole the lettre sowe, 2286 (My sullen t the medis C, My self t the medis D).

nedes, nede (A.S. néde, niéde, nédés, niédés); nedes, 1524 (nede C), 3458 (nedés (? A), 4004, 4362, 4551 (D t), 6015, 6681 (C t D t), 7715, 10 8025, cf. 5277 t C. [Var. CD nedis.]—nede, 1756 f (: drede n.); nede, 4129 (nedís C), 6261 (C t; nédés t D).

nones. See ones.

ones, onys (A.S. øne, Pet. Chron. ònes), 472 (D t), 549 11 (om. t D), 12 792, 2742, 4429, 4499 (D t), 6129, 6933, 6934, 7402; onys haue, 1566 13;—at ones, at onys, 90 f, 804 f 2024 f, 2468 f, 2708 (D t), 14 3192 (çs t thei D), 4845 f, 5503 f, 6404 (D t), 6406; at ones er, 2961 (ys or CD). [Var. BD onones; CD onis; B atoneses.]

Rhyme-words.—bones pl. (90, 804), stones pl. (2024, 2463), the nones, nonys (2468, 4845), non is (5508).

for the nones, nonys, 561, 2466 f, 4847 f, 5090. [Var. B nones.]

other weyes. See weyes.

thennes (A.S. ðanon), 3987 (thenë C, thennë D), 5396 (then[ne]s CD);
then[ne]s, 5357 (tennes B, therë † B, thense disyl. D), 6924 (tennes B), 7034 (thenes B, thenys C), 7143 (thenes B), 7248 (thenes B, thens † D), 8177 (thenes B). [then[ne]s † wolde he, 6839 C.] thriës, thrie, thrye (A.S. þríwa); thries hadde, 6372 (cf. 2484 † D); thrie, thrye, 1174 f (thrye D), 1548 f (thrye B), 2370 f.

Rhyme-words.—companye (1174), inpartie (1548), folye (2370), yn hye (1174), lye mentiour (2370).

togedëres, togedre (A.S. æþ-, tó-gëdëre), togedëres euere, 5984 (-giderë B, -gedir D, -gedere d[w]elle C); to-gedre¹ so, (to-giderë B, to-gedere C, to-gider D).²

to medes. See medes.

towàrdës (A.S. tó-weardës), etc.; towarde, (i.) 523³; (ii.) t. hire, 2307; t. hym, 6080. [Var. BCD towàrdis; C -ys.] towàrd, (i.) 5017 (-é BD), 6054 (-è B, -ës D; C †), 7004 (-è B); to Troyëwàrdës and, 59 (troyëc wardis D); to meward shal, 6328 (-è BD).—thëder-wàrdës † gan, 2335 (thiderward B, thedirward C, thidirward D)⁴; cf. whëdirwàrdës, 4944 D (wheder A, whedir(e) B, wheyr C); vpwàrdës † at, 3047 D; her-àftirwàrdës † for, 984 D (her afterward A, here afterward B, here afterward C), cf. 6193, 7291.⁵

Note.—Other words in -ward⁶ are: ayënwàrd, 3592, 5639, 6243; bakward(e), 6215; downtowàrd, 1991, 2790, 6211; stdward, 4261 BE, 6640; hómwàrd, 2888, 3463, 6845, 7545; inwàrd, 2310, 2817; outwàrd, 2789; vpwàrd, 2913, 3047, 5821, 7471, 7723.

twyës (A.S. twìwa, Chron. 1120 twiges), 2484 (thriës † D), 2940 (D †), 6460 (twiis C),⁷ 6760 (twyë B), 7252. [Var. BCD twiès; B twyës; C twiës, twyis.]

vånethes, vånethes (A.S. unëc[ø]e), 301 (-è (?) C, -ïs D),⁸ 1651 (-ïs D, onnethis C), 4911 (-é C, -ïs D). (Cf. vënethe, § 82.)

-wàrdës, -ward. See to-wàrdës.

wëyes. He feleth other wëyes dar I lëye, 4500 (otherë wayes B, otherë woyis C, other-wïse D). (Cf. alwayes, algates.)

whënnes (A.S. lîwanon), 408 (whenys C †, when[ne]s D); when[ne]s, 402 (whennes B, whynys C, when[ne]s D).⁹—whenë † every, 404 D (whenne AB, whanne C).

¹ Dissyllable.
² Supply [mc] or [I] in D.
³ Read [A][æ][ø] in D.
⁴ Read soft[ë]ly in A; dele (he) in D.
⁵ Afterward † rox, 4261 A (afterward † C, stdward BE).
⁶ Variants not noted, but no MS. has -ës, -ïs, in the cases cited. In some MSS., however, -ë is at times written, though never sounded. In this note no distinction is made as to whether vowel or consonant follows.
⁷ Dele (he) in B. In C, dele (be-) and (è); then read twëis.
⁸ Supply [hou] in C. ("A later to stuck in." Furnivall.)
⁹ In both 402 and 408 we may reduce whennes to one syllable by reading comëth instead of comet.
VERBS.
§ 92. Present Indicative.—The First Person Singular of the Present Indicative ends regularly in -e (Child, § 48; ten Brink, § 184). Thus,—
I. In rhyme:
besche, byseche, 855 f (be[se]che B) (: leche n.), 2505 f (: speche);
cf. 1331 f, 3235 f, 3597 f, 4178 f, 5116 f, 6749 f, 7492 f, 7972 f;
be[se]che, 5811 f (biseche B, besche C, besche D) (: speche);
beseche, 6294 f (beseke BD) (: eke adv.); bysek[e], 3573 f (biseke
defende, 2818 f (: amende subj. 3 sg.: sende pret. ind. 3 sg.).
defyne, 5052 f (: ruyne n. : deuyne inf.).
desire, 6954 f (: ire).
deuys, 3277 f (: seruyse), 4921 f (: suffise inf.).
directe, 8219 f (: corecte inf.).
dye, 420 f (dye AC) (: maladye); cf. til I dye, 5061 f (dye C, dey
D) (: eye); til that I dye, 6319 f (dye BC, dey D) (: ywrye p.p.:
eye); cf. also 4449 f, 5106 f.
gesse, 989 f (: goodnesse : wikkednesse), 1803 f (: dronkënesse :
distresse).
grete (A.S. grétan), 4100 f (: the swete : planete).
herye, 3793 f (herie CD) (: merye pred. pl.).
hope, 932 f (: drope n.).
leue (credo), 993 f (: greue inf.), 4743 f (: achehe inf. : leue adj. pl.).
leye, 1046 f (ley D) (: seye inf.).
loue, 927 f (: loue n.), 1935 f (: loue n.).
lye (mention), 2368 f (: thrye : folye); cf. 1385 f (: eye).
mene, 1666 f (: clene pred. sg.).
metye (A.S. métau), 4186 f (: swete voc.).
pase, 5467 f (pase C) (: deface inf.).
recomaunde, 7777 f (: comaunde inf.).
rede (lego), 159 f (: mede pratum : rede adj. pl.).
rede (moneo), 258 f (: lede inf.).
requere, 1443 f (-ire CD) (: chere n.).
resigne, 432 f (resyne C) (: digne : benygne).
sacrefise, 6786 f (: aryse inf.).
sayle, 7004 f (: bewayle inf. : fayle subj. 1. sg.).
serye, 15 f (: sterye inf.), 3555 f (: til I sterye).
§ 92. of Chaucer's Troilus.

I. of Chaucer's Troilus.

seye, 3124 f (dey inf. † D) (: though I preye : wreye subj. 2 sg.), 4236 f (seyde † B) (: pleye inf.). (Cf. note, below.)

stere, 1089 f (: clere inf. : matere).
suppose, 2339 f (: rose).
swere, 3214 f (: spere).
swete, 2550 f (: Polyphete : plete inf.).
telle, 2681 f (: dwelle inf.).
trowe, 2106 f (: glowe inf.).
warie, 7741 f (: contrarye).
wene, 3249 f (: Polixene), 3341 f (: bytwene : contene inf.), 5455 f (: sustene inf. : tene).
write, 4675 f (: endite inf.), 7989 f (wryjte C) (: endite inf. : lite adj.).

II. Before consonants:

bidde, 3717 AB (preye to (? I C, pray to D), 4312.
breke, 3157 BC (A ‡ D †).
combre, 4941 (combere C; D †);
cf. suffre, 2947 (-er B, -ere C).
fele, 6679, 7632.
graunte, 785 (-[e] D), 1575 (-[e] B ‡ D †).
iape, 1225.
kepe, 676.
loue, 2495, 5421, 6283.

Before th:

bydde the, 1020 (-[de] D); coniure the, 3035 (D †); fynde that, 8121; mene this, 6168 (-e thus † C; D †); pose that, 3413 ABC (suppose † D †); preyë the, 6963 (-[e] D); reioyse thus, 7528 (reioyë C).

Before y (consonant):

telle ye, 3620; trowe ye, 5538 (-e I C †).

III. This -e is regularly elided before a vowel. Thus—

clepê, 8, 7126; hope, 47 (B † (? I †)), 2139, 2357, 2610; late, 133 (latt B); fele 400; pleyne, 409 (C † D †), 534; consente, 414; compleyne, 415; hide, 581 (hid(d)e B); loue, 631, 1382; hope I (: redëy), 983; drede, 1012; hate, 1018, 5501, 8095; answere, 1454; make, 1569, 7966; yeue, 1914 (C † D †); fare, 2593;
Observations on the Language

§ 92.

Observations

hope, here, mene, louse, pray, pray, hold, warn, 1332, 8 clippe, recche, 92.

For that I tarye || is al for wykked speche, 7973 (-ie is CD).

IV. Elision before h:

counte hem, 6726.
holden hym, 7734.
hope his, 8068.

V. Exceptions.

There are several genuine cases of -e:
deye ye, 6594 (dey D).

praye the, 6693 (pray D); pray the, 6668 (-e B, -e 3ow C); pray to, 930 (-e B), 1667 (-e C); pray to god (†), 5101 A (praye god BC, pray g. D); pray yow, pray yow, 1101 (-e B), 2362 (-e (?), B), 2491 (-e B, -e ‡ that C), 6301 (-e ‡ quod B), 6494 (-e B), 7984 (-e B).

Cf. also,—praye to, 7726 C (pray[ë] god A, pray to D); pray to, 3717 D (praye C, biddë god AB); pray with, 2145 A (-e I C, pray ich BD).  

seye yow, 7361 (sey CD); see that, 5640 (sey D), 5692 (sey BD); -e though, 5703 (sey D); sey nought, 1758; sey for, 2738; sey not, 7365, 7366, 8142; sey no, 7771; sey this, 3165 (-e nought B, sei not C, sei not D).

knowe not, 1267 (note ‡ not D).

loue parde, 717; loue yow, 6296 (C ‡ D ‡). Cf. also louë, 1332 ‡ B (-e ACD).  

menë that, 4133 (-e ë B, -ë ‡ wil C, thus he ‡ wyll E).

redë that, 495 (-e I CD).

sette the, 1452 (set BD).

Cf. also dwelle, 6978 ‡ C (-e ABD); hope, 973 ‡ D (-e B; A ? C ?), 3794 ‡ D (-e ABC); louë, 7418 ‡ D; lye, 3647 ‡ D (-e ABC); make, 3183 ‡ A (l. may); plught ‡ my, 6272 D (p.p. ABC); trowë,

1 Read in B, soon[te to]. (D ‡)
2 Insert [elle] in C.
3 Supply [to] in A; [‡] in B.
4 D too long. C has a different line.
5 D ridiculously inserts deiophus.
6 Preye, with -e fully sounded, may well enough stand for pray ye = pray yow.
7 In B, read god for aud.
8 Supply [that] in C.
3735 A (trow I B, trow y D, -e C). In 1491 bidde appears to be the right reading.

Note 1.—The final -e is often omitted at the end of a line in one or another MS. Thus,—assent, 2143 f C (-e ABD) rh. entent CD (-e AB); begyn 1934 f C (gynne AB, y bathè Þ yn D) rh. in C (inne AB, yn D) rh. syn C (synne ABD); bynyng, 2394 f D (-e ABC) rh. incomyng D (-e ABC); by-sek, 3573 f A (-e BD, beseche C) rh. ek A (eke BCD); consent, 929 f CD (-e AB) rh. repente ind. 1 sg. ABC (-t D) rh. entent CD (-e AB); fast, 2251 f (-e AB) rh. fast adv. CD (-e AB) rh. cast inf. D (-e AB); feynt, 410 f D (-e ABC) rh. pleynyt D (-e ABC) rh. quwynt D (-e ABC); ges, 1372 f C (gesse ABD) rh. wrecchedes CD (-sse AB); ges, 4569 f D (gesse ABD) rh. largesse ABD rh. gladnes D (-sse ABC); repent, 926 f D (-e ABC) (see consent); repent, 1610 f CD (-e AB) rh. entent CD (-e AB); thenk, 2498 f D (-e A, thynke BC) rh. forthenk inf. D (-thynke ABC); trow, 2284 f D (-e ABC) rh. sow inf. D (-e ABC) rh. on know D (-e ABC); trust, 3208 f C (trist D, triste AB) rh. lest subj. pres. 3 sg. C (lyste AB, list D) rh. kyst ind. 3 sg. (keste A, kiste B, kust D later hand).—So especially in verbs ending in -eye, -eye. Thus D has prey, pray in the following places in which the other MSS. have -e, —769 f rh. sey dico D (-e ABC) rh. deye inf. AC (dye BD), 1588 f rh. purvay inf. D (-e AC, pleye† B), 2218 f rh. say inf. D (-e ABC), 2244 f rh. twey D (-e AB, to † C) rh. purvey inv. pł. D (-e ABC), 2293 f rh. sey inf. D (-e ABC) rh. dey inf. D (-e ABC), 2755 f rh. plye † D (pleye inf. AC) rh. lay inf. D (-e ABC), 2813 f rh. play inv. pł. D (-e ABC), 6531 f rh. obey inf. D (-e ABC), 8105 f rh. sey inf. D (-e AB), 8147 f rh. sey ind. 1 sg. D (-e AB), 8224 f rh. sey dico D (-e AB). So also,—sey, 1266 f D (-e ABC) rh. twey D (-e ABC), 1525 f rh. dey inf. D (-e ABC), 2280 f rh. twey D (-e AB, tweyne C) rh. awey D (-e ABC), 6431 f D (-e ABC) rh. deye inf. AC (dye B); ley, 1046 f D D (-e AB) rh. sey inf. D (-e AB); dey, 1209 f D (-e ABC) rh. pley inf. D (-e ABC) rh. awey D (-e ABC), 1512 f D rh. purvey inv. or subj. sg. D (-e ABC), 2954 f D (-e ABC) rh. sey inf. D (-e ABC). In 1394 f A, has prey, D pray, while BC have preyé (seye inf. ABC, say D). Cf. prey, 5955 f CD (-e AB) rh. say inf. C (sey D, seye AB) rh. wey acc. CD (-e AB), 6935 f D (pray C, preyé AB) rh. pley inf. D (play C, pleye AB) rh. sey inf. D (say C, seye AB); say dico, 5585 f CD (-e AB) rh. dey inf. CD (-e A, dye B).—In the interior of the verse an -e necessary to the metre is sometimes omitted by the scribe: as,—trow[e], 1881 BD (-e AC); cf. 601 AD, 1029 D, 7726 A, etc.

Note 2.—The omission of elided -e is not uncommon. Cases of it occur in all the MSS. Cf. the following lines (old-style figures indicate that A omits the elided -e): I. before vowels: 240, 263, 406, 424, 759, 864, 1103, 1191, 1269, 1807, 1818, 1836, 1837, 2423, 2553, 2590, 2879, 2951, 3090, 3102, 3124, 3249 D, 3347, 3474, 3478, 3589, 3735, 4020, 4191, 5585, 5905, 7448, 7608, 7734. II. Before h: 3649.

Note 3.—Hiatus is very rare. “I fyndē ek in storyes ellys where,” 7407, seems a pretty certain instance, though B has fynde, saving the metre by the insertion of the before storyes. Cf. also loué oon, 1923 AD (-e B, leue † C); menē † J, 3463 A (-e B, -e it CD); bathè Þ yn, 1934 D (bathe inf. AB, -e ſ inf. C); takē † il, 7951 A (-e BD, tok † C).

Note 4.—For the monosyllabic se, cf. (i.) 842 f, 1517, 1818 f, 2909, 5907, 5986, 6261, 6268, 7355, 7432, 7498, 7525, 7736 f, 8058; (ii.) se hym, 1418; se here (eam), 7521. [Var. BCD see.]
§ 93. The Second Person Singular of the Present Indicative ends in -est (-ist, -yst), -st (-est) (Child, § 49; ten Brink, §§ 184, 186, 259). Thus,—

I. -est:

abydest, 7538 (-yst C).¹
biddest, 5118 (-yst C, counsel-lest † D).
coniestest, 5688 (-iect- B, comit-tist † D).
counsel'est, 2613 (-ist C, -ist D †).
desirest, 7821 (-ist † C).
deuystest, 5205 (demys † C, demist † D).
deynest, 4277 (-yst C).
dremest, 7645 (-yst C).
durest, 785 (-yst C, -ist D).
errest, 4964 (-yst C).
feelnest, 6776 (-yst C).
hyest, 4283 (higest D).³
knowest, 4951 (-yn † C, -ist D).
ledest, 1612 (-ist D †).
louest, 2481 (-is C, -ist D).
menest, 3179 (-ist C, -yst D).⁴
regnest, 8227.⁵
seimest, 2601 (-yst C, -ist D).
sorwest, 5302 (-ist CD), 5763 (-ist C).⁶
5 regnest, 8227.
regnest, 8227.

II. -st, -est:

(a) Monosyllables:

fleest, 4277 (fleest BD).³
lyst (facce), 2076 (list B, lyest D).
seist, seyst (dicis), 834, 932 (sett C (?)), 1033 (seyst(e) B), 5111 (seyst (? I), 5784 (sect C), 7526 (seyst D), 7883; cf. 720 CD.
sleest, 5174 (sleest BC); slest(e), 5117 A (sleest BC, sleest D).

Note.—In 8154,—"And kys the steppes there as thou seest pace,"—it is perhaps better to read steppes and seest.

(b) spekest, 2508 (-ist CD).
rennest, 6211 AB (-yst C; † D (?)).
entreimetyst, 1019 † C (?) (entreimetist † (? I) D).

Cf. also the variants under I.

Note.—Forms in -is, -ys, un-Chaucerian and due to the scribes, are louis, 2481 C (-est AB, -ist D), and demys †, 5205 C (demist † D, deuysest AB).

¹ Supply [that] in CD (?).
² Supply [so] in C; [for] in D?
³ Supply [e] in D.
⁴ Supply [wel] in A.
⁵ 9-syl. in C.
⁶ Supply [thou] in C; dele (nist) in D.
⁷ Supply [ful] in AD (?).
§ 94. The Third Person Singular of the Present Indicative ends in -eth (-ith, -yth), -th (-eth, -ith, -yth) (Child, § 50; ten Brink, §§ 184, 186). Examples are:

I. -eth (-ith, -yth):

He spenleth iusteth maketh festeynynges
He yeueth frely ofte and chaungeth wede, 4560-1 (all ending in -yth in C, in -ith in D).
weneth, 216 (-yth C, -ith D).
gynneth, 218 (-yth CD).
priketh, 219 (-yth C, -ith D).
turneth, 324 f (-yth C, -ith D); soiørneth (-yth C, -ith D): borneth
-yth C, vnournith † D. ²
serueth, 332 (-yth C, -ith D).
asketh, 339 (-yth C, -ith D).
thenketh, 403 (-yth C, -ith D).
knoweth, 450 (-yth C, -ith D).
causeth, 551 (-ith D).
defendeth, 603 (-yth C, offendith † D): offendeth (-yth C, -ith D).
aaayleth, 604 (-yth C): sailleth (-yth C, ffayleth † A): assaylith
(-yth C, -ith D); etc., etc.

The above cases are chosen from lines which all four MSS. give. Cf. also the following examples, also from such lines, in which AB have -eth, CD -yth or -ith or both: 625, 632, 667, 764 f, 766 f, 858, 1296, 1458 f, 1850, 1882 f, 2002, 2065, 2072, 2142, 2216, 2471, 2510, 2536, 3877, 4493, 4494, 4981 f, 7876, etc., etc.

It appears, then, that the usual ending in unsyncopated cases is -eth for A and B, -yth or -ith for C and D. But C sometimes has -eth as, sescth, 1873; axeth, 2156; desireth, 2235; causeth, 2331; erith, 4979, etc. That D sometimes has -eth is shown by the first list of examples; others are: nedeth, 2626; endeth, 5166; beteth, 5572; florith, 6239; dredeth 7026, etc. The usual ending of D is -ith, as that of C is usually -yth.

Note 1.—Forms in -it, et, -yt are occasionally found. Thus,—brestyt, 258 C (read brest); comyt, 402 C (read comth); fallit, 142 C; fullyt, 212 C; precet, 7311 B (perhaps meant for preterite); louet, 8001 B (possibly meant for preterite); rennet, 2839 B; turnyt, 1883 f C (: spoyyth); uexit, 942 C. Brennyt, 5340 C, is probably meant for a preterite, and so perhaps extendit, 6832 C. It is barely worth while to note such spellings as,—dawneth, 1484 B; forsetht, 1460 f B; getht, 1461 f B; hangeth't, 2071 B; lownyt, 8001 C; pleyet, 840 B; stynteth, 3740 B; thenceth, 221 A; douetheth, 6251 B; otheth, 1458 f B; surmounteth, 3880 B; chasith, 5077 D; occupie the (for occupicte), 7685 D.

Note 2.—A few examples of the third person singular in -es, -s, occur in B: comes, 5715 B (comth AD); has, 3457 B (hath BCD); loues, 1753 B (-ed AC, -yd D); thankes, 2306 B (thonked A, thankele hym C; thonkyd D). Tepes, medales, weres, in A, 4956 f, 5001, 4744, are more

¹ But iustith † D. ² Cf. 4979-81-82. ³ Supply [reykke] in C.
Observations on the Language

§ 94.

rites’ blunders for repeated, meddled, veren. In 5100 C, trowsis should be troyes is. (Cf. Child, § 50; ten Brink, § 155.)

Rhyme words.—The ending -eth, 3 sg., rhymes usually with itself: cf., besides the places already cited, 1892-4, 2689-70, 4993-4, 4979-81-83, 5235-6, 5571-2, 6574-6, 7146-7. But see also semeth, 643 f (-yth C, -ith D) (the wyse it demeth AB, the wise demyn C, thes clerkis demith D), and occupieth, 5498 f (C) (: men lieth).

II. The Present Indicative Third Person Singular in -eth, -th (-e-syncopated) is not uncommon. As we should expect, we find instances of it (a) in verbs ending in a vowel, or (b) in m, r, v (or f); but (c) it is not confined to such verbs.

(a) Verbs ending in a vowel:

lyth, lith, 1550,1 1800 (lyht C), 1826, 2658,2 2823 (lyth C),3 4890 (lith(e) D), 5005 (lieth D), 5078 (lyeth D),4 5120 (leyth C, lieth D), 5530 (lieth D !),5 5816, 7648 (lieth D), 7650 (lieth D),6 7780 (lieth D). (Cf. 1551 A, 7633 CD, 7782 C.)

pleyth, 840 (-eht B, pleyth D).

paw/cieth, 5728 (-ucyd D, -ueyd ¤ A).

seth, seeth,7 (videt), 4082 (sey ? C), 4410 (seeth (? D),8 5625, 5636, 6595 (sey ! C), 7546 (sey pret. C); seyth, 2339 (scth B, sey C, seyd $ D); cf. 6820 C.

Whoso me seth he seth sorwe al at onys, 5503 (seeth . . . seeth B, seeth . . . seyth D).

seith, seith (dicit), 1004 (syth B, sey $ C), 1181 (syth B), 1755, 1940 (sayth C), 2461, 3110 (soith B), 3153, 3344, 3638, 3876, 6265,9 7012, 7246 (sith $ C), 8014; seith, 1103 D, seems to be dissyllabic, but read seydé (cf. AB). In 2394: He song as who seyth (seith BD, soth C) sumwhat I brynge, are we to insert he before who or to read seyth? Mr. Austin’s collation makes no note.

sleth, 7706 (sleeth D).

Note.—fleth, 5323 C, is a wrong reading. In D 4410 we are hardly to read knoweth.

(b) Verbs in m, r, v (f):

cometh, 402 (comth B, comyt C, -ith D),10 405,11 408 (-yth (? C, -ith (? D),12 1369, 1461 (comth B), 1728 (-yth B), 2320 (comth B),

1 uk[e]th (? C); but supply [now] and read lith.
2 Supply [to] in CD.
3 Supply [ey] in B.
4 But read new[ez] and lyeth in D.
5 But supply [now] in D, and read lieth.
6 But supply [him] in D, and read lieth.
7 Seeth is always monosyllabic in this list. A has usually seth, but seeth in 6595; D has usually seyth.
8 Not a very certain line as to metre; apparently a nine-syllable verse.
9 Supply [that] in A.
10 If we read whens (so AD), we must read cometh (-ith); if whennés B (-ys C), comth.
11 Old-style figures indicate that CD have -yth or -ith.
12 Cf. 402.
§ 94.] of Chaucer’s Troilus.

219

2338 (comth B, -yth (?) C, -ith D), 2420 (comth B), 2470, 2877 (D †), 3721 (comth B), 5083 (yth C), 5166, 6754 (come B, comth D), 6789 (comth D, -yth C), 7104 (-yth C, comth D), 7505 B (-yth B, comth D, com(e) † A). (Cf. 4067 † B, 5761 † C, 7486 B; bicometh, 1880 BC (-eth † A, -ith D †), 1882; ouercometh, 6246 (-yth (?) C, -comth D †).

comth, 5704 (-eth B), 5715 (comes B), 7034 (-eth B, -yth C), 7516 (-yth C), 7532 (-yth C). (Cf. 7486 D, 7506 † D.)

For al that cometh comth by necessite, 5620 (comth . . . comth D).

semeth, 889 (-yth C, -ith (?) D), 3030 (-yth C, -ith D); cf. 7969 D.

meneth, 1472 A (-ith D, mene B, mene 2 pl. C). Cf. 1806 † D, 7513 C † D †.

bereth, 939, 940, 1272 (-ith C, -ith D †), 1486 (berth B †), 6823 (-yth C, kepith ‡ D).


bereth, 939, 940, 1272 (-ith C, -eth D †), 1486 (berth B †), 6823 (-yth C, kepith ‡ D).

swerebeth, 1739 (swerth B), 7793 (swerth B).

byhouneth, 5666, 5716; cf. 5967 CD.

dryueth, 7695 (dryuyth C, dryueth D).

toueth, 4605 (-yth C, -et E 5), 7793 (-yth C), 8109 (-ed † D); cf. 5562 † A.

But,—

cometh, 7486 (-yth C, -eth B, comth D); cf. 3904 † D.

semeth, 1201 (-yth C, -ith D), 5549 (-yth C), 6664 (-yst † C, -yth D). 8

meneth, 1806 (leuyth † C, menith D), 7798 (-yth C).

farith, 1080 (-ith D); cf. 652.

dryueth, 7464 (drieeth C, driueth D). (Cf. 1085, 7903.)

loueth, 1404 (-yth (?) C, -ith D), 1815 (-yth C, -ith D), 1862 (-yt C, -ith D), 2854 (-ith D).

(c) Other verbs:

liketh, 3227 B (-ith C, -eth † A, lyke † D); cf. 7729 C (D (?)).

maketh, 1318 (-eth B, -yth C, -ith D) 9; cf. 2468 C.

nedeth, 1261 AB (-ith C † D †), 2475 AB (-ith † C, -ith (?) D) 10; cf. 6699 † C.

spokeseth, 6599 (-en † B, -ith C).

thenketh (videtur), 1292 (-yth C, -ith D), 1486 (B †; -ith C), 2714

Supply [that] in B.

8 In AD read them[me].

Supply [now] in E.

Supply [me] in C.

10 In D, read long[er].

6 "That wonder was and swerebeth she loueth hym best."

8 Supply [for] in BD.

11 Supply [for] in D.
Observations on the Language [§§ 94, 95.

eth † B, -ith C, -ith † D), 5146 (yth C, thinkest † D), 6942 (-ith C; D (?)); me of-thynketh, 1043 (mathynketh B, me athinketh † D).

But,—
likëth, 1247 (-yth C, -ith D), 1527 (likë † sow C, -ith D), 1615 (-ith CD), 3196 AB, 4809 (-ith CD).
makëth, 4669 (-ith D).
ledëth, 1096 (-ith D), 1547 (-ith CD), 1582 (-ith CD), 3791 (-ith CD), 4305 (C †; -eth D), 4485 (-yth C, -ith D), 4518 (-yth C, -ith D), 4669 (-ith CD), 6942 (-ith C; D). (Cf. 740 A, 3699 CD.)
thenkëth (videtur), cf. 1392 † D, 2714, 3222, 5497, 5772, 5926, 6483, 7235. Cf. thenkëth (putat), 1118 (thynketh B, thenkytli D).

Note.—In some cases of apparent -eth (-yth, -ith), a comparison of MSS. makes it certain or probable that the unsyncopated form is right. See 112 D, 195 C, 868 D, 1087 B, 1397 D, 1464 CD (perhaps right), 1568 C, 1878 C, 4674 B, 4901 D, 5967 CD; and cf. also 1631 † C (?), 3084 † C, 3792 † B (?), 4479 † CD, 5390 C †, 6598 C †. See other cases of syncopated -yth in the variants under § 95.

§ 95. The following examples of the third person singular in -t from verbs in t, d, s, occur in the Troilus (Child, § 51; ten Brink, § 186):

abit, 1084.
bet, 1498 (let B, redith C, ret D).
bitti, 1133 (betýt D); by-týt, 6708 (bittit B, be-týdyth C, betidde † D). (Cf. tyt, below.)
bytrent, 4073 (be- C; bi- D (?)); cf. 5532 (?).
blent, 4667 (blent(e) B).
brést, 258 (brestyt C, brestith D), 4479 (brestyth C, brekith D).

drat, 3170 (dredith D).
forbët, 1802 (forbed(e) C, forbod(e) D †).
halt, 1122 (holt D), 3849 (holdyth C, holt D), 4216 BE (holt AC), 4478 (haldyth C †, holt D), 4589 (hast † C), 4606 (holt E), 6711 (holt C, halt(e) D); holt, 4562 D (held AC, hold B).
hent, 4667 (hent(e) B).
hurt, 6713 (hirt C).4 (Preterite ?)
last, 5250 (lestyth (? C, last(e) D).
lat, 4862 (lat(e) them [not] D).

let, 1967 BC.5

1 In B read sith for soth.
2 In CD read des[es]perance.
3 Insert [other] in A (D ?).
4 Supply [a] in D.
5 But AD have led, and a past tense seems almost necessary: "led here lyf."
lyst, lest, lust, cf. 518, 840, 852, 1308, 2136 f, 2233, 2479 f, 3243 f, 3417, 3493, 3781 f, 5753, 7716 f, 7796 f, etc.; lyst(e), cf. 2479 f.
ouer-sprat, 1852 (ouersprad D).
put, 5683.
ret, 1498 D (see bet).
rist, 937 (ryseth C), 1897, 4894 (ryst(e) B, risith D), 5825 (rist(e) D); vp rist, 6105 (rist vp C).
ritt, 2369 (ride † B, rict C, ridith D); right, 6423 (rit(e) B, rau3 t † C, ritt(e) D),—read ritt.
sent, 2208 ABCD; but the metre is short by one syllable except in D, which reads sent to. Perhaps we should read sent[e], pret.
sit, 12 (sitt D), 246 (sitt B, seyth † C, syt D), 976 (sitt B), 2020 (syt D), 3869 (is † B, syt D), 5685, 5688 f (: it : yit), 5693, 5699, 5701, 5706 (sitt(e) D), 7367 (sitt B, sitt(e) D), 7675 (settith D), 8207 (sitt BD).
smert, 6780 (e) D. Perhaps noun.
stant, 602 (stonde † B, stondith C), 2273 (C (†); stont D), 2463 (stond C, stont D),1 2477 (stont C, stond D †), 2698 (stont D), 3338 (stont AD), 3627 (stont C), 3745 C (stont AD, stant(e) B), 4404 (stont AC), 5212 (stont C), 5679, 6048 (stant(e) B),2 6596 (stant(e) B, stont C), 8091 (stont B, stant(e) D); vndirstant †, 8005 C (stod A, -stood B, -stood(e) D).
tret, 1432.
tyt, 333 (tit B). (Cf. bitit, above.)
went, 1121 f (went(e) B) (: shent p.p.), 1897 (om. † B, wentë C).3
writ, 394 (writ(e) B, wryt CD).
wrlyth(e), 4073 (writh(e) B, written † (†) D).
yelt, 385 (jelt B, jyldyth C, yeldith D).

But forms in -eth are found. Thus,4—

beteth, 5572 f.
biteth, 4493 f (: delyteth).
dredeth, 7026.
eteth, 1458 f: foryeteth: geteth. (Cf. et, Leg. G. W., 1389.)
knelteth, 4590 (endytyth † C, kennyth † D).
lasteth, 4664.

1 Supply [she] in D.
2 Supply [thus] in D.
3 May perhaps be preterite (went[e] here).
4 Trilling variations in spelling are not registered.
lysteth, listeth, 671, 1785 (leste pret. C, lest D †), 4659 (lest[e] pret. (?) D).
nedeth, 1096, etc.
rideth, 1773, 6924 (redyn † C).
sendeth, 1096, etc.
redyn (leste pret. C, lest D †), 4659 (lcst[e] pret. (?) D).
smerteth, 667 (cf. smert, Ch's. ABC, 152).
spredeth, 2065.
stenteth, 3740; stynteth, 4076.
stondeth, 2231 (1. om. C).
Cf. also hasteth, 949, 4549 (-ith † D); tlireteth, 5571 (treteth A, treth † D).
thursteth, 7769 (trustyth † C); wasteth, 1478; and the Romance verb,—iusteth, 4560.

§ 96. The Plural of the Present Indicative ends regularly in -en or -e; but forms occur in -eth (and rarely in -es) (cf. Child, § 52; ten Brink, § 186).

Before consonants, -en is commoner than -e; in rhyme, -e is commoner than -en. Before vowels or h, -en and -e (elided) are regular, -en (apocopated) is rare. For -eth, -es, see § 97.

The following list is arranged as follows: I. -en before consonants. II. -en in rhyme. III. -en before vowels. IV. -en before h. V. Syncope: -en, -n. VI. -e before consonants. VII. -e in rhyme. VIII. Élision: -e before vowels. IX. Elision: -e before h. X. Apocope: -e. XI. Present plural of A.S. fléon, sión, sléan, vréon.

I. -en before consonants: (a) First Person:
seggen we, 4856 (siggen B, seyde † C, sey we D).
seruen bothe, 6506 (-e D, were † C).
departen ye and I, 7436 (-yn 2 pl. C).

(b) Second Person:
preysen thus, 1180 (-in D, pryse C).
lyuen by, 1435 (-yn CD).1
slepen so, 1632 (-in C, -yn D).
faren wel, 2234 (-e C †, -yn D).
felen wel, 2368 (-e C, -yn D).
holden regne, 2871 (-yn D).
heren wel, 2994 (-yn CD).
liggen wel, 3511 (-yn C, -e D). (Conditional sentence.)
lysten for, 4652 (lest[e] to D).
comen be, 4989 (-[e] D, -yn to C).
louyn most, 5259 C (-eth AB, -eth 3 sg. D).2

1 Dele (that) in A.
2 Query this line?
knowen wel, 6030 (-e C); cf. 2737 B †.
mystrusten me, 6268 (-yn C^e).
touchen nought, 7359 (-e C, -[e] D).^1
yeuen me, 7778 (-yn C, -e D).^1
requeren me, 7963 (-yn C, -e D).

(c) Third Person:
reden not, 241 (-yn C, -ith D; B †).
slepen softe, 914 (-e C, -(t)en B; D †).
written clerkes, 954 (-e C, -yn D), 3694 (-yn CD), 4041 (-yn C); w.
folk, 4680 (-yn D); w. they, 6083 (-e CD);^2 w. that, 7179
(wotyn † C).
faren wel, 1248 (-e C, -yn D).
tellen that, 1270 (-e CD); t. xx., 6069 (-e C †, -[e] D), t. this, 6728
(-yn C, -e D).
fallen thikke, 1541 (-es A, -e C, -yn D); f. chaunces, 5760 (-yn C (?),
-en D (?)).
louen wommen, 1819 B (-yn CD, -en † a A); l. nouellerye, 1841
(-yn CD).
defamen loute, 1945 (-yn CD).
speken but, 1946 (-yn CD).
curen folk, 2665 (-e C, -ith D).
dreden shame, 2867 (-yn D).^3
wondren so, 2874 (-in D).^4
seruen the, 2882 (-yn D); s. best, 4107 (-yn CD^e).
techen bokes, 2933 (-in C, -yn D).
lyuen soth, 3272 (-yn CD).
dremen thynge, 3427 (-yn D, demyn C).
callen fals, 3656 (-yn D, tellen B, -yn C); c. loue, 4224 (-e C,
clepen E).
comen nough[†], 3660 (-yn D (!), -[e] C).
bryngen folk, 4046 (-yn C, -eth B).
commenden so, 4534 (-yn CD).
drawen forth, 4546 (-yn CD, -[o]n B).^5
desiren now, 4864 (-yn C).
vesen frendes, 5343 (-yn C).
bytiden by, 5719.
semen dede, 5754 (-yn C, -ë D).

^1 Subjunctive †
^2 Supply [w] in C.
^3 In 4719 dreden (dreden B, dreddyyn D) is of course preterite.
^4 Read thing(es) in A.
^5 Apparently a 9-syl. verse.
Observations on the Language

purposén pces, 6012 (-yn C, -ed † D).
wennen lese, 6744 (-e C° D).
knowen folk, 6778 (-en D (?), -yn C (?) ); cf. 4951 C).
stonden for, 7482 (stode they C).
showen bothe, 8077 (-yn D).

II. -en in rhyme. Third Person:
dryen, 303 f (: eyen : dyen inf.).
treten, 742 f (-e C, -yn D) (: beten p.p.).
dseyuen, 1370 f (-e C ; D †) (: receyuen inf. : weyuen inf. B
(weylen † A)).
dremen, 1885 f (demen † CD) (: semen 3 pl. : quemen 3 pl.).
semen, 1887 f (-yth † (?)) C, -yn D).
quemen, 1888 f (-yn CD).
crien, 1950 f (cryën C) (: eyen pl. : dryen inf.).
vsen, 3865 f (-yn CD) (: excusen inf.).
louren, 4107 f (-on B, -yn CD°) (: honouren inf. : socouren inf.).
grauen, 4304 f A (-ö BCD) (: hauen inf. (-e BCD)).
growen, 4602 f (-yn C, grevyn † E) (: flowen inf.).

III. -en before vowels. (a) Second Person:
apyesen, 2864 (-yn D).²
bathen, 22.
compleynen, 4685 B (-ës A, -yn D).
demen, 3614 (-yn CD).
knowen, 240 (-ë C, -yn D).
(b) Third Person:
wepen, 7 (-yn D).
stonden, 418 (-yn CD).
techen, 698 (-yn D, coechyn † C).
tiren, 787 (-yn C, -in D).
erren, 996 (arn C †, arë D †).
wennen, 1356 (-yn CD), 1977 (-ë CD).
stoopen, 2053 (-ë C, -yn [on] D).
spreden, 2055 (-yn D, spryngin † C).
longyn, 2431 D (-eth AB, -ith C).

shenden, 1675 (-yn C, -ë D).
slepen, 1630 (-in C, -yn D).
stonden, 428 (-yn CD).
suffren, 6195 (suffere dissyl. C, suffryen D).
hakkyn, 2466 D (-ë C°, -eth AB).
lyuen, 2858 (-in D).
lyggen, 3527 (-yn CD).
slepen, 3608 (-in C, slepe that † D).
reden, 3905 (-yn C, -e in D).
drynken, 4058 (-yn C, -eth D).
holden, 4596 (-ith E †, hold † in C).
encressen, 5241 (-yn C).
hangen, 5479 (-ë [al] D).

¹ Subjunctive †
² Read fers[e] in D.
fallen, 5667.  

comen, 5712.  
commenden, 7124 (-yn C, com- 

deliten, 6095 (-ë C).  
aundyn | D). 

passen, 6360.  
tellenyn, 7841 (-yn C), 7925 (-yn 

lasten, 6764 (treüs lestith D).  

speken, 6795 (spokë they C).  

IV. -en before h.  

(a) First Person: vsen here (hie), 4844 (-yn CD).
(b) Second Person: maken hertes, 2865 (-yn D).
(c) Third Person: redressen hem, 2054 (-yn D).

douien hot, 2618 (-e CD),

knowyn hyra, 3162 CD (pret. AB).

reuesten hem, 3195 (-yn CD).

suffren here, 3860 (-re B, -fere C, -fryn D †).

1 bryngen hors, 4707 (-[en] D).

expounden hem, 7641 (-poungyn † C, -pounë D).  

V. -en, -n. (a) Second Person: 

seyn ye, 1558 (sey D †); cf. 1275 C, 2367 D.

(b) Third Person: 

seyn, (i.) 708, 5632, 5659, 5668 † (seyn B) (: agayn : in certayn),
6035 (seyn(e) B, say D), 6115 (say D, seith R, sen † C), 6246 (say 
D; C †),

6732 (seyn(t) A, seyn(e) D), 8002 (say D, seyn [that] 
C); cf. 1886 † C. (ii.) 1833 (s. thour C), 5636, 7413 (sey D, sen † 
C); 3 seyn he, 7167 (sein(e) D; C †).

Note.—Seyen (dissyllabic) appears not to occur in the Troilus (cf. seyn †, 
6735 C, 8002 (†) C).

spaken in, 6068 (-yn CD).

proceden of, 6723 (-yn C, -e B; D †).

comen ayen, 7495 (-yn C).

Note.—Such cases as the last three are rare except as mere variants. Cf., for 
the 2nd person: knowyn ek, 3757 C, 5993 C; takyn it, 7969 C; knowen 
how, 7688 D. 4 For the 3rd person, cf. lyuen vnder, 1259 B (-yn C, -eth 
A; sg. † D); louen a, 1819 A; auauntyn of, 3160 C; fighten and, 4707 
B; takyn it, 6710 C: tellyn iwis, 6730 C; dremyn and, 6740 C; spekyn 
of, 7216 C; speken for, 6599 B (sg. ACD). cf. §§ 136, e, 139.

1 Supply [ne] in C.  
2 Supply [that] in D.  
3 Dele (the proude) in D.  
4 Read long[ë] in D.
VI. -e before consonants. (a) Second Person
make me, 1200 (-en B, -yn C); -e this, 3714.
mende ye, 1414 (wyn[ne] ‡ D (?)).
wene ye, 1975, 7267 (C?).
slepe ye, 2180 CD.
recche lest, 2236 (-yn D).
like ‡ ye, 2281 D.
wite ‡ what, 2737 D.
knowe ye, 4743 (-yn D).
thinke ‡ ye, 5511 D.
lyue ye, 5877.
speke not, 5988 (-[e] B, spake D).
(b) Third Person:
hunte faste, 748 (-ith D). 2
wake whan, 914 (-en B; D †).
know[e] folk, 4860 ‡ D (weten A, witen B, wetyn C).
gynne sprynge, 7020 (-en B, -yn D, begynne ‡ C).
bytrayse yow, 8146.

VII. -e in rhyme. (a) First Person:
pleyne, 711 f (pleyn D) (: peyne n. : to seyne).
rede, 1185 f (: dede n. : rede inf.).
drinke, 1869 ‡ f C (inf. ABD).
byseche, 2759 f (bisike B, beseche C) (: eke, ek C).
deuyse, 6191 ‡ f C (2 pers. ABD).
hye, 6852 f (: vilonye). (Perh. subjunc.)
(b) Second Person:
eschuwe, 344 f (-ewe BCD) (: myssonstrue inf., -ewe BC, -ew D)
2340 f (-ewe BCD) (: saluwe inf., -ewe D, salwe B, salue C).
endue, 682 f (: assure inv. pl.).
fare, 1194 f (: care n. : bare), 6601 f (: care n.).
mene, 1218 f (meue ‡ CD) (: lene adj. pred. sg., eue ‡ C, leve ‡ D).
avyse, 1361 f (: wise n.).
requere, 1558 f (: chere : dere).
swete, 2028 f (smete ‡ C) (: y-bete p.p. : hete n.).
leue creditis, 2226 f (: repreue n.).
constreyne, 2317 f (: peyne n.).
chese, 4851 f (: lese inf.).
deuyse, 6191 f (1 pl. ‡ C) (: wyse n.).

1 Supply [now] in C.  2 The first part of 748 D is corrupt.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

§ 96.]

deface, 7278 f (: pace inf. : face).
speke, 7325 f (: wreke inf.).

(c) Third Person:

endure, 34 f (: auenture n.).
write, 147 f (: Dite nom. prop.).
ryme, 532 f (: tyme).
plye, 732 f (pleye C, pley D) (: lytargie : melodye).
kepe, 763 f (-yn C) (: by-wepe inf. (-yn C)).
knowe, 1945 f (know D) (: bowe noun (bow D)).
resigne, 2867 f (: digné adj. pred. pl. : benigne adj. pred. pl.).
make, 4203 f (: take inf.).
lye mentiuntur, 4222 f (: folye), 4682 f (: vilonye), 1 7844 f (: enuye n.: dye inf.).
ake, 4403 f (: wake inf.).
erre, 4616 f (: werre n.). (Subjunctive?)
quelle, 4708 f (: felle (fele A) adj. pl. : telle inf.).
procede, 4809 f (inf. † D) (: nede n.).
dwelle, 5347 f (: telle inf.).
bynde, 5525 f (: kynde n. : fynde inf.).
preue, 5631 f (: leue inf.).
falle, 5711 f (: alle pl.).
preye, 6046 f (prey CD) (: seye inf. : tweye).
rede, 6306 f (: drede n.).
mene, 6727 f (: bene n.). (Indirect question.)
carye, 7105 f (-ie D, om † C) (: letuäre).
declare, 7162 f (: square adj. pl.).
ceape, 7496 f (gape CD) (: iape inf.).
reyne, 7699 f (: pleyne inf.).
Cf. also the following cases of -e (3 pl.) in rhyme: 705, 788, 1092, 2153, 2452, 3131, 3143, 3432, 4063, 4229, 4271, 5508, 6046, 6382, 7153, 7640, 7826, 7896.

VIII. -e elided before vowels. (a) Second Person:

lyue, 330 (loue † C).
knowe, 340 (know BD, -yn C); 2 cf. 1107, 2873, 3757, 5993.
mene, 1311. [Indirect question.]
speke, 6217 (spek B, -ë † awoy C).
hate, 6508 (-ë † be D). 3
take, 7969 (-yn C).

1 Perhaps subjunctive.  
2 Read al[le] in D.  
3 Subjunctive?
(b) Third Person:

graue, 1132 (somē graue D).

iangle of, 1885 (iangle C, ianglyn (? D).
deuyne, 2830 (dèuyne † C).
fele, 2853 B (feld † A, fele inf. † D).
yelpe, 3149 ($elp C, yelp D).
auaunte, 3160 (e † wommen B, -yn of C).
take, 4252 (toke pret. ABE), 6710 (-yn it (?) | (?)).
twynne, 4553 (twyn CD).
fyghte, 4707 (-en B, fight D).
trete, 6008
telle, 6730 (-yn C).
dreme, 6740 (-yn C).
speke, 72,16.
write, 7992.

IX. -e elided before h. Second Person:

yeue hym, 2861 (3af † pret. D).
suffre hym, 3705 (suffere C).\(^1\) 3723 (suffere C).\(^2\)

Note 1.—knowe hem, 3 pl., 4240 B (-yn C), should be preterite (knewe A, knew D).

Note 2.—Elided -e is occasionally omitted in writing.—Thus,—2nd pers., know how, 7688 (-e BC, -en D)\(^3\); 3rd pers., com and, 5761 (-en (?) D, -yth sg. (?) C), lat hem, 1820 A (lat hym = hem B). Cf. also the variants under VIII., above.

X. Cases of apocope of -e are rare. (a) Second Person:

sette lite, 1517 (sette C, set[te] D).
trowe ye, 6231 (trow B, -ë C; D (?)).\(^4\)
yeue ye, 6598 (yeuþ † jow 3 sg. C, frome † your D).
sey right, 1275 (-ë B, seyn C, sey D †).
sey me, 2367 (say BC, seyn ful D).

Cf. also know wel, 3757 † D, 5993 † D.

(b) Third Person:

say may, 1707 (seyn[e] B, seyn C, sey D).

begynne † to, 7020 C.

Note 1.—In the case of sey, say, 2, 3 pl., the correct reading may be seyn (see V., above and observe the variants there cited).

Note 2.—For the omission of -e at the end of the verse where the rhyme requires -e, see variants in the places cited under VII., above (no cases in A); cf. also turment †, 5003 f D. An -e necessary to the metre is occasionally omitted in the interior of the verse (not in A): see variants under VI., above (in particular, trow[e] ye, 2 pl., 4215 B).

\(^1\) Subjunctive † Supply [that] in C.
\(^2\) Subjunctive †
\(^3\) Read long[e] in D.
\(^4\) Dele (ek) in A.
XI. The A.S. verbs *fleon*, *séon*, *sléan*, *wréon*, show in the *Troilus* the following monosyllabic contracted forms in the plural of the present indicative:

2nd person: *sen* that, 6007 (seen B, see D †, se † ek (? C); sen hym, 2995 (sen(e) D); se, see, cf. 1424 f (1 pl. † D), 3508 f, 7247 f, 7765 f; se ye (?), 995 A.

*sle me*, 6267.

3rd person: *seen*, sen,— s. swete, 2618 (se D); s. alday, 3905 (sen(e) D); s. in, 5342 (see D, seyn C); s. here, 6707 (sen(e) D); s. hem, 6709 (sen(e) D).

wrien with, 1624 (wren B, wryen D). (Monosyllable.)

*flien* (= flyen, see ten Brink, § 158) from, 6018 (fleen B, flien, D). (Monosyllable.)*

§ 97. The Plural of the Present Indicative ends occasionally in -eth (-ith, -yth), -th.

The following list is meant to be exhaustive for the four MSS. Old-style figures indicate that the subject is *men*. An asterisk indicates that the verb precedes its subject.

(a) Second Person:

knoweth what, 2737 A (-en B, wite D, knowith inv. pl. † C).

causeth al, 4408 D (-es A, -ed B, can syre † C).

loueth most, 5259 AB (-yn C, -eth sg. D).

graunyth that, 7307 C (-e inf. AB, -e subj. 2 pl. D).

doth(e) me, 8063 B (do A, don C, don(e) D).

(b) Third Person:


hath ben, 242 BC (han A, have with D); hath this, *4299 B (han AC, hauæ D); hath go, 4547 D (han ABC); cf. 2467 D (?).

demeth, 644 f (-yn † C, -ith D) (: semeth sg.).

seyth wo, 694 (seyþeth C)²; s. eche, 1127 (seyn BD); s. men, *1809 (om. † D); s. impression[es], 2323 (sey C, seyn D); seith that, 6115 B (seyn A, sen C, say D).³

maketh of[t], 740 B (-yth C, -yn D; -eth sg. A).

hunthith fast, 748 D (-e ABC).

lyueth vnder, 1259 A (-en B, -yn C; -ith sg. D).

to suche as hym thankæth able, 1292 (thynkæth B, thynkyth C, thinkith † D).

1 Subject: *the wyse*. Supply [and] in D.

2 Subject: *thise wyse A*, the wise BCD. Perhaps singular.

3 Supply [thic] in D.

4 D has for thy with for fro thyng which.
bereth lyf, 1920 (-ith CD).¹

gydeth yow, 2189 (-ith C; sg. D).²
doth these, * 2391 A (dos(e) B, don(e) D, don 3e 2 pl. C).

longeth yn, 2431 (-ith C, -yn D).³

furthereth most, 2453 (furthereth B, fer-rerith † C, furthurth D).⁴

hakketh ofte, 2466 AB (-e C, -yn D).

curith folk, 2665 D (-en AB, -e C).

adorneth al, 2844 (-ith D).

bryngeth folk, 4046 D (-en AB, -e C).

drinketh ofte, 4058 D (-en AB, -yn C).

holdith a, 4596 E (-en AB, hold in C).

5 lieth, 5496 FABD (me hey t C) (: occupieth sg.).

goth plesaunce[s] (?) * 5761 C (gon plesaunces AB, gon(e) plesauns[es] (?) D).

clepeth an, 6674 (callyn † [an] C, clepö † an D); clepeth wode, 7576 B (-yn C, -e D, clepeth the A).

cometh swich, * 6737 AB (-yth C, -e D) ; cf. * 5761 C (I).

treius lestith al, 6764 C (trewes lasten ABD).

weneth best, 7630 (-yn C, -e D).⁶

sleth my, 7706 ABC (sleeth D).

astreyneth me (?) 8146 D (commeueth sg. AB).

Note 1.—In 1887 f C, semyth was doubtless meant for a singular by the scribe.

Note 2.—In 217 C faylyt seems meant for a plural : faylyt thynys.

The notes to the foregoing lists, together with the various dia-
critical marks, show that many of the examples are cases of the indefinite subject men, that others may be sing., and that still others may be accounted for in various ways (as perhaps by a confusion of constructions).

§ 98. The Northern Plural in -es occurs very rarely in the Troilus MSS.

Second Person:

causes al, 4408 A (-ed B, -eth D; C †).

compleynes euere, 4685 A (-en B, -yn D).

1 Perhaps singular: "'al that bereth lyf.'

2 "What maner wyndes gydeth yow (wynd D)."

3 "And dide also hise other observaunces That to a louere longeth yn this cas."

4 "It is oon of the thynges that furthereth most." In this succession of words there is often a confusion of numbers in modern speech.

5 In E (Harl. 1239), read bond for boute, and duryng for doyng.

6 Supply [eo] in D.
Third Person:
bigiles, 7640 f B (-e ACD) (: while).
falles thikke, 1541 A (-en B, -e C, -yn D).
dos(e) this, 2391 B (doth A, don(e) D, don 3e 2 pl. C).

§ 99. The following Indicative Preterites (first and third person) of Anglo-Saxon verbs of the First Weak Conjugation occur in the *Troilus* (cf. Child, § 53; ten Brink, §§ 162, 165, 168-70).

(a) Stems originally short,—lette, leyde, sette, shette; (b) stems originally long,—agylte, alighte, ayled, bente, bleddde, blente (A.S. blende), blente (A.S. blente), bredde, bytydde, demede, dyghte, dreynnte, fedde, felte, ferde, grette, hente, herde, kepte, kynette, kyddde, kyste (keste, cussed), ladde (ledde), laste, lefte (lafte), lente, lyste (leste), mente, mette (A.S. métte), mette (A.S. métte), myssed, nedede, radde, rente, reste, reynede, semed, sente, shente, spedde, spradde, stente (stynte), thrasle, ivende, wcnte; (c) irregular verbs,—boughte, broughte, dwelled, roughte, roughte, soughte, taughte, thoughte (A.S. pôhte), thoughte (A.S. pôhte), tolde, wroughte. For hitte (O.N. hitta), thriste (O.N. þýsta), trusted (cf. O.N. þreysta), see § 100.

Of these ayled, demede, myssed, nedede, reynede, semed,1 are unsyncopated preterites formed on the analogy of the second weak conjugation (A.S. -ode) and replacing the proper Anglo-Saxon forms egl(e)de, démde, miste, nédde (but cf. néadian, -ode), rínude, sémude. For cussed (kyssed), a similar formation, see kyste. In these -ed, -ede preterites final -e is not sounded except in nedede (q.v.) and is often not even written.

*Dwelled* corresponds to A.S. dwellede (-ode), inf. dwelian (Siev., § 407, Anm. 1); *dwelte* (A.S. dwelde, inf. dwelwan) does not occur in the *Troilus*.

In bente, blente (A.S. blende, inf. blewdlen), helte, lefte (lafte), lente, mente, rente, sente (but also sende), shente, vente, A.S. -de is replaced by -te (cf. ten Brink, § 170 ε, ζ). *Bremen* (O.N. brenna, cf. A.S. bærnan) has both brenne (*: amende inf., etc.*) and brente (*: sente ind. 3 sg.*) : see § 100.2

Several preterites of weak verbs belonging properly to the second conjugation show syncopated forms after the analogy of the first. These

---

1 Ten Brink (§ 165) notices demed, semed.
2 Ten Brink (§ 170 ζ) appears to recognize only brente.
are,—answérde (-swérdé), caste (O.N.), made, plye, putte, rafte, shapte (O.N.), twyghte : see § 101.

Syncopated perfects, after the analogy of the first weak conjugation, are shown by several verbs strong in Anglo-Saxon: brygde, dreddé, fílye, lêpte (var. lêp), lóste, sîghte (sighed, siked), sîpté (but also slîp), smérté, [sweyte,] srîpté (but also velp) : see § 103. So also déyde (O.N. déyja, pret. dé). For hîghte, see § 103. For shapte, see § 101.

For other syncopated preterites from verbs of Germanic origin see glínte, plíghte, súpáte, tûynste (§ 100). For syncopated preterites from Romance verbs, see aspyde, caughte, cryde, hurte, pasté, preyde (§ 104).

For róng (A.S. ríngde), see § 103, note 2.

In the following lists (§§ 99-104) the cases cited are in the third person unless the contrary is indicated. In the infinitives given no attempt is made at exhaustiveness of reference, and elision is not indicated.

agylte (A.S. ágyltan, -gylte), 1st pers., -e hym, 3682 (-t CD).

alighte (A.S. álíhtan, -lihte), 7380 f (-t D, -lyåté C) (: yf she myghte : bryghte adv.); she alighte, 6552 f (shalighte B, sche alyåt C †, she light D) (: myghte pret. 3 sg.).

ayled (A.S. egl(i)an, egl(e)de, see Cosijn, Altws. Gr., II, 163, § 120),

ayled the, 4993 B (ailid D, eyleth A, alyyth C).

bente (A.S. bendan, bende), -e his, 725 C (bent D, lente AB).

bithoughte, see thoughte.

bledde (A.S. blédan, blédde), 2035 f (bled D) (: vnto bedde : he spedde ind.), 7563 f (: fledde pret. ind. 3 sg., is fledde † A). [Inf. blede, cf. 4674 f, 7410 f.]

blente (A.S. blëndan, blënde), 7558 f (-t CD) (: wente ind. 3 sg. : wente n.). [Inf. blente, 2581 f, 5310 f (blynde BCD), 6889 f (blynde C); blynde, 3049 f (blende BCD).]

blente (A.S. blëncan, blëntë), 4188 (blynte BC, blënt[e] E).3

bought[e] (A.S. byægan, bohte), bought vs, 4007 AB (wrouhte C, wrougt D).4 [Inf. beye, 8206 f.]

bredde (A.S. brédan, bréddë), 465 f (bred CD) (: weren fled, weren fledde B). [Inf. brede, 4388 f.]

brende, see § 100.

broughte (A.S. bríngan, bróhte), 3524 f (-t BCD), 5332 f (-t pl. † D), 7143 f (-t D); [-i] there, 3428 (-e C, -i † D)5; brought in, 3584 broute C, brough D); brought || whan, 4521 (-[ë] C, -[i] (!) D). [Var. C brouȝte; CD brouȝt; D brought.] [Inf. brynge, -en, cf. 623, 3087, 3356, 5937, etc.]

Rhyme words.—hym oughte ind. (3524), roughte ind. 3 sg. (5332), by-
soughte ind. 3 sg. (5332), he thoughte ind. (7143).

byssette, see sette.

1 Cf. ten Brink, §§ 173, 176.
2 The rhymes show the correct form to be blende.
3 Supply [ne] in C or read nêuëre his. In E (Harl. 1239), read newer.
4 Supply [that] in C.
5 Perhaps subjunctive.
§ 99. of Chaucer's Troilus.

bytydde (A.S. tídan, tídde), 1140 f (-tyd D) (the thridde); bytidde, 8004 (bited B, betyd C†, betide D); be-tidde † ful, 6708 D (bytyt pres. 3 sg. A, bitit C, betydyth D).¹ [Inf. bytyden, bytyde, cf. 1708, 3486 f.]
demede (A.S. déman, démde), demede as, 4569 (-ed B, -yd CD). [Inf. deme, -[n], cf. 799, 1457, etc.]
dreynte (A.S. drençan, drencte), 543 f (drenkte C) (: compleynte : pleynte). [Inf. drenche, -en, cf. 4603, 5172 f.]
dwelled (A.S. dwellan, dwealde; but also, later, dwelian, dwelede, -ode, Siev. § 407, Anm. 1), whil [that] she dwelled yn, 129 (-yd D, was dwellynge BCCp.); she duellid ay, 7074 † D. [Inf. dwelle, -en, cf. 144 f, 2699 f, 3489, 6369.]
dyghte (A.S. dihtan, díhte, from Lat. dictare), 2033 f (-t BD, diêt C) (: they myghte indu.).

fedde (A.S. fédan, féddie), -e hem, 2655 (fed[dí] † hem D), 6802 (fed BD). [Inf. fede, 5001 f.]

felte (A.S. félán, fólde), 3187 f (-t D) (: swelte inf. : to-melte inf.), 3833 (-[e] D) (1st. pers.), 4118 (-[e] D), 4285 f (: melte inf.), 5027 f (-t C) (: melte inf.), 6354 ; [-e], 306 B (sholde A†, shold[e] D†), 5560 (-eth B, -ith CD); -e, 3192 (-t D); -e his, 2389 (-t BD); -e he, 3321 (-t D, wiste † C); felt (before vowels), 1143, 2361 (ffelté the † thorn C, felt the iryn (i) D),² 7531 (-e CD) (1st pers.); felt his, 502 AB (-e D), 4513 (-e C, -t † in D); felt this, 498 (-e Troilus D, fel to C³); felt † that, 1146 A (fil B, fil † hym D). felté † here (eam), 4043 A (-e BC, -t D). [Inf. fele, -en, cf. 4539, 5128, 7671, etc.]

ferde (A.S. férán, férdle), 739 f (-d D)⁴, 1238 f (-d D)⁴, 4371 f (-d D), 4633 f (feerde B); ferd (before vowels), 225 (-e C), 491 (-e BC),⁵ 2092 (-e C).⁶
Rhyme words.—answérède indu. 3 sg. (739, 4371), herde indu. 3 sg. (4633), yerde n. (739, 1238).

grette (A.S. grétan, grétté), 3797 f (-t D) (: settè indu. 3 sg.), 4430 f (: settè indu. 3 sg.), 6656 f (grette B, gret D) (: settè inf.). [Inf. grete, 4398 f.]
hente (A.S. hentan, hente; cf. gehendan), 2009 f (-t CD), 2863 f (-t D), 4029 f (-t CD), 6453 f (hynte B, hent CD); [-e] faste, 1038 AD (-e B); hent here (eam), 2239 -e C, hynte B), cf. 4388 † D.

¹ In B supply [ié].
² In D read [be]gan.
³ In B read than[næ].
⁴ Indirect question.
⁵ Indirect discourse. Dele (al) in C.
⁶ Indirect discourse. First Person.
Rhyme words.—entente n. (2009, 4029), sente ind. 2 pl. (2863), mente ind. 3 pl. (4029), wente ind. 3 sg. (6453).

hérde (A.S. hiérän, etc., hérde, hýrde, ge-hérde), 1731 (-[e] B, -e the C, -d the D), 1984 f, 2185 f (-d D), 3641 f (-d D), 3907 f (-d D), 4458 f, 4634 f, 4838 f, 6541 f, 8086 f; [-e], 544 (-e C, -e D), 1301 (-e C); -e, 106 (-d BD), 1536 (-d BD), 2675 (-d D, -e† alway C); herd (before vowels), 1602 (-e BC), 1643 (-e BC; D (!)), 4501 (-e BC, herd † first (?)) D); -e his, 2920 (-d D, -e† preye C°); herd hym, 549 (-e B, -e† hym D, herdde C)², 1471 (-e C). [Inf. here, -en, cf. 30, 279 f, 398 (hire A), 2662, 3521, 3598, etc.; yhere, 5975 f (yheere B, [y]here C).]

Rhyme words.—yerde n. (3907), answèrède, -swèrèd ind. 3 sg. (1984, 2185, 3641, 4458, 4838, 6541, 8086), ferde ind. or subj. 3 sg. (4634).

kept (A.S. cépan, cépte), 5013 f (: wepte ind. 3 sg.); kept hire (poss. sg.), 130 AC (-e B). [Inf. kepe, -en, cf. 1553 f, 3136, 3261 f, 7411 B, etc.]

kèste, see kydest.

kinet (A.S. cnyttan, cnytte), yn knette, 3930 f (inknitt D) (: shette ind. 3 sg.).

kyst (A.S. cyðan, cyðde, cyðde), kyd anoon, 208 A (kydde B, kod C).

kyste, keste, cussed (A.S. cyssan, cyste); kyste, 812 f (-t CD), 3971 f (kyssed B, kist D), 4094 f (kist D), 4117 f (kiste CD), 4192 f (-t C), 5823 f (kiste D); keste, 1335 f (kiste B, kyst C, kust D)³, 4361 f (kyste B, kyst C, kist D), 4417 f (kyste B, kyst C, kist D); kyste, 3067 (-t D, kist C), 3814 (kist C, kyssid D), 6440 ⁴; cussed tho, 2175 (kiste B, kyssid D, kyste the C). [Inf. kysses, cf. 3024 f, 6914 f.]

Rhyme words.—reste n. (3971, 4361), wyste ind. 3 sg. (812, 4094), subj. 1 sg. (4117), ind. 3 pl. (5823), nyste ind. 3 sg. (4192), lyste pres. subj. 3 sg. (liste B, lyst C, lust D) (1335), lyste pret. ind. 3 sg. (lente B, lest C, list D) (3971), truste pres. ind. 1 sg. (-t CD, triste B) (1335), truste pret. ind. 3 sg. (thrust C, thrust D) (4417).

ladde, ledde (A.S. lèdan, lèdde); ladde, 4556 (ledde B, led C, byd † D); ladde hem, 184 (-d CD, led B); ladde here (eam), 6455 (-d C, ledde BD); ladde here (poss. sg.), 7077 (ledde B); lad here (eam), 2901 (ledde BC, led D); ledde, 7581 f (ledde ind. 3 sg.); led here (poss. sg.), 1967 (let BC); ledde, 8027 † C (l. leyde).

[Inf. lede, -yn, cf. 2534, 4559 f, etc.]

laste (A.S. lèstān, lèste), 315 f (-t D) (: caste ind. 3 sg.). [Inf. laste, -en, cf. 2606, 5339 f, 8187 f.]

1 First Person. Supply [that] in D.
2 Supply [in] in B.
3 "Rather late hand."—Furnivall.
4 Antenoré (Antenor he) C.
lyste, lafte (A.S. læfan, læfde); lafte, 5813 B (lost[e] A, loste CD); 
lyste, 7947 (-t B, lafte D, lefte † not C); lefte his, 1645 (-t D); 
lafted alles, 4754 A (lefte B, left D) (1st pers.); laft || for, 3364 
(left BD, lest † C). [Inf. leuen, cf. 5997.]

lente (A.S. lænan, lænde), -e his, 725 (bente C, bent D).

lyte (A.S. lettan, lette), 2174 f (: sette : shette, both pret. ind. 3 sg.), 
3315 f (let CD) (: bysette : mette A.S. mette, both pret. ind. 3 sg.). 
[Inf. lette, -en, cf. 150 f, 1817, 5191, 5963.]

leyde (A.S. leegan, legde, léde), 2633 f (-d p.p. † D),1 3897 f (-d D), 
3070 f, 4797 f, 4842 f, 4886 f, 5825 f, 7236 f, 2 7397 f, 7508 f, 
7802 f; -e, 5813, 7140 (-e † C), 8027 (ledde † C); -e hym, 1600 
(-d CD). [Inf. leye, cf. 2756 f, 2914 f, 3501 f, 4447 f, etc.]

Rhyme words.—Criseyde (2633, 3897, 4797, 5825, 7236, 7897, 7508, 7802), 
seyde ind. 3 sg. (3897, 3970, 4842, 4886, 7236, 7897, 7508, 7802), prayde 
ind. 3 sg. (4797). [Var. B layde; D leide, laide.]

lyste, liste, leste (A.S. lystan, lyste). Pret. 3 sg. Ind. and Subj. (no 
trym attempt is made to register the moods separately in this case. (a) 
Forms at end of verse,—A leste, lyste, liste; B leste, liste; C lest, 
lyst, leste, list; D lest, list, leste, lyst: 189 f, 357 f, 1169 f, 1694 f, 
1998 f, 3065 f, 3294 f, 3974 f, 4521 f, 4608 f, 4833 f, 6880 f, 7203 f 
(caste † D), 7469 f, 8099 f. (b) Before consonants,—lyste, 977 3, 
4155 (liste B, lust to D, they luste C), 8051 (list[e] B, leste C, liste 
(?) D), cf. 1785 C; lyst[e], 1423 (liste B, 3e liste C, 3e lyst[e] D), 
3908 (list[e] B, liste C, lest[e] D); lyste, 3985 (list B (?), leste C, 
liste D); leste, 4243 † C; lyst not, 3345 (liste B, list C, leste D) is 
very likely present. (c) Before vowels,—liste, 1302 (luste C, lust 
D); lyst, lest (B leste, liste; C lust, liste; D list), cf. 2034 (-e B), 
4612 (-e B), 4614 (-e BC). (d) Before h (in he, his, hym, here dat., 
hem),—lyste, 2663 (list B, 3e list D),4 5785 (liste BD); lyst, lest (B 
liste, lest; C list, lust, lyst; D lest, liste), cf. 2666 (-e B), 3365, 
6548 (-e BD).5

Rhyme words.—reste n. (189, 1998, 3065, 3974, 4521, 6880, 7469, 8099), 
gest[e] n. (1169), in geste (3224), the beste (3294, 4833, 7203), wyste, 
nyste ind. 3 sg. (357, 4608), kyste ind. 3 sg. (3974), twiste pres. or pret. 
subj. 3 sg.6 (4608), to-breste inf. (1694).

mente (A.S. mænan, mænde), 320 f (-t CD), 1449 f (-t D) (1st pers.), 
1677 (-t D †) (1st pers.), 2306 f (-t CD), 2646 f (-t CD), 2968 f 
(-t CD), 4027 f (-t CD), 5095 f (-t CD), 6080 f (-t CD), 7231 f (-t

1 Possibly subjunctive. 2 First person. In D read hand for haue.
3 Supply [though] in C. D has lost and, but is quite unmetrical.
4 In B supply [whom]. 5 In D supply [here].
6 A has it wyste for lieyste.
C \(\dagger\) D) ; -e, 3274 (-t CD), 7210 (-t C)\(^1\); mente harm (?), 1523 (-t (?)) B, -\(\ddot{c}\) C, -t D) (1st person). [Inf. mene, cf. 3006, 3098 f CD.]

Rhyme words.—desente (320), entente (1449, 2306, 2646, 2968, 4027, 6080 (entent ABCD), 7281), wente ind. 3 sg. (320, 5095, 6080), hente pret. ind. 3 sg. (4027).

mette (A.S. métan, métte), 3316 f (-t CD), 4393 f; mette that, 1068 A (met with D, mette a B). [Inf. mete, -en, cf. 4512 f, 6347, 8066.]

Rhyme words.—bysette pret. ind. 3 sg. (3316, 4393), or she lette (3316), shette inf. (4393).

mette (A.S. métan, métte), 362 f (-t D), 1175 f (1st pers.), 2010 f (-t D) ; -e he, 6612 \(\dagger\) C (mete inf. AB, dreme \(\dagger\) inf. D), 7601 (mett D) ; mette[e] \(\dagger\) that, 6614 D (inf. ABC). [Inf. mete, -en, cf. 4401 f, 6612, 6614.]

Rhyme words.—lette n. (362), sette pret. ind. 3 sg. (362, 1175, 2010).

myssed (A.S. missan, miste), m. han, 3287 (mys(e)sid C, myssid have D). [Inf. mysse, 4466 f.]

nedede (A.S. niedan, nýdan, nédan, -dde), nedëdé no, 7089 (neded[e] BD, nedit (?)) C).

radde (A.S. rëdan, rëddde (so always in W.S.), but also ród), -e, 2170 AB. [Inf. rede, -en, cf. 83 f, 668, 1188 f, 1214, 2261 f, 2407 f, etc.]

raughte (A.S. rëcan, rëhte), 1532 f (rauȝte C, raght D); ouer raughte, 7381 f (-t D, rauȝte C); rauȝt ful, 6423 C (right A, rit(e) B, ritt(e) D).\(^3\)

Rhyme words.—caughte ind. 3 sg. (1532), taughte ind. 3 sg. (7381).

rente (A.S. rendan, rende), 6362 f (-t D) (: wente ind. 3 sg.) ; -e, 2013 (-t BD), 3941, 5399.\(^4\)

reste (A.S. restan, reste), -e here (eam), 7399 (ref B, reuyth C, rafte (?) D). [Inf. reste, 2411 f.]

reynde (A.S. rignan, rînan, rînde), reynede it, 4399 (-ed B, -yd C, -\(\ddot{e}\) \(\ddot{d}\) D). But also a strong pret. (A.S. rûn), ron, 3482 (ron(e) D, reyne \(\dagger\) inf. C), 3519 f (rone D) (: anoon : gon inf.). [Inf. reyne, 3393 f, 4961 f.]

raughte (A.S. récan, reccan, róhte), 496 f (roght D),\(^5\) 5329 f (-t D), 6813 f (-t D); rowhte, 5610 f (raughte B, roughthe C; rought D); rought[e] not, 5093 (rouȝte C, route \(\dagger\) he (?) D).\(^6\) [Inf. recche, cf. 797 f, 1423 f, 1519 f, 2558 f, 6109 f, 6250 f.]

---

\(^1\) First Person.

\(^2\) All the cases of mente cited (except 1449 2306, 4027, 4699) are in indirect questions : some of them may well be subjunctive.

\(^3\) The correct reading is \textit{rit} = \textit{rideth}.

\(^4\) Supply [her] in D.

\(^5\) Hardly subjunctive.

\(^6\) Supply [that] in A.
Rhyme words.—thoughte *ind. and subj.* (†) 3 sg. (496, 6813), soughte *ind.* 3 sg. (5610, 6813), by-soughte *ind.* 3 sg. (5329), broughte *ind.* 3 sg. (5329). [Var. C rōtte.]

semed (A.S. ge-sēmān, -sēmē) s. she, 103 (-edē ĉ, -yd D); s. that, 6086 (-yd CD)¹; s. not, 7231 (-ede C †, -yd D); semed (before vowels), 496 (-yd D),² 2906 (-yd D); -ed he, 1721 (-ede C, -yd D); -ed here (dat.), 3307 (-ede C, -yd D). [Inf. seme, cf. 703, 747.]

sente, sende (A.S. sendan, sende); (a) sente, 1421 f (-t CD), 1916 f (-t CD †), 2421 f (-de C, -t D), 4801 f (-t CD), 5516 f (-t CD), 6650 f (-t CD), 7474 f (-t CD), 7813 f (-t D), 7840 f (-t CD); -e, 4427 (-t D); (b) sende, 2819 f (: amende subj. 3 sg. : defende *ind.* 1 sg.).³ [Inf. sende[n], cf. 6047.]

Rhyme words.—entente n. (1916, 5516, 7474), to rents (1916), assente *inf.* (1421), bente *ind.* 3 sg. (2421), wente *ind.* 3 sg. (6650, 7474), *ind.* 3 pl. (4801), stente *inf.* (7840), stente *pret.* 3 sg. (7813).

sette (A.S. settan, sette), 359 f (-t D), 1176 f, 2012 f (-t D), 2172 f, 3078 f (-t D), 3542 f (-t D), 3795 f (-t D), 4431 f, 4896 f (sett BD), 7212 f (sett D); bysette, 3313 f (-sett D, beset C), 4394 f (be-C); sette, 4673 (-t D); sett et, 444 (-e C, set D); sente hym, 2548 (sat C, sete D); -e here (eam), 1685 (-B, satethe there D †), 2303 (sat C, sat(e) D), 2313 (-t D); -e here (poss. sg.), 7083 (sett D);⁴ set hym, 2149 (sette B, sat C, sete D). [Inf. sette[n], -en, cf. 3742, 5152, 5443.]

Rhyme words.—lette n. (359, 3078, 3542, 7212), mette A.S. méttē *pret.* *ind.* 1 and 3 sg. (359, 1176, 2012), mette A.S. méttē *pret.* *ind.* 3 sg. (3313, 3542, 4394), er he lette, or she lette (2172, 3313), shette *pret.* 3 sg. (2172, 4896), shette *inf.* (4394), y-shette *p.p.* *pred.* *pl.* (3078), grette *pret.* 3 sg. (3795, 4431), fette *pret.* 3 pl. (7212).

shente (A.S. scendan, scende), 7586 f (-t CD) (: wente *ind.* 3 sg. : potente n.).

shette (A.S. scyttan, scytte), 2175 f (-t D, schette *p.p.* C), 3568 f (-t D), 3591 f (-t D), 3928 f (swelt † D), 4894 f (shett D); -e, 3211 (-t D, schette C).⁵ [Inf. shette, 4391 f, etc.]

Rhyme words.—lette n. (3591), sette *pret.* 3 sg. (2175, 4894), fette *pret.* 3 sg. (3563), yn knette *pret.* 3 sg. (3928), er he lette (2175), thow ne lette (3563).

soughthe (A.S. sécan, sólhte), 388 f (-t D), 5361 f (-t D, sout C), 5608 f (-t D, southe C), 6815 f (-t D), 7600 f (-t D), 8120 f (-t D); bi-, bysoughthe, 3422 f (-t D, besoute C), 5331 f (bes C, besowte D);

¹ Supply [kima] in D.

² "Ne semed it that she of hym roughte." I cannot scan this line.

³ On (of John's) his by-halne (half BDG John's, halne C, halne Cp.) which (-e G, with B, om. C John's) that (om. D) vs alle soule (soule vs alle CGCp. John's, same vs al B, vs soule hath D) sende.—The correct reading is doubtless: On his halune which that soule vs alle sende.

⁴ Supply [we] in A.

⁵ In D read gan for to.
soughte, 7935 (-t B, thouzt † D); bi-, bysoughte, 2439 (-t D, besouyte C), 7816 (-t B, besouyte C, besouzt D). [Inf. seche, -en, seke, -en, be- (by-) seche (-seke).] 1 cf. 704 f, 707, 763, 886 f, 2919 f, 3424 f, 4349 f, 4630 f, 4793 f, 5605, 6472 f, 7160 f, 7220 f, 7495 f, 7901 f, 8081 f, 8211 f.]

Rhyme words.—thoughte A.S. þohte (388, 5361, 6815), A.S. þohte (7600), wroughte (7600), roughte (5331, 5608, 6815), broughte (5331), oughte (3422), —all ind. 3 sg.; aboughte, ind. 3 pl. (5120). [Var. C souyte, besouyte; D soght, besought, bysoght.]

spede (A.S. ge-spédan, ge-spéde), 482 f (-d D), 2034 f (-d D), 2388 f (-d D), 4365 f (spede C); spede hym, 4882 (spedde BD); speddé he, 1771 (-[ðe] D). [Inf. spede, 4737 f.]

Rhyme words.—vnto bedde (2034), abedde (2388), bledded ind. (?) 3 sg. (2034), subj. 3 sg. (4936), olde ind. 3 sg. (4936), droide ind. 3 pl. (4932).

spardde (A.S. spræðan, späröde), ouer-spradde here (poss. sg.), 1854 (-d CD); ouer-sprd † the sonne, 1852 D (ouer-sprat pres. 3 sg. ABC). [Inf. spredce, 1139 f.]

stente, stynte (A.S. for-styntan, ge-stetan, *-stynite, *-stente); stente, 273 f (-t D), 736 f (stynyt D), 2 1683 f (-t D), 7815 f, 7848 f; stent, 2716 † f D (l. wente); stente, 1492 (styte B, stint CD); stynte, 1554 [-[e] D, stinte C), 1961 f (-t D, stente BC), 4080 f (stint D, stente B); stynte, 2941 (-t D), 7291. [Inf. stynte, -en, cf. 2446, 4732, etc.]

Rhyme words.—entente (736, 1961, 4080), wente ind. 3 sg. (273, 1683, 7848), sente ind. 3 sg. (7815).

tauhte (A.S. tæcan, tæhte), 7379 f (-t D, tauzt C) (; ouer rauhte pret. ind. 3 sg.). [Inf. teche, -en, cf. 2666 f, 4234, 6137 f.]

thoughte (A.S. þeçcan, þohte), 386 f (-t BD), 497 f (-t BD), 1063 f (-t D), 2000 f (-t CD), 3307 f (-t BCD), 4640 f (-t D), 5385 f (fele † C), 6816 f (-t D), 7141 f (-t D); e somwhat, 1784 ([-e] BD, thoute C); -e she, 3825 ([-e] D, thought[e] [s]he B); -e thus, 1541 ([-e] BD), 1695 ([-e] BD, seyde † C); -e this, 6866 ([-e] D; B †); [e] now, 1364 ([-e C, [e] not 3 D thougth[e] not 1 B) (1st pers.); [-e] best, 2667 (-e BC) 4; [-e] wel, 1786 ([-e] ferst D, -e C); -e, 361 (-t D, -e so C), 2381 (-t BD), 3483 (-t BD), 7535 (-t BD); thought (before vowels), 1472 (-e B, now † C), 1749 (-e C, -t (?) D), 2839 ([-e] † a D, seydé † o C), cf. 7935 † D; bithought on, 545 (-t (hym) of D, thouzte C †); thoughte he, 276 (-t D), 380 (-t BD, seyde † C), 1352 (-t BD), 2263 (-t D, thoute C), 3918 (-t B, -† it D), 7548

1 Seke, seche, by-seche, by-seke, are all vouched for by the rhyme words, which include speche, eké, meke, etc.
2 In C read with for why.
3 Read now.
4 Supply [?] in D.
§ 99. of Chaucer's Troilus. 239

(-t † amys D, seydē † he C); -t he, 3539 (-e C), 5026 † D.—thoughte || that, 3310 (tought B, thoght † althogh D); thouhte || ther, 5614 (-ghte B, -3tē CD); thought || whan, 3418 ([e] B, -e C). thoughtē his, 2035 ([û] B, -e C, -t † that (†) D).—thoughte || how, 3282 (-t BD). (Cf. also the variants under thoughte = pihtē.) [Inf. thynke (: drynke), thenke (: synke, swynke), by-thynke, by-thenke (: I thynke, var. thynke), thenken (not in rhyme), athynken (not in rhyme), cf. 405 f, 975, 1859, 1868 f, 2340, 2499 f, 4536 f, 6154 f, 6636 f, 7241.]

Rhyme words.—roughte subj. (†) 3 sg. (497), ind. 3 sg. (6816), wroughte ind. 3 sg. (1063, 4640), pl. (3307, 5385), broughte ind. 3 sg. (7141), pl. (2000), soughte ind. 3 sg. (386, 6516), besoughte ind. 3 pl. (5385), oughte ind. 3 pl. (2005). [Var. BCD thouht; CD thouhte; D thouht.]

thoughte (A.S. þynce, þuhte), 3105 f (-t CD), 7223 f (-t BCD) 3, 7597 f (he thought D); -e felan, 4539 ([e] B, -t † thei D; C †); thoughte by, 3237 (thoughte B, -3t[e] C, thought[e] D); thought[e] tho, 3986 (-e C); -e, 6337 (-t BD), 7997 (-t BD), cf. 2683 † D; -e he, 2411 (-t B, -e pers' l. C, -t pers' l. D); -e hym, 3909 (-t BD) 4; -e his, 6893 (-t BD), 7563 (-t BD); -t he, 502 (-e † his (?) pers' l. C); -t hym, 294 (-e BC; D †), 5026 (-e BC, thought he pers' l. D); -t here (poss. sg.), 2193 (-e B, -e pers' l. C; D †); thoughte † that, 306 (-e he B, -t † he D, -e for C). [Inf. thynke, 405 f.]

Rhyme words.—roughte ind. 1 sg. (3105), ind. 3 sg. (7597), ind. 3 pl. (7223), soughte ind. 3 sg. (7597), the oughte oughte sens. sense (3105). [Var. CD thouht; C thouhte; D thouht.]

thraste (A.S. þrestan, þreste), 2240 f (-t C, cast † D) (: faste adv.); cf. thriste, threste, § 100, p. 241 and note.

tolde (A.S. tellan, tealdē), 261 f (-d BD) (1st pers.), 312 f, 2019 f (-d D) (1st pers.), 2051 f (-d D), 2275 f (-d D), 5889 f, 6920 f (-d B), 7012 f, 7569 f (1st pers.), 7616 f, 7875 f; [-e] tales, 3456 (-e C, -d † the tale D); [-e] she, 7854 (-e D); -e, 613 B (C (?), -d D, telle † A); -d ek, 7848 (-e D, -e C †), 7855 (-e CD); -e here (dat.), 7815 (-d B); -d hym, 2580, 3650 (-e BC), 4081 (-e D, tok † C); toldē || who (or tolde who), 1656 (-[e] or -d BCD) 5; who told † yow, 3684 (-e hym B, -d him C, D (?). [Inf. telle, -en, cf. 142 f, 260, 794, 3155, etc.]


1 Supply [Dut] in C.
2 Perhaps -e (-[e]).
3 Perhaps subjunctive: "To asken here yf that here straunge thoughte. Strictly, the verb is plural here.
4 Supply [a] in A.
5 "Or he me tolde (told BCD) who myght (-e BC) ben his leche."
wendes (A.S. wénan, wénde), 447 f, 1497 f (-d D)¹, 2254 (went[e] D), 3644 (-[e] D)¹, 4182 CE (en pl. AB), 4382 f, 7056 f¹, 7974 f (-d D)¹, 8011; -e, 7627 (-d D)¹, 8048 (C †)¹; -d it, 3918 (-e BC, went D). [Inf. wene, -e, cf. 3333 A, 6775.]

Rhyme words.—brende ind. 3 sg. (447, 4382), defende inf. (1497), amende inf. (7056, 7974).

wente (A.S. wendan, wende), 272 f (C †), 317 f, 1147 f, 1681 f (went † p.p. D), 1898 f (-t C), 2625 f (-t C), 2716 f (-t C), 2810 f (-t C), 3394 f, 3627 f (-t C)¹, 4423 f (-t C), 4749 f¹, 5012 f (-t D †), 5096 f (-t C), 5516 f (-t C), 5882 f (-t C), 6363 f, 6454 f (-t C), 6649 f (-t C), 6966 f (-t C), 7384 f (-t C), 7471 f (-t C), 7555 f (-t C), 7583 f, 7666 f (-t C), 7850 f (-t C). In all the above, except 2716, 6454, 7850, D has went; cf. also 3329 † D. Before consonants,—wente, 2487 † C (for went he), 2576 † C, 2622 (-[e] C, -t † to (?) D), 6988 (-[e] D), 8189; -e, 163 (-e BC, went † every D). Before vowels, —ABC have regularly wente, D has regularly went: cf. 1285, 2301, 2576, 2726, 3068; but,—went, 1684 A, 2301 C. Before h (in he, his, here),—-e, 2487 (-t D, -ê tho C), 7937 (-t D); went, 267 (-e BC), 1055, 1897 (om. † B, -ê for C)², 2264 (-e BC). [Inf. wende, cf. 2578 f, 3458 f, etc.]

Rhyme words.—descente (317), wente, went[e] n. (1147, 1898, 3627, 6966, 7555), tente n. (7384), potente n. (7583), entente, -[e] (2810, 3394, 4423, 5516, 5882, 7471, 7666), rente n. (4749), stente pret. ind. 3 sg. (272, 1681, 7850), mente pret. ind. (and subj. f) 3 sg. (317, 5012, 5906), rente pret. ind. 3 sg. (6363), hente pret. ind. 3 sg. (6454), sente pret. ind. 3 sg. (6649, 7471), blente caecavit (7555), shente pret. ind. 3 sg. (7583), glente pret. ind. 3 pl. (5882), assente inf. (2625, 2716).

wroughte (A.S. wyrcean, worhte), 1064 f (-t D), 3103 f (-t CD, I-wroughte † B) (1st pers.), 4641 f (-t CD), 7356 f (-t D), 7599 f (-t D); wroughte, 4007 C (-t D, bought AB). [Inf. werke, -en, -yn, cf. 380, 2486, 4067, 4480 (werychyn C), 4836, 4899, 7356.]

Rhyme words.—thoughte A. S. póhte ind. 3 sg. (1064, 4641), thoughte A.S. þóhte ind. 3 sg. (3103, 7599), soughte ind. 3 sg. (7599), oughte 3 sg. pres. sense (3103, 7566). [Var. B wroughte; CD wrouȝt; C wrouȝte; D wroght.]

§ 100. A few Indicative Preterites (first and third persons) of Old Norse verbs of the First Weak Conjugation occur in the Troilus. With these may be associated several other verbs that form their preterites in -te, but are not found in Anglo-Saxon or Old Norse.

¹ First Person.
² But in 1897 AD went appears to be pres. 3 sg.
of Chaucer's Troilus.

(a) O.N. first conjugation,—brende (brente), cledde (cladde), hitte, sterte (I), thriste (cf. threste, thraste), trusted (from the noun, cf. O.N. treysta); (b) glente, plighte, swapte, tweyte.

The preterites in this list are all syncopated (-de, -te), except trusted.

Note.—For caste, shapte, see § 101. For deyde, see § 103.

asterte, see sterte.

brende, brente (O.N. breonna, brende; cf. A.S. bærnan, and see ten Brink, § 141), 448 f, 490 f, 3267 f (-d D)¹, 4381 f (D †), 5366 f; -e, 4388 (hent † D); brend hym, 440 (brinde B, brende C, bren (?) D).—brente, 2422 f (-de C, -t D). [Inf. brennen, cf. 5907 f, 6666.]

Rhyme words.—wende pret. ind. 3 sg. (448, 4381), 3 pl. (5366), subj. 3 pl. (490), amende inf. (3267), entende inf. (3267), spende inf. (5366).—sente ind. 3 sg. (-de C, -t D) (2422).

Note.—Ten Brink (§ 170 Z) seems to recognize only brente, not brende, though he registers brend (p.p.) among the corrections, etc., at the end of his book (p. 225).

cledde, cladde (O.N. klæða, klædda; cf. A.S. clāðian, -ode), cledde, 4363 f (cled C) (: spedde ind. 3 sg. : bledde subj. 3 sg.); cladde, 6352 f (: hadde ind. 3 pl.). [Inf. clothen = A.S. clāðian, cf. 7781.]

Note.—Clothed does not occur in the Troilus. Ten Brink (§ 173) notices cladde, but overlooks cledde, though he registers cled, p.p., B. Duch. 252.

glente (cf. Swed. glänta), 5885 f BD (pl. A, glent pl. C) (: entente n. : wente ind. 3 sg.).

hitte (O.N. hitta, hitta), hit hym, 209 A (hitte B); cf. 1284 C.

plighte (pret. of plichen, quasi A.S. * plyccan), 2205 f (-t D, plighte C) (: myghte ind. 3 sg.). [Inf. plukke (A.S. pluccian), cf. 6065.]

sterte (cf. O.N. sterta, sterta), 2179 f, 4755 f (-t D) (1st pers.), 6073 f (sterede † C), 6563 f (i-stert † p.p. C), 7899 f; -e, 1532 (-t D, stirte C); vp stirte, 4845 (vp sterte C, stert † vp D)²; asterte, 2939 f (asferte † B, ouersterte C, astert D), 3912 f (-t D), 7855 f (-t C); me asterte, 1043 f (me stert D, may † sterte B). [Inf. sterte, 2719 f, 3791 f.]

Rhyme words.—herte n. (2179, 2939, 3912, 4755, 6073, 6563, 7855, 7899), sherte n. (4755), smerte pres. subj. 3 sg. (2179), inf. (1043), smerte adj. pl. (6563), connerte inf. (6073).

swapte (cf. Eng. swoop, sweep), -e him, 4907 (swappid (?) D, schop C).³

thriste, thriste, threste (O.N. prýsta, -ta); thriste, 4416 f (thryste B, thrust C, thirst D) (: keste ind. 3 sg., kyste B, kyst C, kist D); threste, 4916 f (thryst C) (: to reste inf. : breste inf.); thraste, 2240 f (-t C, cast † D) (: faste adv.).

¹ Line out of order in ABC, but easily emended.
² "The noyse of peple vp stirte thanne at onys."
³ Read him scluen for him self in AD. Then read swappid in D.
**Observations on the Language**

Note.—Thriste, 4416 f, and thraste, 2240 f, have the meaning of thrust; thruste that of the A.S. prystan. Forms from O.N. prysta and forms from A.S. prystan appear to have become confounded.

trusted (from the noun; cf. O.N. treysta, treysta), -ed most, 7611 (trostedē C) (1st pers.). [Inf. tryste, triste, cf. 692 f, 3100 f, 3758 f, 4069 f, 8029 f; vntriste, cf. 3681 f; trust[e], cf. 1576; trusten, mystrusten, cf. 688, 690, 6132, etc.]

twyste (cf. A.S. -twiste, sbst., and M.L.G. twisten), -e 4916 (twiste BD).

§ 101. The following Indicative Preterites (first and third persons) of Anglo-Saxon verbs of the Second Weak Conjugation occur in the Troilus (cf. Child, § 53; ten Brink, §§ 172-3).

answērēde (-swerde, -swerd), asked, brydled, called, cursed, flekered, folwede, gladede (-ed), herkened, hied, hunteđe, liked, loked (-ed), louede (-ed), made (cf. pl. makkedēn), opened, pleyde, putte, refte (raftē), showed, thonked, twyghte, welcomed. In the following alphabetical list are included also (a) from the Old Norse second declension,—caste, gayned, shapte, wanted, (b) four words of Germanic origin, not found in Anglo-Saxon, that form preterites after the analogy of the second declension,—bekked (see the word), houede, lakked, poked (!).

Syncopated preterites in -de, -te, after the analogy of the first conjugation, are answērēde (-swerde), caste (O.N.), made, pleyde, putte, refte (raftē), shapte (O.N.), twyghte. The other preterites of this declension end in -ed, -ede, -ede: no case of -edē occurs.

Several verbs of the first declension form unsyncopated preterites on the analogy of the second. For these, see ayled, demede, cussed (s.v. kyste), myssed, nedēdē (!), reynede, semed (§ 99). Cf. also trusted (from the noun, cf. O.N. treysta, pret. -ta) (§ 100).

**Note 1.**—For cledde, ciade, see § 100.

**Note 2.**—For the weak preterite walkēdē from the strong verb walken (A.S. wālcēn), see § 103. For quaked, quok (A.S. cwacian, -ode), see § 103, note 2.

answered † herte C), cf. 5202 CD (below); -swèred, 4005 (-swarde B, -swèred him C, -swerیدe him D), 4051 (-rde BC, -rیدe D), 4334 (-rде B, -rید D, -rید † and C), 5302 (-rде C, -rде hym B, -rید him D), 6847 (-rде B, -rید[e] D, -rیدe C †). Before vowels,—answerde, 4498 (-rде B, -rید C, -rید D), 5042 (-rде BCD), 5783 (-rде BC, -rید D), 5897 (-swerde B, -swerید C, -swerید D), 7638 (-rде BC, -rید D); answered, 2507 (-rید C, -rید D †), 2703 B (-r[d]e A, r[d]e C, -rید D), 6686; answered, 2530 (-rде B, -rید C, -rید D), 3767 (-rیدe BC, -rید D), 4019 (-rде B, -rیدe C, -rید D), 6190 (-rде B, -rیدe C, -rید D), 6777 (-swerde B, -swerید C †, -swerید D), 7491 (-swerde B, -swerید CD), 7533 (-rید BD, -rید C); he answered and, 5097 (-rید B, he answered C, he answered D). Before h,—answerède hym, 5202 (-rде B, -rید Troylus C, -rید[e] T. D); -swèred hym, 2030 (-rде B, -rید[e] do CD), 3974 (-rیدe BC, -rید † as D), 7230 (-rде B, -swerیدè † C, -rید D). answerèd || yf, 829 AB (-swerید[e] D, -swerید 3yf C), 2136 (-swerید B, -swerid if D, -sweride Pandarus C). [Inf. answerère, 2070.]

Rhyme words.—yerde n. (737), ferde ind. 3 sg. (737, 4369), herde pret. ind. 3 sg. (1982, 2187, 3643, 4459, 4840, 5659, 8088), pret. subj. 3 sg. (1030).

asked (A.S. áscian, áxian, -ode), (i.) 3593 (axen † B, sedyé ho C, seid[e] ho D), 6471 (aixed B, axed[e] C, axed D); (ii.) asked him, 3411 (axed B, axed † C, axid D), 5888 (axed[e] C (?)); axed hym, 7587 BD (asketh A, axé C).¹ [Inf. aske, -en, axe, -en, cf. 1232, 1979, 3700, 5217, 5334, etc.]

bekked (cf. A.S. biecnan, bécnan, I., later béacnian, -ode, II.), b. on, 2345 (-ede C, -yd D).²

brylded (A.S. ge-briddlian, -ode), b. youre, 6340 A (bridèled BD).

called (A.S. ceallian, -ode, from O.N. kalla, kallaða), c. euere, 541 (clepid † D, callyd in C). [Inf. calle, 902 f, etc.]

caste (O.N. kasta, -aða), 314 f (-t D), 1227 f (-t D), 1284 f (-t BC † D), 1733 (-t adoun CD)³, 2344 f (-t D), 2442 f (-t † inf. D), 3939 f (-t CD), 5184 f (-t C), 8183 f AB ⁴; cast †, 2240 f D (thraste AB, thrust C); -e, 75 (-t BD), 1492 (-t CD), 4696 (-t BD); cast (before vowels), 1159 (-e B), 7290 (-e BCD); -e he, 726 (-t BD); -e his, 1064 (-t inf. D †), 7292 † D (throwe AB, throwe inf. C); -e hym, 4672 (-t BD); -t here (poss. sg.), 7368 (-e B, kiste D)⁵; cast || how.

¹ In D read wher[of].
² Supply [he] in A.
³ AB read caste down.
⁴ Supply [were] in A.
⁵ Supply [al] in A, and read cy[en].
Observations on the Language

Rhyme words.—faste adv. (1227, 1284, 2240, 2442, 3939, 5184), at the laste (1227, 3939, 5184, 8183), laste ind. 3 sg. (314), paste ind. 3 sg. (2344).

clepid (A.S. cleopian, -ode). See called.
flekered (A.S. flicerian, -ode), flekered ay, 5883 (fliked B, flekerede C, flykered D).

folwede (A.S. folgian, -ode), fol(e)wede, 7379 (folwed B, folwede C, Mowed D). [Inf. folwe, -en, cf. 614, 3903, 5838, etc.]
gayned (O.N. gagna, -afta), 352 (-yd D) (feyned ind. 3 sg.):
destrayned ind. 3 pi.).

gladed, -e (A.S. gladian, -ode), -ede, 173 (-yd D, gladde[d] B); gladed her (eam), 116 (-ede C, -id D, gladded B); gladed hym, 7547 (-ede C, -eth D, gladded B). [Inf. glade, -en, cf. 734, 2064, 2630 f, 2659 f, etc.]

hied (A.S. hégian, -ode), h. not, 2999 (hyed B, hyed her D; C †). [Inf. hye, cf. 3463 f.]
lakked (cf. M. Dutch laken), l. routhe, 2365 (lak of n. CD); l. alwey, 7108 (-id C); -ede here (=her), 7187 (-ed BD). [Inf. lukke, -en, cf. 189, 5607, 6185.]

liked, lyked (A.S. lician, -ode), (i.) liked wel, 2129 (-édé C, -yd D); (ii.) -éd, 2351 (-yd D, they likédé † in C), 6994 (-id C); -éd hire (dat.), 1996 (-yd D, -ede C). [Inf. like, lyke, lyken, cf. 431, 1130, 2655 f, 3455, 6496, etc.]

loked (A.S. lócient, -ode), -ede forth, 7507 C (-ed D (?), -eth AB); -ed, (ii.) 1071 (-yd † D (?)), 1359 (-yd CD), 7073 (-ede C), 7092 (-ede C; B †); -éd he, 2833 (-ede C, -yd D); -éd in to, 2312 (-ede C, -yd D). [Inf. loke, -en, cf. 206, 629, 1350.]
louede (A.S. lufian, -ode), -ede Troylus, 1753 (-yd D, -es B); -ede neuer, 6520 (-ed BD) (1st pers.); -ede so, 7838 (-ed BD); -ed

1 In AB it is possible to read casté ([-ë] A), whether we allow the "extra syllable before the cæsura" or not.
so, 2489 (-yd C, -id D); louèdē || that, 1071 (-èd B, -id D (!)); -èd † the, 8109 D (-èth AB); -ède hym, 2928 (-èd BC, -id D) 1; -ède ek, 4991 (-èd BC, -yd D) (1st pers.). [Inf. loue, -en, cf. 798, 1944, 2854, 3639, etc.; vnlouen, cf. 8061.]

made (A.S. macian, -ode), 312 2, 1137 f, 1585 f (mode † B), 1963 (-è B), 2627 f, 2660 f, 3455 f, 6333, 6440 (-è D), 7415, 7792 (!); -[è], 5598 (-è BCD); -è, cf. 1148, 2160, 3220, 6341, 8203; made his, etc., cf. 479, 1145 (D †), 1153, 1637, 2007, 2253 (-è † her D), 3189, 4070 (-è † D), 6862 (mad(yn) hym C), 6968, 7406; -è † suche, 4070 D; -è this, 5324 (mad C); -è the, 7878; -è † and (!), 2170 CD. Maked seems not to occur, but cf. pl. makkedēn, 4783 B. [Inf. make, -en, cf. 4177, 6825, etc.]

Rhyme words.—glade adj. pl. (1137, 1585, 3455), glade inf. (2827, 2660), lade inf. (2627).

opened (A.S. openian, -ode), opened here herte, 4081 (open B, openid C).

pleyde (A.S. plegian, -ode, North. also plegde), 1067 (pleyed D), 6872 † f D (seyde ABC), 7537 f (pleyede C); pleyde he, 3456 (-ède C, pleyd D). [Inf. pleye, -en, cf. 671 f, 1206 f, 1902, 2599 f, 5122, etc.]

Rhyme words.—seyde (6872 D, 7537), Cresseide (6872 D).

poked (cf. M.L.G. poke)n, p. euere, 2958 (-ède C, puked † B, procurid † D).

putte (A.S. potian, -ode), -e, 2264 (put D); put al, 4027 (putte BD). (Cf. 1985 D †.) [Inf. putten, putte, cf. 6170, 6174 (putṭen B).]

refte, rafte (A.S. réafian, -ode), refte hym, 484 AC (-t B); rafte hir (eam), 7399 D (reste A, ref[t] B, reuyth C). [Inf. reue, -en. cf. 188, 2744 f.]

shapt[e] (O.N. skapa, skapaða; skepja, skapði; cf. A.S. sceippan, sceppan, scóp, O.N. skapa, skóp), shapt herē (eam), 2642 (-è B, schop C, schop(e) D (!)). For shop, cf. 207, 1146, 3393, 5617. [Inf. shape, cf.: 3038.]

shewed (A.S. scéawian, -ode), (i.) 286 (-ède C, -yd D), 3 7383 (-èth B, -ède C); (ii.) 487 (semede † C). [Inf. shewe, -en, cf. 5943 f, 5953, 6052, 6994 f, 8057.]

thonked (A.S. þancian, -ode), (i.) 124 (thankked B, thankedē C, thankyd † oft D), 3316 (-id D, thanked B, thankedē C), 6546

¹ Supply [and] in D.
² "He neither chere (schyr C, cher G) ne (om. BCDG) made ne word (-è BG) tolde."
No note in Austin. Are we to read "He neither cherë made ne word ne (or he ?) tolde"?
³ 9-syl., except in D, which has an ungrammatical she before the verb.
§ 102. The following Indicative Preterites (first and second persons) of Anglo-Saxon verbs of the Third Weak Conjugation occur in the Troilus,—hadde, leuede, seyde (cf. Child, § 53 ; ten Brink, § 162).

hadde (A.S. habban, hæfde), 92 (had[de] BD), 477 f (-d D), 2435 f (-d CD), 3517 (-d † not D), 3712 A (B † ; -e I C, -d y D), 1 4231 ABC, 6567 f, 7008 (hadæ † C, had[de] D), 7389 ([de] D); cf. 2634 † C, 4424 † D; hadde, 1649 (-d B; D (?)) 1, 3557 (-d D) 1, 4937, 7745 1, etc.; had (before vowels), 6989 (hadde BCD), 2, 8017 (-d CD, haddæ † rent B); hadde, 1718 C (hadde AB, had [a] D), 4635 † C (had † D, held AB); hadde (before he, his, hym, here (poss. sg.), here-vp-on), cf. 89, 188, 304, 663, 1992, 2783 (hade A), 3377, 4069, 5335, 7316, 7467 ; had hym, 2634 (-dē † preiȝd C), 6834 (-dē † hym BD, -dē † sent C) 3; hadde herd, 5007 (adde B); had herd, 750 (-de BC), 1002 (-de C), 5329 (-de BC); but,—haddë horn, 1727 (-dë hed C; D †); cf. hadæ † it, 5888 C; haddë ay, 7074 (-[de] B, -e C, om. D); -ë † hym, 4069 A (?), 4 6834 † B; -ë † his, 6927 C; hauede † in (l), 5155 C.—haddë, 500 (hadæ C; D †), 1687 (-d BD), 2355 (-dë BC, -[de] D), 5 4835 (had BD); cf. 132 † A, 2229 † C, 7317 † C; hadæ, 89 † C, 1992 † C; had (before consonants), 7102 (-de C) 6; cf. 663 † (? D, 6927 † D, 7229 † D. [Inf. haue, hauen, han, cf. 13, 120 f, 122, 4305 f, etc., etc.]

Rhyme words.—gladde adj. pl. (2435), madde adj. pl. (6567), madde inf. (477).

leuede (A.S. libban, lifgan, lifde, L.W.S. lifede, liofode), -ede yn, 5155 (-d D, liuede B, hauede † C) 7; liuëd in, 5142 B (-d (?), lene

1 First Person. 2 Supply [seye] in D. 3 9-syl. in C. 4 Read irst[e] cause and hadde hym. 5 Or (? ) ne haddë she AB. 6 First person. 7 First Person. 9-syl., if read as suggested: "I that leuëde yn lust and in plesaunce."
of Chaucer's Troilus.


seyde (A.S. seccan, sægde, séde), cf. 457 f, 722 f, 1005 f, 1184 f, 1964 f, 2159 f (seyde C), 2318 f, 2429 f¹, 2500 f, 3894 f, 3972 f, 4016 f², 4263 f, 4313 f, 4814 f, 4841 f, 4885 f, 5007 f, 5039 f, 5489 f, 5536 f, 5623 f, 5810 f, 5915 f, 6315 f, 6680 f, 6869 f, 6872 f, 6885 f, 7052 f, 7097 f, 7233 f, 7295 f (seyde A), 7309 f, 7337 f, 7396 f, 7484 f, 7534 f, 7536 f, 7607 f, 7787 f, 7803 f, 8039 f, 8076 f, 8093 f; seyde, 752 ([-e] D)⁵, 1361 [-e] D, sayd[e] B),⁴ 2037 [-e] D), cf. 117, 330, 822, 870, 877, 1039, 1103, 1336, 1340, 1587, 1591, 1695 \(\uparrow\) C, 1970, 2057 CD, 2060, 2176, 2181 \(\uparrow\) C, 2215, 2228, 2248, 2250, 2267, 2284, 2338, 2362, 2378, 2395, 2404, 2444, 2509, 2686 (seyde A), 2690, 2692, 2713, 2959, 3202, 3413, 3418, 3490², 3510², 4490, 5042, 5097 BCD, 6418², 6686; seyde (before th), cf. 1174, 1548, 1998, 2025, 2130, 2205 C, 3065, 3420, 3471, 4498, 5036, 7318; seyde, cf. 397, 507, 583, 873, 1052, 1294, 1412, 1494, 1912 AB, 2057 AB, 2162, 4641, 5097 A, 6421, 7146, 7549, 8087; [-e], 5188 (o CD); -e he, 491 (d BD)⁵, cf. 380 C, 561, 1164, 1294 C, 1599, 2130 C, 4429, 7594; -e hym, 7790, cf. 195 C, 1230; -e here (dat.), 2241 (O B, -e caste C, [-e] cast D)⁶, 3596 (-d D); seyd here (dat.), 2205 (-e thus C, [-e] thus D), cf. 2713 D; -e how, 5419 (-d B, om. \(\uparrow\) C), 5831. (In almost all the cases so far cited D omits final -e.)

seyde || who, 1736 (-e ho C, -d ho D)⁷; seyde || lord, 2028 (-d D, -e C)⁸; seyde farwel, 4367 (seyde C); -e \(\uparrow\) forst, 5349 D (quod ABC); -e \(\uparrow\) to for, 6418 C (1st pers.); -e || nought, 7146 B (-e AD; C \(\uparrow\)); -e \(\uparrow\) to, 7315 C; seid \(\uparrow\) than, 2710 D; seid \(\uparrow\) wol, 2713 D; seid \(\uparrow\) god, 2798 D. The construction of seyd in seyd welawe, 3146 (sayd C) is very curious.

seydè (hiatus), —seydè he, 421 (-[e] D)⁹, cf. 7548 \(\uparrow\) C; seydè \| em, 2244 (-e hym B, -d hym D); seydè \(\uparrow\) hirè (dat.), 2241 B. [Inf. seye, seye, sey, seyn, cf. 492 f, 512, 574 f, 672 f, 3095, 3280, 7740, etc., etc.; see § 119, XIII.

Rhyme words.—Criseyde (457, 1005, 1964, 2318, 2500, 3894, 4016, 4263, 4813, 4814, 4841, 5007, 5039, 5439, 5536, 5622, 5810, 5915, 6315, 6590, 6668, 6672, 6855, 7052, 7097, 7233, 7295, 7309, 7396, 7484, 7607, 7787, 7803, 8040, 8076, 8093), mayde n. (1964), refreyde inf. (2429), breyde,
abreyde inf. (5007, 6885), vpbrayde inf. (8076), deyde ind. 3 sg. (1184, 4814, 7337), -de, -ede subj. 1, 3 sg. (457, 4016), pleyde ind. and subj. (?) 3 sg. (1005, 7534, 7536), preyde ind. 3 sg. (2159), leyde ind. 1, 3 sg. (3894, 3972, 4814, 4885, 7283, 7896, 7803), seyde ind. 3 sg. (6868, 6872, 7584, 7536), breyde, abreyde ind. 3 sg. (722, 7607). [Var. CD seide; D seid.]

§ 103. Several verbs that are strong in Anglo-Saxon show weak preterites in the *Troilus* (cf. Child, § 54, a; ten Brink, § 167).

(a) Syncopated preterites in -de, -te: breyde, fledde, higte, lepte, loste, sighte (sighed siked), slepte, smerte, wepte (to which add drede, sometimes weak in A.S., and deyde, O.N.); (b) unsyncopated preterites in -ed: lyed (q. v.), walked (q. v.).

Note 1.—For shapte, see § 101. For radde, see § 99. Swell, 3928 f D, is an error for shette.

Note 2.—Quake (inf. quake, cf. 2406 f, 3384 f, 4042 f, 6619 f), A.S. ecacman, -ode, shows a strong preterite quake, 6399 (O.O-B, quake(e) D), 7289 f (-e) D, quake(e) B, quake(e), 2935 (quake B, quake C, quake(e) D) 1, cf. ten Brink, § 152; but the weak preterite quaked does not occur in the *Troilus*. *Rynge* (inf. rynge, cf. 4079 f), A.S. kringan, hringde, has pret. rong, cf. 2700 2, 4567.

abreyde, see breyde.

breyde (A.S. bregdan, brægd, bræd), 7606 f; abreyde, 724 f (vpbrayd D); she abreyde, 5874 f (she brayde B, sche brayd C). 3 (For strong pret. abrayd, see *B. Duch.* 192, *Ho. F.* 110, and cf. ten Brink, § 140.) [Inf. breyde, cf. 4892 f, 5010 f; abreyde, cf. 3955 f, 6883 f.]

Rhyme words.—Crasyde (5874, 7606), seyde ind. 3 sg. (724, 7606).

deyde (O.N. dei̇ja, dó, late deẏsa), 56 f (deyed B), 875 f (-d D, deyede BC), 1186 f (-ed B, -ede C, -d D), 4013 f (-ede B, deiede C, drede D), 4813 f (deyde B, deyede C, deide D), 5094 f (dyed B, deyede C, deyed D), 7339 f (deyede C, deyd D, seyde B), 8197 f (deyed B). [Inf. deye, dye, cf. 573 f, 728 f, 758 f, 1027 f, 1257 f, 1524 f, 1526 f 4, 2160 f, etc., etc.; deyen, cf. 306 f, 1412 f, 8127, etc.]

Rhyme words.—Crisyde (56, 875, 4013, 4813, 8197), seyde ind. 1, 3 sg. (1186, 4013, 4813, 7339), subj. (?) 3 sg. (5094), deyde subj. (?) 3 sg. (5094).

dredde, dradde (A.S. on-dråadan, on-drad, sometimes -drådde), dredde, 1959 (dredel I C, dred D), 4489 (dred BD) 6; -e hire (acc.), 2165 (dradde BC, drad D); dradde ay, 7933 (dredde inf. BCD); -e hire (acc.), 1540 (dredde B, dredde C, dredde inf. (?) D). [Inf. drede, -en, cf. 84 f, 252, 6748.]

fledde (A.S. fleóin, fleáih), 7561 f BCD (fledde p.p. A) (: bledde ind.

1 Supply [ek] in D. 2 Supply [hem] in CD.

3 I breyde, 7625 f, is apparently present.

4 Noteworthy is the occurrence of dye in 1524 f (crye ind. 1 sg.: vilonye) followed by deye (seye ind. 1 sg.) in 1526 f.

5 After al (= although).

6 In an indirect question.
The ed byhight, cf. ten Brink, § 135; highte promisit, 7999 f (hyzt C, hight D); byhight, byhyght promisit, 6873 f (be- D, bihighte B, behyzt C), 7567 f (-highte B, behyzt C, behight D).—highte vocatus est, 69 D (hyghte B, highht A), 2701 ([e] D, hihte C f); so, with ellipsis of the relative,—thei hadde a relik hight (heet B, hyzt C) Palladion, 153. Cf. hight Elýsos, vocatur, 5452 AD (height B), and,—highte vólturis, vocantur, 788 (-en B, -yn D, hyzt C). Hatte (A.S. hátte, used both as pres. and as pret.) also occurs: The owle ek which that hatte Escaphilo, 6682 (hette B, hihte C, het D); How that ye louen sholde on that hatte Horaste, 3639 (hat D (?)). For heet, vocatus est, see 153 B (above).


lost(e) (A.S. for-léosan, -léas),-[e] specche, 5813 (-e CD, lefte B); -e his, 441 (-t BD). [Inf. lese, -en, cf. 4850 f, 7161.]

lyëd (A.S. léogan, léah), lyëd f loud, 2162 D (ley ful AC, leigh ful B).2 [Inf. lye, lyen, cf. 4775 f, 7887 f, 7890.]

sighte, sighed, sikede (A.S. síc, sác); sighte, syghte, 3922 f (-t CD), 5376 f D, 5879 f (-t D, seyt C), 7996 f (-t CD, sigchte B); sight[e] sore, 5783 (-e B, sighed D, seyde f C); sight and, 4313 (-e B, seyt C, siȝed D), 6421 (-e B, syheid C, sighed D).—sighed lest, 279 (sykyd CD); -ed sore, 3898 (-id D, sight[e] B, sikide C), 5559 (sighte B, -[e] D; C f).—siked sore, 3814 (-yd C, syghid D);3 syked sore, 5378 (syshed C, syhed D)4; syked for, 7078 (sighte B, sighed ekę D). [Inf. syke, cf. 596 f, 751, 827 f, 1513 f, 1969 f, 2658 f, 2900 f, 3654 f, 4012 f, 4202 f.]

slepte (A.S. slépan, slép, North. slépte, W.S. sometimes onslepte), slepte, 7602 (slep C); cf. pl. slepten al, 3588 (-yn C, slepyn6 D). But,—slep, (i.) 7803 (slep[e] B (?), slepté (?) D, no f word C); (ii.) 2010 (-e) BD. [Inf. slepe, -en, cf. 1998, 2183, 3262 f, 3499, 3509, 4378.]

smerte (A.S. smeortan, * smearte), 2015 f (-t D, sinerte f C) (: herte n.). [Inf. smerte, cf. 1042 f, 2373 f, 4024 f, 6110 f, 6280 f.]

1 Indirect discourse. 2 In D supply [that]. 3 After al-though. 4 Indirect discourse, 9-syl. verse. 5 Rhymes with endite, inf., and the white. 6 Perhaps intended by the scribe for a present.
walked (A.S. walcan, wéole), -edę די, 7585 C (-ed D, -eth AB); -edę די, 1908 C (-eth AB, -ith D). But,—welk, (i.) 7598 (welk(e) B, walked C, walked D)¹; (ii.) I welk alone, 1602 (-e B, walkyd D).² [Inf. walke, cf. 7029 f.]

Note.—Ten Brink (§ 134) remarks that walken is “ausschliesslich schwach flecirtiert.”

wept (A.S. wepan, wéop), 5015 f (kept ind. 3 sg.); wepte sore, 1647 (-[e] D)³; -e, 5383 (-e for C די, -e for D); wept || bothe, 7088 (wepid C); -e she, 7409 (wep C).—But,—weep nought, 5800 (wep(e) B, wepyn די, -eth D); wep || ful, 7945 (wepte BCD); wep || as, 2957 (-e) D, wepte C. [Inf. wepe, -en, cf. 5591, 6445, 7598 f, etc.]

§ 104. A few Romance verbs show syncopated preterites in -de, -te, after the analogy of the First Weak Conjugation (cf. Child, § 53; ten Brink, § 180, 182). aspyde, 2337 f (-piede BC) (: ryde inf.); aspide, 6902 f (espyed B, asspie de C, espie D) (: ryde inf.).—aspydę wel, 2927 (-pliëd B, -pyd D). [Inf. espye, espie, aspye, aspie, aspien, espyen, cf. 1734 f, 2592 f, 3415 f, 3677 f, 3977, 4815 f, 5886 f, 6544 f, 7177 f, etc.]

coughte (O. Fr. cachier), 1533 f (kaughte B, caughte C, caught D) (: he raughte pret. ind.); -e, 280 (cauhte C, caght D); caught his, 7917 (-e B, -t D, cauhte? C די).—kaught [e] first, 6930 (caught[e] BD, cauhte C). [Inf. kecche, 4217 f A.]

cride, 5875 f (cried D, cryede BC), 6568 f (cried BD, crye de C); cryde loude, 7868 (cried BD, cryde C).—cride, 729 (criéde B, cryede C, cryed D), 6579 (cried BD, cryede C), 7607 (criede BC, cried D); cri de his, 8036 (cried BD, cryede C); criéd a, 5415 (cryéd BD, cryëde די C). [Inf. crie, crye, cryen, cf. 806, 1485, 3864 f, 5887 f, etc.]

Rhyme words.—glide inf. (5875), Cupide (5875, 6568), Cipryde (6568).
hurte -e, 1284 (-t D, hitte C די).—hurt || a, 6713 (hirt C, hurt || a) tymë D).
paste, 1483 f (at last די D), 2345 f (passede C : caste C, past D).—passed nought, 456 (-edę C, -yd D); -edę forth, 1639 (-ed BC, -id D). [Inf. pase, pace, passen, cf. 41 f, 371 f, 847, 1165 f, 2931 f, 3062 f, 4114 f, etc.; trespase, cf. 4017.]

Rhyme words.—at the laste (1483), caste pret. ind. 3 sg. (2345).

¹ Indirect discourse. ² In D supply [that]. ³ Indirect discourse.
preyde, 2687 f (preyede C, prayd D)\(^1\), 4799 f (preyede C), 6100 f (preyede C, preyd D); preyede, preyed, 2157 f (preyde B, preyed C, prayd D), 4876 f (preyde B, preyed C, prayd D)\(^2\); preyede hem, 2786 (-ed B, preyed C, prayed D).\(^3\) —preyde here (acc.), 6480 (preyde || sche C †), preyed she (!) D. —prayde † god, 5400 D (bad ABC).\(^4\) [Inf. preyde, preyen, preyte, -en, prey, cf. 48, 2521 (!?)] 2841 f, 2920 f, 2926, 6678, etc.\(^5\]

Rhyme words.—Criseyde (2687, 4799, 4876, 6100), leyde ind. 3 sg. (4799), seyde ind. 3 sg. (2157), withseyde pret. subj. (!?) 3 sg. (4876).

§ 105. Most verbs of Romance derivation make their preterites singular in -ed, -ede, -ede, without syncope (cf. Child, § 53; ten Brink, § 179).

acceptid it, 6549 C (-eth AB, accepte † hit D).
acussed, 2166 f (acussed C, accusid D) (: excused p.p.).
alteréd his, 4620 (-yd? C, -id D).
argumented he, 377 (-tede B, -tid C, tyd D).\(^6\)
assentlyd, 1002 (-ed B) (: vutormentid p.p.).
avisid her, 2999 † D.
causede, 7938 (-ed CD).
chaunged al, 2555 (-id D, chonged C).
compleyned ek, 2661 (-ede C, -id D).
comytted to, 6367 A (committed D, -eth B).
coueited † so, 6001 D (pres. ABC).
couered she, 2412 (-id D). [Perh. subj.]
dampned al, 8186 AB.
declared this, 2332 A (pl. BC, declarid pl. D).
departed hem, 4508 (-yd C, -id D).\(^7\)
descendede Tydeus 7843 (-ed BD, dessendede C); \(^6\) -ed † doun, 7874 D (pres. ABC), cf. 7222 D †.
desiredé worthinesse, 567 (-ed BD); -ed she, 1229 (-id D); -yred but, 1417 B (pres. ACD).
deynedé sparen, 435 (-ed B, -yd D, -ed to C).\(^7\)
dressede hym, 2913 (-ed B, -id D).
entended bet, 6832 B (-it C †, -eth A, -eth D †).
falsede Troylus, 7416 (-ed BD, -edé † C).
feyned, 354 f (fayned B, -id C, feynid D) (: gayned pret. ind. 3 sg. :

---

\(^1\) First Person. \(^2\) B has hym for hem (as often). \(^3\) Supply [ful] in C. \(^4\) Read (by)gymnyng in D. \(^5\) Supply [the] in C. \(^6\) 9-syl. in A only. \(^7\) In D read in for if.
destrayned \textit{ind.} 3 pl.); -ed here (acc.), 494 (-ede C, -yd D \dagger) \textsuperscript{1}; -ed hym, 7209 (fynède \dagger C).

formede, 2138 (-ed B, fournyd D).\textsuperscript{2}

graunted the, 3181 (-id D); -ed hym, 3422 (-yd D, -id it C)\textsuperscript{3}; -ed on, 7312 (-yd C).\textsuperscript{4}—graunte
de || anoon, 2636 (-ed B, C \dagger; -id he D \dagger).

ymagyned he, 6980.

impressid in, 4385 D.

iaped thus, 6872 (-et B, -ede C, -ed \dagger he D).

obeyed as, 3423 (-ede C).

percede and, 272 B (procede \dagger A, perceyvid \dagger D, perseydyn \dagger pl. C).

peyned hym, 2659 (-id D, p(l)eyned C); -ede hym, 6438 (-ed BD, 

-yde C).\textsuperscript{5}

pleynyd and, 6594 C.

plitede she, 1782 (plyted B, pleytede C, plytid D).

purposed \textsuperscript{[pes]}, 6012 D (en \textit{pres. pl.} ABC).

pûrueyed \dagger thyng, 5728 A (?-ueieth B, -ueyth D).

receyued \dagger vnto, 6944 D. [Hardly to be scanned.]

rehersede \dagger, 2767 C (\textit{inf. ABD}).

remembred me, 7109 (-id C).

scorned hem, 303 (-ede C, -yd D).

sorted hym, 8190 AB.

souned into, 6338. [9-syl.]

streynède \dagger him, 3913 C.

tariéd \dagger so, 7225 D (\textit{pres. ABC}).

tasted, 639 (-id C, -yd D).

torned here (acc.), 5517 (turnede C, turned D); -ed hym, 7509 (turnede C, -ed D); tornede on, 3286 (-ed B, turned C, -id D);
torned he, 6448 (turned BD,\textsuperscript{6} -ede hym \dagger C).

vaylyde \dagger this, 6812 C.

venged \dagger hir (acc.), 7831 D (wrak AB, wrok C).

waytede on, 3376 (-ed B, -id CD).

\textbf{§ 106. The Indicative Second Person Singular of Weak Preterites ends in -est} (Child, \textit{§ 53, c}; ten Brink, \textit{§ 194}).

iapedèst, 508 (-yst C, -ist D), 917 (-ist C, iaped[est] B, ympedist \dagger D).

\textsuperscript{1} In C read [s]he. 

\textsuperscript{2} A is a bad 9-syl. verse.

\textsuperscript{3} Supply [\textit{that}] in D.

\textsuperscript{4} 9-syl.

\textsuperscript{5} Supply [\textit{all}] in B.

\textsuperscript{6} Supply [\textit{that}] in D.
seydest, 909 (-ist CD), 5143 (-ist C); seydestow, seidestow, 912 (-ist thou CD), 917 (-ist thou CD), 918 (-ist thou CD).

preȳest, 910 (-ist C, praydist D, preydest B).
deyest, 3105 (-ist D, dydest B, deȳdist C).
loūest, 3562 (-ist CD).
bysoughtest, 8097 (be-D).
dedest, 3205 (-ist CD, didest C).
koudest, 622 (-yst C, -ist D).
woldest, 5103 (-yst C).

myghtestow, 4924 AB.

But,—thow fette, 3565 f (fet D) (: thou ... lette inv. subj. sg.: shette pret. ind. 3 sg.).

myght, 619 AB, seems meant by the scribe for pret. ind. 2 sg., but C has mayst, D mayst.

The indicative preterite form in -est is often used in constructions properly subjunctive, as in late Anglo-Saxon (cf. Sievers, § 365, Anm. 2; ten Brink, § 195). Thus,—

I nolde that thou ... wendest, 1024 (-yst C, -ist D).
ne haddestow, 4938 (-yst thou C, -ist thou D).
wististow, 4486 C. AB (wistow) and D (wist thou) are unmetrical.

Read, perhaps, wiste thou, and cf. wyste pret. subj. 2 sg., 3211 f (wiste B, wost C †, wy st D): (triste pres. ind'. 1 sg.: lyste pres. subj. 3 sg.).

dorstestow, 767 (durstyst thou C, trist † thou D).
woldest, 4944 (-ist C, wilt † C); cf. 4487, 5103.
nodestow, 4106 (noldestow B, noldist thou CD).
sholdest, 774 (schuldyst C, sholdist D); cf. 6714, 7651.
myghtest, 7890 (mytist C, mightest D †).

Cf. oughtest, 8069; oughtestow, 6908 (aūstist thou C, oughtest thou D).


thow foundē me, 3204 (fond[e] B, fondist C).
thow me bere on, 5425 AB (bare D).

were, 4160 f (you were E) (: there: fere timor): -e, 510 (wont(e)

---

1 Supply [that] in A.
2 Dele (to) in C.
3 Perh. for subjunctive. Supply [thus] in C.
4 Supply [hire] in B; 9-syl. in D.

---
D), 3559¹, 5424 ABD; were woned, 901 (werē wont(e) B, werē † wonē C, were wont D)². But,—was thow, 4996 (art(e) † thou D).

§ 108. In the First and Third Persons Singular of the Indicative Preterite of Strong Verbs no MS. is free from occasional forms in -e, which, however, is of course never pronounced (cf. Child, § 54). Thus,—

stod(e) she, 172 (stood(e) B, stood C, stood D).

tok(e) hede, 820 (took B, tok C)³; -(e) hire (poss. sg.), 126 (tok C), 3053 (tok C), 3067 (tok C); -(e) his, 2387 (tok C), 2545 (tok C), 3436 (took(e) B, tok C); -(e) he, 379 (tok C), 6565 (took B, tok C);
tok(e) and, 3024 (took B, tok C); -(e) it, 3811 (tok C).⁴—tok(e), 1646 (tok C).

com(e), 1640 (cam C), 2024, 2682 (com B)⁵; bycom(e), 1072⁶.

com(e), 1629, 1647, 2647 (com B),⁸ 3592, 7515 A; -(e) here (dat.), 1687 (cam to D); -(e) hire (acc.), 2572 (com B; com(e) C (?)).

wrot(e), 2299 (wrot C); wrot(e), 7787 (wrot C).

wax(e), 2341 (wex BC, wax D).

quook(e), 2935 (quook B, quok C, quok(e) D)⁹; see § 103, note 2.

fill(e), 4243 (fel B, lestē C, fille † pl. E).

shop(e), 4914 (schop C).

Other examples are: (1) in B, -(e), before vowels or h,—1360, 1641, 1724, 1774, 2275, 3593, 3821, 3921, 4419, 6392, 6609, 6890, 7441, etc., etc.; -(e), 826, 1640, 1690, 1787, 2645, 2789, 3207, 3437, 3836, 4725, 6838, 7093, 7534, 7565, 7579, 7803, etc.; (2) in C, -(e), as before, 549, 1677, 2547, 3070, 4563, 6925, etc.; -(e), 141, 2645, 2902, 3612, 7208, 7506, etc.; (3) in D, -(e) and -(e), passim. The phenomenon is commonest in D, and B comes next. For examples of this -(e) in rhyme, cf. 2265 BD, 2410 B, 2413 B, 2689 B, 2691 B, 3519 D, 3803 B, 4677 BD, 6652 B 7289 BD.

For weak preterites from strong verbs, see § 103. For quok and rong from verbs weak in Anglo-Saxon, see § 103, note 2.

§ 109. The Plural of the Preterite Indicative of both Strong and Weak Verbs ends in -en, -e, for all persons (Child, § 55; ten Brink, § 194).

In the following list the persons are not distinguished. The examples given are arranged as follows (cf. § 96): I. -en before consonants; II. -en in rhyme; III. -en before vowels; IV. -en before h; V. syncope: -en, -n; VI. -e before consonants; VII. -e in rhyme; VIII. -e elided before vowels; IX. -e elided before h; X. apocope of -e.

The examples comprise the following preterites: (a) A.S. First Weak Conjugation (cf. § 99),—alighte (VII.), bente (VI., X.), boughte (I., VII.), broughte (VI., VII., VIII., IX.), fette (I., III.), fette (VII.), herde (III.), kynte (VII.), lafte (VIII.), -ledde (II.), mente (VII.), mette (A.S. mëton) (VII.), redde (raddæ) (IV., VIII., X.), -rente (VII.), sente (VII.), sette (I., VII., IX.), shette (II.), soughte (bysoughte) (VII., IX. n.), speade (IV., VIII., IX. and n.), stente (III., VII.), thoughte (A.S. þþton) (VII.), thoughte (A.S. þþton) (VI., VII.), tolde (VII., VIII.), wende (II., IV., VI., VII.), weente (III., VII., VIII., IX. n.), wroughte (III., VI., VII., VIII.); cf. yeede (II.); (b) glente (cf. § 100) (VII.); (c) Second Weak Conjugation, A.S. and other verbs of Germanic origin (cf. § 101), caste (I.), folweode (V.), lyked (VIII., IX. n.), madde (I., III., VI., VII., IX.), plewde (VII., VIII.), rahte (VIII.), Sherlock (VII., IX.), strenede (III.); (d) A.S. Third Weak Conjugation (cf. § 102),—hadde (I., III., VI., VII., VIII., IX., xeyde (I., III., IV., VI., VII., VIII., X.); (e) Weak preterites from Strong Verbs (cf. § 103),—dride (I., VII.), fiedde (II.), highte (byhighte) (II., IV., VI., IX.), slypte (III.), wepte (I.); (f) Romance verbs with syncopated preterites (cf. § 104),—caughte (IX.), cryede (VIII., IX.), paste (VII.), preyde (VII.), quytte (IX.); (g) Romance verbs with unsyncopated preterites (cf. § 105),—apoynteden (I.), assegeden (I.), assembled (VIII.), besegede (VIII.), caused (VIII.), comeuenden (III.), commendeden (III.), declamed (X.), destroyden (X.), entrechaungheden (IV.), toyneden (III.), turneden (VIII.); (h) Strong Verbs,—braste (VIII.), cone (V., VIII., IX.), droue (VIII.), ete (VII.), felle (fille) (I., II., III., VII., VIII., X.), founde (I., VIII.), gonne (gæn) (bygonne) (I., III., IV., VI., VIII., IX. and n., X., hange (III), bihede (III.), knewe (VII., VIII., IX.), laye (III., VIII., lote (I.), quod (X.), ride (II.), ronne (I.), arype (IX. n.), sete (III. VIII., scygh (say, sey) (IX., X.), spoke (spoke, speke) (II., III., VI., VIII., IX., X.), sponne (VII.), stode (I., VII., X.), sye (II.), toke (VIII., IX.), were (I., III., VI., VII., VIII., IX., X.), wesshe (I.), yaf (IX.).

I. -en before consonants:

assègedên neigh, 60 (-3e- C, assegid wel D †); bysègedên the, 7859 (be- B, besègedê C, besèged[ê] D).

casten to, 88 AB (-yn C); -en what, 2570 (-yn CD).
boughten they, 136 (-3te C, boght[e] D); cf. 8164.

founden no, 137 (-yn † the (†) D).

weren to, 283 (where C, weryn D); cf. 463, 3531, 4744 (A †), 7892, 7942.1

1 Subjunctive?
hadden prys, 1109 (-yn D).
gonnen, 1184 (gunne C, gun[ne] D); gunnen, 1235 (gon- B, gonë
C, gun[ne] D); cf. 2668, 2704, 3452, 4541, 4720, 6891.
wesshen they, 2269 (wesche C, wysshyn D).
fillen forth, 2276 (-yn D, fellyn C); cf. 1583.
apoynteden ful, 3296 (-yn D; C f).
felten sith, 4064 (-yn C).
wenden ben, 4182 AB.
setten tyme, 4554 (-e C, -yn D).
dredden to, 4718 (-yn D, dreden B).
makkeden the, 4783 B (made A †, madyn alle CD); maden dye,
8165.
ronnen doun, 4792 (-e C, ran[ten] D).
seyden, 6803 (C †), 6854 (-e C, -e D (?)), 7712 (-e CD).
stoden for, 7477 (-e C, stood[e] B).
wepten for, 8185 AB; cf. 4909 C.

II. -en in rhyme:
fellen, 3 f (: tellen inf.).
shetten, 148 f (C †; line om. † D) (: letten inf.). [After though.]
wenden, 217 f (-yn C; D †) (: descenden inf.).
riden, 473 f (-yn D) (: diden 3 pl. ind. : abyden p.p.).
spaken, 565 f (-yn C, -e D) (: maken inf. : awaken inf.).
yeden, 2021 f (yeden B, 3edyn D, ridyn C) (: ryden p.p. : abyden
p.p.).
hyghten, 2708 f (-yn D, histyn C) (: myghten 3 pl.).
mysledden, 4710 f (-yn D, -leden B) (: fledden, -yn D, 3 pl., 4711).
syen, 7179 f (seyen C) (: espyen inf. : (e)yen).

III. -en before vowels:
Cf. wroughten, 63; fellen, 134; bihelden, 177; herden, 1168;
stenten, 1188; seten, 2277; comëueden, 2859; spaken, 3056,
6879, cf. 6795; commendeden, 3059; slepten, 3588; weren,
4632, 5798, cf. 2279 † A; madyn, 4783 CD; stremeden,
4909; wenten, 5392; hangen, 5479; hadden, 5912; gonnen,
6578; ioynden, 7176; seyden, 7479. (Variants not registered.)
In some of these cases hiatus occurs in one or another MS. (not A) : as, wentë
alle, 5392 B; spekë in, 3056 D; fëltë in, 4158 C; cf. leyë ât, 3587 C
(lay[en] A, layen B, lyon D). See also IX. note.

IV. -en before h (in hym, here acc., hem, here pl.) —
Cf. redden, 2791; entrechaàngëdëñ, 4210; wenden, 5345, 5363,
5386; gonnen, 5384; biheighten, 6859; spedden, 6864. (Vari-
of Chaucer's Troilus.

nants not registered.) Hiatus,—speddë hem, 6864 D (cf. also IX., note). Thus seyden here and howne, 4872 (-e BC, saidë D).

V. -en (syncope):
folwëden yn, 1904 (folwëden B, folwëde C, folowdyn D).
comën vpward, 3047 (-yn C, come D).
(Cf. 3470 † C, and the references under VIII., IX.)

VI. -e before consonants:
were wrothe, 140 (-e B, -yn D); were neuere, 1671 ([e] D); were they, 1997 (-en B, in C †); were faste, 3075; were bothe, 5894 (-en B, were we C; D †); were sene, 6637 (waren B, weren D)

brote me, 424 † C.
highte volturis, 788 (-en B, -yn D, -te C) (in pres. sense).
gonne fro, 1279 (gunne C, ded[e] † D); cf. 4238, 5371 C (D †),
5790.1—bygonne we, 1597 (B † C †; bygun † we D).

made louë, 1762 (-e D); m. many, 1900 (-yn CD); m. † swich,
3468 C (-yn D).

bente neuere, 1946 (-en B, -yn C, -t † D).

spoke no, 2204 A.

wroughte me, 4196 ([e] B, -en E, -tyn C).

hadde worthynesse, 4631 (-yn CD); hadde ye, 8055 (-yn C); cf.
hadde neuere 3712 † B.

wende that, 5378 (-en B).3

seyde softe, 6982 (-yn C).

thoughte (=seemed) tho, 7023 ([e] B, -tte C, 3t[e] sg. D †).

VII. -e in rhyme:
stente, 60 f (styn D) (: went ind. 3 pl., -e B : entente), 5002 f (-t C) (: wente ind. 3 pl. : to-rente pret. ind. 3 pl.).
tolde, 131 f (: holde inf. : olde pl.), 7328 f (: holde p.p.).
felle, 145 f (: telle inf. : dwelle inf.).
dreddë, 483 f (-d D) (: spedde ind. 3 sg.).
paste, 1743 f (-t C, past † D) (: faste inf.).
broughte, 1999 f (-3t C, broght D) (: oughte 3 pl. : thoughte tóhte ind. 3 sg.).
ete, 2269 f (inf. † D) (: strete n.).
made, 2859 f (: glade adj. pl.).
sente, 2862 f (-t D) (: hente pret. ind. 3 sg.).
wroughte, 3305 f (-3t B, -3t C, wroght D), 3604 f (-3t C, wroghtyn D), 5388 f (-3t C, wroght D), 7224 f (-3t CD).

1 gan C (l. gunne), ganne D. 2 9-syl. 3 Subjunctive †

8
Observations on the Language

Rhyme words.—thoughte þóhte ind. 3 sg. (5388), 3 sg. indir. quest. (3305), þóhton ind. 3 pl. (3604), þuhton 3 pl. indir. quest. (7224), bysoughte ind. 3 pl. (5388).

were, 3427 f, 3467 f, 3535 f (ware B), 3931 f, 4237 f, 6584 f (wer D), 7541 f (wer D).

Rhyme words.—fere, feere fear n. (3427, 3467, 3931, 4237), there (3427, 3467, 7541), where (3535, 4237, 6584), tere n. (3931, 7541), eyen clere (6584).

sette, 3450 f (set D) (: fette inf.).

sponne, 3576 f (spunne C) (: bygonne p.p.).
thoughte (A.S. þóhton), 3605 f (-jt C, thougthynt D) (: wroughte 3 pl. ind.).
stode, 3765 f (stood D) (: for gode).

wende, 4528 f (-d D) (: complende inf. A, comprehende BC, comprehend D), 5367 f (: spende inf. : brende pret. ind. 3 sg.).
knewe, 4538 f (knowe † B) (: hewe n. : newe adv.), 6083 f (knowe † B) (: trewe pred. adj. sg.), 6486 f (: newe adj. : trewe adj.).
mente, 4699 f (-t D) (: wente subj. 3 sg. : entente), 8056 f (-t C †, D) (: entente).
wente, 4701 f (-t D), 4802 f (-t CD), 5000 f (-t C), 6797 f (-t D);
went[e], 58 f (-e B), 2751 f (-e B ; C †).

Rhyme words.—entente, [-e] n. (58, 2751), sente ind. 3 sg. (4802), mente ind. 3 pl. (4701), stente pret. ind. 3 pl. (58,5000), to-rente ind. pret. 3 pl. (5000), assente inf. (6797), bente p.p. pl. (4701).

mette (A.S. métton), 4704 f (met D) (: lette n.), 8121 f (: whette p.p. pred. pl.).

preyde, 4858 f (preyede C) (: Criseyde).
stente, 5002 f (stent C) (cf. next word).
to-rente, 5003 f (-t C, turment † D) (: wente ind. 3 pl. : stente pret. ind. 3 pl.).
bysoughte, 5387 f AB (besouȝte D) (: thoughte þóhte ind. 3 sg. : wroughte ind. 3 pl.).
kyste, 5793 f (: twyste inf. : nyste ind. 3 sg.).
glente, 5835 f (-t C, glente sg. BD) (: entente : wente ind. 3 sg.).
hadde, 6336 f (: into badde), 6350 f (: cladde ind. 3 sg.).
fette, 7215 f (fett D) (: sette pret. ind. 3 sg. : lette n.).
thoughte (=seemed), 7223 f (-t B, -3t CD) (: wroughte ind. 3 pl.).

[Ind. question.]
pleyde, 7475 f (pleyde C) (: Criseyde).
seyde, 7628 f (sg. † C) (: breyde pres. ind. 1 sg. : Criseyde).
aboughte, 8119 f (aboute D) (: soughte ind. 3 sg.).
Final -e is to be supplied in *alight[e]*\(^1\), 6876 f (*-e B, alyst† C, light D*) (*-nyghte inf.: brighte def. adj.*).

VIII. *-e elided before vowels.*

Cf. bisegede, 149; hadde, 153, 909, 1302, 4528, 5381; seyde, 176, 5348; felle, felle, 470, 3407, 3894, 5413; wente, 473; toke, 911, 4252; were, 916, 3073, 3265, 4247, 5909, 6875; tolde, 1165; pleyede, 1235; cryede, 1697; founde, 2023; sete, 2336; turnede, 2432; gonne, 2684, 5364; knewe, 2750; spake, 3305, 6096, cf. 4208; laye, 3591; rafte, 4911; wroughte, 5789; radde, 7100; come, 7237; lafte, 7689. (Variants not registered.)

In all these instances A has *-e* (elided). In several, D omits *-e* as,—had, 153, 909, 4528; fil, 470; told, 1165; cried, 1697; gun, 2684; wer, 5909; etc. So sometimes B: as,—beseged, 149; had, 153; went, 473; took, 911; cried, 1697; turned, 2432; fel, 3407; com, 7287; left, 7659; cf. caused, 4408; and C: as,—tok, 911; lay, 3591. *-yn* (syncopated) is found in C 153, 916, 1302, 1697, 2750, 3073, 3894, and in D 2023, 2432; *-yn* in C 5909, D 176; *-e* in D 3265. *Drove* pret. ind. 3 pl., 3516 D (drew C), should be p.p. (as in AB).—For the omission of elided *-e* in A, see,—shewed, 159 (*-ed C, *-yd D*); sped, 1111 (*sped B, did† D*); brast, 1411 (*brast B, brostyn C, brest D*); lyked, 2351 (*-ed⁄ in C, *-yd⁄ sg. D*); assembled, 2652 (*-bledin in C, *-blid D, assemblæ B*); gon, 2793 (*gonné it B, gan on C, gun on D*); wrought, 4555 (*-tæ C, wroght D*); tok, 5793 (*tooke B, hent C, toke D*); went, 7690 (*-e BO*), cf. 1995; cf. ye caused al, 4408 B.

IX. *-e elided before h* (in *he, his, hym, here acc., here pl., here adv., hem*).

Cf. made, 472, 6097; come, 1704; cryède, 1728; sette, 2269, 5348; were, 2436, 3523, 7564; hadde, 3706; knewe, 4240; gonne, bygonne, 4919, 7590, 7830; toke, 6863; spedde, 6881. (Variants not registered.)

In all these instances A has *-e*. Cf. were, 6829 B (wer D, wer⁺ here C, were⁺ there A). D omits *-e* in 1728, 3706, 4240, 5348, 6097, 7564, 7590; B, in 4919, 5348, 6663; C, in 1728, 7590, 7830. C has *-yn* in 472, 3706, 4240, 6881⁺, 7564. For the omission of elided *-e* in A, see—spak hem, 1110 (*-æ B*); brought hym, 2023 (*-æ B, -tæ C, broghtyn⁺ at D*); gan hym, 2629; byhight hem, 3161 (*byhighte B, behyht C, behight D*); shewed his, 4206 (*-id is C, swed⁺ E*); yaf hym, 4795 (*yaf C; B⁺ D⁺*), cf. 2861 D; styl hym, 4867 (-tt D, quite B); seygh here (*acc.*), 5382 (*seigh B, saw C, say her [so] D*); tok here (*poss. sg.*), 5392 (took B; toke C, D (!)) *caught here (pl.*), 6965 (*-t C⁺*).\(^2\)

Note.—A few cases of hiatus occur in one or another MS., but these are easily corrected. Thus,—wenté arm, 2201 (*-en B, -yn C, om. D*); aryse euerychon, 2683 (*-en B, -yn C, riesyn D*); gonne⁺ it, 2793 B; likëd⁺ in, 2351 C; sought[a] hym, 2022 (*-tæ C, soughten B, soghtyn D*); spedde hem, 2032 (*spede B, sped[a] from D*); wer⁺ here (*hic*), 6882 C. See also III., IV., above.

X. Apocope. A few genuine cases occur:

\(^1\) Perhaps present tense. \(^2\) Supply [the] in D.
were born, 4064 (-e BC), 5913 (wer D); were woned, 4553 (be D); war caught(e), 2267 B.1
say (vidistis) the, 656 (say CD); sey ye, 1362 (sey[e] † ye D).
gan to, 3957.
quod they, 4856 (ABC D!).
declamed this, 2332 B (-ede C, declarid D, declamed J sg. A).
destrayned, 355 f (-yd D): gayned:
feyned, loth pret. ind. 3 sg.
[Indir. discourse.]
 Cf. bygun J we, 1597 D; gunne J to, 1994 C (gan J to D); gun J they, 3452 D; gunne f the, 5791 C (gan the peynes f A); gan J to, 6891 D; had | that, 1302 D; hadde $ ye, 3711 A; bent J neuer his, 1946 D; redde J me, 7100 C; seide J that, 7479 D; stode | they, 7482 C; were | wrothe, 140 B; were | clerkes, 5634 D; were | there, 6829 A; were | wont(e), 7023 D.

§ 110. The Singular of the Present Subjunctive of both strong and weak verbs ends in -e in all persons (Child, § 56; ten Brink, §§ 184, 188).

I. First Person.

(a) Before consonants:
er that I parte, 5 (or [that] I p. D).
lest thow deme I trust[e] not, 601 (tryste B, truste C).
thow I desir[e], 650 (-e BD, desese † C).
as euere I thrive, 1205 (as euere thryue I BC).2
if that I breke, 2980.
er that I departe, 6297.3

(b) In rhyme:
whil I leue, 931 f (lyue BD) (: foryeue subj. 2 sg., inf. D).
er that I sterue, 1007 f (er than C) (: deserue inf.).
now is tymé (is it tyme CD) I wende, 1305 f (: to an ende).
yf I . . . endite, 1352 f (B †) (: lyte, litel † A).
wene I lye, 1385 f (ly D) (: eye).
counseylest me . . . that . . . I me feyne, 2613 f (: peyne n. : pleyne inf.).
though I . . . preye, 3127 f (prey D) (: seye ind. 1 sg. : wreye subj. 2 sg.).
til I sterue, 3556 f (sterwe C) (: serue ind. 1 sg.).

1 In ACD supply [that] and read were.
2 Supply [this] in AD.
3 Supply [that] in C.
though I . . . compleyne, 3847 f (pleyn † D) (: to seyn[e] AD, to seyne BC : peyne n.).
buts I retorne, 4325 f (-toure B, -tune CD) (: soiourne inf.).
yf I . . . twynne, 5420 f (: inne : synne n.).
til I . . . vnshethe, 5438 f (C †) (: to dethe).
yf so be that I . . . passe, 7059 f (pace BD, pase C) (: grace n.).
yf . . . I falle, 7068 f (fa† D) (: byfalle subj. 3 sg. : of alle).

(c) Elision:
though I praunce, 221 (how † y p. D).
though I spake, 1104 (yf I † spak D).
yf I lye, 3216.
so thriue I, 3552.1

though that I tarye a yer, 4037.
or I soo werche, 5013 D (do ABC).2
al sey I nought, 3098 A (-e B).
yf that I me put in, 7064 (putte C).

II. Second Person.

(a) Before consonants:
but thow it fynde, 831 (fyndé † it C, but if thow fynd it D).
se that thow . . . requere, 895.
and thow . . . holde, 2610 (-[e] CD).
if thow remembre the, 3203 D (if it r. the B, if it rememberid †
be C, if it remembrthe the A).
that . . . thow deme, 3236.
though thou sitte, 4472 (sit[te] D).
that thou retorne, 6215 (C †).
that thou . . . sende, 6958 (C †).

(b) In rhyme:
that thou dwelle, 789 f (: helle n. : telle ind. 3 pl.).
(I) . . . pray . . . thow foryeue, 930 f (-3iue B, -3eue C ; inf.
D) (: leue subj. 1 sg.).
that thou me recomaunde, 1049 f (: comaunde inf.).
that thow . . . wreye, 3126 f (wrey D) (: seye ind. 1 sg. : preye
subj. 1 sg.).
whider so thow wende, 3233 f (wynde C) (: ende n.).
how thow pleye, 3663 f (pley CD) (: tweye : seye inf.).
that . . . thow wynde, 4282 f (wende B) (: kynde n. : bynde
subj. 3 sg.).
or thou olde †, 5079 f C.

1 In C read this for wis.  
2 Supply [thus] in C.
what so thow seye, 5104 f (sey D) (: deye *sulj*. 1 sg.).
That prey I the thow take (tak B) and it consereue, 6673 f (: serue *ind*. 1 sg. : sterue *ind*. 1 sg.).
I the besche . . . that thow foyreue, 6750 f (-yue B, -3if C) (: dreue *p.p*. : leue *vivere*).
that thow . . . write, 7656 f (: lete : endite *inf*.).

c) Elision:
if thow wene, 575.
lest thow deme, 601 (C †).
if thow . . . deye, 800 (dy D).
yf thow late hym, 1408 (lat B, late C, lete D, *all three plural*).
yf thow write, 2113.
that thow knowe, 3249 (know D).
that thow . . . cause, 4466 (causé † it D).
yf thow deye, 5285 (dey D).
my conseyl is . . . thow . . . go and make, 5777 (mak BC).
if that thow trowe, 6694 (C †).
if thow . . . ligge, 6774 (leve C, lye thus D).
yf thow late hym, 1408 (lat B, late C, lete D, all three plural).
yf thow write, 2113.
that thow knowe, 3249 (know D).
that thow . . . cause, 4466 (causé † it D).
yf thow deye, 5285 (dey D).
my conseyl is . . . thow . . . go and make, 5777 (mak BC).
if that thow trowe, 6694 (C †).

III. Third Person.

(a) Before consonants:
touche † loue, 744 C (*l. toucheth*).
god forbede, 1198 ; cf. 2775, 3603.
cesse cause ay cesseth maladye, 1568 B (-eth . . . -eth A, sese . . .
seeth the C, cesyd *p.p*. . . . cecith D) ; cf. cesse wynde it
wold aryse, 2473 (sse Cɔ, cesid (? D).
though a man forbede, 1801 (D †).
god sende, 2359 (-[e] BD), 8065 ; god . . . so sende, 8151 ; cf.
3163 (-œ hele), 3185, 6871.
though she bende, 2463 (-[e] D).2
wher it be bet she byde, 2736 (sche abide C, to † bydë *inf*. (? D). 
if that she vouche saf, 2776 (-eth B, -ith D, thou † vouche C).
I pose a womman graunte me, 3152 (-edë C, -ith D).
if it remembre the, 3203 B (cf. II., above) ; er deth deleyure me,
7763 (-uëreth D ; Cɔ (?)) ; mysmetre for, 8159 A (-metere B,
missë-metre D).
god . . . brynge, 3808 (bryng † at D).
god . . . so quenchë, 4298 (D †).

1 In later hand in C. Supply [or] in D. 2 Supply [she] in D.
so...that it cause, 4347 (is† cause CD).
god vs graunte, 4368 (C (!) ; graunt D †).
yif that it lyke yow, 4763 (if it like B, if it likith D); cf. 1527 † C, 4144 † A.

God leue that, 4987 (len[e] D, leue † ay C).
if Criseyde...now loue the, 5274 (-eth BD, -yth C).
but yf...remorde yow, 6153 (-moue C †).
god...as wysly glade so, 6519.
though he wepe and make, 6779.
er Calkas sende, 6871.
bytyde what bityde, 7113 f (: syde).
although she come, 7504.
though...commeue, 7749 (re- C, remorde D).
that noon myswryte the, 8158 (miss(e)-write D).1
(b) In rhyme:
god me blysse, 436 f (blys C, blesse D) (: prowesse : distresse n.);
god vs blesse, 7575 (blisse BD, blys C) (: heuynesse).

thowh...breste, 599 f (-t C, or (that) †...to-brest D)
(: my beste : reste n.).
yf the lyke, 829 f (: syke inf.) ; cf. 3653 f.
but if...shende, 965 f (-d D) (: ende n.).
so god you saue, 1199 f (: ye raue : caue n.).
lest...slake, 1376 f (: take inf. : make inf.).
if...assente, 1420 f (-t (?) D, -e inf. AC) (: sente ind. 3 sg.).
er [that]...deoure, 1480 f (er that BC) (: houre).
so she...saue, 1823 f (: haue inf.) ; cf. 2944 f, 4220 f, 4343 f.
so god me spede, 1829 f (: drede n. : hede n.).
who-so it rew, 1874 f (rew D) (: vntrewe pl. : an newe).
god so wys me saue, 2063 f (: haue ind. 1 sg. : yane subj. 3 sg.).2
til that...departe, 2075 f (: Marte).
although it...smerte, 2182 f (-t D †, -e † subj. C) (: sterte ind.
3 sg. : herte).3
recche...wher he bycome, 2236 f (: some pl.).

whether that he lyue or elles sterue, 2237 f (leue...sterue C,
dye †...sterue D) (: serue inf. : deserue inf.).

whan that so he bygynn, 2569 f (whan so that he bygyn D,
whan so euere † he gynne (!) C) (: wynne inf.).
god hym amende, 2816 f (: defende ind. 1 sg. : sende subj. 3 sg.).

1 Dele (to) in BD, or read myswrite.
2 In C, read ech e for sche.
3 In A read so[rc].
Observations on the Language

god hym brynge, 2891 f (bring D) (: heriynge).
yf this . . . displese, 2949 f (-plees B) (: ese n. : apese inf.).
how sore that me smerte, 2988 f (-t CD) (: herte n.); cf. 3748 f, 3842 f, 6495 f, 7587 f.
god forbede, 3387 f (: nede n.), 4819 f (: drede n.), 6218 f (: nede n. : hede n.).
til the sonne shyne, 3610 f (: deuyne inf. : myne inf.).
er that . . . breke, 3750 f (to-breke † D) (: wreke : speke infs.).
til . . . sende, 3773 f (: ende n.); cf. 6865 f.
Ioue . . . hym race, 3857 f (arace BC) (: place n.).
(god) . . . auauunce, 4228 f (avance E) (: myschaunce n.).
god . . . bynde, 4281 f (: kynde n. : wynde subj. pres. 2 sg.).
til that fayle, 4935 f (: bywayle inf.).
though the body sterue, 4984 f (: serue inf.).
rather than my felawe deye, 5186 f (dey D) (: seye inf.).
that . . . wepe, 5253 f (: depe adv.).
the deucl spedē hym (spede hym BD, hauē hym C)\(^1\) that recche,
5292 f (: wrecche n.).
god . . . gyde, 5355 f (guide D) (: side n.).
til deth me mete, 5444 f (: swete adj. : in quiète).
that he . . . fynde, 5578 f (i-fynde C) (: out of his mynde).
yf . . . compleyne, 5917 f (: peyne n. : tweye).\(^2\)
yf so be that . . . take, 6224 f (: make inf.).
yf that . . . me assayle, 6257 f (messaire B, me asayle C ; D †)
(: fayle n.).

\(\text{through . . . smerte, } 6425 f (-t C) (: herte n.); \text{cf. } 6495 f, 7587 f.\)
that . . . he dryuye, 7028 f (: on lyue).
yf that it byfalle, 7065 f (so falle C) (: of alle : falle subj. 1 sg.).
bytyde what bityde, 7113 f (: syde n.).
yf . . . masterte, 7706 f (me asterte C, me astert D) (: herte n.).
god encresse, 7722 f (-crese CD) (: cesse subj. 3 sg.).
so that it neuerę cesse, 7724 f (sease D, sere † C).
god . . . auauunce, 7798 f (-ns D) (: myschaunce n.); \text{cf. } 4228 f.

\(\text{through hym grene, } 8001 f (: \text{leue inf. lef} \text{fan}).\)
er that he dye, 8150 f (: thou nenuye).

\(\text{liste, lyste, lyst (1843), leste A (liste, lyste, leste B ; liste, lyste, leste, lest, lyn, leste C ; liste, leste, list, lyn, lest, lust D), } 679 f\)
(as thou lyste C), 693 f (yf thou lyste AC), 1022 f (as thou lest C), 1334 f, 1843 f, 2030 f (3e lest C), 2195 f, 2268 f (ye

\(^1\) In D read \textbf{Adieu} for \textbf{And dey}.

\(^2\) Supply \textit{[3if]} in C.
list D), 2534 f, 3101 f, 3210 f (thou lest C), 3430 f (ye lyst D),
3513 f (ye lyst D), 3688 f (ye lest D), 3759 f (ye lyst D),
3807 f, 3889 f (ye lyst D), 4172 f, 6209 f (thow lest AC, ye
leste D), 7629 f (sche luste C), 8074 f (thow lyst A), 8140 f.
Rhyme words.—wyste pret. subj. 1, 2 sg. (679, 3210), er ye wiste (2263),
tryste, triste inf. (693, 3101, 3759, 7629, 8074), truste, triste
prey, before worth, (B)
I. Exceptions to § 110.
I. First Person.

But if that I consentœ that it so be, 413 (consentœ that it be BC,
if [that] I consent that hit so be D).
II. Second Person.

the best is that thou tellœ me, 830 (telle CD).
whether thow thy[n]kœ zet vpon, 7098 B (thynkœ zit [vp]on C,
thinkœst yet vppon D, whe[the]r yet thou thenke vpon A).

(c) Elision.

For examples of elision before a vowel, cf. 31, 44, 597, 1034,
1114, 1472 B, 1673 B, 1941, 2104, 2237, 2297, 2721, 2798,
3217, 3637, 3768, 3782, 4066, 4360, 4735 (remembre I),
6223, 6779, 6878, 7321 (deliuere it), 7500, 7724, 7797, 8113.
For examples of elision before pronouns beginning with h, cf.
45, 556, 695, 1248, 2898, 3387, 4227, 5124, 6703, 7490;
happe how happœ may, 7159 (happen how happy may D).

Note 1.—In cases of elision -e is sometimes omitted in writing. Thus,—(a)
before vowels,—sey, 1004  C (seyth C, syth B, deith D); com, 2519
(-e C, -e D (?)); prey, 3388 (-e BC, prayeth þ inv. D); set, 3674 (sette B,
set (not) D); lat, 4088 (B †, let C); worth, 5409 (wurth D, wurthe þ C);
dryf, 5572 (-e BD); glad, 6317 (-e CD); tak, 7452 (-e CD);—(b) before
hym,—war, 1953 (-e D); lat, 2692 (let C, lette D); bryug, 2893 (-e B).
There are no good cases of hiatus: who-so axt þ hym, 7587 C (-eth A, -ed
B, -ed him wher[ef] D), and the devell sped þ hym, 5292 A (hanœ C, sped
B; D†) should be corrected; so god me sendœ hele, 3163, is regular.
Note 2.—Before a vowel or h it is not always possible to determine whether
lyst (ind.) or lyste (subj.) should be read: cf. e.g., 119, 398, 857, 1379,
2860, 4018, 4589, 8133, where A has lyst, list, with 3528, 4134, 5291,
6062, 6685, 8133, where A has lyste.

IV. Contracted forms (all persons).

Monosyllabic (contracted) forms are seen in se, see, and sle. Thus,—
1st Pers., se ich neue[r]. Ioues face, 5999, cf. 3652 f, 7748; 2nd
Pers., I wol now that thow see, 990 f, cf. 6769; 3rd Pers., god
yow see, 1170 f (se CD); though he se a man, 1457 (9-syl. in
A); yf this man sle here hym self, 1544 (sle B, here sle hym D).

Cf. § 111, III, note 2.

§ 111. Exceptions to § 110.

I. First Person.

But if that I consentœ that it so be, 413 (consentœ that it be BC,
if [that] I consent that hit so be D).
II. Second Person.

the best is that thou tellœ me, 830 (telle CD).
whether thow thy[n]kœ zet vpon, 7098 B (thynkœ zit [vp]on C,
thinkœst yet vppon D, whe[the]r yet thou thenke vpon A).
III. Third Person.

help me (in *God help me so, as help me god*, and similar phrases),

1449 (-p BC), 1675 (-p D), 2089 (-p D), 2211 (-p D) 2298 (-p CD),
2315 (-p BC D), 2367 (-p BD), 2397 (-p BCD), 4408 (C †),
5275 (-p B), 6194 (-p BC), 6256 (-p B)¹, 6726 (-p BC), 6849
(-p B), 7340 (-p B), 7362.²

help me (in *God help me so, etc.*, 1218 (-e B, help † y D), 1267
(-e me C †), 3706 (-e C), 4463 (-e CD),
6516 (-e BCD),
6755 (-e D).³

help god, 3900 (-e B, om. † D).

God yeldë the, 1048 (geld D).

sende yow, 1489 (-d D); C (?)).

yf the lyke than, 2101 (lestë B, lystë C, if thou list D); cf.
3227 † D.

Ioues . . . yeuë me sorwe, 2694 (gif C); Ioues yeuë the sorwe,
7888; god yeuë youre, 4407 (gif C, yeuë 3ow † D); I bidde
god so yeuë yow, 4312 ([so] C)⁴; preye I god so yeuë yow,
7437 (y euë 3ou C, to † yeuë you inf. D)⁵, 7774 (y euë 3ow C);

ne trust no wyght, 5053 (-e B; C †).

wo worth that day, 5425 AB (-e D); cf. 1429-32 (four cases);

Venus lat me, 6323 (let CD).

yf she wriête thow, 7662 (wriête D, zif † that sche wriete C).⁷

Note 1.—*Red* seems to be imperative in "Hese worthi dedes who-so list hem
here Red Dares," 8133-4 (rede D).—In several passages it is impossible to
determine with certainty whether *i estë (lyste)*, subjunctive, or *i est* (lyst),
indicative, is to be read: cf. for example, 686, 1407, 1820, 2245, 2865,
2978, 3215, 3888, 4104, 5245, 6020, 6295, 7360, 7751, 7780; see § 95, p.
221.

Note 2.—In *If harm(e) agree me*, 409 (agre CD), *agree* has of course but
two syllables.

§ 112. The Plural of the present Subjunctive of both
strong and weak verbs ends in -en, -e for all persons
(Child, § 56, c; ten Brink, §§ 184, 188). Thus,—

I. First Person:

though we comen in, 6184 (-yn C) (pret. †).

¹ D ridiculously reads *Ioue heuen quene.*

² In A insert [here].

³ Supply [the] in C.

⁴ so later hand in D.

⁵ B has of † for if.

⁶ In B supply [I]; in C, [rìf].

⁷ Read soo[ne] in D.
whil we dwellen there, 6186 (-e CD, dwelten A).

though that we . . . apyre, 1414 f (if that B; C (!)) (: faire adv.).

we our tales holde, 2017 f (-d D) (: tolde ind. 1 sg.).

turne we, 2794 (torne B); torne we, 3061 (turne CD)¹, 4425 (turne CD).

lest we . . . reue, 2807 (byreue BD, be- C) (: leue n.).

it is tyme that we wende, 3050 f (: ende n. : blynde, blende cæcare).

yf we . . . hye, 6852 f (: vilonye).

but that we shape vs, 5935 (D †).

II. Second Person:

though . . . by-hete, 539 f (be- CD) (: swete voc.).

but . . . telle what, 1216 (-e vs BC; D (!)).

though that ye sterue, 1572.²

so ye endite, 2247 f (: write inf.).

that ye . . . honge, 2327 f (-g D) (: longe adv.).

he wolে . . . that ye brynge, 2728 f (bring CD) (: rekenyng : taryinge).

er that ye wende, 2961 f (wende C, wende 1 pl. D) (: ende n.).

yf that ye wende, 6157 f (: rende inf. : shende inf.).

digne me, 2981 (deigne (!) B, digne (?) C, deigne D †).

whil that ye me serue, 3016 f (: deserue 2 pl. subj. or ind.). [Ind. †]

so that . . . greue, 3846 f (: at preue).

what so ye me comaunde, 5956 f (: demaunde n.).

yf that ye drecche, 6108 f (: wrecche n. : recche inf.).

er that . . . cause, 6110 (-yn D ; n. † C).

er ye . . . fynde, 6313 f (: vnkynde pred. adj.).³

tyme is that ye ryse, 6349 (C †) (: suffice inf.).

yf ye vouche sauf, 7285 (line om. C).

lest [that] ye . . . breke, 7395 f (om. † B ; C † ; lest that, etc., D) (: speke inf.).

that . . . ye not holde, 7702 f (-d B, vnfolde C †) (: byholde inf. : colde adj. pl.).

graunte it that ye . . . rewe, 7727 f (: trewe pred. adj. sg.).

that . . . ye . . . recomforte, 7758 f (-con- C) (: comporte inf. : desporte inf.).

that ye ne take, 7988 f (B †) (: make inf.).

¹ Supply [to] in B.
² Supply [that] in CD.
³ C has 3if † for er.
¿Observaciones sobre la Lengua [§§ 112, 113.]

yf ... seche, 8218 f (: speche n.).

For instances of -e, elided before a vowel, cf. 1385, 1405, 1472 C, 1476, 3771, 3942, 4760, 4987, 5460, 6103, 6608. For -e, elided before hym, see make hym, 1445 (mak B); lat hym, 1408 B (e C, lete D, late \(\tilde{\text{e}}\) sg. A); suffre hym (fere C), 3723 (cf. 3705). But -e is of course preserved in,—loke that ye thonkë humbely, 2804 (en, B, \([\tilde{e}]\) D, thankë C).

III. Third person:

though wrecches on it crien, 1950 f (cryzen C) (: eyen n. pl. : dryen inf.).

though wommen dreden with, 3164 B (-in C, -e AD).\(^1\)

how-so it be that . . . delite, 1341 f (: a lyte : endite inf.).

though . . . to-rende, 1875 f (vrenende \(\dagger\) D) (: ende n.).

lest more folk aryse, 4032 f (: wyse pred. adj. pl.).

who wot . . . what they signifie, 6734 f (: glotonye).

er that thei fynde, 7496 (ffynden D).

but men lye, 7891 f (: iupartie : dye inf.).

although they holde hem, 4235 AC (hold B).

that they ne fynde in, 4861 (-yn C).

IV. Contracted forms:

fle we, 2649 (flee B, fle [we] D).

whan ye . . . se, 7765 f (see D).

V. Apocope of -e:

And coyë (inf.) (koy D) hem they (that they D) sey noon harm of me, 1886 (seye B, seyn \(\dagger\) ind. 3 pl. C).

Cf. letë \(\dagger\) we her, 2017 D (inv. ABC); letë \(\dagger\) we, 3060 D (inv. ABC); ne stond \(\dagger\) we, 3405 f D (inv. ABC).

§ 113. The Preterite Subjunctive Singular of Strong Verbs ends in -e for all persons. The Preterite Subjunctive Singular of Weak Verbs shows in the first and third persons the endings -de, -te, -edë, -ed (cf. Child, § 56; ten Brink, § 195). For the indicative form -est in subjunctive constructions in the second person singular of weak preterites, see § 106, above.

I. Strong Verbs.

(a) First Person:

\(^1\) A erroneously reads womman for wommen.
yf that I so withstode, 5214 f (: for the townes goode).
were, 4053, 4991 f (wer D) (: there); -e, 526, 529, etc.; -e here (poss. pl.), 51 (-e † their D); nere I, 1494 (ner D).
(b) Second Person:
er thow me slowe, 5168 (slewe B, slou; D, slow † 3 sg. C).
wolde neuere god but thow were, 936; cf. 521.
(c) Third Person:
were, 226 f, 723 f (where C), 765 f, 2098 f, 3302 f, 3367 f, 3409 f (there † D), 3413 f (there † D), 3949 f, 3984 f, 4181 f, 5357 f (wer D), 6022 f (-ee- B, wer D), 7240 f (wer D), 7720 f (wer D), 7944 f (-ee- B), 7965 f; were (before consonants), 528 (e BCD), 1027 (ware B, were (?) D), 1749 † D (were C, was a A, as † a B), 2715 (D †), 3379 (-e CD), 3416 (B †), 4011 † A (-e BCD), 4332, 4359 (-e † D), cf. 7847 BCD; -e, 608 (C †), 836 (-e C), 860 (wer D)1, 3359 (wer B)2, 4353 (-e † C (?)), 6236 (-e † C), etc.; -e he, 2705 (-e it C)3: -e hym, 3433 (wer D, -e † he C); -e here (poss. sg.), 1777 (-e D)4; -e here (hic), 143 C (-e a D; A † B †); -e honour, 17905; werë † and, 5070 A (-e BCD).—nere, 4184 f (were BC; D †), 6011 (ner D †); -e, 2128 (were A), 2495, 2559 (ne were C, ner D), 6285 ner D); -e he, 2929 (ner B); -e his, 6437 (ner D).
Rhyme words.—a-fer lä (226), fere, feere n. fear (723, 765, 3302, 3413, 3984 4181, 6022, 7965), ere, eere (723, 765, 3302, 3409, 3949), gere n. (2098), tere n. (7240, 7944), nere subj. 3 sg. (4313), there (2098, 3367, 3413, 5357, 6022, 7240, 7720), where (5357), stere inf. (226, dere † A).
me were leuere dye Than she . . . vindenstode, 1028 f (: sownen ynto gode); though that she stode, 1032 (stod C).6
it sat[e] me, 1202 (-e BD);7 although . . . sat among, 5359 (-e BD).
who so that me yaue, 2062 f (: haue ind. 1 sg. : saue subj. 3 sg.).
spake, 2204 B (ind. pl. A, his wordis † CD).
al-though he lay[e] softe, 3284 (l); as thow he ley e, 6575 † C; as though . . . lay on, 772 (-e C); lay in (apodosis), 6222 (leye C, were † D).
al come it, 3310 (-e late D †).
lest . . . fille, 320 (fel C, fil D).8
yf she toke it, 3811 (that . . . toke B, that . . . tok C, ellis † she toke D).

1 9-syl. verse in ABC (unless one reads were it) ; wer it in D=wer't.
2 In D read were at [the] ful.
3 In D read [an]hangid.
4 But read were her em(e) n[e w]old[e] in D.
5 In C supply [with].
6 Supply [that] in C.
7 Supply [a] in AB.
8 Supply [self] in D.
Observations on the Language

§ 113.

270

... late his, 4604 (lete B, let C; D ⊣).
... spak out, 3385 (-e B, speke ⊣ pres. C, spakē ⊣ out D).
... slow I, 5168 ⊣ C (2 sg. ABC).

(d) Exceptions:

First Person: nere but (apodosis), 6313 (were C, ner D).
Third Person: were sent, 105 (war B, was D); were wyst, 321, 615, 6222 (wer D); were there, 1223 A (is BCD), 3411 (wer B, was C); were levenere, leuest, 1274, 1437, 5227 (C (?), wer D)¹; were to, 1440, 3479 (-e C); were † worthi, 2784 C (was ABD); were brought, 3149 (Df); were my, me, 3217, 4943 (wer D); were wyst, 321, 615, 6222 (wer D); were there, 1223 A (is BCD), 3411 (wer B, was C); were leuere, leuest, 1274, 1437, 5227 (C [], wer D); were to, 1440, 3479 (-e I C); were J worthi, 2784 C (was ABD); were right, 3840 (C 1); were lost, 4606 (-e BCE); were wel, 5099 (wer B, was C); were rathere, 5650 (wer D); were, fals, 5656; were folye, 6626 C (was ABD).—nere no, 5649 (ner B, wer D).

II. Weak Verbs.

(a) First Conjugation (cf. § 99):

as his herte bledde, 4366 f (blede C) (: cledde vestivit : spedde ind. 3 sg.).
whom he brought[e] there, 3428 (-e C, broght D).
bysought on, 1st pers., 769 (besouthe C).

al drede I, 1959 (drede BC, dred D).²

as ... dwelled here (hic), 3rd pers., 121 (-ede C, -yd[e] al † D);
duelled † ther, 3rd pers., 7242 D (-eth AB, -yn † C).
til that he herde, 2036 (-[e] D).³

though that she ... herde, 1032 f (-d D) (answered ind. 3 sg., -swerde BC, -swerd D).⁴

lyste, see § 99.

yf that he mente, 1750 (-t ‣ but D, myȝte ‣ C) ; cf. 5011 f (?).
vs neded for, 6006 (-ed BD, -ith ‣ not C).
I rought[e] not, 1032 (-e BC),⁵ 2513 (-te C, roght[e] D); nought
rought[e] || I, 4944 (-e C, -t D). Cf. § 145, III.

yf I ... sente, 2532 f (-t CD) ( : consente inf. : entente n.).
that ... shente, 3rd pers., 1442 f (-t CD) ( : assente inf.); yf
here swiel whiel stynte, 848 (-t D, styntyn † C).
were it thyng that me thoughte vnsittyng, 1392 (-t B, -e ‣ C, thinkith ‣ D).

if I it tolde, 1314 (-d D); cf. 767 BCD; who-so tales tolde,

¹ Dele (be) in D.
² In C supply [to].
³ In D supply [that].
⁴ In C supply [that].
⁵ In C supply [that].
3644 f BC (-d D, tolle † A) (: colde inf. : holde inf.) ; she told here-soft, 2716 (-e C, told † hym D).

wolde I that he twyste, 4611 f (-t C) (: lyste pret. subj. 3 sg. : wyste pret. subj. 3 sg.).

yf that ych . . . wende, 6312 f (: defende subj. 3 sg. : entende ind. 1 sg.) ; yf I wende[e], 5581 f (-e BCD) (: despende inf. : pretende inf.) ; though . . . wende, 3rd pers., 227 (-[e] ind. † D).

er she wente, 2716 f (-t C, stent † D) (: assente inf.) ; that . . . ne wente, 2739 (wend[e] D †) ; cf. 4832 f (-t D). (b) Second Conjugation (cf. § 101):
al lakkede here, 522 (-ed B, -id D).
al . . . made it, 3rd pers., 2929.

although . . . pleyde, 3rd pers., 1006 f (-d D, -ede C) (: Criseyde : seyde ind. 3 sg.).

put out, 3rd pers., 3810 (putte BC).

(c) Third Conjugation (cf. § 102):
hadde, 1st and 3rd pers., 3770 (-[de] D, had for B ; C †), 4998 BC (-[de] D, -dé A), 7296 (-[de] D), 7900 (hadd ymade B, had ymade D) ; cf. 6590 † D, 8047 † C ; hadde, 1628 (had D), 2594 (had D), cf. 3117, 5145, 5245, 6419, 6590, 6646 A, 7296, 8047, 8128 A ; had I, 7101 (-de B, -dé † I C) ; hadde his, 3496 (had † myght D), 7548 (had D) ; had herd, 7086 (-de B, hade C (l)) ; haddō had, 227 (-[dé] had (? BD, -de had C).—yf I ne haddē spoken, 5895 (nadd de-spoken B, ne had[dé] spoken D) ; I ne haddē trowed, 7099 (madde ytrowed B, that I ne haddē trowid C, I me haddē trowed D) ; I ne hadde y-brought, 4758 (ne hadde brought B, ne had † her broght D) ; ne hadde I, 4052 (nad I CD), 4161 (nade I BE, naddi C).

though I lyuede, 6242 (-ęd BD, leuèd C).

what wyght that it with-seyde, 4877 f (: Criseyde : preyede ind. or subj. 3 sg.) ; lest I seyde, 2133 (seyd D) ; yf he seyde, 3420 (-[e] D). (d) Strong verbs with weakpreterites (cf. § 103):
er that I deyede, 460 f (dyede B, deyd D) (: seyde ind. 3 sg. : Criseyde) ; lest he . . . deyde, 5091 f (dyed B, died D, deyde

1 A has it wyste † for twyste.
2 Doubtful case. Impossible to decide between haddē mad and hadde ymad. Similar cases are 6646, 8128; cf. also 4758, 5895, 7099.
3 In C supply [my].
4 In A read there[ef].
Observations on the Language

C) (: seyde subj. 3 sg. : deyde (dyed B, deyde C, deyed D) ind. 3 sg.); whanne he deyde, 5330 f (deyed BD, deyede C) (: Criseyde).

how sore that hym smerte, 5848 f (-t C) (: herte).
it semed as he wepte, 2906 (-t CD, vepte B).

(e) Romance verbs with syncopated preterites (cf. § 104):
al cost it, 6801 (-e CD).

(f) Other Romance verbs:
cessede she (apodosis), 849 (cessed B, sessed C, sesed D f);
I pose a woman graunte de me, 3152 C (graunte AB, -ith D).
may I laboured me, 5671 AB (-bored D).

(g) Exceptions:
lest any wight devynid † or, 3300 D (inf. ABC).
I pose a woman graunte de me, 3152 C (graunte AB, -ith D).
though I laboured me, 5671 AB (-bored D).

§ 114. The Plural of the Preterite Subjunctive of both strong and weak verbs ends, like that of the present, in, -en, -e for all persons (cf. Child, § 56, c; ten Brink, § 195).

that ye dredden this, 1452 (-yn D; dreden B, drede C).
though we comen in, 6184 (-yn C) (pres. ?).
while we dwelten there, 6186 (dwellen B, dwelle C, duelle D).
lest . . . men wende, 489 f (: brende pret. ind. 3 sg.).

(ii) if) it hadde ben, 125 (had D).
though he . . . hadde poured, 299 (hade C, had D); hadde nedé, 886 (had D).¹
who-so hadde with hym ben, 1276 (had D).²

(yf that I) . . . had loued, 1501 (haddé BC).
(wolde . . . Ioue) . . . That I the hadde where, 4998 (haddé BC,-[dê] D); and (= if) ich hadde swych, 5727 (had D).

lest . . . seyde, 3rd pers., 4829 † B. Cf. nedede (a, above).

For lyste, see § 99.

¹ Perhaps indicative.
² In C hadde or 9-syl.; but read this day for yesterday and addé is preserved.
n.) lest this tales . . . were, 5333 f (: fere n.); assayinge how heré speros were whotte, 8123 (-en B, [-e] D); Were his e nayles poynted neure so sharpe, 2119.

though 3e . . . dreynte, 5592 f B (-t D, drenche † A, drank † C) (: pleynte n. AB, pleynt CD).

he dorste not ye dwelte lengeré, 7273 (-e] B, duellé no C, dwelle † there inf. C).

(if thei) . . . sayde hire (poss. pl.), 1126 (seying † D).

if [that] thei ferd in, 1124 (-e B, fer † with D).

if . . . ye it toke, 1314 (told † B).

were hanged, 1 pl., 1438; were (before vowels), 2 pl., 4011 (-e bete C), 6309 (wer D).

hadde, 3 pl., 4230, 4232, 5638 (had D).

wyst he that ye ferde, 5580. [Indic. ?]

though al this town criede, 5247 (cryed BCD).

that we tok ouré leue, 6843 (-e BCD).

who that ther come, 7478.

Exceptions:

al sayde men soth, 3143 (sayd B, seid as D, seidyn as C).

Note.—In lest it folk aspied, 6050 f (espied D, aspíe † A, aspide † sg. C), we should read aspyde (: bytyde pres. subj. 3 sg. : syde n.). In 1438 (see above), were hanged may be regarded as a case either of apocope or of elision. In 4065 D were should be be (so AB, ben C); in 4358 † C, after 3e were go should be after that 3e go.

§ 115. The Imperative second person Singular of Weak Verbs in the Troilus usually follows the Anglo-Saxon inflections: that is, it shows -e (A.S. -a) in the Second and Third Conjugations, and in the First Conjugation either ends in -e (A.S. -e) or has no ending, according as the stem-syllable was originally short or long (cf. Child, § 58; ten Brink, § 189).

In the following lists the examples given occur before consonants in the places cited, unless the contrary is indicated. An accompanying thou, so, or as is noted. As to the possibility that the construction with a preceding thou is subjunctive, see below, V, note, and § 117, II.

---

1 Either Were he his or 9-syl.
2 Supply [that] in A, as indicated. BD have that. C is cut out here.
3 Read [a][j][a] in C.
4 Read sow[r]n in A.
I. First Conjugation,—(a) verbs with stem originally short:

leye (A.S. lege), 2079 f (lay C, ley D) (: seye inf.), 2602 f (ley D) (: pleye inf. : to seye).
telle (A.S. tele), tel[le] which, 3254 (tel me CD)¹; telle, 595. But,—
telle, 681 (tel? D), 693 (tel BC, om. † D), 862 (tel C, tellë † me D), 864 (tel C, teh D), 2479 (tel B, tellë † D), 3210 (tel C, tellë † if D); cf. 765, 1010, 2514, 5146, 6693²; tel me, 721, 5055 (telle C, teh[ê] † D), 5301 (-H D); tel thi, 696; tel thou, 2696 CD (teh † yow A, tel † how B).

lette (A.S. lette), thow me nought ne lette, 3567 (that † thou ne lette subj. D) (: fette pret. ind. 2 sg. : shette pret. ind. 3 sg.).

Note.—For the imperatives of hidden, lyen, see V. Heue (A. S. hefe) occurs only with elided -e (7552).

II. First Conjugation,—(b) verbs with stem originally long:

bryng (A.S. bring), 5744 (-e) BD).

hyd (A.S. hýd), h. not, 595 (-e) BD); so hyd it, 613 (-e) BCD. But,—Be diligent and trewe and ay wel hide, 950 f (: tyde n. : abyde inf.).

kep (A.S. cép), 3174 (-e) BD); k. hire (eam), 3107 (-e) BC, so † help D); so kep alwey, 3108 C (sauæ ABD).³

kys (A.S. cys), 8154 (-e) BD).

kyth (A.S. cyth), 5200 (-e) CD, right † B); kygh now, 5281 (right † B, kith D, kith (k)now(e) C).

lef, leef (A. S. lef); leef, 7881 (lef C, lef(e) BD); lef al, 5514 (leef B, leu(e) C, leueth pl. D †).⁴ But,—lev(e), 5194 (leef C), 2585 † D (lat AB, let C); leu(e), 2093.

lef (A.S. lyf, léf), 6741 (leu(e) BCD). But,—bileu(e), 2587 (belye † and C); so leu(e) it, 7322 (len(e) † B).

red (A.S. réd), 8134 (-e) D).⁵

send (A.S. send), send(e) me, 1614 (-d B, send[ë] me D).⁶ But,—

thow me grace sende, 3547 (synde C) (: ende n. : wende inf.).

thynk, thenk (A. S. þenc); thynk, 937 (-e) BC, thenk D); thenk, (i.) 1436 (thynk(e) B, thynkyth † C), 3130 (thynk B, think C),⁷ 5128

¹ Tel (Telle G) which (-e G) thou wylt of everychone AB (the Cp. collation has no note on this line); Tel me, etc. CD. If we read tell[ê] in ABG and tel in CD, all five MSS. have 9-syl. verses. Tel is unmetrical in AB; tell[ê] in CD would make a full verse.
² In 6693, tellë might be taken for an infinitive.
³ No so in AB.
⁴ In A read vee[r]k.
⁵ Might be construed as subjunctive. If imperative, the verb may be either singular or plural.
⁶ But insert [swich] in D and read send(e).
⁷ Supply [what] in D.
(-e) D, thynk(e) BC), cf. 2595, 3568, 4128, 5279, 5759, 7518 (thynkith † C); thenk, (ii.) 890 (thynk B, thyng C), 1053, cf. 5079, 5262, 5270; thenk here (hic), 2465 (thynk(e) C).

werk (A.S. wyrc), (i.) 2078 (work D). \(^1\)

trow (A.S. tróow), trow(e), 6209 (-e pl. B, -eth pl. D). \(^2\)

Note.—For dred(e), imperative of dreden (weak in Chaucer), see 3550 (dred C), 6719 (dred'C).

III. Second Conjugation :

bridle (A.S. ge-brídda), bridle alwey, 4477 (brydele C, bridel D).
calle (A.S. cealla), -e, 3244 (call CD); -e hym, 3243 (cal CD, cal J hem B).

III. Second Conjugation:

loke (A.S. lóca), 946 (-00-B, lóke D †); -e, 862, 2405 (se † thes D).
loue (A.S. lufa), -e, 807; -e hire (eam), 679, 5278; loue || for, 1481; -e me, 6935.

make (A.S. maca), 2102 (-e thow B, thow make D); so make vs, 8231 (mak B, or take † D); make the, 3545 (mak C); -e no, 5112 (mak C); -e redy thou, 5870 AD (mak B). \(^4\)
pulle (A. S. pulla), -e, 958 (pul D, fellë † it C).

Note.—For the imperative of rewen (a weak verb in Chaucer), see § 117, II.

IV. Third Conjugation:

feche (A.S. feta, see Siev., § 416, n. 9), 6685 f (feche CD) (: wrecche n.).

tolwe (A.S. folga), -ewe me, 3581 (-owe B, -ow D, folwe C); tolwe alwey, 4969 (-ow B, -owe D).

V. Exceptions:

To I. See under telle, above, and compare,—

byd (A.S. bide), byd for, 3184; but,—bidde hym, 5571 (bid BC).

ly (A.S. lige), ly stille, 2038 (li BC); but,—lye right, 2604 (ly C, be † D).

set (A.S. sete), set the, 5284 (sett D); set a cas (=put case, suppose), 1814 (sette C, set y ind. D †). \(^5\)

---

\(^1\) In C read for-thy for for thyn; in D supply [shall].

\(^2\) In AC change pow (pow) to yow and trowe becomes pl.

\(^3\) Supply [that] in D.

\(^4\) In D read my ber[e] for me her † ber.

\(^5\) In A read y[wys].
To II. See under hyd, send, trow(?) above, and compare,—
quench (A.S. á-cwenc), thou . . . quench, 5173 f (-ch D) (: drench
inf.)
so spede it, 2147 (-ē † it C, -e D †).
wende (A. S. wend), thow wende, 5308 (: blende cecare : sende
inf.).
To III. See under loue, make, above, and compare,—
put (from A.S. potian ?) not, 783; put thyn, 5781 (C †).
To IV. haue (A.S. hafa), 831, 1608¹, 3183, 3262, 5282 (D †);
-e al, 3173 (-ē † al D); -e here (hic), 1054 (D †), 1409 † A, 2405,
3953 (!), 7521.
seyse (A.S. saga), 925 (sey BCD); sey, 928 (-e B), 2496, 2603 (-e B),
2605 (-[ē] † C). [Var. C say, sei.]
Note.—With regard to the exceptions above noticed, it should
be observed that forms like dtme, hi/re, telle, cwcll occur in
Late West Saxon, and forms like ner, sel, etc., in Northumbrian
(Sievers, § 410, n. 3). In phrases like thou sende, thou wende, one is
tempted to regard the verb as subjunctive (cf. § 117, II). Felle
it, 958 C, is an error for pulle it.

VI. Verbs of Germanic origin, but not found in Anglo-Saxon:
beblotte, 2112.²
iompre ek, 2122 (iumpere C).
trust (O.N. treysta, inv. treyst), ne trust no, 5053 (-e) B)³; thow
trust to, 6773 (-ē me CD).⁴
vnneste, 4967 f (-t D, wonest † C) (: the wofulleste : breste inf.).

§ 116. The Imperative second person Singular of Verbs
of Latin or Romance derivation ends in the Troilus
in -e (cf. ten Brink, § 189).

In the following lists an accompanying thou, so, or as is noted
(cf. § 118, p. 280).
I. Before consonants or in rhyme:
sorne, 576 (-e me CD).
repreue, 669 (reproũe † thow D).
assure, 680 f (-eure B ; assure † ind. 1 sg. D) (: endure ind. 2 pl.).
delite, 704 (A †).
suffre, 755 (-fere C, lete † D), cf. 947.
thew hym gyde, 1162 f (: by syde).
thew . . . purueye, 1511 f (-vey D) (: deye ind. 1 sg.).
eschuwe, 2103 f (-ue B ; that thou eschewe subj. CD) (: saluwe inf.).

¹ In A read [wp]on, thus avoiding hiatus. ² Supply [ek] in C, [thy] in D.
³ Perhaps 3 sg. subj. ⁴ No thou in BCD.
§ 116, 117. of Chaucer’s Troilus.

But,—eschew thou, 634 (esheweth B, -chew D, excuse† C).
compleyne, 2584 f (peyne u).
thow me enspire, 3554 f (thou me en- D, thou me this nyht enspire C)
( desire inf. : in the fyre).
delyuere, 5177 (-er D ; C†).
deuyne, 5251.
receyue, 5872.
thow dispone, 6663 f (to done).
offre, 6669 (-fere C).
thou nenuye, 8152 f (thou enuye D) (: dye subj. 3 sg. : poesy).

II. Before vowels :

ersèuere in, 951.
plaunte, 957.
accepte, 1614 (D ?).
reherse, 2114.

saue, 3108 (so save D, so kep † C).
departe, 3246 (-ê † it D).1
parforme, 3259 (-forne BC, -fourme D).2
prey, 3560 (prey [al] C).
gide, 6685 (guide D, gyde † pl. C).
defende, 8230.

III. Before h :

pray hym, 2543 (prey C, preye B).
distreyne here (poss. sg.), 6959.
deluyere here (acc.), 8106 (-er BD).

IV. Apocope :

prey || now, 2584 (-e B, pray D, preye C) ; cf. II., III.

§ 117. The Imperative second person Singular of Strong Verbs has in the Troilus, as in Anglo-Saxon, no -e (Child, § 18, b ; ten Brink, § 189).

An accompanying thou, so, or as is noted (cf. § 118, p. 280).

I. Regular :

abyd, (i.) 2070 (-e D ; quod † C), 2075 (-e D, abit C), 2604 † C.
(ii.) 2070 AB (-e C, -e D) (Cf. byd(e), under II, below.)
beet, (i.) 925 (bet(e) CD).
com, (i.) 5164 (-e CD). But,—com(e), 7501.
dryf, (ii.) 6722 (-u(e) BD).

1 But supply [so] in D, and read departe. 2 Read most[e] nede in ABCD.
farwel,¹ 1053 (-(e) D); farwel, 1033, 2609 (far C), 3703 (far C), 4367 (pl. t) (far BCD), 6916 (far C), cf. 6390, 7539; far(e) now wel, 5320 (far C); far(e), 878, 2084 (do † A).

gnaw, (i.) 509 (-(e) B, gnow(e) D).

ehelp, (i.) 10 (-(e) D), 2093 (-(e) B), 5252 (-(e) BD); so help † her, 3107 D (kep A, kepe BC); thow help(e) me, 6 (thow help B); helpe me god, 2211 (perh. subj. 3 sg.) (help D, helpē god subj. C).

Note.—The imperative help has in some cases become almost a mere interjection (see 583, 1007, 3566, 3573, 5812); but lines like 1047, 3570, 3573, allow us to see the original construction (cf. helpe, subst., p. 17, note). In 3900 we perhaps have a subj. 3 sg.

hold, (i.) 2105 (D †), 4311 (-(e) D, -e saw(l) l C), 5782 (-(e) D); so hold, 5117 (-(e) BD, held C). (ii.) 2124; hold here (acc.), 5194 (-(e) D). But,—hold(e), 2619 (d CD), 4474 (d BC).

lat, (i.) 616 (-(e) D), 701, 760, 2038 (-(e) D, -(e) A), 2585 (lev(e) † D), 5199 (lett D), 5759 AB (let D)²; cf. 856, 1021, 2137, 2141, 2486, 2515, 2607, 5061, 5112, 5283, 5313, 7644. [Var. CD; let; D let(e).] (ii.) 702 (let(e) D; C †); cf. 4968, 6752, 6756, 6844, 6845, 7492; lat here (acc.), 5193 (let(e) D)³ (cf. 5249 C, 5500, 6722). But,—lat(e), 3255 (lat B, let CD), 3582 (lat BC, let(e) D); cf. 2038 A, 3262; lat(e) hym, 2562 (l) (lat B, let C, let(e) D).

Note.—How completely the adhortative first person plural and the periphrasis with lat had become synonymous may be seen from such passages as the following:

But fle we now prolixite best is
For loute of God and lat vs faste go. ...

And lat vs of here saluynges pace, 2649-50, 2653, (lat ... let C, let(e) ... let D).

So go we seen the paleys of Criseyde
For syn we yet may haue nomore feste
So lat vs seen here paleys at the lest, 6886-88 (As go B, As goo D, Go C;
Yett let(e) ys goo se D). Compare also,—

Now lat here slepe and we oure tales holde, 2107 (lat BC; Now lete we her slepe & forth our talis hold D).

Now lat hem rede and turne we a-noon, 2794 (lat B, let(e) D).
Now lat here wenede vn to here owne place
And turne we to Troylus a-yen, 3060-1 (lat B, let C, Now let(e) we her wend to, etc. D); cf. 1772-3.

In all these cases, as well as those in which Chaucer addresses his audience, we should probably regard the lat as imperative plural (see 1079, 4515).

ren, (i.) 7019 (ren(ne) BD).

ryd, (i.) 2098 (-(e) BD); rid(e), 2105 (ryd C, ride D †).

¹ The variations noted concern merely far: the second part of this quasi-compound is written wel, welth, or welle (never dissyllabic). The accent is on far in 1033, 3703, 4367 CD, 6916, 6390 BD, 7539; on wel in 1053, 2609, 4367 AB, 6390 A.
² Supply [θi] in A.
³ Supply [of] in B.
of Chaucer’s Troilus.

rys, (i.) 6756 (-e D), 6770 (r. † vp C, ris(e) D). (ii.) 5199 (-e BD); cf. 5255, 5307, 6751 A. But,— rys(e), 6751 B (rys C, aris(e) † D). se, (i.) 894, 1697 ABC (perih. pl.), 2405 † D, 7659. spek, (i.) 2542 (-e D), 2584 (-e BCD), 3954 (-e CD) (perih. pl.). stond, (i.) 962 (-e B).

tak, (i.) 344 (-e BD, om. † C). (ii.) tak it, 4463 (-e B, -e D, tak now C); tak herte, 5279 (-e BD; C †). But,— tak(e), 5514 (tak C, -eth D †), cf. 6668; tak(e), 8231 J D; tak(e) hede, 5769 (takC?).

wassh, (i.) 5308 (wessh B, wasch C, waissh(e) D).

wep, (ii.) 7881 (-e B, -e CD).

worth, (ii.) 2096 (-e C, worth thou B, worth(e) thou D).

yef, (i.) 6671 (jef B, jif C, yif D); y. thou, 2148 (jif BC, jef(e) D).1 But,— yeu(e), 1035 (jif BC, yef D); so yeu(e), 6677 (jeu(e) BC).

II. Exceptions.

In a few cases forms in -e (sounded) occur. These cases are,— thow breste, 6208 f (to-breste pres. subj. 3 sg. BCG Cp. John’s, which is no doubt the correct reading) (: leste subj. pres. 2 sg. AC, 3 sg. B, 2 pl. D).

thow . . . rewe, 7070 f (: trewe pred. adj. sg.).

thow write, 2111 f (: endite inf. : a lyte).

In these instances it will be observed that thow precedes the verb, and we are perhaps justified in regarding the forms as jussive subjunctives (cf. § 115, V, note). Thow help me, 6 (thow help B) cannot well be used as an argument against this view, for apocope is frequent in the subjunctive mood (see § 111). The imperatives rewe, 5743 (rew C), 5838 (rew BD), and writ(e) here (dat.), 7671 (writ(e) (to) hire C), are indecisive, since they stand before a vowel or h. It should be remembered, however, that rewen is a weak verb in Chaucer. There are many other cases in which -e is written in the imperative singular of strong verbs, even in MS. A, but in none of these instances is the -e pronounced: see above (I.) under com, fur, help, hold, lat, ryd, rys, tak, yef, and add,—

awak(e), 729; awak(e) he, 751 (awak B, -e † he D). ber(e), 6212 (ber B).

byd(e), 2604 (-d B, abyd † C, tabide † inf. D); byd(e), 3582 (bid B, byd C).

ches(e), 2040 (sches C).2

writ(e) here (dat.), 7671 (-e (to) hire C).

1 In C read wit for will.

2 Supply [And] in A.
§ 118. The Imperative second person Plural of verbs, strong or weak, native or naturalized, ends in the Troilus in -eth, -eth, -th; but forms in -e and forms without any termination are very common (cf. Child, § 59; ten Brink, § 189).\(^1\)

Commands in the second person plural are expressed in Anglo-Saxon in three ways: (1) by the regular imperative plural in -a\(\ddot{e}\), (2) by the regular subjunctive plural in -en, and (3) by a form in -e. This last form is used only when the subject ge immediately follows the verb and is especially common in prohibitions, but in no construction or situation it is used to the exclusion of the forms in -a\(\ddot{e}\) and -en. It was doubtless originally a subjunctive, but in West Saxon it became indistinguishable from the imperative and indeed it is sometimes co-ordinated with -a\(\ddot{e}\) in the same sentence (as, — wime ge . . . ond setda\(\ddot{e}\), Cura Past., 345, 15; ne fare ge né ne fylioð\(\ddot{e}\), Luc. 17, 23)\(^2\). See Sievers, § 360, Ann.; Cosijn, Altes Gr., II, §§ 75, 77; Mätzner, Engl. Gr., II, i, p. 138, ed. 1864; Hennicke, Der Conjunctiv im Altenglischen, Göttingen, 1878, pp. 11, 12; Hotz, On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Anglo-Saxon and its further History in Old English, Zürich, 1882, pp. 13-15; Fleischhauer, Ueber den Gebrauch des Conjunctivs in Alfred's altengl. Uebersetzung von Gregor's Cura Past., Erlangen, 1885, pp. 4, 5, 87; Wohlkaut, Die Syntax des Verbums in Alfred's Uebersetzung des Heptateuch und des Buches Hiob, München, 1885, pp. 2, 3; Prollius, Ueber den syntakt. Gebrauch des Conj. in den Cynegulischen Dichtungen Elene, Juliana v. Crist, Marburg, 1888, p. 5; P. T. Kühn, Die Syntax des Verbums in Ælfries Heiligenleben, Leipzig-Reudnitz, 1889, p. 10.

In the Troilus the form in -eth and the form in -e are both common, and they are often joined in the same sentence. The form in -e is usually felt as an imperative; but when ye precedes (as in ye me lere, 1182) the construction may have retained some of its original subjunctive force (cf. in the singular, thou quench, etc.; see §§ 115, V, and note, 116, 117, II). Forms in -e (apocopated) or without ending also occur, and some of these may be due to an extension of the singular form to the plural or to the petrifaction of a singular in an idiomatic use. Cf. especially lat in the periphrasis lat us with inf. (lateth is altogether unknown to Chaucer).

In the examples that follow (I.—IV.) an accompanying so or ye is noted.

I. -eth (var. CD -ith, -yth)\(^3\):
preyeth, 29 (-[e]th), 32.
refuseth, 255 (-eth † C, grucchith
biddeth, 40 (-ith † D), 43.
D), 2296 (refuse † it C).
ye . . . dwelleth, 119 (-yt B;
douteth, 683 (-eth B).
D †).

disblameth, 1102 (des- B).

---

1 Revces, 6163 A, is a scribe's error.
2 So also the imperative and the subjunctive in -n may be co-ordinated in the same sentence. Thus,— ne ondredæð éow né ge ne onforhtion, Ælfcr, Deuter. 31, 6.
3 Before consonants unless the contrary is noted. Old-style figures indicate that a vowel follows.
sitteth, 1298 (sitheth B).
quaketh, 1387.¹
herkeneth, 1400² (cf. 52, 2195, 5958, 6034 (bef. how), 8148).
loketh, 2220.
letteth, 2221 (-et[th] B).
thanketh hym, 2293 (thonk[ith] D).
abydeth, 2800.
sotecheth, 2883, 4135.
draweth, 3019 (-et B).
careth, 3512.
wyrcheth, 3785 (werk- B, werch-ith C, wurkith D).
liggetb, 3790 (litli C).
swownetb, 4032.
shappeth, 5587; so s.
bow, 5596 (-eth 1 D).
suffreth, 5866 (-feryth C).
taketh, 5955 (B ?), cf. 3790.
sopreweth, 6163 BD (-ith C, rewes A).
theth, 6238 (thynk- B, thynk-yth C, thinketh D).
maketh, 6248.
vp castcth, 8201 (D t).
loueth hym, 8205.
kneleth, 3807.

Compare also 232, 259 D (bef. him), 538, 687, 1388, 2511, 2737
C, 3790 (bef. hym), 4050, 4990, 6182, 6221 (bef. hede), 6252, 6525,
6668 C (bef. hede), 7250, 7266 (bef. heed), 7281, 7749, 7762, 8200
(bef. hom), 8203, and the examples cited under II.—IV.

Note.—Observe the variations of ending in B 119, B 683, and cf.,—takyth,
232 C ; herkenyt, 658 C ; trustelit, 2330 B ; herknet, 8148 B ; herkenet,
2195 B ; douteht, 683 B.

II. Syncopated forms ⁴:
refuseth, 255 C (-eth not AB, grucchith not D).
aryseth, 1306 (-e D, -eth lat B).
esth, 1307 D (east ABC).
biddeth, 1659 C (byd AB, bid D).
takyth hede, 1666 C (tak A, take BD), cf. 1376 D ; -eth, 2801 C
(take AD, tak B) ; -yth, 3051 C (tak AB, -e D).
tellith, 2190 C (tel AB, tel D †).
bryngyth, 2217 C (bryng A, -e B, bring D).
spekith, 2372 D (spek AB, speke C).
sleth, 2821 C (sle ABD).
comith, 3511 D (-e ABC).
haueth, 3595 (-yth C, haue BD) ; -yth, 2218 C (haueth ABD) ; havith
here (hie), 3727 D (-e ABC).
seth, 3805 (se B, sey C, y-sey D).

¹ Supply [not] in B.
² In A cut out (you).
³ Supply [that] in B, [the] in D.
⁴ Old-style figures indicate that a vowel follows.
seith, 4018 C (do AB, doth D).
so shapeth you, 5596 D (-eth how AB, -yth to C).
duelleth, 6111 D (dwellē ABC).
troweth, 6209 D.

thynkith, 6249 C (thenk A, thynke B, thinkē D); cf. 1436 C, 5979 C, 7518 C.
dryueth, 6277 C (dryf A, dryfe B, dryue D).
fareth now wel, 6349 AD (B?), 7784 C (fare AD), 7994 (farth B, farith C); -eth wel, 7775 AD (farwel C). But cf. 5869.

Note. It will be observed that syncopated forms are not common in A.

III. Forms in -e:

ye me lere, 1182 (leere B, lere inf. D).
loke ye, 2733 (-eth B, -ith C, -ith [ye] D), 2737 (-ith CD, lakketh ↑ B);
loke that, 2804 (-ith D); loke thanne, 3158, 3718; lookē || alwey, 2194 B (lokē D, lokē that C, lok [that] A).
avise yow, 2815 (-eth BC, -ith D).
so help[e] to, 3577 (-eth B, now helpyth C, now helpith D).
thenk[e] thouggh, 4128 (thynk that B, -eth thou D; C ↑).
smytē of, 4415.
take not, 6498 (-eth B, -yth C)²; cf. 3704.
hèrkene it, 658 (-en B, herkënyt C, herkënith D).
telle it, 1181 (tel BD).
cache, 1376 (tache C, takith D).
late, 2029 (lat BC, lete D); cf. 4148 (?), 5905.
refuse, 2239 (refuse 3e it = 3e't D); cf., however, 2296.
aquyte hym, 2285 (aquit it C).

ye ... inhelde, 2886 (in helde B, inheld D).

IV. Forms in -e or without ending:

(a) Before consonants:
help me, 535 (-e D).
yif me, 1378 (jif BC, yevē D); yeue me, 6515 (yeue C, zif C, yef D).

¹ Supply [that] in BD. ² In 6498 A take might easily be construed as infinitive.
vnderstonde for, 1443 (-ë † B, -d CD)

2 tel me, 1586, 1589 (B †); telle me, 1395 (tel BC), 2363 (tel CD).

3 lat youre, 1469 (C †, letë ? D); lat this, 1482 (letë D); so lat me,
1522 (letë D); lat be, 2229 (let C, letë D), 3405 (let CD);
lat preue, 3890 (let CD); lat now, 3981 (letë D); lat sle, 4143 (let C);

4 cf. 117, 1194, 1204, 1399, 1635, 3040, 3598, 3602, 4855, 5586 † C.

awake || ye slepen, 1630.

byd me, 1659 (biddeth C, bid ȝe D).


ne bryng me, 2217 (-e B, -ȝth C).

yf me, 2289 (ȝif BC, ȝef D).

stynyte that, 2327 (stynyt D).

thenk which, 2822 (thynek B, think C, thenk † one D); so thynek
that, 4128 B (thenk[e] thowgh A, -eth thouȝ D; C †).

foryet this, 5458 (-ȝet BC, -yetȝ D).

so lef this, 5585 (leuȝth C, leuȝ D), 5586 (leuȝ D, lat be C).

farewel, 5869 (far BC; D †); fare now wel, 7784 AD (-ȝth C). But

cf. 6349, 7775, 7994.

dwelle rathere, 6111 (duclëth D).

trowe me, 6209 B (-ȝth D; -e sg. AC).

hold forward, 6860 (-ȝ BD), cf. 6447.

make good, 7276.

wre you, 1465 (were † B, wri C, couerȝ † D).

y-se who, 2338 (I-see B, lo † C); se ye, 995 (se now BC).

o fe not, 2339.

sle nought, 2821 (sleth C).

(b) Before vowels or h:

rys, 1196 (-e BD), 2029 (-e D); arys, 5577 (-e D).

tel, 1207 (-telle B, -H D; C †).

tel, 2190 (-ith C; D †), 2280.

trist, 1391 (trustith † me D).

com, 1395 (-e D), 2823 (-e CD, com [of] B), 2827 (-e C, -ɵ † of D).

thenk, 1478 (thynek B, think C); thynek, 7749 C (-ȝth AD); so thenk,

1 In B we should supply [yow] and read -ȝ.

2 In A supply [ne].

3 Infinitive !

4 In A supply [ne].

5 Dele (now) in A; insert [my] in B.

6 Probably the correction ye to now should be made and se regarded as singular.

7 Supply [and] in D.
Observations on the Language

§ 118.

tak hede, 1666 (-e BD, -yth C); tak it, 1337 (-e CD).
ber, 2226 (-e CD).
cast, 2241 (-e C, -e [it] B), cf. 1700.
se how, 3804¹, 6594 ABD.
sey, 3948 (sei C, seie D).
lat, 4346 (let C); cf. 5906, 5963, 5964, 6263, 6858, 6860; lat hem, 4164 (let D).

Further examples of the imperative plural in -e or without an ending may be seen in,—

But lat be this and tell me how ye fare
Do wey youre barbe and shewe youre face bare
Do wey youre book ryse vp and late vs daunce
And lat vs don to may som obseruaunce, 1194-7 (tel ... swow † ... ryse ... lat ... lat B; tel ... schew ... lat ... lat C, let ...
shew ... risè vp ... let ... letè D).

Lat be [to me]² youre frendly ³ manerè speche
And sey to me, etc., 1333-4 (lat ... say B, let ... sey CD).

... em I preye
Swych answere as yow lyst yow self purveye, 2244-5 (D †).

Lat be youre nice shame and youre folye
And spek with hym in esyng of his herte
Lat nicete not do yow bothe smerte, 2371-3 (let ... spekè ... let C, letè ... spekith ... letè D).

For loue of god make of this thyng an ende
Or se vs bothe, 2960-1 (mak ... slo C; D †).

Loke al be wel and do now as yow lyste, 3430 (look ... [and] do B, loke ... y do ind. D).

Lat Troye an Troian fro youre herte pace
Dryf out that bitrate hope and make good chere
And clepe ayen the beaute of youre face, 7275-7 (latè ... dryue ... makë ... clepe B; let ... dryue ... makë ... clepe D).

The freedom with which imperatives in -eth are co-ordinated with these truncated forms is shown by the following passages,—

remembre yow ... and thenketh, 24-26 A (-breth ... thenketh B, remembre ... thanke D †).

... aryseth and lat vs daunce
And cast youre wydwes habit to myschaunce, 1306-7 (ariseth lat ... cast B, arise and letè ... castìth D).

Sey on lat me not yn this fere dwelle
So wol I don now herkeneth I shal yow (om. BCD) telle, 1399-1400 (let ... herkenyth C, let ... herkenith D).

Aviseth you on it whan ye han space
And of som goodly answereth yow purchase, 2209-10 (avise sow ... purchase C, aviseth ... purchase D) ; cf. 2315.

¹ Supply [can] in B.
² to me om. in A, but found in BCD.
³ frende B, frendely C, frend[e] D. Read fremde.
Nay nee quod Pandare see not so
Yet at the leste thanketh hym I preye
Of his good wil and doth hym not to deye
Now for the loun of me my nece dere
Refuseth not at this tyme my preyere, 2292-6 (thonketh B, thankith...
refuse 2 it C, thonk[e]... refusith D).

Now stynt that ye . . .

But hasteth yow to don hym ioye hauie
For trusteth wel to longe don hardinesse, etc., 2327-9-30 (trusteht B, hastyth...
trostheth C, synt... hastith... trustith D).

Rys take with yow yowre nece Antigone

The lasse pres the bet come forth with me
And loketh that ye thonke humbely
Hem alle thre and whan ye may goodly
Your tytme y-se taketh of hem youre lene, 2801-3-4-5-6 (ris tak... com...
loke... taketh B, rys taketh... come... loke... takyth C, rys taketh...
com... lokith... takith D).

Stynteth right here and softly yow pleye, 2814 (stynteth... om.+ B,
stynith... 3e pleye C, styntith... soft[e]ly 3ow play D) (; I preye ind.).

Com of therfore and bryngeth hym to hele, 2835 (bryngë C, come... bring
3e hym D).

Now beth al hol no lengerë ye ne pleyne, 3010 (peyne C, no lenger that 3e pleyn
D) (; feyne inf., feyn D).

And eseth therre youre hertes right y-nough
And lat se which, etc., 3039-40 (ese+B... lat C, esith... let D).

Tak nece myn youre lene at alle thre
And late hem speke and cometh forth with me, 3051-2 (lat B, takyth...
comyth C, takë... let... comith D).

And yf ye lyggen wel to nyght come ofte
And careth not what weder is on loft, 3511-12 (carith C, comith... carith
D).

Ne wondreth not ne haueth of it no fere

Lat no wight rysë, 3595-3 (+-dereth... hauë... lat B, -deryth...
hauyth... let hem C, -drith... have... let no (I) D).

Hauë here and bereth hym this blewre rynge

And see my, etc., 3727-30 (hauë... berë... see C, havith... berith...
see [my] D).

For trusteth wel... So (To+A) speke youre self, 3745-51 (spek B, troistyth...
spekë C, trustith... spekë D).

... se how this lord kan knele
Now for youre trouthe seth this gentil man

And seye knelëth now, 3804-5-7 (se... se... knelëth B, how wel...
sey zone... knelith C, how wel... y sey (=y-se?)... knelith D).

And enere more on this nyght yow recorde
And beth wel war.

Foryeue it me, etc., 4021-2-5 (ffor-jif C, 3e+r recorde D) (; mysericorde n.).
Observations on the Language [§§ 118, 119]

Beth glad forthi and lyue in sykernesse, 4355 (leyuth C, be ... lyue D).
And shappeth yow his sorwe for to a-bregge
And nought eneresse lene nece swete
Buth rather to hym [cause] of flat than egge
And with som wysdom ye his sorwes bete, 5587-90 (shapeth ... beth. ... bete B, schapyth ... be ... bete C, shapeth ... beth ... bete D).
So shappeth how distourbe this goynge
And let sen now, etc., 5596-9 (shapeth B, schapyth to ... let C, shapeth you ... lett D).

Thus maketh vertue of necessite
By pacient and thynk that lord is he, 6245-8-9 (by paciens ... thynketh B, this maketh ... beth pacient ... thynketh C, be pacient ... thinketh D).
And thynketh wel. ...

Dryf out the fantasies yow with-inne
And trusteth me and leteth ek youre sorwe
Or her my trouthe I wol not lyue til morwe, 6273-7-8-9 (thynketh ... dryf ... here C, thynklyth ... dryfeth ... trosteth ... leuyth ... here D, me thinketh þ ind. ... dryne D).

Now hold yowre day and doth me not to dye, 6447 (do B, help þ this day and do C, holdeth ... leteth ... D).
Now writeth swete and let me thus not pleyne, 7762 (-yth ... let C, -eth ... leteth D).

§ 119. The Infinitive ends in the Troilus in -en, -en, -e, -e (cf. Child, § 60; ten Brink, § 190). In to sene, to done, the -ne of the A.S. gerund or dative-infinitive is preserved.

Variants in -yn, -in are found; -yn is particularly common in C.
The spelling -ene in for to trostenê, 690 C, to chaugen ... and ... zeuene, 4721-2 B, is rather a scribe’s eccentricity than a reminiscence of the gerundial ending.

Note.—The prefix ye- (very common with the p. v., see §§ 121-2 passim) is occasionally found with the infinitive: y-se, see § 119, XII.; ye-the, 1755 f (the ACD); y-the, 5101 f B (the A, be þ C, thee D) (cf. § 119, XI.); y-here, 5975 f (yhere B, [y]here C, here D). But in 1439, 5590 (y-se), the -e of the preceding word may have been carried over, and in 1755, 5101, we may choose between neuer the and neuer y-the.

1 Here begins a new stanza, but the construction continues. 2 D omits And.
The examples are arranged as follows,—I. -en before consonants; II. -en in rhyme; III. -en before vowels; IV. -en before h; V. syncope, -en; VI. -e before consonants; VII. -e in rhyme; VIII. -e (elided) before vowels; IX. -e (elided) before h; X. apocope of -e; XI. hiatus; XII. contracted forms,—fle, sle, the, wre; XIII. gerundial infinitives,—to seyne, to sene, to done (with the other infinitive forms of these three verbs).

I. -en before consonants (of all kinds, except h):

seken bote, 763 (sychen C, seche D).
suffren loues, 971 (soueren B, soffere (?) C, suffre D).
helpen sely, 1768 (-e C, [e] D).
wexen dymme, 1993 (-e dunne CD).
gladen lo, 2064 (-yn D; C t).
lyuen for, 2212 (leuyn C, lyvyn D).
helen the, 2400 (-e CD).
auylen now, 2515 (-e C; D t).
dishesen for, 2735 (-esen D, -esin C, -sese D).
axen red, 2783 (-in D).
wrathen yow, 3016 (-e C t, -yn D, wreth[e] B).
cursen slouthe, 3738 (-yn CD, corsen B).
maken chere (clere f A), 4506 (-e C, -yn D).
Cf. also 139, 252, 380, 435, 838, 1529, 1598, 2480, 2640, 4248, 4539, 4622, 5288, 5607, 5694, 6445, 6870, 7161, 7916, etc., etc.

Note.—The spelling -yn is rare in A: see she may ledyn Paris, 2534 (-en B, -e C).1

II. -en in rhyme:
tellen, 1 (: fellen pret. ind. 3 pl.).
wayten, 190 (-e D) : beyten inf., 192 (-yn C, -e D, baten B).
descenden, 216 (-yn CD) (: wenden pret. ind. 3 pl.).
quyken, 295 (queken C, quykyn D) : stiken inf., 297 (-yn D, quekyn C) ; quyken, 5293 (-yn CD) : pryken inf., 5295 (-yn C).
dyen, 306 (deyen BC) (: dryen patiuntur : eyen n. pl.) ; dyen, 1412 (-ey- BC) : lye inf., 1409 (lyen CD) (: eyen) ; dyen, 1621 (dyen BD) : bywryen inf., 1622 ([be]-B) (: eyen) ; dyen, 3027 (deyen C) (: eyen). (See eyen, n. pl., § 4, p. 8.)
weylen, t 1369 (weyuen B, weyne CD) : receyuen inf., 1367 (-e CD) (: deseyuen ind. 3 pl., -e C ; D t).

1 In D supply [For].

cryn, 1731 : aspien inf., 1734 (-yen BCD) (: eyen n. pl.). Cf. 3977, etc., below.

dryn pati, 1951 (: eyen n. pl. : crien 3 pl.).

waryen, 2704 (-ye C, -ien D) : vàryen inf., 2706 (-ie C, tarien † D) : tàryen inf., 2707 (-ien D, l. om. C).


excusen, 3867 (-yn C, -e D) (: vsen ind. 3 pl., -yn CD).

espynen, 3977 (aspien BD) (: eyen n. pl., ijen D) ; espynen, 7177 (asspyen C) (: syen viderunt, syen C : eyen n. pl., yen BD). Cf. 1731, above, 4296, below.

espyen, 4296 (t5 j espynen C, to † aspien D) (: ywryen †. eyen n. pi, ey$yn C, yen D).

Note.—The commoner infinitive ending in rhyme is -e (see VII., below). The ending -en is often used to give variety to stanzas which also contain the infinitive in -c at the end of one or more verses. Thus the rhymes in 5293 ff. are,—quyTcen inf., asente 1 sg., pryken inf., tormente inf., entente, sholde, wolde (cf. also 1 ff., 190 ff., 295 ff., 561 ff., 1408 ff., 1730 ff., 3095 ff., 4082 ff., 4600 ff., 5293 ff.).

III. -en before vowels:


lyuen, 1635 (-e D, leuin C).

taryen (dissyl.), 2104 (-ye C).

quenchen, 3900 (-in C, -yn D †).

fynden, 5053 (-yn C, -e D).

asken, 5334 (axen BC, askë † hem D).

distorben, 5765 (-in C, -yn D).

bryngen, 5937 (-yn C, [e] † D).

causen, 5971 (-yn C, -e D).

congeyen, 6842 (eüngë † vs C, cunueien † D).
bifallen, 7325 (-ë D, -yn that C).
Cf. also 194, 620, 836, 1029, 1595, 2242, 2476, 2724, 5191, 5768, 7444, etc., etc.

Note.—The ending -yn is rare in A: see werkyn in, 4899 (-en B, wirkë D).

IV. -en before h:

fynden here (hic), 399 (-ë BC, -yn D)
byholden here (eam), 1350 (-yn D, -heldyn C).
dissimulen he, 3276 (-yn CD).
esen hem, 4632 (-yn D).
distorben hym, 6065 (-ë CD).
beren hym, 6066 (-yn C, -[ë] D).
rennen hom, 6848 (-ë CD).

Cf. also 370, 388, 1238, 2377, 2926, 4609, 5100, 6052, 6551, 7677, 8069, etc.

V. Syncope,— -en.

Note.—In most of the cases cited under A, and in some of those under B and C, the caesura falls immediately after the infinitive.

A. Before vowels:

speken, 387 (-e BD, spek C).
seruën, 817 (-e BD, -yn C †) cf. 2986.
herën, 1013 (-e BD, -yn C).
casten, 1744 (-e B, -yn C, cast D).
louën, 1843 (-yn C, -e BD).¹
tellen, 2578 (-e BC, tel D).
loken, 3822 (-e CD, -e vp[on] B).
to amenden, 6501 (-e D, tamende B, to amendyn C).
syngen, 7000 (-e BC, syng D).²
stelën, 7115 (-e B, -ë D ; C †).³
laughen, 7144 (-e B, laugh D, laughe ne ? C).
holden, 7554 (-e BD, -ë al C).
trowen, 7626 (-e BC, truste † D).

B. Before h:

plesen hym, 1562 (-e CD).
heleñ hym, 4794 (-e BC, help † D); cf. 7412.
clawen hym, 5390 (-e CD, clawen B).
preyen here (eam), 6678 (prey CD).⁴

¹ Supply [ë] in D.
² Dele (to) in A. In C read gan for may.
³ C reads ostel for ost stela.
⁴ Dele (to) in A.
To rauysshèn herè syn thow hast not ben there, 5305 (-asche C, -issen D); cf. the same phrase in 5299, and see 7258 BC.

lyuèn hauè (1 sg.), 7305 (lyue BD; C †).


C. Before consonants:

hopen the, 865 AB (-े D, -े ratherè C).
louèn sholde, 3639 (-en || oon † B, -yn || on C, shold love || on D).
trowèn that, 7661 A (B †, -े sche C, -े that D).

Cf. also 1453 AC, 1563 C, 2606 C, 2950 C, 3817 D, 5520 C, 6174 B, 6858 B, 7700 C.

VI. -e before consonants (of all kinds except h):
mulèteplë that, 486.
hide fro, 587 (-en B, -yn C).
loke wyde, 629 (-en B).
seme lesse, 703.
loue such, 798.
fare wel, 1177 (-en B).
synge clere, 1910 (-en B, -in C, -yn D).
thankè but, 1933 (-en B, -[e] D).
slepe neuère, 2183.1
iape faste, 2249 (C †).
desire fresshly, 2985 (-en B, -yn CD).2
make resistance, 3832 (-en B, -in C).
deye mot, 4083 (-en B, dien D).
fele noon, 5128.
handle for, 5434 (-dle(e) B, -delyn C, -diH D).
come by, 5628 (-en BD).
fynde bote, 5921.
oblige me, 6076.
stele pryuely, 6263 (-yn C).
cleýme kyngdom, 7850 (-en B, -yn C).

1 Supply [not] in D. 2 Dele (to) in C.
Cf. also 734, 747, 1339, 1773, 2204, 3356, 4337, 4378, 5574, 6369, 8131, etc., etc.

VII. -e in rhyme:
endite, 6 (: write *ind. 1 sg.*).
pleyne, 11 (: peyne *n.* : to seyne).
sterue, 17 (: serue *ind. 1 sg.*).
auayle, 20 (: trauayle *n.*).
falle, 290 (: with-alle).
wyte (= blame), 825 (: lyte) ; cf. 1470 f, 7698 f.
neuene, 876 (nemene C) (: yn heuene).
keuere, 910 (: feuere).
comaunde, 1050 (: recomaunde *subj. 2 sg.*).
wade, 1235 (: words glade).
salüwe, 2101 (salue BC, -ewe D) (: eschuwe *inv. sg.* ,-ue B, -ewe CD).
here, 2199 (: yfere *adv.*).
vnfettre, 2301 (onfetere C) (; lettre : bettre *adv.*).
bygynne, 2459 (be- CD) (: wynne *inf.* : with-inne).
denye, 2574 (-y CD) (: curtasye : companye).
declare, 2765 (: Pandare).
forbede, 3309 (: hede heed *n.* : nede *n.*).
pace, 3312 (pase C, passe D) (: grace).
wende, 3458 (wynde C) (: ende *n.*).
delyuere, 3854 (-er D, del[y]uere B) (: wyuere *n.* : slyuere *n.*).
adawe, 3962 ([a]- B, to dawe C) (: drawe *inf.*).
fonde, 3997 (: on honde).
fysshe, 4004 (: rysche *n.*).
syke, 4014 (sike C, sijke D) (: syke *adj. pl.*).
houe, 4269 (: Ioue).
melte, 4287 (mette † B) (: felte *ind. 3 sg.*).
selle, 4303 (: helle : dwelle *inf.*).
rewere, 4612 (: trewe *adj. pl.*).
trete, 4720 (: grete *adj. pl.* : strete).
werne, 4773 (: yerne *adv.*).
lythe, 5416 (: swythe *adv.* : a thousand sithe).
to abregge, 5587 (tabrigge B) (: egge *n.*) ; cf. 3137 f.
leue (credere), 5629 (: preue *ind. 3 pl.*).
sorwe, 5971 (: morwe).
glose, 6072 (: suppose *ind. 1 sg.*).
fere, 6145 (: there).
gnawe, 6399 (: sawe *n.*).
glaze, 6832 (-se CD) (: maze n.).
borwe, 7089 (: sorwe n.: morwe).
wreke, 7323 (: speke ind. pres. 2 pl.).
loue, 7365 (: aboue).
seche, 7495 (: byseche ind. 1 sg.: speche n.).
honge, 7562 (: stronge adj. pl.: longe adv.).
vnbòdye, 7913 (on- C, vnbody D) (: paròdye n.).
ryue, 7923 (: of lyue).
restore, 8036 (: more).
laste, 8187 (: faste adv.: caste inft.). Etc., etc., etc.

Note.—For forms without -e in rhyme, see below, X., note 2.

VIII. -e (elided) before -e in rhyme (variants not registered).

Cf. 49 (lyue), 123 (enquere), 194 (smyle), 224 (endure), 347 (deme), 392 (loue), 616 (sterue), 699 (walwe and wepe), 806 (wepe and crie), 1203 (bydde and rede), 1204 (daunce), 1256 (mene), 1456 (deme), 1868 (wepe and sitte), 2256 (dyne), 2284 (humme), 2406 (glade), 2840 (dye), 4091 (stroke), 4541 (dispise), 4956 (suffre), 4962 (ende), 5426 (lyue), 5844 (dresse), 7154 (wowe), 7577 (crepe), 7820 (smyle), etc., etc.

Note.—The elided -e of the infinitive is sometimes omitted in writing. Thus, in A see 204 (cast), 560 (bryng), 818 (thend), 1493 (brest), 1857 (put), 2215 (chaung), 2554 (bryng), 2784 (bryng), 4899 (brest), 6588 (com), 6794 (pley), 6818 (glad), 6948 (mak). See also 33 B, 192 BC, 275 D, 370 D, 387 C, 460 B, 476 D, 522 B, 714 D, 833 D, 1040 BD, 1057 D, 1079 D, 1184 B, 1203 D, 1547 D, 1427 B, 1540 B, 1732 D, 1744 D, 1772 D, 1797 BD, 1812 B, 1817 B, 1979 D, 2040 D, 2156 D, 2289 BD, etc., etc.

IX. -e (elided) before h:

bygonne he, 6610 (by-gynne B, be-gynne C, begynnè † for D); mete he, 6612 (dreme D; mette he pret. ind. † C).

lete his, 192 (let C); kepe his, 627; lone his, 817 (C †); saue his, 1660. Cf. 1468 (stynke), 2121 (here), 2167 (telle), 3328 (ese), 3957 (wete), 5726 (cause), 6624 (here), 7047 (make).

dresse hym, 1156 (-yn D); make h., 1407 (mak B; inv. † D); lyke h., 1760; graunte h., 1789 (-t B); drawe h., 2271 (-w D); bidde h., 3309 (bid BCD); telle h., 4488, 7221. Cf. 1460 (gouère), 2379 (loue), 2380 (guérdone), 3428 (auyse), 3743 (ffe), 3759 (focche), 3913 (streyne), 4396 (make), 6065 (plukke), etc.

reherce here (gen. sg.), 2741. Cf. 289 (lyke), 1150 (make), 2743 (take).
loue here (acc. sg.), 4494 (-yn C). Cf. 2300 (auyse), 7460 (excuse), 7462 (excuse), 7489 (make), 8096 (hate).

lese here (gen. pl.), 6744; vp frete here, 7833. Cf. 151 (honoure), 907 (mucche).
come here (adv.), 1462, 5582 (com BD, -yn C); dwelle here, 3476 (-yn C, dweH D).


constreue how, 2875 A (-strue BD); caste how, 6752 (-t BC, [us] caste D); trowe how, 7265 (-w B). But,—reherce how, 4239 (-en B, -yn C, -on E).

take hede, 7120 (tak B). But,—take hede, 8069 D (-en AB).

com horn, 4871 (-e in C).


come hastely, 5980 (-[e] B, -yn C).

Note.—For hiatus before h, see XI., below.

X. Apocope of -e (before consonants).

There are several genuine instances of apocope. Old-style figures indicate that a caesura follows the infinitive ending, so that the -e may be pronounced if one cares to admit the "extra syllable before a pause."

hoüe the, 865 D (hopen AB, hopë ratherë C).¹

lat Criseydë, 5119 (letë C, let D).

tellë yow, 2198 AB (tellë CD).

speke for, 2511 ABG (of this CD). (No note in Mr. Austin's collation.)

bere the, 2583.

come soupen, 3402 (cum C) ³; -e but, 5661; c. therfore, 5662; c. sholde, 5726; c. for, 6023 (com C); c. that, 7021; c. ye, 7791;

com speke, 5316 (-e CD). Cf. 5717 (?)

make desseuerence, 4266 (C †); make the, 7515 CD (-ën peple ABG) (no note in Mr. Austin's collation).

lyuë to, 4759; l. til, 6279 (leuë to C; D †).

putте that, 6174 (-en B, put D).

wene that, 5730, 6775 AB (seyn C, sey D).

holdе forth, 6858 A (-en B, -e ourë CD).⁴

¹ No note in Mr. Austin's collation. G reads: Thanne wolde I hopen rather for to spede.

² For which (whiche G) I am come (I come BGCp., come I C, come y D) to (om. B Cp.) telle yow newe (new B, om. CDG) tidynges. No variants are noted for John's MS.

³ In C it is possible to read cum[ë] suppe; in D, comé soupe; but the line would then be intolerably harsh.

⁴ CD and John's give a 9-syl. line: Lat vs holdeoure purpos fermely (frendely † C). AB read forth after holde. Cp. also has forth, but reads holde. G has: Lette vs holde forthe purpos fermely.
trowę that, 7661 D (-ṣen A, -œ sche C; B †).
preye for, 48 (pray D); prey yow, 2521 (-¢ B, -e C, pray as D, prey as G). ¹
seyę, see XII., below.

Note 1.—For wete, dorrę, see § 123; for hauę, see § 124.
In many cases the apocope disappears on comparison of MSS. Thus,—
worschepe preuyly, 380 C (l. werken).
tellę the, 580 A (l. telle it).
tellę 3ow, 7134 C, 7308 C (cf. 7309 C).
bring me, 623 D.
cogh bygan, 1339 C.
dyę there, 1418 C.
love no, 1563 D.
plię no, 1581 C.
bynd with, 1813 D.
bathę begyn, 1934 C.
endure to, 1949 D.
trust to, 2041 D.
spekę sumwhat, 2106 D.
spekę therof, 2688 C.
dreche to, 2349 C.
tellę 3ow, 2626 D.

Note 2.—In 3817 the readings of ABCEGCP. John’s are: Now doth (do G) hym sitte (sytten D, sitten John’s) now (om. BCCp. John’s) god (good BD) nece dere. The weight of MS. authority seems to be in favour of omitting the second now and reading sitte.—In 1226 B, we may perhaps read woundren more for wonder more (wonderyn C, woundryn D, iapę † A); cf. 1453 D, 5509 C (wondere; wounden AB, mervailę D).—In 6118 the question is really between at-renne but not at-redc and at-renne and not at-redc; cf. C.T. 2451 T.

Note 3.—Occasionally -e in the infinitive is not written at the end of the line, but the rhyme always ² indicates that it should be restored. Instances are rare in A and B, but in C and D they abound. For A, see 462 (rew), 4260 (throw), 4975 (lyght); for B, see 313 (hold), 392 (repetent), 1338 (cast), 2956 (rew), 4017 (trespäs), 4402 (wak), 6994 (shew), 8021 (bihold); for C, see 73, 193, 389, 492, 750, 908, 1420, 1441, 1524, 1775, 1958, 1986, 2078, 2252, 2529, 2556, 2558, 2574, 2624, 2639, 2715, 2757-8, 2795, 2841-2, 2919, 2997, 3100, 3200, 3384, 3500, 3681, 3758, 3924, 4069, 4339, 4418, 4447, 4500, 4530, 4919, 5029, 5154, 5459-60, 5519, 5543-4, 5769, 5833, 5850, 5858-9, 5952, 6043, 6076, 6188, 6243, 6274, 6280, 6446-7, 6720, 6752-3, 6822, 6867, 6878, 6914, 6932, 6934, 6997, 7029, 7349, 7574, 7590, 7593, 7595, 7667, 7771, 7839, 7931, 7983. In 4973 f, C needs correction. For D, see 256, 665, 2599, 2639, 3043, 3699, 4276, 4536, 5272, 8133, and passim.

¹ No note in Mr. Austin’s collation. ² I. e. when not another inf.
XI. Hiatus:

deyë in, 674 (dyen B, deyen CD).
demë other, 799 (-en B, -yn CD).  
folwë if, 1134 (-en B, -yn C).
stoppë euery, 1889 (-en B).
fyndë in, 4140 (-en B); fyndë at, 6866 (-en B); fynd[ë]|| out, 7453 (-en B, -ë CD).
endurë al, 4333 (-en B, -yn C).  
bryngë vs, 5354 (-yn C); bryngë it, 7657 (-en B, -yn C).
compleynë in, 7086 (B†).
wrîtë yf, 8140 (-ë yif D).
 Cf. also 360, 979, 1184, 1350, 2120, 2793, 2898, 2923, 3079, 3154, 3304, 3742, 3946, 4166, 4238, 4504, 5314, 5420, 6047, 7049, 7122, 7178  
7503, 7629.

Note.—In all the cases cited above A has -ë (with hiatus), but in all of them the hiatus may be removed by reading -en, except in 360, 1184, 5314, 5420; in these four lines a word has dropped out of A, the restoration of which reduces the -e to -ë (elided).  
None of the four MSS. is free from hiatus in the infinitive form, but it is rarest in B.  
Other examples (not in A) may be seen in the variants under III. (above); cf. also 796 D, 1843 D, 2886 D, 3317 D, 3822 B, 4524 B, 4835 C, 6233 D, 7538 CD, 7554 C, etc.

hidë his, 381 (-en B, -yn C, -ë his? D).  
endurë he, 2730 (-en BC, -ë he D).
suffër hym, 2996 B (-en A, sufferyn C, suffryn D).  
likë here (dat.), 3455 (-en B, -yn C; D†).
dweller here (hic), 3483 (-yn D); cf. dwellen here, 3489 (-yn D, -ë C).
tellë how, 2091 (-en B, -ë her D); cf. 7869 D.
rehercë how, 4239 (-en B, -yn C, -en E).  
But,—constreue how, 2875 A (-strue BD); caste how, 6752 (-t BC, [us] caste D); trowe how, 7265 (-w B).
comë hath, 6717 (-en B, -ë? C, -ë ayen † D).
takë hede, 8069 D (-en AB).  
But,—take hede, 7120 (tak B).
tellë half, 3186 (-en B, -yn C, -ë? D).

1 In C read other for out;
2 Dele (the) in D.
3 Supply [Ne] in A (?).
4 Furnivall prints speke[n] in A.
5 In 5420, it is possible to explain the hiatus in A on the ground of the cesura (lyue|| yf), but BCDcMCP John's have if (yf, yif) that, which makes the verse regular.
6 In the majority of the lines just cited Cp. has the form in -en.
7 9-syl., except in D.
8 Dele (lo) before serve in C.
Observations on the Language

XII. *Fle, sle, the, wre:*

fle, (i.) 747 f (flee B, sle † D) (: secre: be *sit*), 1795 f (flee B) (: he), 3386 f (: be *inf.* : tre), 3670 f (: he : be *inf.*), 4105 (flee C, flie monosyl. D), 5422 † D (sleen A, sleen B, sle C). (ii.) 4648 (*before caesura*).—flen, 1279 f (fleen B, flen(e) D) (: ben p. p.: ben sbst. pl.).

sle, (i.) 747 † f D (fle AC, flee B), 4143 (sla B), 7834 (sle D), 8049 (sle D). (ii.) 6108 (sla B, sle 3if C, sle yif D), 7635 † C.—slen, slen, (i.) 1750 (slan(e) B, sle CD), 5422 (slen B, sle C, fle † D), 5929 (sle D), 6409 (sle CD). (ii.) 2443 (sle D), 3850 (sle D); slen hym, 815 (sleen B, sle D), 823 (sle D) 1; slen how, 5848 (slan(e) B, sle D).

the, 341 f (: be *sit: ye*), 1755 f (ythe B) (: be *inf.*: parde), 5101 f (ithe B, be † C, thee D) (: to be: me), 7523 f (: me: se *inf.*).

wre; Hymself to wre at hem he(r) gan to smyle, 329 (wrie monosyl. B, wrythe † C, were † D); byhoueth . . . vnwre his wounde, 858 (onwrye monosyl. C, vnwry D).

XIII. *Seyn, to seyne; sen, to sene; don, to done.*

The Anglo-Saxon Gerundial (or Dative) Infinitive is preserved in the *Troilus in to seyne, to sene, and to done.* The only sure case of final -e pronounced in the interior of the verse is in 7487 (*to done, see below*).

to seyne, 12 f, 591 f, 712 f, 1605 f, 1706 f, 2071 f, 2211 f, 2441 f, 2644 f, 3272 f, 3390 f, 3835 f, 3959 f, 3998 f, 4372 f (sein(e) D), 5165 f (seyn C), 7398 f (seyn C), 7712 f. All these are cases of soth for to seyne and similar phrases. In 7531 f, soth to seyne (: I durste leyne = wager) is the reading of C, soth(e) to seyne (: durste I leyne) that of D; G has soth(e) to seye (: durste I lay); AB read dar I seye (: dorste I leye, laye); Mr. Austin's collation has no note on these two lines. In 3845 f, *what al this is to seyn* (seyn BC), to seyne is the correct reading, as is shown by the rhymes, compleyne (ind. 1 sg.) and peyne (noun).

Rhyme words.—peyne n. (12, 591, 712, 1605, 2071, 2211, 2441, 3835, 3959, 4372, 5165, 7398), cheyne n. (1706). Eleyne (2644), twyne (1706, 3390, 3959, 7712), pleyne *inf.* (12, 1605, 2441), 1 pl. *ind.* (712), feyne *inf.* (2644, 3998), restreyne *inf.* (3272), reyne *inf.* (3390), destreyne *inf.* (4372), compleyne *inf.* (7712).

But seyn, seye, seye, and sey, are found in the gerundial construction with to, as well as seyne.

1 In C read hym[sef].

2 Supply [soth] in D.

3 Old-style figures indicate that D has seyn.
§ 119.] of Chaucer's Troilus. 297

seyn,1 (i.) soth to seyn, 1769 (say C, say[ö] D †); platly for to seyn, 3628 f (seyne C) (reyn n. : certeyn adv.); vsen . . . to seyn, 3866 2; that (this) is to seyn, 4020 (say C, seie D), 6037 (seyne C), 7261 (seyne C); now is this abuson to seyn, 5722 f (seyne B) (: certeyn adv.); the sothey for to seyn, 7375 f (seyne BD) (: ayen AD, azein B, azen C : fayn pred. adj. sg. AC, fayne BD); what al this is to seyn, 3845 f (seyne BC), should be seyne, as the rhymes (compelynne pres. 1 sg., peyne n.) show. (ii.) this is to seyn, 3280; soth to seyn he, 4635.

seye, (i.) ther is no more to seye, 574 f 2; soth (for) to seye, 2601 f, 3197 f; sothly for to seye, 5459 f (sey C, certeinly to sey D); shortly al the sothey for to seye, 5615 f (seyne † B); shortly for to seye, 7372 f (seyne † B, seyen C); what is this to seye, 2916 f (saye C); shame it is to seye, 3901 f; I it forbar to seye, 3207 f; were impossible . . . to seye, 4153 f (say E); which chargeth not to seye, 4418 f (seye C, seie D); no litel thynge of for to seye, 4530 f (sey C); he nyst[e] what to seye, 5018 f; seyd(e) that was to seye, 5833 f (sey C); haue I for to seye, 7771 f (sey C);

I began yow for to seye, 8163 f.

Rhyme words.—in the wye (3091), aweye (5018), drewe adj. pl. (3197), drewe adj. pl. (hardly adv.) (5833), twewe (2916, 4153), deye inf. (574, 5459, 5615, 7771, 8163), plewe inf. (2601, 3091, 3197, 4153), leye inf. (2916), inw. sg. (2601), bywrewe inf. (3207), obewe inf. (4530), preye inf. (5833, 7372).

seye, that is to seye || for, 3095 (seyne C, saye D); that is to seye || that, 3126 (seyn B, seine C, saye † D).

seye, to seyn a soth, 2222 (seyne B, seyn C †).

seyen, seyn, seye, seye, seye, are also used in infinitive constructions without to. Thus,—

seyn,3 (i.) 514,4 1839 (sey C), 2539 (sey B),5 2825 (seyne B), 3707 (seyn D), 3809, 4464 (seyne B, seie D), 4829 (seyd † B), 5520 (seyne B, sendyn † C) 6, 5699 (seyne B), 5862, 5982 f (seyne BD) (: ayen AD, azein B, ageyn C : we ben so fayn AC, feyne BD), 6050 (C †), 6141, 6775 C, 6850 f (: ayen AD, azein B, azen C : fayn adj. sg. AC, feyn B, fayne D), 7239 (sen C), 7642, 7659 f (seyn C) (: ayen, azein, azen, ageyn). (ii.) 396 (sayn A, say C), 398 (sayn C), 512, 804 (say C), 1011, 2532 (seyn D), 5515 (seyne B),

1 In 1769, 3280, 4020, 4635, 6037, 7261, seyn comes before the caesura.
2 Old-style figures indicate that D has sey or say.
3 In all cases cited except 512, 1839(?), 2539, 4829(?), 5520, 6626(?), seyn comes before the caesura (when not in rhyme).
4 Old-style figures indicate that D has sey or say.
5 Dele (That he) in B.
6 Supply [hertc] in A.
Observations on the Language § 119.

6071 (C †), 6414 (say C), 74281, 8095; seyn he, 3923 (seie D), 7157.

seyěn sholde, 6989 A (seyně B, saye[n C, om. † D).

seye, (i.) 492 f (seye C), 672 f, 924 f, 1044 f, 1258 f, 1396 f, 1406 f, 1546 f, 2078 f (say C, y say dico † D), 2219 f, 2291 f, 2741 f, 2842 f (say C), 2922 f, 2953 f, 2963 f (seye pres. subj. 1 sg. BC, sey pres. subj. 1 sg. D), 3398 f, 3503 f, 3666 f (seyen B)2, 3892 f (seyne B), 4033 f (seye D), 4450 f (saye B, saye C, seye D), 4501 f (saye C), 4818 f, 4911 f, 5033 f (seye D), 5187 f, 5431 f, 5543 f (seye C), 5769 f (saye C), 5872 f (seye C), 5952 f (saye C), 6043 f (saye C), 6164 f, 6446 f (seye C), 6458 f, 6934 f (saye C), 7349 f (saye C), 7531 f (to seyne CD),3 7669 f (seye C), 8092 f, 8106 f, 8208 f. (ii.) seye,4 2084 (seye B, seyen C),5 6233 (seyen C). [In all these instances D has sey, unless the contrary is noted.]

Rhyme words.—weye n. (492, 4818, 5952, 6458), aweye (6458), awaye (aweye) (5543 : to dey C), tweye (492, 1546, 2741, 3666, 4033, 4818, 4911, 5033, 5769, 6043, 6164, 7669, 8092), pleye inf. (672, 1546, 3398, 6934, 7349), subj. 2 sg. (3866), deye inf. (924, 1258, 1406, 2291, 2963, 3892, 4911, 5431, 5872, 6446), subj. 1 sg. (2953, 4550), subj. 3 sg. (5187), leye subj. 1 sg. (1044), inf. sg. (2953), inf. (3503, 4450, 4501, 7531, 7669, 8208), pleye subj. 1 sg. (1396, 2219, 2291, 5952, 6164, 6934, 8106), subj. inf. (2741, 2842, 2922, 2963), pres. subj. 3 pl. (6446), deye subj. 1 pl. (8208).

seye6 451 (seye C), 1337 (saye B, seyen C), 3120 (seyen BC), 4108 (seyen BC, seie D), 4139 (seyen CE), 4777 (seyen C), 5493 (sey ? D). [D has sey, unless the contrary is noted].

sey, (i.) sey yis (I. this with C ?), 4222 (seyen BC)7; sey yow, 7740. (ii.) 1316 (seye B, seyen C); sey hym, 195 (seye B, seyde † C).

seyne in the form seine occurs in 6626 without to,—sholde . . . seine it was folye (seye CD),—cf. also variants under some of the forms above registered,—but it will be observed that the full gerundial form is found only in rhyme.

to sene,—fairest (-er) was to sene, 454 f (: Polixene); fairest was to sene, 5817 f (: grene adj. pl.); it ioye was to sene, 4070 f (to scene B) (: tene n.).

But to sen and to se also occur : to se, indeed, is by far the commonest form.

to sen, to seen, (i.) so lyk a man of armes . . . He was to sen, 1717

1 Dele (me) in D.

2 In B, rhymes with pleye and tweyen.

3 In CD the rhyme is leyne inf. (= wager); in AB the rhyme is leye (lanye), which is clearly right.

4 In 2084, 6233, seye may be read (with hiatus) if one admits the "extra syllable before the cæsura."

5 In B supply [†].

6 In 3120(?), 4139, 4777, it is possible to read seye if one admits the "extra syllable before the cæsura."

7 Supply [that] in BD.
(senz || D); first to sen (purpose), 3334 (se CD); it thoughte hym no strokes To here or sen Criseyde . . . wepe, 3910 (se his D); youre desport Was al to seen Criseydes eyen, 4972 (sen BC, se D); it hardere is To sen that sorwe, 5568 (to sen him C, to se the sorwe D); It was his sorwe vpon hem for to sen, 6821 f (sene D): ben sunt bene D). (ii.) she was right swych to sen, 5524 (seen B, se CD); to seen here (gen. sg.), purpose, 446 (sene B, sen C, se D); to sen here (acc.), purpose, 7941 (see D); cf. 5568 C.

to se, (i.) hath gided the to se my, 569 (sen B); ye ben faire to se, 1669 f; It was an heuene vpon hym for to se, 1722 f; he hath to se me swych delit, 1794; it ioye was to se, 1902 f; sobrely and friendly for to se, 3201 f; This was no litel sorwe for to se, 3935 f; ycomen hym to se, 5028 f (see D); it a deth was for to se, 5518 f (see D); Which that I drede neueré mo to se, 5521 f (see D); I nolde leuen for to se, 5997 f (see D); coueyteth . . . to se me, 6001; the pure spirit wepeth To se yow wepen, 6283 (see D); comen Troylus to se, 6645 f (see BD); to longen here to se, 6960 f (see B); thei stoden for to se, 7477 f; ther com this bor to se, 7835 f (see D). (ii.) to se † his, 3910 D.

sen, seen, inf., without to, (i.) 293 (seth † D), 1386 (se CD), 6886 (sen B, see D) 1; cf. 5599, 6133, 6147, 6258, 6299, 7112, 7238, 7446, 7573. (ii.) 2242 (seyne B, se CD), 4961 (D †), 7264 (syn B, se D); cf. 6512, 6691, 6972, 7371, 7476; sen here (acc.), 6391 (se BD), 7144 (sene D, se laughe † C); seen here (gen. sg.), 6888 (sen C, se D); sen how, 5599 BC.

se, see, inf., without to, (i.) 1659 BD (sen C, do A), 1673 (sen C; B †), 1700 (sen C, senz D), 4124 (sen BC), 8074 (sen B, see D); cf. 245 f, 1365 f, 1530 f, 1879 f, 2067 f, 2177 f, 2398 f, 2416 f, 2515 f, 2972 f, 3442 f, 4056 f, 4187 f, 4321 f, 4446 f, 4853 f, 5350 f, 5947 f, 6700 f, 7030 f, 7522 f, 7662 f, 7751 f, 8003 f, 8139 f. (ii.) 644 (sen C; D †), se here (acc.), 6979 (seen B, sen C).

y-se, inf., without to, (i.) alle y-se, 1439 f (allë se C; D †); tyme y-se, 2806 (is[e] D, tymë se BC); wrecche y-se, 5500 f (wrecchë se C, wrecché see D); wel y-se, 5710 f, 7110 f ([y]se C, [y]see D). [Var. B y-see; D i-see.]

to done,—that thow hast to done, 1019 f; I haue to done, 1298 f; hadde nought to done, 3517 f; his erand was to done, 1157 f; were it nought to done, 1788 f; theron was to heuen and to done, 2374 f; what was best to done, 2570 f; now is therë (but) litel more for to

1 Supply [As] in C.
Observations on the Language

[Text content not legible due to quality of image]
To don hym, 5613 (doon B, doone D); That he noldē don his payne and al his myght To don it for to don here herte an ese, 6478-9 (done . . . to done it for to doo D).

to do,—what is me best to do, 828 f (: wo : so); a kynges sone yn armes wel to do, 1250 f (: two : therto); for to do wel is his wone, 1403 (don BC, [for] to do D); youre beste is to do so, 1467 (don C); to wys is he to do so gret a nyse, 1810 (don BC); vouche saf for to do so, 2776 (don C, [for] to do D); ryse To knele and do yow honour, 2912 (don C); to wys to do so gret folye, 3709 (don BC); grace for to do so, 3770 (hadde to don so C †); what thenkestow to do, 5511 f (doo BD) (: for-do inf., -doo D, 5513 : to prep.).

don, inf. without to, (i.) 19 (done B, do D), 852 (do D), 1496 f (done D) (: anoon : agon p. p.); do yow don by force, 6137 (don . . . don C, doo . . . doone D); cf. 120, 600, 1197, 1400, 1553, 1560, 1842, 2330, 2951, 4320, 4973, 5957, 6327, 6413, 6762, 7200, 7203, 7631, etc. (ii.) 2591 (do CD); cf. 1474, 3725 (done D), 4952, 4957, 5245, 5456, 5602, 5604, 6150, 6295, 6475, 6604, 8071, 8097, etc.;
don, 824 (don C, done D); for forms before he, his, hym, here, hem, how (don is usual in ABC; D has done, doone, done, do, doo), cf. 563, 2066, 2459, 3008, 3400, 4550, 5365, 6478, 7284, 7503, 7828; don hardnesse, 2330 (but it is perhaps better to take don as p. p., as the reading of B, ydon, indicates). In 2734 AB, don harm should be don him harm, as in C (do hym harme D). In 7349 A, done should be don (don B, don can C, doo can D).

do, inf., without to, (i.) 795 (don BC), 1848 (don C), 6345 f (: for-do inf., -doo D, 6343 f); cf. 692, 1232, 1659, 2042, 2373, 2699, 3022, 3690, 3708, 3769, 3969, 4320, 4912, 5121, 5439, 6588, etc.; for-do, 238 (-don B, vndo D), 5513 f (-doo D) (: to do : to prep.). (ii.) 2503 (don BC, done D), 2557 (don B), 3892 (don BC, done D), 5419 (don B, doo D, don † what C); vndo, 3583 (vndon B, ondo C, vndo † the D).

§ 120. The Present Participle ends in the Troilus in -yne, -ynge. (Cf. Child, § 64; ten Brink, § 191.)

The form -yne is regular in rhyme (see, however, II., last example), but the -e is never sounded in the interior of the verse (except for syntactic reasons, see II., note 2). D almost always has -yn, both in and out of rhyme, but I have not taken the superfluous trouble to register this lack of -e in that MS. Minute variations in spelling are also sometimes disregarded in the following lists.
The participle in *-ende* occurs only twice,—*ryndende*, 2334 C (corrupt), 2338 f C* (where it spoils the rhyme).

Note.—I have registered "gerunds" with nouns in *-ynge* (§ 10) in preference to confusing them with participles.

I. The following list includes such present participles as rhyme with an infinitive in the *Troilus*. All the rhyme-words are recorded in each case.

lyuynge, 1320 f (leuenge C) (: rynge *inf.* : wytynge *n.*).

vnsittynge, 1392 f (: brynge).

steryynge, 4078 f (: synge : rynge).

durynge, 4596 f (-g C (?), doyng † D) (: concordynge *ptc.,* -ynge CD : brynge).

makyynge, 5517 f (: brynge).

portrayynge, 7079 f (-treýnge B, portering † D) (: recordynge *ptc.,* according † D : sprynge).

arguyynge, 7135 f (: taryinge *n.* : brynge).

II. Here follow all other cases of the present participle (or participial adjective) in rhyme. An asterisk indicates that the rhyme-word is a noun (or "gerund") in *-ynge* (see § 10).

wepyynge, 111 f (: excusynge *ptc.*).

pleýynge, 267 f (pleyinge BC, pleying D) (: lokynge *ptc.*).

answeryynge,* 282 f.

konnyynge, † 302 f (kun- C, cunnyng D).

comyynge,* 378 f, *1644 f, *5649 f (D †), *5676 f.

sittynge, 2099 f (: lokynge *ptc.*).

ymagynynge, 6817 f (-g C, -gening D) (: festenynge *n.,* thing † D).

excusynge,* 7937 f.

But,—comyynge, 5737 f (-yng D) : thing *n.* : byfallyng *n.*

III. Present participles before consonants. (D has almost always -ynge.)

touchyng, 265 (-e BC); towchyng, 2108 (-e BC; D †), 3274 (-e BC).

pleýynge, 280 (pley(n)- C).

lykýynge, 309 (lokynge † C).

ymágyynynge, 372 (-ing (?) D, -enynge (?) C).

bewallyynge, 547 † D.

kérýynge, 632 (-e B).*

rydýynge, 2334 (-e B †, ryndende † C).

fällynge,—the happy fallyng strok, 2467 (-e BC; D †).

hélpyng, 2635 (-e BC).

* Supply [yet] in D.
languysshynge, 3083 (-syng Ǽ, -syng C).
herynge, 3188.¹
thunkynge 4394 (D †).
wepyngge, 5237 (-ing subst. † D).
dispythynge, 5746.
schaunyngge †, 6918 C (changed p. p. ABD).

Note 1.—In 309 the accent is perhaps on the first syllable; in 2108, perhaps on the second.

Note 2.—In this for kunnyng[ª] wyse, 79 A (-e BC), the sounding of -e is due to the definite construction (see § 59). This is the only case in the Troilus in which -e is sounded in the present participle in the interior of the verse (cf. 7804 ‡ C, 7951 ‡ A, 8098 (read haunynge [vn]to ; G, Cp., and Harl. 2392 have vnto). Cf. IV, V, notes, below.

V. Before vowels.

For -ynge, cf. 1705,² 4691, 4747, 4755, 5404, 5502, 5951, 7075, 7804, 7975.

For -ynge, cf. 65, 908³ 1055, 4542, 4750, 5099, 5116.

For -ynge, with the accent on the preceding syllable (as, fléynge), cf. 1138, 1640, 2789, 3534, 3982, 4210, 4624, 4967, 5491, 5913, 6387, 6430,⁴ 6758, 7188,⁴ 7502, 7571, 7697, 8033, 8135, 8173, 8175 (hérkenynge).

For -ynge, with the accent on the preceding syllable (as, byhôldynge), cf. 9, 101, 186, 547, 631, 2024, 3348, 4335, 4693, 7386, 7604, 7719, 8020.

Note.—In 7333, and (after konnyng) restores the metre : ACDG omit and, BCp John's have it. 7804 C is to be corrected by the insertion of ay.

V. Before h (in his, hym, here (acc., poss. sg., poss. pl.), how, hound).

For -ynge, cf. 2900,⁵ 4381, 5819, 6066, 6836, 7048.

For -ynge, cf. 3359, 4789, 4905, 5025, 5764.

For -ynge, with the accent on preceding syllable, cf. 318, 1157, 1738, 2893, 5374 C, 5377, 8123.

For -ynge, with the accent on preceding syllable, cf. 384, 3004, 3606.

Note.—In 5951 C, makyngs here (hic) should be corrected.

§ 121. The Perfect Participle of Weak Verbs ends in the Troilus in -ed, -ëd, -ëd, -t. (Cf. Child, § 62 ; ten Brink, §§ 163, 166-9, 176, 180-3.)

Instead of -ed, C and D often have -id or -yd, and so occasionally B.

For -id, -yd in A, see, for example, 182, 308, 1004, 6894. B has

¹ In A read the effect for the fëyth.
² Old-style figures indicate that the accent may stand on the preceding syllable.
³ In A, supply [makes] before hem.
⁴ 9-syl. verse.
⁵ Old-style figures indicate that the accent may stand on the preceding syllable.
woundud in 1618 f. C sometimes shows -it: as, gydit, 569 (cf. 558, 987, 1438, 1707, 2705, 4075, 6707 f, 6709 f, 7548); cf. woundet, 1618 f C. For -ede, -de, -te, see notes 1, 2, below.

Perfect participles rhyme usually with each other or with words that have no -e. Very rarely a perfect participle is found rhyming with the preterite of a verb: the only examples in the *Troilus* are,—

excused p. p., 2164 f, rh. acused pret. ind. 3 sg.

vntormentid, 1004 f, rh. assentyd pret. ind. 3 sg. (or possibly p. p. ?).

y-shette p. p., 3075 f, rh. lette n., rh. sette ind. 3 sg.


spradde p. p., 6084 f, rh. he hadde.

whette p. p., 8123 f, rh. mette 3 pl.

In the last four cases the participles are in the plural (see §§ 67. e, 68).

In 1123 B, 2175 C, 7561 A, the reading should be corrected (see notes 1, 2 below).

Note 1.—C, which is especially fond of the ending -ede in the preterite, not infrequently extends this termination erroneously to the participle: cf., for examples,—-ed(e) in C 1509, 1907, 2119, 3467, 3931, 4111, 5407, 5878, 5900, 5945, 6528, 8062; -id(e), 4237 C; -ed(e), C 299, 1907, 6894; -ed(e), C 648 f, 3285 f; -id(e), 316 f C. Cf. also rowed(e), 962 f B; disised(e), 3285 f B.

Even A is not free from this spurious -e: thus,—pronounced(e), 4875 A; formed(e), 7180 A; falsed(e), 7419 A; cf. 1906 A, 7458 A. In all cases this -e is of course purely a scribe’s caprice and never pronounced. Similarly -de is occasionally written for -ed (as, arayde, 1285 B, l. arayféd; cf. 646 B, 3383 B, 4062 B, 4289 D, 7612 f B), or for -d (as, adradde, 1200 f, l. adrad; ferde, 1209 B, l. ferd, etc.). In a few cases, however, the plural of a monosyllabic participle in -d ends in -ddé (see §§ 67. e, 68).

*Fledde*, 7561 f A (: bleade ind. 3 sg.) should be pretter indicative.

Note 2.—The ending -te instead of -t is found again and again in one MS. or another, as a comparison of MSS. in the places cited below (I.-VIII.) will show (see, e. g., 1237, 1670, 6051, 6909). Even A is not free from this spurious -e: thus,—hath sent(e) after, 6643 AB (-t CD). In all cases, however, the -e is clearly a scribe’s fashion or whim, except in a few instances where it is used to denote the plural of a monosyllabic participle (see the cases under §§ 67. e, 68, above). Bad readings are,—shente p. p. (: wente pret. 3 sg.), 1123 B (should be shent : went pres. 3 sg.), and schette p. p. (: sette pret. 3 sg. : letting pret. 3 sg.), 2175 C (should be pret. 3 sg).

Examples.

In the following lists (I.-X.) variants are seldom registered; and, except in a few instances, no record is made of the initial letter of the word that follows the participle.

I. Anglo-Saxon verbs of the First Conjugation (cf. § 99).

afered, 967 f, 3324 f (aferd D); -[e]d, 1691 (-[e]d(e) B, -ed? C, aferd D); afèrid, 1209 f C (ferd A, ferd(e) B; D f).

agast, 715, 1396, 3579 (agarst A), 3938, 6306, 7256. (Inf. agaste, 1986 f.)
agilt, 4299 f, 4923 f; agylt, 8047.
beleued.—cf. mysbeleued, adj., 3680 AB.
bente, pl., 4702 f AB (-t D) (: mente 3 pl. : wente 3 pl.).
blent, 2828.
bought, 4953 f, 7328 (bout(e) D); ybought, 810 f, 4161 f (bought D).
brought, 424, 915, 1303, 3088, 3149, 3611, 3980 f, 4465, 4954 f, 7924; brough[t], 7279 (-t BCD); ybrough[t], 6466 f (-t B, brought D; C t); ybrought, 4441, 6374.
yburyed (trisyl.), 2396.
dight, 4615 f.
dwelt, 7074 (dwellyd C, duellid † ind. D).
eched, 4171.
felt, 25, 27, 2851, 2884, 4125; feled, 5646 AB (-id D).
ferd (fared), 5756, 7721.
ferd, see ofered, forfered.
for-fered. This may be the right reading in 6073 (so Cp.; for fered A, for ferdë || out B, for fer C t, for dredë || out D). [§ 135, III. 1, n. 1.]
fulfild, 1717; fulfilled, 5853 (-filld B, -fyld C).
heled, 1082, 4054, 5098.
hent, 509.
herd, 197, 750, 754, 969, 1002, 1186, 2051, 2537, 2632, 2953, 3340, 3395, 5007 (hard(e) B), 5329, 6113, 6809, 6931, 6992, 7086, 7343, 7974.
hériëd,1 4098; heryed (dissyl.), 4599 (y-herid(e) D), 4655; yhered, 2058 (yheried BD, i-heried C); iheried, 2849; yheredyed, 4646.
hid, 618, 5158, 5972 (hidd(e) B, hed C, hiddë † in D).
yknet, 4576 f.
kyst,—vnkyst, 809.
lad, 872, 6757; led, 1638.
laft, 4180 f (left(e) E, last † C), 4943 f (left C, laffte D), 6123 f (left C, laft(e) D); ylaft, 4889 f (ileffte D, ilaste † C).
lered, 3248 f (lernyd † C); ylered, 969 f.
let, 1179 f, 3559, 7665 (lettid C).
leyd, 2048, 2630, 3529 f, 5845 (berid † D).
met, 1237, 4523 f; imet, 1671 f.
myssed, 3379.
plyght, 3624 f, 6272; plight, 5107 † f D.
queynt, 4975, 6092, 6906.

1 Heryed is dissyllabic in all the examples except the first.
red, 8160; yred, 5461.
yrent, 8017.
reyned,—byreyned, 5834 f (be-reigned D).
sent, 105, 2399, 2783, 3329 f, 6051, 7785; ysent, 6834.
set, 643, 1670 f, 2878, 3182, 3328, 4213, 4330 (i-set B, schet C), 4788, 4986, 5837, 6040, 6103; yset, 4573 f, 4846, 5336. beset, 521, 879, 1919 f (y-sette D); byset, 4255; biset, 898. But,—sette, pl., 1166 A (sete B, sate pret. 3 pl. D).
shent, 1123 f (y- D), 4301 A, 4741 † D.
shet, 2000 † D (hust ABC), 6897 (shitt D); schett(e), 2175 f C; schitt, 3936 D (hust ABC); byshet, 3444 (beshit D). But,—yshet, præd. pl., 3075 f (y-chette B, schette C, y-shet D) (: lette n.: sette præt. ind. 3 sg.).
ysought, 4159 f (isout C). vnsought, 809 f.
sped[de], pl., 2039 (spedde BC; D ?).
spilt, 4925 f.
spradde, pl., 6084 f (: he hadde).
styled (dissyl.), 2824, 7499, 7712.
thought, 5204, 5216. bithought, 1310.
told, 197 † A, 1381, 1760, 1780 f, 2370, 3350, 3638, 3846, 4039, 4592, 6159, 6687, 7806; told(e), 913 f AB (—d CD), 1220 A (—d BCD), cf. 7463. ytold, 4803.
tyd, 900, 1309, 1549.
wend, 5046 (went C), 8045.
went, 1681 † f D, 5597 f, 6909, 7100 A, 8171 f A (—e B); ywent, 6807 f (wente B, went CD); myswent, 633 f.
whette, pl., 8123 f AB (whett D) (: mette 3 pl.).
wrought, 578 f (y-wrogth B), 1662 f, 1757 f, 4132, 4345 f, 5758, 7530 f.
II. Old Norse verbs of the First Declension (cf. § 100).
brent, 7873 (brend C); ybrent, 4739 (brent D †, brent(e) B), 6672 (brent CD).
flittid, 7907 f (kyttid † C ^1, flitted D).
hit, 867 (hurt † C).
reysed, 7834 f.
hright, 6683 (schriht C).
trusted, 1499 (tristed B, trustid C, trustyd D); my mistrusted, cf. 1516.

^1 flittid in the next line in C.
III. Anglo-Saxon and Old Norse verbs of the Second Conjugation (cf. § 101).

answered, 4807 (-swerd(e) B, -swerd C, -swerd D); ¹ answered, 3383 (-id CD, -swerd t B).

y bathed, 5477.
y bedded, 6709 f.

bly ssyd, 308 (blissed B, blessed C, blessid D).

v nb rydled, 3271 (-d eled B, -d e rid CD).

called, 394, 548, 874, 1093, 2502, 3775, 7814.
cast, 2474 f, 2938, 8059; out cast, 6978; for n-c ast, 3363.
c l e ped, 66, 5424; -id, 548 t D; y c le ped, 5166.
clothed, 156.
cursed, 4996; acursed, 4913, 4294.

f et ered, 4768 AB (f etrid D).

f yssh ed, 1413 (f ichid C).

gl aded, 987.

hame led, 2049 (-id C, lessid t D).

[h]alwed, 3110 (hal o wed B, hal wid C, hal ow id D).
hanged, 1438; an-honged, 2705.

lernyd t, 3248 f C (l. leryd).

lok ed, 4002.

lost, see V., below.
lou ed, 500, 1501; ilou ed, 594 (-id D, lou ed t C); belou ed, 131 (-id C, -yd D).

ily ssed, 1082.

maked, (i.) 1193 (-yd C, made D). (ii.) y maked t, 4576 (ymasked BC p., -id CD); in 2567, And shortly made e che of hem his fo (makes B, mad C), we should clearly read maked (with C p. and John's).
mad, maad, (i.) 251, 553, 904, 3100, 3681, 7926; mad(e), 3145 (mad C), 3377 (mad his C t, mad(e) his D). mad, (ii.) 2956 (maad B), 5139, 5540 (mad the C); mad(e), 7900 (y-mad(e) BD, mad C); ² mad(e) haluendel, 6698. In most of the cases cited B and D read mad(e).

op ned, 3311 (openyd CD).

play ed, 2325 (pleyed C, pleyd D).

put, 1698, 1851, 2191, 3363.

raft, 7621 (reft(e) D); reft, 7623 (raft C, raft(e) D). byraft, 4182 f

¹ In D, read ben for hem. ² In B ymadé leche = ymad a leche,
Observations on the Language

(-reft(e) D), 4887 f, 4890, 4945 f (bereft C, bereafft(e) D), 6122 f (bereafft(e) D).

shadwed, 1906 (-wed(e) [wel] A).

shamed, 8090; ashamed, 2132.

shewed, 4690, 7810; -ed, 7812 (-id D, -id C); yshewed, 7614.

sorwed, 5545.

spared, 6567.

sperid, 6894 (-ed BD, -ed(e) C).

thonked, 1935, 4451; -ed, 517 (-ed B, -yd C, -id D); ythonked, 4664.

trowed, 5045, 8041.

twyght, 5234 f.

warned, 4511.

wedded, 6707 f, 7338.

wondred, 4511 f, 1277 (-id D, -derd C).

wont, woned, wonted. (a) wont, (i.) 183, 2605 (C(?)), 4975 (om. † B; C(?)), 5443 (woned C), 5788, 6909, 7023, 7025; men was wont, 5528 (were woned C). (ii.) 510 (-yd C), 6982, 8073; wont here (poss. sg.), 5416 (-ytj was C).—(b) woned, (i.) 901 (wone (?) C), 1485, 4378, 4553, 4697, 4729. (ii.) 3397 (-t BCD).—(c) as it wonted is to done, 6640 (wonte ? B, woned C, wonte ? D). For woned = dwelt, see 276 f (-yd CD) (: astoned p.p.).—In most of the cases above cited (a—b) C has woned (monosyllabic), B wont(e), and D wont(e) or wont.

wounded, 1618 f, 1711.

IV. Anglo-Saxon verbs of the Third Conjugation (cf. § 102).

had, 1503, 1504, 2943, 5057 f, 5135, 6493, 7119, 7691.

lyued, 5755; ilyued, 7296.

seyd, 611, 740, 901, 935, 969, 1129, 1131, 1467, 1475, 1509, 1687, 1955, 2768, 3173, 3531 f, 3778, 3788, 4054, 4459, 4656, 5573, 6078, 7102, 7639, 8132; seyd(e), 5833.

V. Verbs originally strong (cf. § 103).

adrad, 1200 f (adraddde C) (: be ye mad); ydraid, 4617.

fled, 87, 3933, 5530; yfled, 5323. In 463 fled[de], pl., rhymes with bredde, pret. ; fledde, 7561 A, should be preterite.

hight, 1577, 5107 f (be- C, plight D), 6289 f; yhight, 6904 f; byhight, -hyght, 6717 f (hight D), 7467 f.

lost (cf. A.S. gelosod), (i.) 462 (D †), 1 809, 3140 (C †), 3937, 4108 (loré C), 4268, 4606, 4949, 5068 (-t(e) D), 5230 (-t(e) D), 6129 (-t(e) D), 6783, 8008 (-t(e) D); ylost, 5945 (-t(e) BD); förlost,
§ 121.]
of Chaucer's Troilus.

5418 (soore † lorn(e) D). (ii.) lost, 2824, 5040 (-t(e) B),¹ 6244, 7069; forlöst, 3122 (-t(e) B, fordon(e) † D)²; lost haue, 7001 (-t(e) D), 7766 (-t(e) D); lost held, 4635 (lorn hade C, lorn had D).

lorn, (i.) 373 f (-n(e) B, borne † D); cf. 3918 f, 3943 f, 4065 f, 4483 f, 6141 f, 7808 f; ylorn, 5912 f (ilorne D, bore D). (ii.) 5621 (-n(e) B), cf. 6275; lorn had, 4635 C (lorn had D, lost held AB). He wend it lost he thought, he mis but lorn, 3918 f (lost). He seyde (seid D) he nas but lor[e]n (lorne G) waylawey, 5619 ABD Cp. (not in C; He seide I am but lorn so weylaway John's).

lore, 4108 C (lost ABD); forlore, 6386 f (fore † B).


rewed, 5803.
rowed, 962 f.
siked, 7101.

VI. Verbs of Germanic origin not found in Anglo-Saxon.

awhaped, 316 f.
bystowed, 960 f.
bywared, 636 f.
gert, 7408 C (hurt A, hirt(e) B, hurt(e) D); though girt, 5289 (thurgh gird(e) D).
grounded, 6334.
hust, 2000 (shet D), 3936 (schitt D).
smytted, 7908 f.
stokked, 3222.
twynned, 5138, 5450, 7042.
vntyd, 1837 (-teyd B, onteyed C).

VII. Romance and Latin verbs with participle in -t (cf. § 104).

abayst, 2936 (abassed C, abasshid D), 3964 (baist(e) B, abaschid D).

Cf. abaysshed, 4075 (abasshed C, abaßchit D, abasschit D).
caught, 214 (caut C), 557, 2027, 2267, 2357, 7066; kaught, 4049, 4768; ycaught, 1668 (caght D, lautz C),³ cf. 534.
hurt, 1080, 7408 (gert C).
quyt, 334, 529, 1327 f, 3861, 4068.

combest, 3559 (-bust B, cumbrid † CD).
enhâbyt, 5105 (-it B, enabit(id) C, an habit(e) D).⁴

¹ Supply [how] in D. ² Read [y]conne in A. ³ Supply [y-] in CD. ⁴ Read ker[te] in A.
Observations on the Language  § 121.

execut, 3464.

VIII. Romance and Latin verbs with participle in -ed (cf. § 105).

recouèred, 37; couerèd, 2873 A  deliberèd, 4873 B (-uèrd C, -uèrid D; A †).
apelered, 38 f.
pleased, 247 f.

by-aped, 531; cf. 318 f.

astonyed (trisyl.), astoned, 1512, 1688, 3931, 8091.

disposed, 1767.

considered, 2375, 3765, 3827, 5933 (-sidred D), 7711.
delyuered, 3065.

Cf. also 85 f, 87 f, 249, 274 f, 1274, 1447, 1690, 1710, 1765 f, 1872, 1924 f, 1925 f, 2164 f, 2166 f, 2262, 2272, 2467, 2477, 2588, 2811, 3170 f, 3171 f, 3247 f, 3263 f, 3265 f, 3287 f, 3288 f, 3366, 3622, 3875, 4026 f, 4028 f, 4376, 4653, 4700, 4730, 4892, 4929, 4937, 4955 f, 4956 f, 5215, 5221 f, 5222 f, 5301 f, 5303 f, 5304 f, 5455, 5470, 5487, 5637, 5670, 5715, 5766, 5832 f, 5924, 5959, 6186, 6310, 6514, 6540, 7076, 7123, 7191, 7270, 7347, 7482, 7610 f, 7612 f, 7698, 7702, 7741, 7877, 7905 f, 7960 f, 8046, 8073, 8084 f, 8085 f, 8143, 8179, etc., etc.

Note.—Passen, pret. pastè, passed (§ 102), has p.p. passed, ypassed; see 24, 2180, 4241, 4249, 4470, 6838, 7044, 7109.

IX. Roman participles in -ed (syncopated).

turned, 4242 C (tornèd B, tournèd AE).
crièd, 5249 (cryèd B, cryèd C).
purueyèd, 5668 (-uyèd D); purueyèd (or purueyèd ?), cf. 5717.

But,—puruey[ë]d, 5718 (-ed B); purueyèd, 5670, 5714 (-[ë]d D).
enlùmynèd, 6911 (-yd C, -èd BD).

Cf. also 992 C, 997 C, 2082 C, 2634 C, 6952 D, 7673 C, etc.

X. Adjectives in -ed.

Of adjectives formed from nouns by means of the participial termination -ed, the following will serve as examples:—

feythed, 1000 (fichid † C).  benched, 1907.
sucred, 1469.  sounded, 1907.
helmed, 1678.  fethered, 2011.
rayled, 1905.  Cf. also §§ 57. b, 71.

Note 1.—It is of course impossible to draw a hard and fast line between such adjectives and genuine participles: ytressed, 7173; ypleynted, 7960 f.

Instead of *-en* C usually has *-yn*: so often D, and occasionally B. *-in* is also now and then found. Variants of this kind are commonly disregarded in lists I.-IV., below. Examples are,—*gybetyn*, 741 f D; *holdyn*, 1326 D, 4516 CD, 8043 C; *brostyn*, 2061 CD; *comyn*, 2528 CD, 2904 D, 3599 CD, 4397 BC; *foldyn*, 5021 f CD; *brokyn*, 5809 BCD, 7567 C; cf. 86 f CD, 205 f CD, 1151 D, 1661 f D, 1680 CD, 2020 f CD, 2068 f C, 2177 CD, 2938 CD, 3095 f CD, 3292 CD, 3298 C, 3533 CD, 3576 CD, 3732 f D, 4060 C, 4739 D, 4777 D, 5375 C, 5606 C, 5918 C, 6032 C, 6077 CD, 7234 C, etc. For *-in*, see *dryvin*, 2068 D; *holpyn*, 2404 C, 2526 C, 4112 C. *Writon* occurs once, 7666 B.

Note.—Instead of *-n*, *-n(e) occurs now and then (especially V., below), but this is very rarely the case in A.

The examples are arranged as follows,—I. *-en* before consonants; II. *-en* in rhyme; III. *-en* before vowels; IV. *-en* before h; V. syncope, *-en* or *-n*; VI. *-e* before consonants; VII. *-e* in rhyme; VIII. *-e* (elided) before vowels; IX. *-e* (elided) before h; X. apocope of *-e*; XI. hiatus; XII. the perfect participles of *sleen*; XIII. the perfect participles of *seen* (including the adjectives *sene*, *ysene*).

I. *-en* before consonants:

*holden trewely*, 1326 (holde C)\(^1\); h. was, 4516; h. me, 8043.

*foryeuen be*, 1680 (-*souyn* C)\(^2\).

*brosten ben*, 2061\(^3\).

*holpen what*, 2526 (*[e] D*)\(^4\); h. there, 4112 (*-en† hem D*); h. for, 5918 (helpyn C, helped D).

*comen was*, 2528\(^5\), 4397; c. to, 2904 (*-e C*); c. benedictite, 3599; c. *Troilus*, 6645 (*-e CD*); icomen was, 4510 (comyn D†).

*yolden chere*, 2938 (i-*golden* B).

*boden go*, 3533 (bedyn C).

---

\(^{1}\) In B supply [no].  
\(^{2}\) In AB read vel for wol for wol (votl) I.  
\(^{3}\) In D supply [am].  
\(^{4}\) D is 9-syl.  
\(^{5}\) In C read which for with.
Observations on the Language

shapen was, 3576; forshapen was, 1151.
founden by, 4777 (-e B, -e C); f. salue, 5606; f. were, 7965 (-e D, fonde C).
fallen was, 5375 D (-yn C) (stanza not in AB).
broken (adj.) voys, 5809; b. that, 7567.
wretens wel, 6077 (wreten B, writyn C); ywriten nor, 7422 (wretyn † C, ywretyn D).
faren syn, 6829 (-e C, farne l. -en B).
woxen lesse, 6981 (waxen B, waxe CD)2; w. was, 7190 (waxen C, waxe D); w. wellys, 7737 (waxen C, waxen D); ywoxen was, 6638 (y waxen D, waxen † inf. C), 7071 (iwaxen C, waxen D).
wopen for, 7087 (wepid C, wepte † D); bywopen thus, 5578 (-wepen B, -wepyn CD).3
knowen were, 7944 (-e C).
ytaken for, 8128 (taken B, had[de] taken D).

II. -en in rhyme:
spoken, 86 f (C †), 205 f.
wroken, 88 f, 207 f (ywrokyn D).
broken, 89 f (-e C), 208 f (ybrokyn D).
ybeten, 741 f (beten A, ibete C).
dreuen, 1661 f (dryuen B, dryvyn D); dryuen, 2068 f B (dreuyn C, dryvin D, (y)dreuen A).
schryuen, 1664 f (screuyn B).
ryden, 2018 f (redyn C).
abyden, 2020 f.
becomen, 3095 f.
shaken, 3732 f (-e C).
shapen, 4082 f (y- BD, [i]schape C).
ywryen, 4293 f.
folden, 5021 f.
ycomen, 6875 f (come C).
nomen, 6877 f (-e C).

Rhyme words.—Other participles in -en, and I. Infinitives: lyuen (1661, 1664, 2068), comen (3095), maken (3732), escapen (4082), byholden (5021), colde[n] (5021), spyen (4293); II. treten ind. 3 pl. (741), yeden ind. 3 pl. (2018, 2020); III. eyen n. pl. (4293). Observe the rhyme yeden: ryden: abyden.

III. -en before vowels:
clomen, 215 (clumbyn D).

1 Supply [that] in AC, [why] in D; otherwise the line is a disagreeable 9-syl. verse.
2 In BCD perhaps infinitive.
3 In D read ne for you.
thurgh shoten, 325.1
yolden, 801 (yuldyn C); 2 cf. 5455 † C.
founden, 1325 (-ë C, [ën] D), 1374 ([ë] C, [ën] D), 2596 (fonden C, found[e] † me † D), 4060 (fonden B), 6032.
shapen, 2177, 4272.
comen, cf. 2255, 7286.
holpen, 2404 ([ën] D).
wreten, 3292 (writen C, writyn D) 3; cf. 4198.
spoken, 3298 (-ë D).
taken, 4712 (D †), 7234.
Cf. also 3683, 3853 (cropen), 4734, 5074, 5280, 5616, 6431, 7268, 7377, etc.
IV. -ën before h:
taken hede, 501.4
dronken hadde, 4232 (drenken A).
holden haue, 4762 (-d J my D).
yeomen hyin, 5028 (couyn C, icommyn D).
yeuen here (1. hire A.S. hyr, with B), 5168 (yoveu D).
yknowen here (ace.), 5381 (kiiowyn C, knowen D).
vnbroyden haugen, 5479.
a swollen herte, 6564 (sorweful C).
comen heder, 6847 (C t).
songen hadde, 7008 (sungen had[de] D, songë † also C).
wonnen han, 7353 (-en † the D).
wreten here (dat.), 7666 (-on B, -e to C, -yn † to D).
woxen helle, 7739 (waxen C, waxë D).
shapen hadde, 7914 (-ë C, -en † D).
V. Syncope:
shorn, 222 f (-ne B, yshorn D) (: corn n. : byforn).
born, (i.) 375 f (in vp born) (-ne BD), 897 f (-ne B), 1228 f (bor D), 1653 f (-ne BC); cf. 2354 f, 3146 f, 3915 f, 3945 f, 4064 f, 4438, 4994, 4996, 5913 f, 7053, 7063 (-yn C), 8062; born(e), 6518 f
ABD (born C). (ii.) cf. 4265, 4960, 5407, 7074 (-yn C), 7320; born haue, 7639 (-n(e) D).—yborn, 1383 f (-ne B, ibore C); yborn al, 382 (-n(e) B, iborn C, [y]born D).
Rhyme words.—lorn, ylorn p.p. (375, 3915, 3945, 4064, 5913), sworn, isworn, sworn(e) p.p. (897, 1383, 1653), byforn (375, 1228, 2354, 3146, 3915, 4064, 5913, 6518), toforn (1383), thorn n. (2354, 3945).
sworn, (i.) 899 f (-ne B), 3154, 6143 f (-ne B, isworn C, isworne D);

1 In D supply [thrugh].
2 In C read that for for therfore.
3 In B read while for whiche.
4 In D supply [neuer].
5 In D supply [al].
sworn(e), 1384 f AB (swore C, sworn D); swo[rn], 5638 f (sworne B, sworn D); isworn, 1655 f (sworne B, isworne C, sworn D), 6646 f (sworne BD, sworyn C).


fallen yn, 555 (falle BC).
growen vnder, 1488 (grow B, wox † D).
founden âlwey, 3837 (found D).
yolden ywys, 4053 (jolde BC, jolden D).
yeu[n] vs, 5633 (yeue D).
spoken as, 5895 (i-B, speke C).
comen and, 6867 (-yn C); cf. 6560 C (?).
vunknowen of, 7942 (-knowe C); cf. 6910 † D.

VI. -e before consonants (not h):
come was, 155 (-en B, -yn CD).
to-hewe was, 1723 (-en B, -yn CD).
knowe be, 1877 A (yknowen B).
smet[e] be, 2230 (-e C, smyten B, smytyn D).¹
holde fully, 2383 (-en B, [e] D).
vnbore dar, 3111 A (-e BD).
ywrete ben, 4535 (wryten B, wretyn C, writyn D).
bete doun, 4739 (betten B, drawyn † D).
vnderstonde god, 8161 (-e B, -en D †).

VII. -e in rhyme:
ybete, 2025 f ([j]bette B, i-betyn C), 2314 f (-tte B), 4011 f (-bette B, bete C).
blowe, 4829 f (i- BC, yblow D); yblowe, 384 f (-w D).
bonde, 255 f (-d D), 2308 f; bounde, 859 f (-d D); vp bounde, 3359 f (-d D).
bore, 2497 f. (Cf. also VI., above).
i-, ycome, 3446 f (come BCD), 6134 f; ouercome, 243 f (ouer- C), 5731 f (-com D, ouerecome B). For welcome, see § 2.
idrawe, 3695 f (ydrowe B); out drawe, 5888 f (drawe † CD); with- drawe, 5548 f (-drare † C).

¹ A has be smet for smet[e] be.
§ 122. of Chaucer's Troilus.

dreue, 6752 f (dryue B, dryf inf. ‡ D).
ybyte, 970 f (be- C).
be-, bygonne, 1133 f, 1864 f, 2045 f, 2319 f, 2669 f, 3577 f; bygon[n]e, 3121 f (-nne B). [Var. CD -gunne; C -gone; D -gun.]
falle, 3701 f (yfaH D), 4933 f (-H D), 6615 f, 6912 f (-H D).
yfare, 3419 f, 5831 f (fare C).
folde, 5909 f (-yn CD), 6351 f, 7603 f.
founde, 3360 f (-d D), 5290 f, 6327 f, 7197 f (y- B); y-founde, 5256 f (stood † n. D).
graue, 2945 f, 4341 f.
ygrounde, 4705 f (-d D).
holde, 4101 f (y- D ‡), 5079 f (-en B; C †), 6937 f, 7329 f (D †); byholde, 7615 f (be- CD).
knowe, 638 f (-w D), 5145 f (y- B, i- CD); vnknowe, 4830 f (-w D).
nome, 3448 f, 6553 f (y- B, i- D); ynome, 242 f (nome C).
ronge, 7425 f (runge D); runge(n), 1890 f (ronge B, (i)runge C, yrong D).
ronne, 2549 f; yronne, 1992 f, 2926 f ([y]- Cc, yrun D).
ishlype, 3253 f (schape C).
yshore, 5658 f (yshoor D).
shoue, 3868 f (sowe † D).
songe, 8160 f (sunge D); -y, isonge, 5461 f, 7422 f (ysong B).
sowe, 385 f (-w D, sawe B).
ystonde, 7975 f (istounde C); withstonde, 253 f (-d D), 5960 f (-stande D); ynderstonde, 5958 f (-stande inf. ‡ D), 6067 f, 7977 f.
itake, 4040 f.
ythrowe, 4668 f (-w D), 5144 f; ouerthrowe, 5047 f (-w B), 7823 f.
wonne, 777 f (wonne D), 2047 f, 2583 f, 2828 f (wonne D); ywonne, 2321 f, 3122 f ([y]- A, ywunno D), 5977 f (Antenoré wonne = Antenor i-wonne C).
wire, 3462 f (i- C, ywrye D); ywrye, 6316 f (-wrey D).
y-yeue, 4453 f (iyeue BC, [i]yeue D).

Rhyme words.—Other perfect participles in -en, and the following,—I. nouns: to the grounde, to gronde (859, 4705), wounde (859, 5256, 5290), hete (970, 2025), sonne (1864, 1992, 2319, 2321, 2669), tunge(n), tonge (1890, 5461, 7422, 7425, 8160), in, on honde (2308, 6067, 7975, 7977), strete (2314), iape (3253), frape (3253), hawe (3659), loue (3868), hallo (3701), mowe (4668), throwe (5047, 7823), stof[un]de (5290), eye (6316), cf. welcome (6434, 6553); II. adjectives: bare indef. sg. (5513), secounde indef. sg. (7197), the grete (2314), the olde (5079), donne pl. (1992), hye pl. (3462), colde pl. (4101, 6351), some pl. (242, 243, 3446, 3448, 5731), alle pl. (3701, 4933, 6615, 6912); III. adverbs: fawe (5548), to-for, to-forn (2497), bfore (5658), wherfore (2497), therfore (5658), abowe (3868); IV. infinitives: 970, 2308, 2926, 3419, 3462, 4011, 4040, 4933, 5079,
Observations on the Language

5781, 5909, 6067, 6327, 6351, 6752, 6937, 7603, 7823; V. Other verb-forms: pres. ind. 1 sg., — trove (638), haue (2945), leue vivo (4453); 1 pl. konne (1864); 2 pl. konne (777), swete (2025); 3 pl. konne (2669); pres. subj. 1 sg. konne (1133), dye (6316); 2 sg. konne (2549, 2583), foryeue (6752); 3 sg. saue (2945, 4341); 2 pl. yf ye konne (2828, 5977); pret. ind. 3 sg. tolde (7615); 2 pl. tolde (7329), sponne (3577).

VIII. -e (elided) before vowels (variants not registered).

Cf. 474 (founde), 530 (iblowe), 809 (vnknowe), 1163 (come), 1260 (yknowe), 1367 (shape), 2917 (come), 3092 (bigonne; -e A), 3111 BD (vnbore), 3630 (come), 3634 (come), 3844 (founde), 3948 (foryeue), 4293 (stole), 4719 (yeue), 5207 (yeue), 6321 (founde), 6373 (molte), 6952 (ywroke), 7254 (take). Note. In some of these cases syncopated forms occur in B, C, or D: as, -teuen, 5207 B; forjeuen, 3948 B; comen, 2917 B (-yn C); comyn, 3630 C, 3634 C; founden, 6321 D; molten, 6373 D; etc. Sometimes, too, the ending is omitted altogether: thus, — com, 1163 B, 3630 B, 7394 B; found, 3844 D; vnknow, 616 BD, 809 BD; etc. (cf. grow, 1488 B; vox, 1488 D). Even A occasionally omits the ending before a vowel: thus, — wrong, 5833 ACD (-e B); hold, 7066 AB (-e C, -en D).

IX. -e (elided) before h:

wonne hym, 28 (D †).
founde his, 3378 (-d D, fonde B, fond C).
com e he, 3396.
take here (dat.), 3986.
y-yeue hym, 4218 (i-yeue BC, yeue D †).

X. Apocope of -e (before consonants):

Genuine cases are rare. Such are perhaps,—
fond no, 2263 (-e B).
comē this, 6560 (-yn C, -en D).

Apparent cases occur now and then, but usually disappear on comparison of MSS.

Examples are,—
comē to, 2198 A. hold my, 4762 D.
spoke with, 2565 D. wretē to, 7666 C.
bygonē to, 3092 A. ybore was, 8013 A.

vnderstonde god, 8161 B.

XI. Hiatus.

Hiatus very rarely occurs, and is of course always easily corrected by adding -n. Examples are,—
boundē in, 663 A (-en B, -yn CD).³
spokē in, 3298 D (-en AB, -yn C).
iboundē in, 4891 A (-yn CD, ybounden B).
brokē alday, 5280 C (-en ABD).

¹ In A read hen[ne]s. ² In A supply [I]. ³ Supply [hym] in C.
songè also, 7008 C (-en hadde AB, sungen had[de] D).

XII. Perfect-participle of *sleyn*

The perfect participle of *sleyn* has various forms. The usual form before vowels and consonants is *slayn* (var. D sleyn, slayn(e); BD slayn(e); B sleyn(e); C slain) : cf. 608, 1420, 4301 BCD, 4940, 5860, 6144, 6417, 7299, 7864, 7867 C, 7868, 8170, 8183. For *slay* (p. p.) *youre self*, 5896 A, read *slayn* (so BC, slayn(e) anon D).

In rhyme we find,—*slayn*, 5855 f (*slayn(e) D*) ( : desayn n.), and *sleyne*, 6590 f (-ne D, slayn CD) ( : ayen AD, a(e)n B, a(e)n C); but also *slawe*, 3563 f (-w D) ( : shawe n.), 5546 f ( : withdrawe p.p.), 5890 f ( : drawe p.p.). In 5903 either *slay[e]n* (cf. ten Brink, § 196 : "wohl niemals *slayen*") or *slave* must be read in the interior of the verse, —My (Myn C) selue (self B, seluyn C, silf D, selfe G) I wolde (wolde IC) haue (han B, a C) *slayn (slawe C, slayne DG quod she tho* (too D). Mr. Austin's collation of Cp. and the John's MS. has no note on this line.

XIII. Perfect-participle of *seen*.

*seyn*, (i.) 174 (seyn C) 1, 3063 f ( : ayen : fayn), 7962 (sen C, seyn [with] B). (ii.) 3902 (sen C) 2, 5624 3,—*yseyn* with, 6811 (sen C, sen(e) D); beseyn that, 2347 (by- BD).

*seighen* byfore, 5639 A (seyn BD); *seyghen* byfore, 5660 A (seyn(e) B, seyn D).

*yseye*, 1253 (yseyn B, seyn CD).

*sen* at, 6804 C (wyst A, wist(e) BD).

*sene*, 3713 f (seene B) ( : I wene *ind.*), 6637 f (-ee- B, ysen D) ( : shene *adj. postpos.*), 7259 f (-ee- B) ( : queene), 8078 f (-ee- B) ( : tene n.); *sene* his, 8117 (seen B, sen D †); *senë*, 3731 ( ee- B, seyn D), 6394 (sen D).

*yscene*, 700 f ([y]sene C, ysene D) ( : queene); *isene*, 6269 f (i-seene B, [i]sene D) ( : tene n. : shene *adj. def.*).

Note.—The forms in -ne represent the A.S. adjectives *gesene (gesyne) :* cf. ten Brink, § 148.

§ 123. Præterito-present verbs.

(i.) *wot*, *not*, *oughte*; (ii.) *kan*, *dar*, *thar*; (iii.) *shal*; (iv.) *may*; (v.) *mot*.

I. *wot*.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. *wot*, woot, (i.) 670 (-e) BD 4, 2087 (-e) BD 5, 2109 (-e) D †; C †), etc.; (ii.) 1829 (-e) BD, 2525 (-e) D 6,

1 In B read *4i* for *pat.* 2 In A supply [a]. 3 In D dele *(for).* 4 Supply [*for*] in D. 5 Supply [*wet*] in A. Cf. 1621. 6 Supply [*wet*] in D.
Observations on the Language

2785 (not(e) D, wot [I] C; B †), 5044 (what D, wote pl. C), etc.; wot(e), 1960 ABD (wot C)1.

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. wost, (i) (ii) 633 (wyst C)2, 717 (-e B), 721 f (-e B, wyst C), 828 (wyst C), 2451 f (-e B)3, 2493 f (wist C), 2514 (wot(e) C; D (?)), 2908 f, 3088 f, 3098, 3141 f, 3181, 4930 (wot(e) D), 5262 f (-e D, wooste B), 5742 (-e D), 6281 f (wooste B, wist C, woste D), 6705 (-e D, wist C), etc. [Var. BD wost; B (633) wost.]-wostow, 588, 775, 781, 851 (wastow B, wyst thou C, wost thou D), 901, 3091. [Var. CD wost thou; D wost thow.]

Rhyme words.—most adv. (721, 2451, 2493, 5262, 6281), almost (2908, 3141), bost n. (3088, 3141), ost n. (5262, 6281).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. wot, woot, (i) (ii) 1975 f (wote C) (wist pred. adj. sg.); cf. 826 (A †), 2080, 2711, etc. B shows less liking for wot(e) and more for woot than in the 1 pers.; C has wot(e) in 807.—for-wot, 5733 A (for-woot B, fòrewitt D).

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. we wote alle, 5044 C † (should be singular).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. wetë wel, 1323 AC (-en B, wite D); witë † what, 2737 D.—wotë ye, 3686 (-oo- B, wot C †); wot ye, 3501 (-oo- B, what C, wytë D), 3739 (-e D, whoot B), 5916 (-oo- B, wote CD); wot your, 3621 (-e D, wotë C); wot that, 1665 (-oo- B, wetyn C, wytë D), 59744; wot the, 2731 (-e D, wete C), 5576 (woote B); wot, 2281 f (woote B, he wrote † D) (not nescio), 5923 f (woote B, wote D) (hot pred. adj. sg.).

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. weten folk, 4860 (witen B, wetyn C, know[e] D); wetyn † that, 7179 C (writen folk); wot no, 1978 (-e B; D †).

Pret. Ind. 1 Sing. wyste, 3682 f (wist CD) (vnriste)5; wyst I, 1644 (-e B, wiste C, wist D)6, 2968 (wiste B, woste C), 3210 (wiste B, wost C, wist D).7

Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. wistist thou, 4486 C (but see under subj. 2 sg.).

Pret. Ind. 3 Sing. wiste, wyste, 811 f (-t D; C †), 3112 [-e] † D)8, 4071 f (-t C), 4095 f, 8028 f (wist D); [-e] what, 7231 (-e B, om. † C); [-e] wel, 8087 (-e D); -e, 565 (-t he D, woste he C)9, 4634 (-t D); -t he, 76 (west B, woste C), 301 (-e B, wostë he C)10, 3367

1 BD regularly add -e, which is never sounded, however, though false readings sometimes force one either to pronounce it or to emend the verse by a comparison of MSS. (thus, 670 D).
2 Wyst might be called pret. subj. in this line.
3 Protasis.
4 Supply [that] in C; [a] in D.
5 "Whi hastow mad Troylus to me vnriste That neuere yet ayylte hym that I wyste."
6 Supply [as] in D.
7 Read telle [me] in D.
8 Supply [that] in A.
9 Supply [as] in D.
10 But supply [how] in C, and read woste he.
(e B, t D); 1 -e he, 3321 C; woste alle, 3538 C (wiste that D); wist non, 2646 D.

Rhyme words.—kyste pret. ind. 3 sg. (811, 4095), tryste, triste inf. (4071, 8028), twyste nysto (4071).

Pret. Ind. 2 Pl. wysten of, 1586 (wosten B, wistyn C, wiste D) (indirect question).

Pret. Ind. 3 Pl. wyste, 5824 (wiste BCD) (; kyste pret. ind. 3 sg.); wist[e] neure, 6383 (wiste B); wyst what, 2646 (wist[e] B, woste C, wist [e] non sg. D).

Pret. Subj. 1 Sing. wiste, wyste, 678 (wiste D), 4119 (wiste C), 4350 ([e] D, woste C); -e, 765 (-e BC), 6285 (-e BD, nyste C); -e how, 3944; wist I, 8104 (-e B, wist D); wist[e] 4328 (-e B, woste C, wist D).

Rhyme words.—liste pres. subj. 3 sg. (678), kyste pret. ind. 3 sg. (4119).

Pret. Subj. 2 Sing. Sith I so loth was that thi selfe it wyste, 3211 (wiste B, wost C, wyst D) (; triste pres. ind. 1 sg. : lyste pres. subj. 3 sg.).

Note.—In 4486 C wistist thou is used in a subjunctive construction (= if thou didst know). Cp. and John's have wististow; wistow ABG, wist thou D, which make a disagreeable 9-syl. line and are not grammatical, should be emended (see § 107).

Pret. Subj. 3 Sing. wiste, wyste, 3307 ([e] D, weste[e] B, woste C), 4610 (-t C) 2 (; liste pret. subj. 3 sg. : twyste same 3), 7269 (wiste C); -e, 6005 (-t D); wist he, 5580 (-e BCD); wyste of, 1830 (woste C, wist D). 4

Pret. Subj. 2 Pl. wyste, 2267 (wiste BC, wist D) (; lyste pres. subj. 3 sg.); -e, 1224 (wiste C, wist BD); wiste how, 6280 (wist D).

Inf. wyte, wite, 1397 (wetyn C, wytyn D), 3991 (wete C); wete, 6468 (wit as B, wete as D).

Perf. Part. wist, wyst, (i.) 513 (-e B), 615 (-e B), 3116 (wost C), 3246 (-e B) (; lyst pres. ind. 3 sg. : tryst n.), etc., etc. For unwist, unwyst, unwist, (i.) (ii.) cf. 2594, 3445, 3612, etc.

II. not.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. not, (i.) (ii.) 410 (wot(e) D), 1626, 2282 (note D) (; wot pres. ind. 2 pl.), 3851, 4320, 5463 (nott D), 6500 (knowe D), 7530 (knowe D); cf. 426, 1120, 2291, 2451, 2551, 2963, 4495, 4698, 4842, 6589. [Var. B noot; D not(e).]
Observations on the Language

III. oughte.

Pret. Ind. 1 Sing. ought[e] konne, 647 (ouȝte C, me oȝhte to ? D) 7; ought[e] be, 7710 (auȝte C); I ne ought[e] not 8, 1805 (ne auȝht[e] B, ne auȝte C, I oȝht[e] not D); oughte I, 7002 (auȝte C, ought D); ought half, 5927 (auȝte C). 9

Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. oughtest, 8069; oughtestow, 6908 (auȝtist thow C, oughtest thou D); oughtist, 649 D. (But see § 107.)

Pret. Ind. 3 Sing. oughte, 649 (om. † C, oughtist D), 3106 f (-t D; 3e ouȝt pl. C), 3522 f (-t CD), 3522 [-e] D, 3423 f (-t D), 3522 f (-t CD), 5805 [-e] D, hem owen † to B, auȝte † to D), 7357 f (-t D, nōȝt adv. † C), 7919 [-e] B, auȝte C †, ought[e] D), 8006 [-e] D, auȝte † to C) 11; cf. 5971. [Var. B auȝht; C ouȝte, ouȝt; D oȝht.]—ought[e], 710 (auȝte † C, oȝht[e] D), 744 (ouȝthte B, auȝte † C, oȝht † to D); auȝht[e]; 423 (auȝht[e] B, auȝte C, oȝht † euere D).—oughte, 2683 (thoȝte † C, oȝht † thei D), 3832 (-t BD), 5058 (-t BD), 5233 (-t D; aught 3 pl. B). 12 [Var. B auȝht, auȝht; C auȝte, ouȝte; D oȝht.]—ought he, 2322 (-t B, auȝte C, oȝht † 3e 2 pl. D).—ought (bef. vowel), 1691 (auȝht B, auȝte C, oȝht D).—oughte, 3871 † A (-[e] B, auȝte † C, oȝht[e] D); ought † the, 5971 (auȝht[e] lasse B, auȝte lasse C, ought † the D).—out, 14 7459 (ought BD, auȝte C).

1 Dele the second (nat) in D. 2 9-syl. in C.
3 "If thou thus deye and she not whi it is." The distinction in sense between the subjunctive deye and the indicative not in this verse is marked.
6 Read [she] in C. 7 Read conne for come in C.
8 So, rather than I ne ought not. 9 Supply [e] in D.
12 In C dele (Hadde). 13 C is too long.
14 "It out i-now suffise."
§ 123. of Chaucer's Troilus.

Note.—In 1691, 2683, 5805, 8006, oughte is past in sense; in the rest of the cases above cited it is present in sense. In 649, 2683, 3106, 3423, 3522, 5805, 8006, the construction is impersonal with the dative (the, hym, here, hem oughte); cf. 647 D (me ought to). Rhyme words.—wroughte ind. 1 sg. (3106, 7357), me thoughte ind. (3106), bisoughte ind. 3 sg. (3423), broughte ind. 3 sg. (3522).

Pret. Ind. 2 pl. ought † 3e, 2322 D; 3e ‡ ouȝt, 3106 f C. (See under pret. ind. 3 sg.). (In sense of present tense.)

Pret. Ind. 3 Pl. oughte, 1997 f A (oughte B) (: broughte ind. 3 pl. : thoughte ind. 3 sg.), 4275 (oughten B, auȝten C, ouȝten D)\(^1\); oughte, 4637 (-t B, ouȝt C, oght D); aught of, 5233 B †; oght ‡ thei, 2683 D.

Note.—In 1997 and 2683 oughte is past in sense; in the rest of the cases above cited it is present in sense.

Pret. Subj. 3 Sing. oughte, 7708 (auȝte C, ought D).

IV. kan.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. kan, (i.) (ii.) 11, 459, 492, 718, 1044, 2243, 2530, 2590, 7731; cf. 1635 f, 7304 f, 8132 f. [Var. CD can; B kann(e); D cann(e).]

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. kanst, (i.) (ii.) 511 (can C), 2607\(^2\) 2697, 3141, 5154 (ka[n]st B), 7644; cf. 1045 D, 5759 C. [Var. CD canst; D canst(e).]—canstow, 757 (kanstow B, c. thou CD)\(^3\); kanstow, 5122 (canstu C, canst(e) thou D).—thow kan wel endite, 7655 (kanst B, canst C, canst(e) D).\(^4\)

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. kan, can, (i.) (ii.) 147, 203, 234 f, 259 (may † D), 3002 (gan † B, 3e can C), 5774, 6120, 6134, 7136 f, 7573; cf. 1291 f, 1459 f, 6357 f. [Var. D cann(e).]—kan(e), 4666 A (kan B, can D).

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. konne, 1867 f (cunne C, kun D †) (: bygonne p.p. : sonne); kon haue, 6481 (kan B, can CD).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. konne, 776 f (cunne C, conne D) (: wonne p.p.), 2551 f (cunne C, conne D)\(^5\) (: ronne p.p.), 2827 f (kanne B, cunne C, kun D) (: wonne p.p.); konne, 985 (kun D, cunne † conseyl C), 1374\(^6\) (kanne B, cunne C, kun D); can † now, 3002 C; can † don, 5856 C; kan ye, 4405 (can C, kunne † D); kan recorde, 6180 (can C †, kanné D).


\(^1\) Supply [ployne] in B, [the] in C.
\(^2\) Supply [woel] in C.
\(^3\) Supply [non] in D.
\(^4\) Supply [this] in C.
\(^5\) Indirect question.
\(^6\) Conditional; perhaps subjunctive.
1001 (kun D, cunnyn an C); cunne how, 1921 C (pret. subj. I ABD); konne telle, 1980 (kan B, can CD); kan leye, 559 (cunne C, can D); kan not, 1357 (can CD), 2875 (may † D); kan sen, 7476 (can D, c. ouzt sg. C)\(^1\); kan a, 6712 (can CD).

Pret. Ind. 1, 3 Sing. koude, kowde, coude, 629 (-[e] D), 798 BC (-[e] D, wolde A), 2163 f (-d D) (: loute adv.), 2263 (-[e] D), 2758 (coute D, koude she BCp.), 3276 f (: cloute), 3454 (coute D), 3521 f (-d D) (: loute adv.), 3800 (B † D †), 3802 (coute D), 4110 (coute C), 4564 (myght[e] D), 5237 (C † (?)), 6452 (coute B), 6651, 7139; koude, kowde, 193 (coute C, couth D), 367 (kouth B, coude C, couth wel D),\(^2\) 660 (coude B, curere † C, couth D), 3054 (coude C, couthe D), 3480 (om. † B; coude CD),\(^3\) 3536 (coude C, cowd † wel D), 7110 (coude CD),\(^4\) 7991 (couteh † wel C; D †); koude he, 1144 (cowd D; A †),\(^5\) 3317 (coude C, couthe D), 4638 (coude C, couthe D), 8092 (coude D, koude † not B); koude his, 665 B (coude C, cowd D, koude (al) his A); koude here (gen. sg.), 5337 (myghte B, myȝte C, myght D); koude he, 4207 (coudë he C, cowdë he D; B †).

Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. koudest neuere, 622 (coudest B, coudyst C, coudist D).

Pret. Ind. 2, 3 Pl. koude, 7480 (coude CD); -ő ye, 4200 (coude C; cowde † D); kowde how, 1921 (koude B, couthe D, cunne C) (subj. †).

Pres. Subj. 1 Sing. if I konne, 1134 f (kun D) (: begonne p.p.).

Pres. Subj. 2 Sing. if that thou konne, 2582 f (cunne C, kunne D) (: wonne p.p.).

Pres. Subj. 2 Pl. I not whether ye ... konne, 2551 f (cunne C, cunne D) (: ronne p.p.); yf ye konne, 5978 f (cunne C) (: ywonne p.p.).\(^6\)

Pres. Subj. 3 Pl. if they kan sen, 7476 (can D, can † ouzt sg. C).\(^6\)

Pret. Subj. 1 Sing. koude, kowde, 3342 (coute D, thow I coude † C), 4344 (coude C †, couthe D); koude, kowde, 1206 (coude C, cowd † D), 2667 (cow(e)de A, coude C, cowd [I] D), 3138 (coude C, couthe D).

Pret. Subj. 3 Sing. who koude telle, 6630 (coude D, wil C †).

Pret. Subj. 2 Pl. koude, 7335 (coute C, coude D); koude han, 8046 (coude haus-D, wolde † a C).

\(^1\) Perhaps subjunctive. Supply [of] in A.  \(^2\) Read wel couth in D.

\(^3\) Read mich[e] in D.  \(^4\) Read ys[e] in CD.

\(^5\) In this line koude he is concessive (= though he could).

\(^6\) Perhaps indicative. In 7476 A supply [of].
§ 123.]

of Chaucer's Troilus. 323

Pret. Subj. 3 Pl. koude, 7700 (couthe † pleyne C, coude † p. D); kowde how, 1921 (koude B, couthe D, cunne ind. † C) (ind. †).

Note.—Of the above cited subjunctives, the following are in apodosis, and therefore perhaps doubtful: 1206, 1921, 2667, 3138, 3342, 4344, 6630, 7335, 8046. The rest are in protasis, except as indicated in the citation.

Inf. konne, 2925 f (cunne C, kun D) (: y-ronne p.p.), 3219 f (cunne C, kun D) (: sonne), 7767 (cunne C, kanne D); konne, 647 (come † C; know[ê] † D (?)).

Perf. Part. kouth in, 4723 A (B † D †); vnkouth, (i.) 1236 (-ê AD), 4639 (-ê BD, vnkow A).

V. dar

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. dar, (i.) (ii.) 396, 451, 1258, 1622,1 2834, 2946, 3180 (dare ? CD),2 3503, 4108, 5272, 5434, 7659, 7990 (D †), etc. [Var. CD dar(e).]

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. darst not, 768 (C ?); dar not, 6776 (darst BC, darst(e) D)3; dastow, 7642 (dastow B, durstíst † thow C, darst(e) thou D).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. dar, 5863 (-ê CD),4 6130 (-ê CD),5 6566 (durst(e) D).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. dar ye, 2832 (-ê C, dore † D (?)).

Pret. Ind. 1 Sing. dorste, 1859 (durse C, durst D).

Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. dordestow, 767 (durstíst thou C, trist † thow D).6 (Perhaps subjunctive, see § 106.)

Pret. Ind. 3 Sing. dorste, 1287 (durse C, durst[e] D), 7273 ([ê] B, durste † sow C, durste D); dorst[e] yow, 27 (-ê B, durst[e] D);7 dorste, 3294 (-t B, durste C, durst D) (cf. 5334, 7073); durste hire (acc.), 7091 (-t B, durste C, durst † compleine D)8; dorst he, 503 (durste C, durst D); dorst hir (acc.), 98 B (durste C, durstë mone D, dorst (make) hire A).

Pret. Ind. 3 Pl. So as they dorste (dorsten G, dorst B, durst C, durst D) how (hough G, so as C, how ferre D) they wolden (wolde C Cp., wold D) proceede, 3297.

Pret. Subj. 1 Sing. dorste, 7667 (-ê B); dorste, 3219 (-t BD), 7532 (-ê leyne † C)9; dorst I, 924 (-ê seye BD, -ê seye C), 3212 (-ê C), 6720 (-ê CD), 6915 (-ê CD); dorst haue, 899 (durst a C †); dorste,

1 Supply [ê-] in B. 2 CD should be emended by means of AB. 3 Read (ar)ise in D. 4 Supply [fére] in B. 5 C is defective. 6 Supply [híre] in B. 9-syl. line in D. 7 Possibly subjunctive. 8 Read pleyne for compleyne in C. 9 Supply [that] in D.
Observations on the Language

§ 123.

2521 (t B, e C, [e] D). [CD have -u- in all these cases, AB -o-]

Pret. Subj. 2 Sing. See Pret. Ind. 2 Sing.

Pret. Subj. 3 Sing. desiring . . . to haue here herte dere In swych a plyt she dorste[e] make hym chere, 4396 (durst C, that sche durst ‡ him make D).

Note.—Of these instances of the subjunctive preterite (1, 3. person), the following, being in protasis, may be regarded as certain: 2521, 3219, 6915, 7708. The following are in apodosis (as, I dorste leye i.e. wager): 899, 924, 6729, 7632, 7667; cf. how dorst I, 3212.

Pret. Subj. 2 Pl. And yf so be that pes her-after take . . . Why lord the sorwe and wo ye wolden make That ye ne dorste come ayen for shame, 6227 (dorst[e] B, durstyn C, durste D) (= because you would not, or did not, dare).

Infin. to dorste don, 7203 (durre [to] do B, to dore dcn C ‡, to doo † D).

VI. thar.

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. he thar nought, 2746 (hym thar BCp. John’s, him thar G, him dar C, hym oght[e] D).

Pret. Subj. 3 Sing. thorste, 3414, in which the correct reading seems to be: Yow thorste neuere han the more fere. The variants are curious: Yow dorste (so A, Thow thruste B, He thourrst C, Yow durst D, Yow tharste G, Ye thorste C, Ye tharste John’s, Yow thurste Harl. 2392) haue neuere (so AD John’s, neuere han BCG Cp.).

VII. shal.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. shal, (i.) 398 (sal B), 922 f (shalle B) 2, 1047 f, 1912 f, 2094 CD (wil A, wol B), 3633 (ow † D) 3, 4168 f, 4806 f, 7210, 7680 f, etc. [Var. C schall; D shalh.]

Rhyme words.—general (922, 4806), special (1047), fynal (4806), al (922, 1047, 1912, 4168, 7680).

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. shalt, (i.) (ii.) 349 (schal thow B, that ‡ C), 808, 2041 (shal trow[e] B, schal trostyn C), 2598 (schat C) 4, 3546 (xat C) 5, 5206 (schat C) 6, 5266 (schat C, shalt(e) D), 5315 (shah this D), 6767 (shalt(e) D), 7657 (schat C, shalt(e) D), 7662 (shal B, schat C, shalt(e) D) 7, 7671 (shal B, schat C), 7825 (-e D), etc. [Var. C schalt.]—shaltow, 803 (schuldyst ‡ thou C, thou shalt ‡ have D), 5271 (shaltow(e) B; pret. C ‡; D †), 6391 (shah thou D).

1 Scansion doubtful. 2 "Now may I haue the if that I shal." 3 "And by that feith I shal (= owe) Pryam of Troye." 4 9-syl. in D. 5 Supply [thor] in A, [in] in D. 6 Supply [this] in A. 7 Read soo[ne] in D.
Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. shal, (i.) 236, 651, 1131 f (schalle B †) (: al : wal), 2358, 3640 (shalt † A, wol D), 5255, etc. [Var. BC schal; D shall, shalH, shat.]

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. shal, shul, (i.) 2106, 3502 (shullen not B) 1, 5068, 5452, 5983 (schal † ye C), 6178, 6761 (cf. 804 † D, 5456 D, 6185 † C); (ii.) shul here (adv.), 6841. —shulLe, 3794 (shul BD, schuln C), 5984 (shal B, shaft D, shal † eueremore C); we schul[le]n twynne, 5932 C (pret. ABD). [Var. C schal, schul; D shaH, shat.]

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. shal, shul, (i.) 1177, 6151, 7217, etc., etc.; (ii.) shal ek, 6133; shul ek, 6147; shul han, 122. [Var. BC schal; C schul; D shaH.]—shullen dar, 3503 (schul[le]n C, sholdyn neither D).—Ye shul (schal C, shal GCp. John’s) nomore haue (han BC Cp. John’s) soueraynte (-eunte BDG, -eignete Cp. John’s, -anitee E, seurete of me C), 3013.

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. shal, shul, (i.) 5449, 7256, 7257, etc. etc. (ii.) shal it, 1365; shal han, 122. [Var. BC schal; C schul; D shaH.]

Pret. 3 Sing. sholde, 923 (-[e] D) 4, 1025 f (D †) (: nolde 1 sg.), 1257 (-[e] D), 1438 (-[e] BD), 3219 (-[e] D), 3239 (-[e] BD), 3335 f (-d D) (: wolde 3 sg.), 5118, 5298 f (-d B) (: wolde 3 sg.), 6241 (-[e] B); shold[e] don, 1474 (-e C; A †). [Var. B scholde; C schulde; D shulde.—shold[e] to, 2291 (-d B, -[e] hym D, schuldé him C); cf. 5271 D †, 6850 † C.—shold, 17 (-e sterve † D), 1410, 2349, 3435, 6023, etc., etc. [Var. B shold, schold; C schulde; D shold, should, shulde.—shuld I, 8095 (shold B, shulde D).—sholde han, 5213 (shulde heue D, schulde also C); sholdé haue, 5228 (-[e] B, schulde C, shulde D).

Pret. 2 Sing. sholdest, 774 (schuldyst C, sholdist D); sholdestow, 6714 (schuldist thow C, shuldest thou D); shuldestow, 7651 (sholdestow B, schuldist thow C, shuldest thou D). Cf. 803 † C, 3124 † D, 5271 † C.

Note.—Of these 774, 6714, 7651, may perhaps be regarded as subjunctives see § 107).

Pret. 3 Sing. sholde, shulde, 76 f (-d D), 521 f, 728, 2120 (B †), 3374 f (-d D), 3603, 4511 f, 4878 f, 5852 f, 6185 (we † shul[le] C). 5 6474 f, 6610 (-e † D), 6621 (-e † C), 6825 (solde B), 7269 f, 7364 (D †), 8127 f, etc., etc. [Var. BD shold[e]; C scholde, schulde.—sholde,

1 In C read ly[ge]n. 2 "Intendestow that we shul here bleue" (var. be-leue).
3 In the case of sholde, -en, wolde, -en, and nolde, -en no attempt is made to distinguish between the indicative and the subjunctive.
4 In C supply [that].
5 "Vs sholde neyther lakke gold(e) ne gere" (impersonal).
shold, 1498, 3826 (D?), 7913. [Var. C schulde; D shulde.] Before he, his, hym, here (acc.), han (inf.), haue (inf.),—sholde, shulde, shold, shuld, 228, 813, (-[e] † he D), 1638, 2841, 3399, 3856, 3924, 6417, 7636 ABD. [Var. B shold, scholde; CD schulde.]—sholde holde, 4726 (-[e] BD).—sholde destroyed, 68 (shulde † be D); sholde cause, 5726 (shulde D); cf. sholde, shold, schulde, shulde, 306 † A, 2381 CD, 7427 CD, 7767 † C.

Rhyme words.—Only wolde and nolde.

Pret. 1 Pl. sholden, (i.) 5932 (schul[le]n C, shulde D); shulden al, 8188 A (sholden B); schulde, 5288 † C.

Pret. 2 Pl. I. sholde, (i.) 4737 ([e] B, -yn D)1, 6027 (-e CD), 6219 (-e BD, -yn C); sholdyn, 3503 † D. II. sholde, 2993 (-en B, -[e] D), 3626 f (-d D) (: nolde pl.), 6171 (-on B, -en D, -yn C †), 7243 (-en B)2.—shulde, 6488 (shold B, schulde C, shulden D).—sholde, 3719 † C; shuld † ye, 4973 C.1—louen sholde ön, 3639 (sholde nonden ön B, schulde louyn on C, shold love ön D). [Var. to I, C schulde, schuldeyn; D shulde. Var. to II, C scholde; D shulde, shulden.]

Pret. 3 Pl. sholden, (i.) 73 (-e C, -[e] D), 3386 (-[e] B, xulde C, shold † fle D),3 3799 (-e B, -d anaw sg. † D; ligne om. † C), 4798 (-e C, -[e] D); cf. schulden, 6171 C †. [Var. C schulde.]—sholde, 2923 (-[e] B, -en D, schulden C), 6989 f (scholde B, schulde C, shulde D †) (: wolde ind. 3 sg.); shulde, 1496 (schulde C, sholden B, sholde D); shulde, 6818 (sholde B, sholde † cause D); sholde han (inf.), 872 (schulde C, shold D),4 3273 (shold D, schulde a C); sholde his, 4815 (-d D, schulde C) —sholde hire (gen. pl.), 4848 (-en B, -yn D, schulde C).

Pres. Subj. 1 Pl. shulle, 5288 (shul B, shal D, schulde † C).5

Pres. Subj. 2 Pl. shul putte, 3719 (scholde † C, shal † he ind. D).

Note.—5288 is after though (hypothetical future case); 3719 is in protasis.

VIII. may.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. may, (i.) (ii.) 9226, 1008 (mowé B, mow D), 1563 f (3 sg. CD), 21837, 7435 f, 7772 f, 7984 f, 8059 f.

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. (i.) (ii.) In A,—mayst, 600, 806, 1045, 2070, 2450, etc., etc.; maist, 5699. In B,—mayst, 600, 806, 1045, 5244; maist, 2070, 2450, and usually. In C,—mayst, 2450, 3027.

etc.; mayst, 619, 806, 2070, etc.; may thyn, 6633; mayst, 600, 7795. In D,—mayst, 619, 806, 1045, etc., etc.; maist, 5208, 5244, etc.; maist(e), 5295; may, 600.

maystow, 623 (mayst thou CD), 673 (mayst thou C, mayst thou D), 2101 (mayst thou CD), 3738 (mayst thou C, mayst thou D), 4927 (mayst thou C, maist thou D), 7522 (mayst thou C, maist(e) thou D), 8074 (maist(e) thou D); cf. 5208 B, 7493 B. [Var. B maistow.]

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. may, (i.) 147, 3253, 3831 f, 3901 f, 4428 f, 5826 f, 6512 f, 7354 f, etc.

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. may, (i.) 987, 1663, 6176, 6179 t C, 6191, 6752 C, 6753, 6792 (That we may). (ii.) 2416, 6179 ABC; may haue, 6887 (D t).—mowe, 6168 (mow B, now t C, may D (!)).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. may (i.) 54 (shall D), 1490, 3688, 4124 t D, 4843 t D, 4956, 5519, 5555 (C t D t?), 5856 (can C), 5990 (D t), 6013, 6299, 6320, 7360, 7698, 7744. (ii.) 30, 4843 ABC, 7987; may his, 3752; may here (acc.), 3528 (C t); may here (gen. sg.), 8139 (B t); may here (inf.), 5747 BC (A t D?), 7000 (A t), 7315 (mow B, schul C), 7679 (schul C), 7952.—mowen elys, 5992 (—e B, moun diesyl. C, mow[ë] D).

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. may, (i.) 120, 644, 756 (moun monosyl. C), 2242 (may it? C)11, 2732, 4124 (may t ye 2 pl. D), 4307 (C t, mowen D t), 4853, 4932, 5710, 6118, 6706, 7495 (mough D). (ii.) 839 (C t), 4056, 8116 (om. B t (?)), 8213.—mowé not, 5740 ABD (the passage is not in C). [In several of the instances cited the subject is men.]

Pres. Subj. 1 Sing. may, (i.) 863, 1530, 2486 f, 3561, 6324, 6785 f, 6979, 7551 f, 8080 f.15

Pres. Subj. 3 Sing. may, (i.) 1017 BCD (wole A), 1616, 1949, 2875, 5941 (schal C), 6262 f, 7159 f. (ii.) 3819 (may t the C).17—mowé neuere, 959 A (may BCD).

Pret. Ind. and Subj. 1 Sing. myghte, 4120 (—e B, myȝte C, miȝte D); myght[e], 1797 (myght[e] BD, myȝte C); myghte, 3230 (myȝte C, might D); myght18 (bef. vowels), 19 t D, 1651, 3473, 3892, 7460; myght hym, 3744 (myȝte C); —e here (acc.), 6972 (—t B,


Several of these are hardly to be distinguished from indicatives. 16 Supply [that] in D.

Some of these are hardly to be distinguished from indicatives. 18 Var. C myȝte (in all), D might.
myght C, might D).\(^1\)—myght best, 2515 (mygte \(^3\) 3 sg. C, might[e] (\(\ddagger\) D).—myght[e] \(\ddagger\) I, 5121 (\(-\) B, myyte C, myght D); \(-\) [e] I, 7652 (myyte C, myyte[e] D, myght[e] I) B).\(^2\)

Pret. 2 Sing. myghtestow, 7890 (myystist C, mightest D \(\dagger\) ); mygthestow, 4924 AB.

Note.—7890 is perhaps subjunctive (see \(\S\) 107).—In 619, readings vary: Parantoer thow myght (so ABG, mayst C, mayst D) after swych on longe. (No note in Mr. Austin’s collation.)

Pret. Ind. and Subj. 3 Sing. myghte, 373 (myyst[e] B), 1075 AB, 2204 f, 2379 f (-t C), 2655\(^4\), 2838 (-t \(\ddagger\) the D), 3186, 3925 f (-t B, myst C, miȝt D),\(^4\) 4697 f (-t B), 4822 (-[e] B),\(^5\) 4823 (-[e] B), 5647 (-[e] B), 5849 f (myyte C), 5880 f (myyte C), 6551 f (myyte C), 6874 f, 6995 f (myyte C), 7155 (-[e] B), 7157 (-[e] B), 7192 f (-t B, myyte C), 7382 f, 7998 f. \([\text{Var. D might[e]} \text{ or myght[e] in most of the verses above-cited; C myyte.}]\) myght[e], 1029 (-e C), 1536 (-e C), 2064 (-e BC)\(^6\), 2499 (-e C, myght[e] B), 2525 (-e C)\(^7\), 3282, 3734 (myyte \(\ddagger\) A)\(^8\), 4351 (-e BC, miȝt \(\dagger\) not D), 4445 (-e CD), 5792 (-e C, e \(\ddagger\) other B), 6535 (-e C), 7171 (-e C), 7566 f (-e B), 7583 B (miȝt[e] D, see below), 8100; cf. 1656, 4564 D. \([\text{Var. BD might[e]; C myyte, myyte[e]; D miȝte.}]\) myghte, 2660 (myght B; D\(\ddagger\)), 2941, 3362,\(^9\) 5485, 6923 (myyte C); cf. 1539, 5033. \([\text{Var. B myght (in all except 2660); C mygte; D myght, might (in all).}]\) myght (bef. vowels), 638 (-e C), 2135 (myȝte \(\dagger\) no C, might \(\dagger\) no D), 3442, 4002 (-e C), 7788 (-e C); cf. 2922, 4033. \([\text{Var. C myyte, mygte; D miȝt.}]\) myghte his, 2411 (-t BD); myghte him, 562 (-t BD); myght he, 370 (-e C), 3923 (-e C); -t haue (inf.), 1277 (-e han B, miȝt \(\dagger\) han C, myght[e] haue D), 1796 (-t han C), 7102 (-t han B, -e a C); might he, 1519 (myght B, miȝt C); cf. 823, 2956, 3728, 3955, 4911, 6645, 7583. \([\text{Var. BC myzt; C myzte; D might, miȝt.}]\) myght holden, 5260 (may C); myght neure, 5644 AB (might D; not in C); myght to, 8151 AB (miȝt D); myȝt non, 7317 C (might D, may A, may it B); cf. 1539 \(\dagger\) D, 2135 \(\dagger\) D, 3264 \(\dagger\) D, 4351 \(\dagger\) D, 5033 \(\ddagger\) D; mygte, 1739 \(\dagger\) C, 5370 \(\ddagger\) C (myght D\(\dagger\)).—mygte here (inf.), 3586 (-[e] BD, myȝte C); myȝte \(\dagger\) other, 5792 B; mygte \(\dagger\) here (acc.), 1056 A (myȝte B, might D).

1 Supply [\(\ddagger\)] in A.
2 How myght (myyte C, miȝt D) I (om. B) than (than C) do (don BC Cp. John’s, duc D) quod Troylus.
3 Supply [\(\ddagger\)] in D.
4 Supply [\(\ddagger\)] in C.
5 CD are too short, even if -e be read.
6 Supply [\(\ddagger\)] in C.
7 Supply [\(\ddagger\)] in D.
8 For myyte a dede man in A, read myȝte dede men.
9 Read here[\(\ddagger\)] in A.

Pret. 1 Pl. myghte, 1596 (-en B, yn D, myȝtyn C †); myghten, (i.) 6850 (-e B, myȝtyn C, might[e] D).

Pret. 2 Pl. myghte, 6172 (-en B, myȝtyn C, myght[e] D).

Pret. 3 Pl. myghten, (i.) 1815 (myȝte C, myght[e] D), 2524 (-e B, myȝtyn in C, might[en] in D), 2709 f (myȝtin C, mightyn D).—myghte, 614 (-e BD, myȝtyn C), 1726 (-e BD), 1751 (-e D)1, 2031 f (myȝt C, myght D), 2734 (-en B, -e D, myȝt † C)2, 3609 (myȝtyn C, myght † this D),3 6612 (-e B).4 [Var. C myȝte; D mighte, [e].—myght[e], 3351 (-e B, myȝte C †; D ?), 3605 (-e B, myȝte C, might[e] D).—myghte, 1439 (om. † B, -t D †), 2702 (-t D),5 7324 (-t BD). [Var. C myȝte; D miȝt, might.]: myght (bef. vowels), 286 (myȝtyn in C)6, 3264 (-e B, might † not D), 3318 (-e C), 6948 (-e C; D †). [Var. C myȝt, -e; D miȝt.]:—myghte hym, 279 (-t BD); -e hire (poss. sg.), 5337 (-t D, koude A); myght hym,7 3415 (-e C). [Var. C myȝte.]

Note.—Of these examples of the pret. 3 pl., men is the subject in 279, 286, 1439, 1726, 1815, 2702, 3415, 3609, 6948; at the world is the subject in 2324, 3318, 5337.

Rhyme words.—hyghten pret. ind. 3 pl. (2709), dyghte pret. ind. 3 sg. (2031).

Infin. mowen,—To mowen (so ABG Cp. John's, moun C, wyn D) swych a knyght don (so BC Cp., om. A, doon G, to D John's) lyue (leuyn C) or dye (deiȝe C), 2679.—to mowe † dwelle, 7213 C (maken AB, make D).

IX. mot.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. (i.) (ii.) mot, moot, 224 (-e BD, is † for C), 573 (-e BCD), 1621 (-e B, must D, me muste C), 4037 f (-e BCD) (: in his fote; foot B, foote D: sot sbst. (=soot), soot B, sote CD), 4129 (-e BD), 5408, 6284 (-e C); cf. 2889, 3429 C, 4676, 6681, 6784, 7692.

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. most, (i.) (ii.) 520 (must(e) C, must D), 5129

1 Or singular: Now myghte som enuyous iangle thus.
2 Supply [hymn] in AB. ACD may be singular.
3 Supply [for] in B.
4 Dele (as) in A. C is out of order.
5 "So heynous that men myghte on it speete" (heynous or myghte on).
6 "Shewed wel that men myghte yn here gesse" (9-syl., but D supplies she †).
7 A has hem †.
(most B, must(e) C, muste D), 5310 (mayst † C, must(e) D), 7822 (must D, om. † C).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. mot, (i.) 2456 (moot B, mot(e) D); cf. 1524, 1701, 3406, 3636, etc., etc.—mot(e), 6247 A (moot B, mot(e) (!) C; D †). (Cf. pret. 3 sg.)

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. mote, 2754 C (mooste A, most B, must D).

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. moten ouer, 846 (-yn CD)¹; mote hire (poss. sg.), 847 (-yn C); motë spenden, 6038 (moot B, mot C †, must D).²

Pres. Subj. 1 Sing. mote I, 1220, 7270 (mot B); mot I, 341 (-e BD)³; 1210 (-e BCD), 2230 (-e BCD)⁴, 4048 (-e C), 7347 (-e CD), 7523 (moot B, mote C; D †). (All these in wishes: as, so mote I gon, as mot I the.) I bidde god I neuere mot haue ioye, 3717 A (-e BG, I preye to god neueremore haue I ioye C, I pray to god y neuer more have ioy D; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation).

Pres. Subj. 3 Sing. to good[e]⁵ mot it turne, 1175 (-e BCD); so mot he neuer the, 1755 (-e BC); sory mot he ben, 2141 (-e BCD); longe mot your lyf in ioye endure, 4988 (-e BD, motë † 3e 2pl. C).

Pres. Subj. 2 Pl. mot ye lyue, 1487 (-e BCD); motë † 3e, 4988 C (3 sg. ABD).

Pret. Ind. 1 Sing. most (bef. vowels), 3429 (mot C, must D), 4676 B (must D, mot A)⁶; moste here (poss. sg.), 5232 (-t B, must D; C †); y must † nedis, 1621 D; I must[e] nedis, 6681 D † (mot AB, mot C †). (In all these cases with the force of the present tense and the meaning of modern must.)

Pret. Ind. 3 Sing. moste, 74 (-e BD), 3401 (-e BD), 3465 (-e B; D †)⁷, 4000 (-e BD), 4878 (-e BD), 5373 C (-e D), 8025 (-e B). [Var. C muste; D must[e], muste.]⁸—most[e], 4551 B (muste C, must[e] D).⁹—moste, 2385 (-t BD), 3999 (-t B), 4004 (-t BD, mot † C), 6368 (-t B), 6433 (-t D),¹⁰ [Var. C muste; D must, -e].—most at, 3382 (-e B, muste C, moost D).—moste his, 6441 (-t BD); -e hem, 4551. [Var. C muste; D must.]

Note 1.—In all these cases of the pret. ind. 3 sg. the verb has its proper preterite function. The modern sense (in which must is equivalent to a present tense) is seen in moste, 216 A (schall B, mot B, must D). C shows four instances of this latter use: mustë † ben, 6261 C (muste D, mot AB); muste † for, 6422 C (mot AB, mot(e) D); me † mustë nedis, 1621 C, 7715 C. D several times substitutes must (in a present sense) for mot (etc.) of

¹ Read ioye[s] in C.
² In 6038 the subject is men.
³ Supply [that] in C.
⁴ In A read to deth[e] and smelt[e].
⁵ goode BC.
⁶ Supply [J] in B.
⁷ Dele (At) in AB (†). In D read must[e] b(y)lue.
⁸ In 4000 D has most[e]; the usual vowel in this word, however, is u for CD, o for AB.
⁹ In D supply [day].
¹⁰ Read (re)torne he in D.
§ 123, 124.] of Chaucer's Troilus.

the other MSS., cf. 1701, 2586, 3406, 3670: in these four cases a consonant follows, but in none of them (except perhaps in 2586, which is otherwise unsatisfactory) are we to read must[. Cf. also 4266 † E.

Note 2.—Must is used impersonally in me muste nedis deixen (pres. sense), 1621 C (I mot A, I moot(e) B, y must D)1; hym moste obeye (pret. sense), 3999 B (he moste A, he muste CD); muste † hem bleue, 7543 C (they moste b[i]euen A, they most[e] bleuen B, thei muste b(e)leue D), which is probably subjunctive. In none of these lines is the impersonal construction apparently the genuine reading. (See Child, § 67, and cf. Englische Studien, XIV, 391.)

Pret. Ind. 2 Pl. moste, 2754 (-t B, mot(e) C, must D), 3758 (-t B, muste C, must D). (Both in present sense.)2

Pret. Ind. 3 Pl. men moste, 4056 ([e] B, mustyn C, must[e] D); men moste axe, 1979 (miste † C, must[e] † D)3; men mose, 6016 (moste B, moste nedis C †, musten † entercomen D); men . . . must spenden, 6038 D (mote A, moot B, mot C). (All in present sense.)

Pret. Subj. 1 Sing. . most I, 1884 (I muste be C, y must[e] be † D); I moste come, 6023 ([e] B, muste C, must[e] D). (In both cases = I should have to.)

Pret. Subj. 3 Sing. moste, 74 ([e] BD), 3401 ([e] BD). [Var. C muste ; D must[e].]—most[e], 5226 (moost[e] B, mot † C, must[e] D).—moste, 3758 (-t B, muste C, must D); -e he, 2160 (moost B, muste C, must D); -e han, 3733 (-t B, muste C, must D). (In all these cases = would have to.) Cf. muste † hem, impersonal, 7543 C.

Pret. Subj. 3 Pl. mosten folk, 2592 (mustyn CD); they most[e] b[i]euen, 7543 (muste b(e)leue D, muste † hem impers. sg. C). (In these = would have to.)

§ 124. Other irregular verbs.

This list includes be, wol, nyl, do, go, and haue.

I. to be.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. am, (i.) (ii.) 10, 223, 6160 (nam BD, may † C), 6782 (nam B), 7069 (nam BD).—nam, 7609 (am C, nam[e] D).

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. art, (i.) (ii.) 277, 555 (art[e] D), 648, 1045 (D † ?), 5163 (-e) D), etc. [Var. B art (usually).]—artow, 509 (art thou C, art[e] thou D), 731 (art thou C, art[e] thou D); art thou, 507 (artow B, art thou C, art[e] thou D), 3579 (art tow B; C ?).

1 Supply [that] in B. 2 3758 may be construed as subjunctive.
3 If moste be read, the verse becomes 9-syl.
4 But in 1884 perhaps rather in a present (future) sense “How bysy if I lone ek most I be.”
Observations on the Language

§ 124.

124.

Note.—In “Al wrong by god what seystow man wher arte,” 7524 f (arte ABCG, arte D; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation) (: carte n.), arte is plainly a colloquial form of artow: perhaps it represents the ordinary pronunciation of that contraction. Cf. fro ye (: Troye), 5, in which ye may be regarded as a similarly weakened form of yow.

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. is, 3622 f (: this), and passim; helle ys, 7739 f (is C) (: wellys pl. : ellys); his, 1943 C, 7150 B; ysse, 1013 f A (is BCD) (: thisse : iwysses).1—nys, 203 AC (is B)2, 574 C (is ABD), 684 (ne is C, nis D), 697 (nis B, is D),3 2824 f (is CD) (: is), 4570 (ne is C, ther is † (=ther’s) D), 7085, etc.; nyis monosyl., 7451 C (is ABD).

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. (i.) be, 3937 (ben C, beeth D), 7346 (ben B, ben(e) D ; C †); be we, 5920, 6847 (C †), 7042 (cf. 5138); ben now, 5986 (ben(e) B, be D); been so, 6511 (ben BC, be D); ben † we, 4049 C. (ii.) ben, 5930 (be D)4; be, 5921 (ben BC).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. (i.) be, 1320 (ben BC), 3881, 3980 (ben BCD), 7721 (ben CD)5; be ye, 202 ABC, 2191, 25526, 3599, 4049 (ben C); ben, 1201 (be D), 1669 (be D), 3709 (ben(e) D), 4407, etc.; beth bothe, 984 (ben BC, be D). (ii.) ben, 1433 (be BD), 2825 (ben(e) D), etc.; be ywonne, 2321 (ben BC, be 3e D)7; ben he, 1332 (be D); ben his, 3718 (D †)8; ben here (adv.), 2836 (ben(e) D).

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. (i.) Before consonants ben and be are both found in A, but ben (the regular form in BC) is the commoner. D usually has be or ben(e), but ben occurs in D (e.g., 3134). Cf. 1137, 3134, 3696, 4887, etc. Cf. been, 4205 E; byn, 4595 E. In rhyme,—be, 48 f, 2039 f, 2858 f, 2879 f, 5709 f, 5718 f 7033 f (bee B), 8143 f; ben, 6819 f (bene D) (: to sen). Other forms are,—they beth with, 6020 C †, and arn (are) : arm thei, 999 A (aré BC, they are the D); arm clerkes, 5634 A (ern B, were D)9; arm woxen, 7737 A (aryn C, aré D)10; arm, 996 C (are D), is an error for erren ABG; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation. (ii.) Before vowels ben is the usual form, except in D, which commonly (though not always) has ben(e): thus,—1000 (be D), 1973 (ben(e) D), 4180 (been E), etc. Before h,—ben his, 2560 (ben(e) D); ben here (gen. sg.), 6582 (D †); ben here (adv.), 2815 (be D)11; ben hertes, 2939 (ben(e) D).

1 This monstrous form serves at least to emphasize the fact that the s is unvoiced.
2 Dele (that) in C.
3 Dele (yn) in A.
4 Supply [that] in D.
5 Dele or slur (that) in D.
6 Supply [ye] in AB.
7 Read [y]wonne in D.
8 Supply [that] in B.
9 Not in C.
10 Leaf cut out of B.
11 Read her[with]yn in D.
Rhyme words.—charite (48), aduersite (2858), benignite (2879), necessite (5718), subtilitee (8143), me (2039, 5709, 8143), the (2039, 2879), ye (2858), fre (7033), se, y-se inf. (5709, 7033).—to sen (sene D) (6819).

Pres. Subj. 1 Sing. be, (i.) (ii.) 832, 859, 2945, 3240 f, 4128 f, 6213 f, etc.
Pres. Subj. 2 Sing. be, (i.) (ii.) 3663, 4473, etc.
Pres. Subj. 3 Sing. be, (i.) 23 f, 308, 349, 1036, 2418 f, 5994 f, etc.
Pres. Subj. 1 Pl. (i.) be, 5450 (ben ind. C †)1, 6144. (ii.) ben, 6276.
Pres. Subj. 2 Pl. (i.) be, 1365 (ben C ; B †), 1385 (ben C), 1422 f (: se ind. 2 pl.), 1426 (ben C), 1935 (sg. CD)2, 2491 f (: me), 5597 (ben CD); And be ye wys as ye ben faire, 1669 (be . . . be D); ye heryed ben for, 4655 AB (be D). (ii.) be, 3012 (ben C), 6102 (ben C, be sit ‡ D); whanne ye ben his, 1672 (be D).
Pres. Subj. 3 Pl. (i.) ben, 1488 (be BD, hem † C); be, 2243 (ben C), 3158 3, 4769 f † B (sg. A ; D (?)). (ii.) be his, 4599 (sg. B †).

Pret. Ind. 1 Sing. was, (i.) 2497 4, 4733 f (y-wis † D) (: Calkas); cf. 4733 f, 4756 f, 7338 f.—nas, (i.) 2498 BCD (na[s] A).5
Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. were, 4160 f (you were E) (: there: fere timor); were, 510 (wer † wont D), 3559 6, 5424 ABD; were woned, 901 (were B, were woned C (?)).7—was thow, 4996 (art(e) † thou D).
Pret. Ind. 3 Sing. was, (i.) 2, 64 f (: Calkas), 4397 f, 5895 f, etc. In 4438, D has the ridiculous form useve (: blesse inf.).—nas, (i.) 101 (was BCD), 208 (was D), 1281 (was B), 1769 8; cf. 281, 6477, 6809, 6831, 6885, 7142, 7177, 8006, 8029. (ii.) nas hour, 6826 (nas our C, om. † D).

Pret. Ind. 1, 2, 3 Pl. were. See § 109.

Pret. Subj. Sing. were. See § 113.

Pret. Subj. Pl. were. See § 114.

Inv. 2 Sing. be, 950, 951 (fe † C), 4472, etc. Once in rhyme,—thow ne be, 6962 f.

Inv. 2 Pl. beth, 431, 1679 9, 2755 (both B, be C), 3010, 3019 beth B), 4355, 6508 10, 6522, 7977 (be C), 8148 (be B), etc.; buth, 3938 (beth B, be C, beeth D), 5589 (beth BD, be C)11. [Cf. 6249.]

Infinitive. A shows: ben, before vowels, 2642, 3323, 3794, and usually; ben, before h, 1823, 2973, and usually; ben, before consonants, 1921, 5446, etc.; be, before vowels, 938, 981, 1536, 4322,

1 Dele (with) in D.
2 "thouked be ye."
3 In C read be nouzt for ben outz; in D read be (no)ght.
4 In C read for sith for forsothe.
5 Supply [mor?] in D.
6 Protasis. Read were [in] in A.
7 But supply [whi] in B, and read wer.
8 Supply [al] in D.
9 Old-style figures indicate that D has be (pl.).
10 Supply [as] in D.
11 Supply [cause] in A; [of] in C.
Observations on the Language

5197; be, before h, 468, 1438, 2383, 2526, 7023; be, before consonants, 255, 760, etc., etc.

B shows: ben, before vowels, 938, 981, and usually; ben, before h, 1438, and usually; ben, before consonants, 758, 1921, 4739, etc.; be, before vowels, 350, 609, 1536, 5759; be, before h, 7023, 7066; be, before consonants, 4414, 6178, etc., etc.

C shows: ben, before vowels, 938, 2642, and usually; ben, before h, 468, and usually; ben, before consonants, 373, 7491, etc.; be, before vowels, 1536, 5461, etc.; be, before h, 7023, 7066; be, before consonants, 74, 7644, etc.

D shows: ben, before vowels, 649, 5740, etc. (ben, before h, seems not to occur); ben, before consonants, 3507, 5621, etc.; ben(e), before vowels, 2986, 3142, 3794, etc.; be, before vowels, 938, and very commonly; be, before h, 1438, and always; be, before consonants, 255, 1921, and commonly.

At the end of the verse all four MSS. have regularly be (see 37 f, 849 f, 1482 f, etc., etc.); ben, inf., does not occur in rhyme in the Troilus.

Perfect Part. A shows: ben, before vowels, 585, 2488, etc., etc.; ben, before h, 125, 2356, 7680; ben, before consonants, 247, 249, 1609, 2081, etc.; be, before vowels, 4469, 6505; be, before consonants, 242, 638, 1878, 5900, 6590.

B shows: ben, before vowels, 585, etc., etc.; ben, before h, 125, 2356, 7680; ben, before consonants, 242, 247, etc.

C shows: ben, before vowels, 585, etc., etc.; ben, before h, 2356; ben, before consonants, 247, 249, etc., etc.; be, before h, 125; be, before consonants, 638, 1878.

D shows: ben, before vowels, 2488, 7296, 7680, 8008; ben, before consonants, 5305, 5756; ben(e), before vowels, 585, 6913; ben(e), before h, 2356; ben(e), before consonants, 249; be, before vowels, 4469, and usually; bee, before vowel, 6129; be, before h, 125; be, before consonants, 247, 638, etc., etc.

At the end of the verse: ben, 1276 f (bene D) (: ben bees : flen ind. 3 pl.); be, 1877 f (se inf. CD) (: se inf.), 5352 f (bee D) (: se inf. : she), 5899 f (: she : me); y-be, 5770 f (i-be BD, be C †) (: she : preueute).

Note.—Infinitive and perfect participle coalesce in: I haue and shal Ben humble (be D), 1913; cf. 7680.
II. Will.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. A has usually wól or wole (wole). Thus,—wól, (i.) 990, 1294, 1560, 1955, 2512, 3001, 6255, 6846; (ii.) 53, 1330, 1358, 1400, 1564.—wole, 981, 1033, 2077, 2665, 2719, 2770, 2851, 2933, 3226; wole, 427, 599, 1222, 1363, 2247, 2894.—wol han (inf.), 3581; wole haue (inf.), 2733.—A also has wil : thus,—(i.) 266, 2094, 5121; (ii.) 2144.

B almost always has wól. Thus,—(i.) 266, 981, 990, 1033, 1294, 1531, 1955, etc., etc.; (ii.) 53, 427, 1330, 2247, 2894, etc.; before h, 2733, 3581. Other forms in B are : wole, 1053; wil, (i.) 589, 3226; wil, (ii.) 1222, 2144; will, (ii.) 599; wel, (i.) 1560.

C has usually wēle (welle). Thus,—wēle, 758, 981, 990, 1033, 1358, 1531, etc.; welle, 549, 1222, 1330, 1363, etc.; wēle han, 3581. But wil also occurs : thus,—(i.) 2719, 2933, 3001; (ii.) 1400, 1564; wil han, 2733.

D has : wole, 1231, 1560, 2077, 2512, etc.; wole, 1222 (i.) 3; 1363, 2144; wol, (i.) 1955, 2665, 3001 (i); wol, (ii.) 1400, 1564, 2247; wol haue, 3581; wul, (ii.) 2894; wil, (i.) 266, 990, 1033, 1409, etc.; wil, (ii.) 427, 1358; wyl, (i.) 1294; willy, (i.) 7445; willy, (ii.) 1330.—In 2733 D, wole have (inf.) should be wole have (supply [ye]). In 3137 D, wole abregge should be wilne as now tabregge.

Note.—589 appears to be a 9-syl. verse : "I wole (wil BD, welle C) parten with the al thyn pyne." Mr. Austin makes no note. G agrees with A.

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. wīlt, wylt, (i.) (ii.) 3254, 3551 (wolt B), 4301 f (whi † B) (: agilt p.p.), 4926 f (–(e) D) (: agilt p.p. : spilt p.p.); cf. 719 † C, 2109 † D, 2148 † C, 3045 † C, 4944 † C.—wolt, (i.) (ii.) 2040 (wilt(e) B) 4, 2514 † C, 3178, 7669 (wolest † D), 7881. [Var. CD wīlt, wylt.]—wyltow, wiltow, 1011 (woltow B, wilt thow CD), 4931 (wilt thou C; D †); woltow, 2446 (wiltow B, wilt thou (thow) CD), 7520 (wilt thou C, willy thou D); 7 wolt thow, 2532 (wiltow B, wilt thou C).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. Not different from 1 Sing. (cf. 1456, 1481, 2042,

1 For scribe's confusion between willan and wilnian, see 2963 A, 3137 D, 5277 C.
2 9-syl. verse.
3 Line too long.
4 Supply [seyd].
5 AB are short by two syllables; CD are 9-syl.: Tel (Telle G) (CD insert me) which (–e G) thow wylt (wilt BCDG) of everychone. No note in Mr. Austin's collation.
6 Supply [And] in A.
7 Supply [now] in CD.
Observations on the Language

The following forms may be noted,—wyl be, 1545 A; wyl no, 1015 C; wyll how, 4133 † E; wylle, 537 C; welle † nedis, 5277 C; wolë † ben, 6265 A; wolë † wondere, 6857 C (l. wolle); welle † away, 6290 C.

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. wolë go, 2256 (wol BD, welle C); wol the, 4303 (nile D, welle † no C); wole hym, 2541 (wol B, welyn C); wil haue, 2717 † C; welle † no, 4305 C (wol the AB, nilë the D).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. A has usually wol or wole (wole). Thus—wol, (i.) 1297, 3774, 3816, 3969, 4010, 4654, 5865; (ii.) 1578; wol han (inf.), 5579.—wolë, 2686, 2825, 2866, 3725, 4133, 7274, 7345; wole, 6034, 6188 (subj. ?).—Wolle occurs once (2963). In 1473, wole should be wolde, and in 2713 wole should be wole (supply [me]). In 3946, read pulle[n] and wole.

B has usually wol: thus,—(i.) 1297, 2825, 2866, etc.; (ii.) 1578, 6034; wol haue (inf.), 2831 (subj. ?), 5579. But,—wolle, 2713; welle, 3725; wI, (i.) 3774; wil, (i.) 1396 (subj. ?), 4010.—In 3946, read pulle[n] and wille ye.

C has wil or wële (wële). Thus,—wil (i.), 2686, 3708, 3816, 3946, 4010, 4133, 5865; welle, 1297, 2713, 2825, 3774, 7274, 7345; welle, 1578 3, 6034; cf. 6188 (subj. ?); wele haue (inf.), 5579.

D has: wil, (i.) 1297, 2686, 2825, 2866, 3725, 5865; wol, (i.) 2713, 3774, 3816, 4654; wol, (ii.) 1578; wole, 4010, 4760 (subj. ?); wI, (i.) 7242, 7345; wI, (ii.) 6034 (cf. 2715 †) (subj. ?), 6188 (?) (ye wI = ye'll); wI have (inf.), 5579.—wolyn † dwëH, 3493; wolë 3e, 3946. 4

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. wolle, 3033, 4222 (wyl E) 5, 4785. [Var. BD wol; C wele.]—wol, (i.) 3776 AB, 5249 AB (wul D), 7423 (C †), 7428. [Var. C wele; D wil, wilH.]—wol hem, 7256 (wIl C, wIl D) 6; wol hate, 7426 (wele C, wil D).—wolen til, 3610 (wollen B, welyn C, willyn D).—wolë mucche, 907 A (but read wolde with CG Cp.; wolle[e] BD).

Pres. Subj. 7 1 Sing. lest I wol † of, 716 B (wold A, wolde C, wold † the D).

Pres. Subj. 3 Sing. wolë (in protasis), 715 (wil BC; D †); wol haue (in protasis), 5968 (wele C, wIl D); wol don (with if 8 = whether),

1 The correct reading is wilneth fros.
2 The correct reading is wilne that.
3 Dele (\(\phi\)).
4 But read pulle[n] and wole.
5 Supply [that] in E.
6 Subjunctive (?).
7 Subjunctive constructions cannot always be distinguished with certainty from indicative.
8 A has of for if.
852 (welē C, wil D); lest that the cherl wolē falle, 1017 A (may BCD).\(^1\) Cf. welē \(\uparrow\) nedis, 5277 C. \(\text{Er I wol forther go, 3123 B (welē C, wolē D, om.} \uparrow\text{A})\) is perhaps indicative.

Pres. Subj. 2 Pl. wolē (ind. quest.), 1396 (wil BC, wol D); -e (with but yf), 4760 \(\uparrow\) D; wolē (with but = unless), 462 ( wol B; om. C \(\uparrow\) D \(\uparrow\)) -e (with if that in ind. quest.), 6034 ( wol B, wele C, whith D); -e (in protasis), 6188 (wol B, wele C, whith D \(\uparrow\)); wol, (i.) 1659 (welē D) (in protasis with but), 7704 (wele C, whith D) (with that, objective clause of purpose); wille (ind. quest.), 2963 (wilne B, wiln C \(\uparrow\), wolde D \(\uparrow\)); wol \(\uparrow\) have (with though), 2831 (pret. BCD).

Pret. 1 Sing. wolde, 2919, 3490 (wold \(\uparrow\) go D), 3854, etc. \(\text{[Var. BD wold[e].]}\) — wolde, 865, 3769 \(\uparrow\), 7462 ( wilde \(\uparrow\) C, wolde \(\uparrow\) D). \(\text{[Var. BD wold.]}\) — wolde I, 2232 (-e C, wilde B), 3342 (-e B, -ë \(\uparrow\) not C). — wolde here (dot.), 2091 ([e] telle D); -e hym, 2966 (D \(\uparrow\)), 3715 (-d B; D \(\uparrow\)); -e haue (inf.), 5168 (-e a CD), 8041 (-d B, -e a C); woldest, 2512 \(\uparrow\) C, 2770 \(\uparrow\) C, 8140 \(\uparrow\) D (I).

Note. — In 5903 the correct reading is perhaps wolde han slave (see § 122, XII.). Mr. Austin's collation has no note; ABCDG read,—My (Myn C) selue (self B, seluyn C, self D, selte G) I wolde (wolde I C) haue (han B, a C) slayn (slawe C, slayne DG) quod she tho (too D). — In 3864 A wolded on should be wolde vpon (so BC, wold vpon D).

Pret. 2 Sing. woldest, 4487 (-ist C, -ist \(\uparrow\) thou D), 5103 (-yst C).\(^3\)

Note. — In 4944 we should perhaps read: Nought roughte I whider that thou woldest me sterre. Mr. Austin's collation has no note; ABCDG have: Nought (Nouȝte G) rought (rouȝte CG) I wheder (-yr C, whider B, whiderwardes D, whider G) thou (that thou C) woldest (-ist C, wilt D) me (om. D) sterre. Woldest may be regarded as a subjunctive (see § 106).
Observations on the Language  

§ 124.

C, 5890 † C, 7241 † D, 7789 † D.—woldē † on, 3539 A (-e vpon B C, -d vpon D); -e I (i), 1830 A (-d BD, -de C); -e † he, 6839 C1; -e † holde, 7999 C.

Rhyme words.—byholde inf. (2597), sholde, shulde sing. (3333, 4509, 6475, 7267, 8126), sholde pl. (6987).

Note 1.—In 6510 we may read wrathē and woldē or woldē and wrathē: That half (-e D) so loth (-e G, soth C) youre (soure BC, your DG) wrathethe (wreth BD, wretche C, wreith G) wolde (-d B) desirene. Mr. Austin's collation has no note.—In 3830 woldē (-d BD) the excellence admits either woldē or -e.

Note 2.—The following cases, in which woldē appears in wishes (as woldē god, and the like), may be put together as indubitably subjunctive, — woldē, 459 (-[e] D), 519f (sholde 3 sg.) 936 (-[e] D), 4119, 4229, 4607 (B†), 4997, 64872, 6590, 6971 (B has wold[e] in all but 519); -e, 526 (-d B).

Pret. 1 Pl. wold, 3373f (-d D) (sholde 3 sg.); wold[e], 6854 (-e b(e)leue CD).

Pret. 2 Pl. wolden, (i.) 6266 (-e C, -e † D), 7754 (-e C); (ii.) 343 (-e C, -[e] D); wolden han (inf.), 2831 (-yn C, wol B, wold D), 5896 (wold B, -e a CD); woldyn † assent, 2715 C; woldyn † in, 7713 C (nolde AD).—wolde, 2328 (-[e] D, walde B), 2972 (-yn C, -[e] D), 6281, 6536 (-[e] B); -e, 2715 (-yn C, wilt D)4, 6497 (-yn me C, -e † as D), 8046 † C; -e han (inf.), 4348 (-d B, -e † han C, -e † me D); woldē † be, 3888 C.

Pret. 3 Pl. wolden, (i.) 919 (-e C, -[e] D), 1453? (-[e] B, -[e] D)5, 2503 (-[e] D), 3297? (-e C, -d D)6, 6233 (-en it? D); (ii.) 2517. [Var. C -in, -yn; D -yn.] wolden han (inf.), 915 (-e B, -e a C, om. † D)7; woolden † ouxt, 1997 C.—wolde, 150 (-[e] B, nolde C, nold † they D), 3119 (-e on C, wolde vpon D), 4819 (-[e] D), 4832 (-[e] D, -e [that] B), 4837 (-[e] BD)8, 4879f (sholde 3 sg.)9, 7700 (-en BD, -yn C), 7828 † C; wold[e], 907 BD (C†); wolde, 2520 (-d B, -yn D, -d sg. C), 3867 (-d BD, -yn C †); -e hym, 2630 (-d D); -e han (inf.), 4839 (-d D); -e here (gen. pl.), 7323; wold afferme, 2673 BD (-yn C, -e sg. A).—wold † deme, 1546 A (-e BC, -d of D); wold[e], 3333f D (wolde sg. ABC).

1 But read then[ne]s and wolde he.
2 Supply [if] in AC.
3 Supply [that] in CD.
4 If we read it were good.
5 Men wolden (-yn C, -e Cp., wold BD, wole G) wondren (wonderyn C, wondur D) to (om. B Cp. John's, that G) se (sen BC Cp., seen G) hym come (-yn CG) or (and CD) gon (gone D, goon G).
6 So as they dorste (-en G, dorst B, durste C, durst D) how (hough G, so as C, how ferre D) they wolden (wolde CCp., wold D) procede.
7 Supply [they] in C.
8 The subject is at the world.
9 The subject is subsaunce (i.e. majority) of the parlement.
10 In C read of for oftin.
III. nyl.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. nyl, (i.) 758 (wolë C)¹, 1231 (wolë D), 1562, 2246 (wolë A), 3009 (wolë D), 6846 BC (wol A, wil D). [Var. C nil; D nel.] nyl, (ii.) 2897 (wole D), 3284 (nel D), 6406, etc.—nel not, 1409 (nyl B, nil C, wil D); nel haue, 1100 (nyl B, nel † neither D).

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. nylt, (i.) (ii.) 2085 (nelt D), 2109 (C †; wilt † D), 2140 (nelt D)², 5190 (nyl thy B, nelt D †).—nyltow, 792 (nylt thou C, nelt thou D), 4912 (nyltow B, nylt thou C, nylt(e) thou D), 8071 (nyl to B, nil thou C); cf. 4269, 4965, 5151; neltow, 5150 (nyltow B, nylt thou C, nylt(e) thou D.).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. nyl, nil, (i.) 2474 (welc C, nel D), 6538 (nih D), 6719 (sche né wil C, ni unh D); cf. 777, 1015, 5276, 6478 † C; (ii.) nyl he, 6704 (nyh D).³—nel † be, 1545 D.

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. we nilte thee, 4305 (wol AB, we wel_; no C).

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. nyl me, 6594 AB (nih D); nyl not, 7265 (nel D).

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. nyl, (i.) 37 (perh. sg.) (nyh D); nil it, 3776 C (wol not AB, nel hit D).

Pret. 1 Sing. nolde, 1023 f (I né wolde C, nold D) (: sholde 1 sg.), 5997⁴; nold[e], 5248 (nyldre C, nolde † D); nolde, 5899 (d B, I né wolde C); nold I, 1118 (c † nat B), 1393 (d BD, wolde C), 1566 (c C)⁵; I nold † not (?), 3742 (nold[e] setten B, e settē C, -e set D).

Note.—In 2558 the correct reading seems to be ne wolde I (so B Cp.); A has nold I, which is unmetrical; D has wold y, but improperly omits ne; C reads wolde I, but has nol for ne.

Pret. 2 Sing. nodestow, 4106 (nodestow B, noldist thou CD). (For subjunctive, see § 106.)

Pret. 3 Sing. nolde, 77 f (-d D) (: sholde 3 sg.), 2134 (-e B, -d hit D), 2308 (-e D, wolde A), 3409 (wolde C, wold[e] D †), 4787 (-e B, nulde C; D †), 5299 f (: sholde 1 sg.), 7314 (-e B); nulde, 2574 C (nold[e] D, wolde A, wold[e] B), cf. 1777 D; as nold[e] god, 5228 (-e CD); nolde han, 5803 (nulde an C), 7087 (nold B, wolde † a C; D †); -e here⁶ (gen. sg.), 7572 (-d B) ; -e his, 7593 (-d B); nulde hire (acc.), 2678 C (nold D, ne wold AB).—nolde don, 6478 (nyl C, wil † D); nold, (i.) 2643 A (-e BC, wold D).⁷

Pret. 2 Pl. nolde, 3625 f (-d D) (: sholde 2 pl.); nolde, 7713

¹ Supply [not] in D.
² Supply [that] in D.
³ Supply [thou] in D; dcle the first (thou) in B.
⁴ Supply Whom in C; [for] in D.
⁵ Supply [han] in B. Read sey[e] in C.
⁶ A has he †.
⁷ Supply [to] in D.
Observations on the Language

§ 124.

(woldyn C)¹, 8042 (-d B, nolden † D); -e han, 8043 (-d B); nold han, 1503 (nylde an C).

Pret. 3 Pl. nolde, 150 C (wolde A, wold[e] B, nold † they D), 5851 f (: sholde 3 sg.)², 7828 ([-e] B, -en D, wolde C).

IV. do.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. do, 719 (C †).

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. dost, (i.) (ii.) 2595, 3238 (-e) B, doost D), 3244, 4278 (D †), 6960 (doost B, dedyst C, hast D); dostow, 7097 B (dost thou C, dost(e) thou D, dost[ow] A).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. doth, (i.) (ii.) 626, 671, 1270 f (-e D; B †), 2369 f (-e D), etc. B and D sometimes add an irrational -e, which of course is never pronounced (see 1031, 3876, 5542); so also in 7757 A.

Pres. Ind. Pl. (1) Before consonants,—don, 1237 (doon B, om. † D), 2471 (do D), 3647 (don(e) D); cf. 2669, 3724, 6707, 7978; doon, 705 (don C, done D †); do, 426 (don C †), 3143 † D, 3967 (B †), 5575 (doo D), 8063 (doth(e) B, don C, don(e) D); doth, 2391 A (dos(e) B, don C, don(e) D), 2469 (don BC°, don(e) D).³ (2) In rhyme,—do, 1111 f (: tho : so). (3) Before vowels,—don, 134 (-e D); cf. 345, 1526, 5086, 7217, 8085. (4) Before he, hem, herë (adv.),—don, 1124 (doon B, do D), 5845 (-e) D, don folk C), 7935; do, 2868.

Pret. Ind. 1, 3 Sing. dide, 3653 (dede C, did? D †); dude † dye, 7845 C; did[e] † byseche(†), 3424 D; didê || for, 4233 (dedê C) (cf. 699 † D, 1064 † D, 7292 † C); dide, dede, 2316 (did C, dyd D), 2430, 2788 (ded D), 3766 (did D) (cf. 3121 4, 4497, 8099, 8100); Than he dede erst thurgh hope and dede his myght, 2425 (dide ... om. † B, dede . . . dede C, om. † . . . dede D †). For elision before his, hym, hem, cf. 2014, 2654, 3354, 3813.

Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. dedest, 3205 (-ist CD, didest B); dedyst, 6960 † C.

Pret. Ind. Pl. deden, (i.) 82 (-yn C, dede him D †); diden, 471 f (deden C, dedyn D) (: ridden ind. pret. 3 pl. : abyden m.p.); deden hardly, 3055 (-yn D †, didn B, dudyn C); dedë al, 4247 (diden BE, dedyn C); ded[e] † flene, 1279 D.

Pres. Subj. 1 Sing. do, (i.) (ii.) 590, 4142, 5103 (werche D), 5224. [Var. D doo.]

¹ In A read dayes ten for ten dayes.
² Double subject.
³ In 7321 al that doth it care appears to be singular in A (alle that doth B, alle that don C, alt that doth D, alle that doth(e) G). (No note in Mr. Austin’s collation.)
⁴ Perhaps subjunctive.
Pres. Subj. 2 Sing.  do, (i.) 636, 2401 (9-syl. in CD), 5131, 5276.

Pres. Subj. 3 Sing.  do, (i.) (ii.) 980, 2903, 6201 (put † D), 6305.

Pres. Subj. Pl.  do we, 2030 ; do no, 4022 (don C) ; do me, 7773 ;
doon vs, 1412 (don BC, do D) ; don amys, 3015 (do D).

Pres. Subj. Sing.  dede his, 369 (dydde B) ; dide hym, 3764 (dede C, did † D).

Inv. 2 Sing.  do, (i.) 833, 1022, 2886, 5176 (doo D), etc. ; ne do
thou, 586.—do on, 2039 C (don AB ; D †), 3580 (don B, do this C).1

Inv. 2 Pl.  doth, (i.) 1407 (do CD), 1663 (doth(e) D), etc. ; doth
hym, 2294 ; doth herof, 3781 (C †).—do, (i.) 2268 (doth D), 3430
(y † do ind. D), 3891, 4018 (doth D, seith † C) ; do ye, 2915.

Inf.  do, don, to done, etc.  See § 119, XIII.

Perf. Part. (1) Before consonants,—don, 63 A (doun B), 2366 (do D),
3044, 3228 (ido B, ydo D), 5148 A (doun B, doon(e) D), 6419
(don(e) B, do C, doon(e) D) ; cf. 2544, 2577, 3256, 3917, 4460,
4552, 4923, 4939, 6470, 7429, 7721 ; harmidon is don who-so, etc.,
1874 (ydon . . . don D) ; do, 3086 (D(?)) ; don † euere C ; B †,
4024 (don BC, don(e) D), 4402 (don C)3.  (2) In rhyme,—do,
1095 f (: Cleo n. pr.), 1389 f (: wherto), 1878 f (done D) (: go p.p. :
so) ; fordo, 74 f (: Appollo : to go).  (3) Before vowels,—don, 1129
(-c BD), 1446 (do D), 3703 ; cf. 1010, 2083, 2530, 3340, 3997,
7102, 8047, 8090 ; fordon, 525 (-doun B, don(e) D †), 8050 (-e
D)) ; vndon, 4577 (-e D, oundon C).

V.  go.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing.  go, (i.) 5502 (goo D), 5869 f (goo D) (: wo u.),
5938 f (goo D) (: two : so).4

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing.  goth, gooth, (i.) (ii.) 514, 1084, 1418, 3242, 5355,
etc. ; 350 f (: wroth pred. adj. sg. : oth).  B and D sometimes have
an irrational -e, which is of course never pronounced.—forgoth here
(gen. sg.), 6426 (-e B).

Pres. Ind. 2, 3 Plur.  gon, (i.) 5761 (-e D, goth sg. C), 6740 C (goth
sg. ABD) ; (ii.) 6159 (-e D).4  go, (i.) 7494 (gon C, -n(e) D).

Pres. Subj. 1, 2, 3 Sing.  go, (i.) (ii.) 1363 f (: so : no), 2774 f (: so :
two), 3123 † A, 3125, 3155, 5777, 6407 f (: also : two), 7490.
[Var. D goo.]  —for-go, (i.) 4953.

Pres. Subj. 1, 2.  Pl.  go, 1570 f (: two : foo), 3771 f (: wo : so), cf.

1 In D slur do on and read [wo]on.  2 All the cases cited refer to a single person.
Observations on the Language

1299 f, 4358 f; go we, 1700 (gow we B), 2199, 2248, 2690, 2809, 3514, 6187 (goo D), 6765 (goo D), 6886 (goo D); gon, (i.) 7361 (goon D).

Pret. Ind. 1, 3 Sing. wente, (see § 99).—yede, 3 sg., 7206 f (3ede B, 3ede C) (Diomedes); 3ede, 3 sg., 3548 f C; foryede he, 3 sg., 2415 (-3ede BC).


Pret. Subj. 1, 3 Sing. wente. See § 113.

Inv. 2 Sing. go, (i.) 574, 1481, 2609 (so f C), 5285 (goo D), 8149 (go . . . goon) D; gon, (i.) 572.

Inv. 2 Pl. goth, (ii.) 3513 f D; go, (i.) 5601 (goth(e) D).

Inf. gon, (1) Before consonants,—gon, forgon, 53 (-e B, go D), 357 (C ?; go D), 1996 (go BD), 4623 (go CD), 5141 (goo D), 5624; cf. 1204, 4857, 5442, 5946, 6284, 6432, 6649. —go, forgon, 2256, 3533 (gon C, gon(e) D), 4226 (-gon B, -goo E), 5246 (gon C, goo D), 7116 (gon BC, goo D); cf. 1458, 2029, 3582, 5136, 5261, 5989, 7895. (2) In rhyme,—gon, 117 f (goen BD), 1447 f (goon B, goo D), 1627 f (-e BD), 2094 f (-e BCD), 2137 f (-e CD), 2258 f, 2311 f (-e B; D f); cf. 2769 f, 2796 f, 3086 f, 3404 f, 3518 f, 3543 f, 4048 f, 5017 f, 5255 f (goone D), 6023 f, 7270 f; good, 133 f (goon BD, goo C), 2014 f (go BC, goo D); goo, 846 f (gon C) (-e euerycho), 2686 f (gon C) (-e euerycho: anoone).


Note.—The rhymes show that in goon the -e is merely parasitic. The only ambiguous rhyme is euerycho, -e.

1 Addressed to a single person (perhaps singular).

2 Old-style figures indicate that to precedes the infinitive.
Perf. Part. (1) Before consonants,—gon, goon, agon, forgon, 718
(gone † D (!)), 2107 (go D), 3381 (gon(e) D), 4284, 4527 (ago B,
gon(e) D), 4547 (go D), 6598 (gon(e) D †); wo bygon, 2959 (bi-
B, be- C); go, 1592 (gon BC, gon(e) D). (2) In rhyme,—gon,
2243 f (-e BD), 3736 f (-e D), 4336 f (-e D), 5309 f (goone D);
agon, 1495 f (-e BD), 1807 f (-e D), 4244 f (ygonne † E), 5442 f (gon (!) B,
igone C, gone (!) D), 5842 f (-e BD, igon C), 5979 f (e D), 7688 f
(-e D); bigon, bygon, begon,—with wo, wel, wers, sorfully,—114 f
(-e BD), 1379 f (-e BD), 1682 f (-e D), 5126 f (goon D), 5484 f (-e
D), 6310 f (-goon D), 7691 f (-goon BD); ago, 5752 f (goog D, line
om. † C), 6680 f (ago(n) C, agoo D), 7417 f (agoo D); [a]go (!),
1880 f (ago B, go C, gone D); go, cf. 4358 f C. (3) Before vowels,
—gon, 8008 (ben BCD); wo-by-gon, 4372 (-gan B, woo-be-gon C,
woo-bigon(e) D) (cf. 6397).—For went, see § 121. I.

Rhyme words.—ston n. (3736, 5126), won n. (5842), oon num. adj. (4244),
noon, non num. adj. (1379, 1807, 3736, 5126, 5842, 6310, 7688, 7691),
euerchon(e) (5442), anoon (114, 1495, 4244, 4336, 5309, 5484, 5979, cf.
2243), gon inf. (114), don inf. (1495) ;—do pp. (1880), so (1880, 5752),
fo (5752), two (6680), Escaphilo nom. pr. (6680), wo (7417), mo (7417).

VI. haue.

Pres. Ind. 1 Sing. haue is the regular form before consonants: cf.
611, 628, 670, 988, 1133, 1298, 1327, 1467, 1760, 1780, 1955,
2370, 2565, 3173, 3251, 3340, 3350, 3531, 3902 BCD, 4024,
4039, 4349, 4460, 4592, 4691, 4953, 5770, 6032, 6159, 6183,
6272, 6327, 6687, 6783, 7234, 7434, 7419, 7463, 7752, 8197.
—haue, 2060 f ( : yaue pret. subj. 3 sg. : saue pres. subj. 3 sg.),
2942 f ( : saue pres. subj. 3 sg. : grane p.p.), 4319 f ( : saue inf.).
—haue herd, 2537 ; haue hight, 6289, —and so of course before a
vowel or weak h.—For haue before consonants, (not h) see 197 †
C, 1179 † A, 1381 † D, 2596 † D, 3902 † A, 7752 † C. Cf. also,
—hauê † honour, 5232 C; havê † in, 6042 D, 6946 † A (B 1).

Pres. Ind. 2 Sing. hast, (i.) (ii.) 557, 696, 845, etc.—hastow, 276
(hast thou CD), 4297 (hast thou CD), etc.; ne hastow, 5512
(ne hast thou C, ne have ye ? D).

Pres. Ind. 3 Sing. hath, (i.) (ii.) 1255, 1952 (hauyth C), 3457
(has B), etc., etc.—nath, (i.) 1862 AB (ne hath C), 7562 (ne hath
C, ne † hath D).

Pres. Ind. 1 Pl. han, (i.) 4853 (haue D), 5545 (haue D), 5654 (haue
D), 5904 (haue CD), 6757 (haue D), 7519 (haue CD); 1 (ii.) 3779

1 Supply [for] in AD (or, in D, read haue).
Observations on the Language

§ 124.

(have D, ye † han B); han herd, 1186 (have D).—haue, 5642 (han D). 1—haue † nat, 7519 D.

Pres. Ind. 2 Pl. (1) Before consonants han is the regular form in ABC, have in D 2: cf. 25, 27, 28, 1446, 1668, 2209, 2325, 2878, 3395, 4102, 4154, 4401, 4954, 5860, 6505, 7353, 7712, 7721, 8059. But haue is found in all four MSS. : thus,—3735 AB, 4768 AB, 5860 B, 7353 C; and when ye follows (have ye) haue is the regular form in all four: cf. 1373, 1413, 3042, 5855 (han ye C), 5977, 6829, 7619, 8040. 4 (2) Before vowels,—han, 2964 (have D, han † routhe C e), 3779 † C, 4742 (haue D). (3) Before h, han herd, 2051 (have D), 2632, 2953 (have D), 5469 (have D, ye han † B), 5538 (C (!); haue D); han hight, 1577 (have D); haue herd, 6992 (han B; C †).

Pres. Ind. 3 Pl. (1) Before consonants han is the regular form in ABC, have in D: cf. 241, 247, 553, 706, 802, 913, 999, 2478, 3034, 4293, 4299, 4547, 5249, 6877, 7119, 7123 A. But haue occurs in 6877 C, han in D 241, 247, 2669; and hath is found in 242 † BC, 2467 (!) † D, 4299 † B, 4547 † D. Cf. also,—haue † suffred, 6778 D (read haue [y]suffred). (2) Before vowels,—han, 199 (have D), 1129 (have D), 1973 (have D), 3135, 3194 (han(e) D), 6143 (haueyn C, haue D), 6632 (haue D), 7614 (have D), 7975 (have D); cf. 6778. (3) han here (gen. pl.), 5658 ABD.

Pret. Ind. 1, 3 Sing. hadde. See § 102.

Pret. Ind. 2 Sing. haddest. See § 106.


Pres. Subj. 1 Sing. haue, 33 AB, 1095, 1740, 3717 † D; haue, cf. 1225, 1609 (or indic.), 3632, 3717 † C, 4752; haue myght(e), 8067 † BD (read trew[ê]ly and haue).

Pres. Subj. 3 Sing. haue, 955, 1834, 2723, 2771, 7750 † C (hath AD), 7994; haue † spase, 7305 C; haue, cf. 220, 6465; haue he, 21, 1932 (e † he A) 6; haue his, 805; haue † in, 6465 D; haue † hym, 5292 C.

Pres. Subj. 2 Pl. haue ye, 1667, 2772. 7

Pret. Subj. 1, 3 Sing. hadde. See § 113.

Pret. Subj. 2 Sing. hadde. See § 106.


1 Supply [as] in D. 2 D has han in 4653. 3 haue [ye] A.

4 haue [se] BC. 5 Supply [my] in D, or read haue † he.

6 Supply [so] and read have he in A.

7 Transpose eylene and the queene in C.
Inv. Sing. Hauæ now good nyght, 3183, 3262; haue here my trouthe, 3953.

Inv. Pl. Ne wondreth not ne haueth of it no fere, 3595 (haue BD, hauyth C); haue, 2218 (-yth C), 3908, 4015; haue here (adv.), 1409, 3727 (havith D), 6028.

Inf. (1) Before consonants both han and haue are common in A, B, and C; but have is the regular form in D. For han, see 467 AB, 638 B, 769 ABC, 872 AB, 900 BC, 915 AB, etc., etc.; for have, see 467 C, 501 AB, 638 A, 899 AB, etc., etc. Cf. 1100, 1277, 1354, 1499, 1566, 1580, 1796, 2522, 2523, 2717, 2733, 2956, 3255, 3273, 3287, 3581, 4002, 4057, 4683, 4764, 4770, 4774, 4839, 5045, 5046, 5106, 5168, 5232, 5522, 5582, 5633, 5803, 5890, 5896, 5899, 5900, 5968, 6019, 6138, 6247, 6383, 6417, 6431, 6481, 6645, 6887, 7102, 7209, 7268, 7344, 8041, 8046. For an=han, see 5803 C. In—To (om. C) slepe and after tales haue (han RG Cp., hauyu C, have D, han a E) reste, 3066, han is unmetrical; cf. Ye shul (schal C, shal GCp. John's) nomore haue (han BC Cp. John's) soueraynte (-cynte BDG, -eignete Cp. John's, -anitee E, seurote of me C), 3013; cf. also 2717 † D, 3414 † D, 3799 † D, 5968 † C, 6138 † C. (2) In rhyme,—haue, 120 f, 1821 f, 2329 f, 2541 f, 4221 f, 5228 f, 6036 f, 7779 f; hauen, 4305 f (haue BCD) (= grauen ind. 3 pl., -e BCD).

Rhyme words.—sane inf. (120, 2329, 5228, 6036, 7779), subj. 3 sg. (1821, 4221), graue inf. (2329, 6036), graue inf. (2541), graue n. (7779).

(3) Before vowels han is the commonest form in ABC, have in D: cf. 13, 122, 349, 803, 1574, 2224, 2460, 2587, 2831, 2840, 3733, 4348, 5047, 5213, 5967, 7443, 7636. But have is found in all four MSS.: thus,—50 AB, 122 C, 349 B, 709 AB, 2454 AB, 2562 A, 2831 B, 3485 AB, 3786 ABC, 5047 B, 5271 AB, 6407 ABC, 7443 C, 7636 B. In 2224 D havyn of is found (han ABC). (4) Before h (hym, his, here (hire), had), both han and haue are found in A, B, C, and D: cf. 1503, 2164, 2504, 3352, 3856, 4395, 5579, 7747; for cases before other h's, cf. 857, 3497, 6104, 8043. C has an for han in two instances: an had, 1503 C; an hyzed, 3947 C.

Note.—The clipped form a for the infinitive occurs several times in C (rarely in A and D). Thus,—in C 501, 638, 899, 915, 1499, 1638, 2956, 3273 4002, 5045, 5046, 5168, 5890, 5896, 5899, 5900, 5903, 6417, 6645, 7087, 7102, 8041, 8046; in A 900; in D 5163, 5896. The form ha is rare,—see 5106 C, 5900 D, 6417 D. In all the citations in this note a consonant follows the infinitive.
§ 125. Weak -e is elided before a vowel and often before h (see Child, §§ 74—76; ten Brink, § 269); but final -e in the definite article may be preserved (see § 128).  

Elision of weak -e takes place before he, his, him, hire (gen. dat. acc. sg., gen. pl.), hem; before haue (pres. ind. or subj., inf.), hast, hath, han (ind. pl., inf.), hadde; before how and here (adv.); before French “h mute” in honour, horrible; before irrational h in Horaste.

Examples of elision before h in pronouns are unnecessary (for possible exceptions to the rule, see § 126). Examples before h in the other words mentioned follow: variants are for the most part left unregistered; the occurrence of a cesura after the elided -e is indicated.

dere (adv.) haue (ind. 1 sg.), 4953; blame haue (ind. or subj. 1 sg.), 1295; Diomede || haue (ind. 2 pl.), 8040.

wrathe || hast, 933; cause hast, 6913; ioye hastow, 6951.

mone hath, 4598; herte hath, 6501; loue hath, 879 AB; loue || hath, 960; nece (||?) hath, 8090; purueyaunce (||?) hath, 5639;

sore hath, 1618; Troye hath, 6220; Criseyde || hath, 7610.

a lawe (||?) han (2 pl.), 2878.

loue hadde (3 sg.), 304, 663; ioye || hadde, 3311; cause || hadde, 4069; Criseyde || hadde, 5487; longe || hadde, 5832.

on lyue han be, 5899; ye koude han, 8046; moste (sg.) han, 3733; men sholde (||?) han, 872; sholde (3 pl.) han, 3273; I wold han, 1499; she wold (||?) han, 2164; he wolde han, 3497; ye me wolde han, 4348; they wolde han 4839; nodde (sg.) han, 5803, 7087; ye nodde han, 1503; ye nodde (||?) han, 8043; söm tyme (||?) han, 5967 (see note 2, below); cf. also, wolden (2 pl.) han, 2831.

I dorste haue, 899; he myght haue, 1277; who myght haue, 7102; I wolde haue, 5168, cf. 8041; she wolde haue, 501; who wolde haue, 5045.

In all the following cases of elision before how, except 6005, 7145, how is preceded by the cesura: lune, 1752; nece, 4405; Troy, 6005; swete, 4120; at the lest, 4678; thoughte (ind. 3 sg.),

1 With reference to the treatment of the final vowel in elision, the following readings are not without interest, though some of them can hardly be called evidence: tellit (= telle it), 580 C; myghtly (= myghte I), 7444 A (myghty C); drie (= dreie I patior), 6659 C; posé (= pose a), 3152 B; excuscr (= excuse her inf.), 7462 D, see 7460 D (cf. dothes=deth his, 469 C); loué = leef he, 6247 C.
allone here (hic), 806; hadde here-vpon, 3377.
Ne shal I neuer haue hele || honoir ne ioye, 6104 (neuere haue || honour C, Shal I neiuer hauë hele h. ne ioye D). Cf. And that ye d[e]igne me so muche honoure (inf.), 2981 (muchel B, mechiël C, And yow deigne me so honoure D †).
In place horrible makynge ay his moone, 6613.
How that ye louen sholdie (sholden louen B Cp., schulde louyn C, shold love D, shulde louen G, shulden loue John’s) on that hatte Horastye (horast G, on hat h. D, oon atte h. E), 3639. That Horastye = Orestes (cf. § 139) is evident from Gower’s Confessio Amantis, bk. iii. (I, 352), where the forms Horestes and Horest (elided) occur: Chaucer merely uses the name without intending an allusion to the classical Orestes.
Note 1.—In some of the examples just given, the word affected by elision is one that loses its -e rather readily before a consonant: so especially of the “auxiliary verbs,” and of the nouns lone, new.—It should be observed that in phrases in which an auxiliary verb precedes the infinitives han or haue, we have often what is to all intents and purposes a single verb-form of which the infinitive han (or haue) is the unaccented part (or scarcely more than a suffix). In such cases the infinitive had of course no full pronunciation, and in some instances we actually find it written an or a (§ 124, VI., note at end). Elision before such a form as this has really little in common with elision before a fully sounded h, of whatever origin.
Note 2.—Proparoxytone words ending in -e apocope -e before consonants (ten Brink, § 257) : swétnece haue (638), Pándarë || here (adv.) (868), Pándare herde (876), and the like, have therefore no significance as examples of elision (cf. also sóm tymne han, 5967, where sóm-tyme is practically a compound, and see § 2, p. 3).
Note 3.—For the treatment of words like chaunbre, lettur, temple, vncl, before h, see § 136, f, g. Cf. heuene (dissyl.) hye 4587 (§ 14). For euere, neuere before h, see the details in § 90.

§ 126. Hiatus, whether before a vowel or before h in the words mentioned in § 125, is very rare.
In a few instances, the evidence for hiatus is either conclusive or, at any rate, considerable. Thus,—
Al this Pandārē || yn his herte thoughte, 1063 (C cut out). Pandare is the reading of ABDEGCP. John’s Phillipps; Durham has Pandar; Hl. 2392 has Al this tho Pandarë in herte thoht. Shall we read Pandārus (see § 139)?
Now good[ê] e[m for goddes loue I prey, 1394 (goode BG, Now my good eem D John’s Hl. 2392, Now myn e[m C, And good[ê] e[m
Cp.). C has but nine syllables, and, unless goodē be read (cf. p. 128), the same is true of ABCp.
Al woldē I (wold I B, wold y D) that noon (no man CD) wyste (woste C, wist DG) of this thought, 1830. (No note in Mr. Austin’s collation.) Read either woldē I or wyste of.
But hasteth yow to don hym ioyē haue, 2329 (ioy[e] D; no note in Austin, except doon Cp.).
Iwys so woldē I (wold I B) and I wistē how, 3944 (wist[e] D; no note in Austin). Rather wistē how than woldē I.
Were it so that I wist[e] outrely, 4328 (wistē B, 3[i]t were it so that I woste outerly C, 3it were it so that I wist vttirly D, Were it so that I wiste entirely G; no note in Austin).
As nold[e] god but yf I shouldē haue, 5228 (nold[e] ... shold[i] B, nolde ... schulde C, nolde ... shulde D, nolde ... schuldē G; no note in Austin.)
And stod forth mewet (meuyth † D) myldē ([i] D) and manswete, 6557 (line om. C, And stode forthe full mylde and manswete G; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation).
Trewē as stel in ech condicion, 7194 (Trew B; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation). Either hiatus or 9-syl.
I fyndē ek (eke G) in storyes (stories DG, storyes C, the stories B) ellys (eH C) where, 7407. The reading of B avoids hiatus; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation.
The same hele I shal noon hele haue, 7779 (no note in Austin).
Of the examples just given the surest are the three before haue (inf.) (2329, 5228, 7779), that before how (3944), and that before and (6557). Reasonably sure is 4328 (before outrely), and so, perhaps, is 1830 (before I). 1394 may be a verse of nine syllables, but hiatus makes a much smoother line; 7194, however, will run very well as a nine-syllable verse.—Here perhaps should be considered haddē had in 227, though had (p.p.) is a part of the verb haue not mentioned in § 125:
And wende no thing haddē had swych myght, 227 (no thing(e) had had swiche my3t B, hadde had swych amy3t C, he (no and) wend no thing had had such myght D; Cp. agrees with A except that it has swiche; And wend no thyng hade had sueche myght G; no note as to John’s). Possibly swiche in BCp. is for swich a1: Cp. is a good MS. is all respects, but B is not to be trusted as

1 Cf. 4581 B.
to its -e's. However, *huddé hald* is surely more euphonious than *hald had* (\'_ x). 

The following two lines may perhaps be more safely regarded as nine-syllable verses than as verses with hiatus, for *louë* almost always loses its -e in the *Troilus*, whether a vowel or a consonant follows (§ 8, p. 14). In both verses the reading is quite secure (no note in Austin).

*Louë ayens the (om. C) which who-so defendeth, 603.*

*Louë hym* made al prest to don hire byde, 4824.

In 421, it is perhaps safer to read *louë thus* than to allow the hiatus *seydë he* (but cf. ten Brink, § 270. 2):

And to the god of louë || thus *seyde he*, 421 (seyd he D).

In the following two lines the reading *comynge* must be looked at with suspicion (see § 10). In the first it may be avoided by hiatus (*cause of*); in the second, it causes hiatus, which, however, may be avoided by inserting *ek* (with CD). Apart from these two lines, there are no instances of *-ynge* in the *Troilus*, whether before a vowel or a consonant, except *this for knownynge* in verse (§ 59, b).

The cause of his *comynge* (*-ynge D*) || thus answered, 2187.

Of here *comynge* || and of his also, 4517 AB (comynge and ek C, comynge and eke D; no note in Austin).

Other lines in which hiatus, though possible, is on the whole unlikely, are:

Quod Pandarus now is *tyme I* wende, 1305 (so ABG, now is it tyme C, Now quod Pandarus is it tyme y wende D; no var. in Cp. noted).

I am on(e) (oon B Cp., on G, on of C) the *fairest* (fayreste BC) || *out* of drede (withoutyn drede D), 1831 (no note in Mr. Austin’s collation except on *oon*). The choice lies between *the fairest[é]* || *out* and a 9-syl. verse.

Hym to reuoken she *dide* (did B, dede C) *al* hire (hir D) peyne, 3960. Mr. Austin’s collation shows no variants. *Rewoke* and *didé al* certainly give a more agreeable line than *rewoken* and *dide al*; but it is unsafe to assume hiatus. *Hiré* is improbable. G has *Hym to reuoke she dide her bysey peyne*, the last word in a later hand.

Nought (Nouȝte G) *rought* (rouȝte CG) *I* wheder (whidere B, whedyr G, whedyr that C, whedirwardes D) thou woldest (wilt D) me (om. D) stere, 4944 (no note in Mr. Austin’s collation). The choice lies between *roughtë I* and *woldest* (cf. § 136, b).

She *told ek* (tolde ek CD) how Tydeus (Cithideus † C) er she
Observations on the Language

§ 126.

stente, 7848 (no note in Austin). The choice lies between tolde ek and Tydēus: cf. Tydeus sonė that doun descended is, 7877, and see § 141.

In a considerable number of verses the reading of one or another MS., necessitating hiatus, is easily corrected by comparison of MSS., so that the hiatus disappears. Examples are:

Now Pandare (so ABDCp., Pandar G, Pandarus E John’s) || I kan (kanne B) no more (mor G) seye, 1044 (cut out of C). Here Pàndarè, with its impossible accentuation, should without doubt be rejected in favour of Pandarus (§ 139). Cf. Pàndarè || and, 5747 (Pandarus C, Pàndare || in BCp. John’s).

And how he myght[ő] here (acc.) beseeche of grace, 1056 (BCp. John’s have best after he).

I loun (leue C) on (om. G) which (which that BE Cp., wich that C, wheche that G) is most (moost is B Cp., most is G) ententyf, 1923. Read which that.

But Troilus thoughte his herte bledde, 2035 (thoughte[ė] his B, Troylis that thouťte his h. b. C, Troylus that thought that his herht bled D, But Troylus thought his herte bledde G; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation). Clearly we should read But Troilus that thoughte his herte bledde. That is almost necessary for the construction.

And gan to smyle and seyde (seyde hym BDG) || Em I preye, 2244 (no note in Mr. Austin’s collation).


And what myschaunce || in this world yet is, 3132 (myschauns[ė] C, meschaunce in this world yet ther is B, what mischief yet in this world ther is D; Cp. John’s insert ther before is).

If that ich grace had (so BG, ich a grace hadde Cp., I hadde grace A, y had grace D, I hadde C omitting grace) for (om. CD) to do so, 3770. The choice lies between grace hadde and hadde grace.

Of swiche (swich B, whiche C, wych D) sikes howle he (om. B) nought blynne (bilynne B), 4207. (No note in Mr. Austin’s collation.) Cf. § 138, 1.

That pride enuyé ire and anuyrce, 4647 ACDE Phill. 8252 Harl. 2392 (That pride and ire enuye and anuyrce BCp.; That pride enuye and ire and anuyrce G John’s Selden B 24; That ire enuy
and aercise Durham II 13). Hiatus is doubly suspicious on account of the unusual treatment of -ye (as -yê) in the interior of the verse (see p. 84).

And though I myght[ê] || I wol not do so, 5121 (myghtê B, myste || I nuldê not C, myght || I woldê nat D, myste || I woldê not G).

(No note in Austin's collation.)

A (And D) dieu (dey D) the deuel spedâ (haue C) hym that (that it BD, at hit G) recehe, 5292. The insertion of it restores the verse. (No note in Austin.)

Whanne I (om. B) the (thyn C) processe (pròces C, procès D) haue in memorie, 6946 (haue in myn C, I haue in my D; no note as to Cp. John's; whan wil ye this processe haue in memory Hl. 2392; When I the processe haue in memorie G).

The[r] (Ther BD, There CG, Wher John's) she (he ↑ G) was born (borne BDG, boryn C) and (and there C, and ther D John's) she dwelt (dwellyd CG, dullid D) hadde (had BG, om. D) ay, 7074.

And that to late is now me to rewe, 7433 (to late is now for me to rewe B, to late it is now for to rewe C, And to late it is now for to rewe D). (No note in Mr. Austin's collation.)

And graunte it that ye soone || on me rewe, 7727 (sone vpon CDG ; Cp. John's also have vpon).

Other examples¹ are : (a) before vowels,—1099 D, 1277 C, 1305 AB, 1405 C, 1608 A, 1956 B, 1957 A, 2287 A (hondé acc., see § 13), 2386 D, 2744 C, 2807 A, 3495 C, 3611 D, 4970 Cb, 5070 A, 5258 C, 5401 C, 5436 C, 5885 C, 6073 D, 7110 CD, 7917 D ; (b) before h,—herde (pret. sg.) hym (549 D), tyné || hath (1877 A), spedâ (pret. pl.) hem (2032 AB), hosté hath (4587 A), demaundé he (7222 D), seydâ (pret. sg.) he (7548 C), wille hath (7905 C).—In 6605 A, for tendresse how (with impossible accentuation) read tenderweshe how. In 5747 A, for Com Pandâræ || and (with impossible accentuation) read Com Pandâræ in || and, with BCp. (Com(e) Pandare in and John's, Com pandarus and C, Com(e) Pandaré and D). In 7652, read than[nê] don rather than myght[ê] I : C has the -e right.

Instances of consonant + re, le not slurred before a vowel are perhaps not strictly cases of hiatus, for it is by no means certain that Chaucer's ordinary pronunciation was lettre, temple rather than letter, templ, or lettr, templ.

But wel ye wot the chaumbre (-er B, -ir C) is but lite, 2731.

And of myn ordre (ordere C) ay (om. C) til (til that C) deth (they C) me mete, 5444.

I think (thynke C) ek how he able is (abele he is C, able he is D) to (for to BCCp.) haue, 1821. Read, however, with BCp. 

Humble (-bele C, -blely ↑ D) in (his D, in his BCECp.) speche and

¹ Cf. also note 3 at the end of § 92, V.
yn his lokyunge (tellynge C) eke, 4790. Read, however, with B etc., humble in his.

A considerable number of instances of apparent hiatus are due to the reading -e instead of -en in forms in which both endings are known to Chaucer's language. Thus rather often in the infinitive (§ 119, XI.) and in strong perfect participles (§ 122, XI.), and occasionally in other verb-forms, as dede (pret. pl.) al, 4247 (read diden with BE Cp.; dedyn C) and they sholde hire (gen. sg.), 4848 (read sholden with BCp. John's; -yn D). cf. the variants in § 96, III. (pres. ind. pl.), § 109, IX., note (pret. ind. pl.). Similarly, for here seluë excusynge, 112, read here seluen (hirë seluen B, hyrë seluë C, hersel[e]\(\) D); for abouë euerly, 6517 (§ 88), read abouen with B (-yn C, -e? D\(\)†); for oftë hastow, 904, read often with B (oftë C, oft[ë]D).

Note 1.—No doubt unelided -ë before a vowel is to be changed to -en whenever such a change is possible, even if the caesura might protect hiatus. Thus,—But if thow late (3e lat B, 3e late CG, 3e lete D) hym deyë (dy[e]\(\) D, deyen G; no note in Austin) || I wolc stryue, 1408; God leue hym werke (-en BCp. John's, -yn G, werk[ë]\(\) D) as he can daenys, 2898.—With regard to erroneously substituting -ë for -en and thereby necessitating hiatus, B is the least culpable of the four MSS. and Cp. appears to be almost exemplary (cf. § 119, XI., note).

§ 127. Before h in words other than those mentioned in § 125, there seems to be no special inclination to elide -e: the -e is sometimes preserved (see list I.) and sometimes lost (see list II.).

In the examples that follow (lists I. and II.) variants are for the most part left unmarked; the occurrence of a caesura after the elided or unelided -ë is indicated.

I. -ë retained:

leuë (sbst.) hom(e), 126 A (read lewe and hom).

Pandarë || herkene, 658 (Pandâris C).
nomorë harde grace, 713.

haddë || horn, 1727 (or,—haddë horn || ).

here seuennentë hows, 1766 (or,—here seenèthe hows).

the best[ë] harpoure, 2115.

that ye thonkë (subj.) || humbely, 2804.

so god me sendë hele, 3163.

thilkë harm, 3560.

myghtë (3 sg.) here (inf.), 3586.

worse hap (sbst.), 4088; hertë || happë (subj. 3 sg.), 7159.

sholdë (3 sg.) holde, 4726.

thi self[ë] || helpen, 5190 (read seluen with B).

termë holde, 7572.

fatë || hêlpeth, 7915 A (read fate || hym helpeth with AD; C †).
IL -e lost:

had, hadde (*ind. 3 sg., see § 102)  
herd, 750, 5007, 5329;¹ had  
(subj. 3 sg., see § 113) herd, 7086.

abedde || half, 1152 (§ 14) ; ought  
(sg.) half, 5927 (§ 123, VIII).

were hanged, 1438.

faste || horn  
ward, 2388.

the more harm is, 7299; cf. 1523  
(|| 1).

Note.—Some of the examples in list II. have no significance, since the word  
affected is one that loses its -e freely even before a consonant: so especially  
of the “auxiliary verbs” (including were), of the noun loue, of more, and  
of the phrase no fors (which, besides, is, in the instance in question,  
accented on the no).

§ 128. Elision of weak -e in monosyllables.

The cases that come under consideration are the (definite article)  
and nē (simple negative, ‘non’). The before a vowel or weak h may  
suffer elision or preserve its -e at the will of the poet. Nē is regularly  
elided.² Whether elision in these cases amounts to full ectlipsis may  
be doubted. Ten Brink decides for ectlipsis (§ 269), but the metre  
is quite as well satisfied by reducing the -e to a consonant i (y). The  
spelling nyis for nis (ne is) in 7451 C seems to be significant in this  
regard. On the other side we have the evidence of toon and tother,  
and the testimony of Hart (1569): see Jespersen, *Studier over engelske  

I. Elision of the.

the aduersite, 25 (D om. the).

theeffect, 212 (the effecte B; D i); the effect, 2651 (theffect B);  
 cf. 2305, 3188, 4422, 4519, 4657, 4806, 6740.  

the assege, 464 (thassege B, the sege D); thassege, 4724 (thessage  
B, the sege D (l)); cf. 1192, 1208, 6142, 7220.  

at the ende, 1876 (at ende BD, an ende C); cf. thende, 1345 B.  
the aleyes, 1905 (thaleyes B, the a. D).

the alderfirst[e], 2939 (the aldir fers C; D † om. the); cf. 4439.  
the experience, 4125; cf. 3830.

the affeccioun, 4432 (thaffeccioun B; C † om. the).

¹ Supply *which* in A.  
² See exception at end of IV., below.  
³ Supply *was* in C.
the ambassiatours, 4802 (thembassadours B, theem-bassatourys C);\textsuperscript{1} thembassadours, 4807 (the embassadourys C, thambassiatours D). theschaunge, 4808 (the chaunge CD); cf. 4820, 4822, 5540 C.
at the other, 5096 (attother B, at other D).
the ymage, 5526 (C†); cf. 1458.
the ordre of causes, 5679.
thaqueyntaunce, 6485 (the aqueyntau[n]se C, the acquentauns? D).\textsuperscript{2} thencheson, 6995 (then(e)cheson B, the euncheson C, the entencioun † D); cf. 681 † B.
the est see, 7472 (thë † C, thë est see D).
thauentaylle, 7921 (thauentaile B, the anentayle CD).
thenent, 7993 (the ent. BD, the † centence? C).\textsuperscript{3}
th erratyk, 8175 A (the erratyk B).

Compare also 1696 C, 2361 D, 2663 D, 3378 CD, 4827 D(?), 7829 C, and the variants under thilke (p. 160).

Similarly before h:
thonour, 120 (the honour BCD).

Note 1.—For \textit{it shal of}, 5768 C has \textit{the had shal of}, clearly the "correction" of a scribe.

Note 2.—Before h in the following words \textit{the} of course suffers no elision: harpe, 731; harm, 839, 1539, 3167; haste, 2031; hii[le], 943; hardest, 1814; heuynes, 1989; hood, 2266; happy, 2467; hond, 2689; holy, 3384; herte, 3913, 5808; halle, halles, 5394, 7093; hous, 5485; hote, 490. So also the (A.S. \textit{fy}) in the hotter, cf. 1623.

Note 3.—Sometimes one or another MS. has a reading which seems to require or suggest \textit{the} (definite article) before a consonant (not h): thus,—
200 C, 2052 A (?), 2341 A (?), 3191 D (?), 3345 D, 3386 C, 3567 B, 3597 C, 4333 D, 4845 D, 6926 BD, 7392 B, 7993 C, 8232 D. The cases cited may all be corrected by comparison of MSS. But in 4906, ABCD agree in reading: \textit{His hed to the wal his body to the grounde} (no note in Austin).

II. But e in \textit{the} may remain unelided. Thus,—

By \textit{alle} (al B, a\textit{h} D) \textit{the} (tho Cp.) \textit{othes} that I haue to (om. BCD) yow sworn(e), 1384. Probably we should read: By alle the othes that I haue yow sworn. \textit{Allë the othes} or \textit{alle the othes} is hardly to be thought of.

\textit{The olde} (The old D, Wolde † \textit{for polde} C) daunce and every poyn
therinne, 3537.

The cause ytold (tolde John’s) of here comynge (-yng D) \textit{the} (om. C) \textit{olde} (old D, om. B), 4803. \textit{Comynge} the \textit{olde} is unlikely.
The newe (new BD) loue out (-e BD) cacheth (chaceth B, schakyth C, chasithe D) ofte (oft B) \textit{the olde}, 5077 (no note in Austin).

\textsuperscript{1} Supply \textit{[the]} in B.
\textsuperscript{2} Thaqueyntaunce (The aqveyntau[n]se C, The aqueintauns D, The aqveyntaunce G) of these (this BC, thes D) Troyans (Troyans B, Troylus C, Troiaunes D) to (for to C) chaunge. (No note in Mr. Austin's collation.)
\textsuperscript{3} Supply \textit{[the]} in B.
Here oft the olde is perhaps preferable to ofte the olde.
The observaunce (-ns D) euere yn youre absence, 5445 (C inserts I before in).
And whiten gan the (ech[e] † C) orisonte (orisoune B, oryzonte C, orisent D) shene, 6639.

III. Some lines may be read in two ways, one of which preserves the -e in the, the other of which elides it.
And sith (sithen B, sythe C, seth D, sithe Cp.) the ende (thende B Cp. John’s) is of (om. BCDCp. John’s) euery tales strengthe, 1345.
Lo herte (hert D) myn as wolde (wold BD) the excellence, 3830 (no note in Austin).

Bygan (Bygunne C, Began D) for ioye the amorouse (thamarouse B, the amerous CD, thamorouse Cp. John’s) daunce (dauns D), 6093.

IV. In né the Troilus regularly elides -e before a vowel. There is but one exception : 649 (see end of list).
ne achemeu, 1893 (nacheu B; CD om. ne; eschewi † D).
ne enforce I, 5678 (nence-force B).
naxe in guerdon, 6957 (ne axe CD).
For he that nough[t] nassayeth nought nacheueth, 7147 (nouȝt asayeth nouȝt ne cheuyth C, nouȝt assaieth nouȝt achemeu D).
He ne eet ne drouk for his malencolye, 7579 (ne et(e) BD, he nother † et C).
He ne eet ne droun ne slep ne word [ne] seyde, 7803 (ne word(e) seyde BD, He net ne drank ne no word he ne seyde C).
But litel bok no makyng thow nenuye, 8152 (D om. ne).
So nam, nys (§ 124). Particularly interesting is nyis for nis (7541 C). For nere, noot, niste, nyl, nylt, wolde, nordest, see §§ 124, 125.

A single exception is :
Ek the ne oughte (aught B) not ben yuel apayed, 649 (And ek thou not to ben eucle payede C, And eke thow oghtist not ben evil apayed D; no variants in Austin, except nat Cp. for not).
The reading seems to be well established. In : I ne (om. D) ought (aught B, auȝte C, oght D) not for that thyng hym despise, 1805, read ne ought[ǐ] not.

§ 129. Elision of close -e.

I. Of the elision of (close) -e in me, we, he, she, ne (neque), there are several examples. Ten Brink (§ 269) is inclined to regard such instances as full elision (ecthlipepitch), but this seems doubtful, except perhaps when the vowel which follows is itself an e.
And yet me of-thynkst that this aunant me asterte, 1043 A (mathynketh ... may † sterte B, me athinkith ... me stert D †).

me offendeth, 605 (me off. C †; D †).
me assayleth, 607 (massail eth D †; me ass. C †).
me allone, 1021 (malon B, me a. D †); so 2486.
mauyse, 1361 (me auyse C, me a. D †; A †).
me anon, 5172 BCD (A?).
me assayle, 6257 (messaile B, me a. C †; D †).
And go we anon for as yn myn entente, 6187 (C †).
In to the gardeyn go we and ye shal here, 2199.
he answerd, 5097 (B om. he; he answerde C, he answerd D).
she abod, 127 (D om. she; sche bod C); cf. 2736 † C.
she abreyde, 5874 (she brayde B, sche brayd C).
she alighte, 6552 (shalighte B, she light D; C †).
Ne yn hym desir doon (l. noon) 2 other fownes bredde, 465 (Nyn hym C).
Ne auunter certeyn seyth men is he non, 1809 (Navauntour B; D †).
Ne tendement considere ne tonge telle, 6358 (Ne † mendement B).
Ne of ladyes ek so fayr a companye, 6810 (Nof B).
Ne encens vp on here auter sette a fyre, 7829 (Nencens B, The ensens † C, Ne encense D).
Ne (Ny B, Ne y D) neuere (G inserts man) saw (saugh BCP., ne say C) a more bounteous
Of here estat (-e B, astate D) ne (non C) a (om. BCDG John's; nagladder Cp.) gladder (-ere John's) ne (om. D, nor B) of speche A frendliour (frendelyere C) na (ne a DE, ne non C, ne G) more gracious, 883-5.

Examples of hiatus are:
Whi hastow (D inserts thus) mad (-e B) Troylus (Tr. made Cp., tr. mad C, tr. me made D) to (om. D) me (om. D) entrie (trust B, -trust CD), 3681 (no var. noted for Jn's.). But the reading in Cp. is perhaps to be preferred.
As for a frend ye may in me assure, 7987.
And after this (om. C) with sikynge he abreyde (vpbrayd D), 724.

1 In D read of swogh for A swogh.
2 none B, non CD. For desir C has desyred †; for hym BD John's have his; for fownes D has fantasye. Cp. reads: Nyn him desire noon other fowynes bredde.
I think ek how he able is (abele he is C, able he is D) to (for to BC) haue, 1821.

That sorwest thus and he answered (answerede C, anwerde hym B, answerd him D) nay, 5302.

That yf that he encrese myghte or eche, 6473 (C ↑ D ↑).

In furye as doth he (the D) *Ixion* in helle, 6575 (In furie as *thow he leye in helle* C)*.

To which (*e D) no word (*e B) for sorwe (sorw B) (for sorwe no word D) she answerede (*swerde BC, -swerd D), 4369; cf. 5897.

Cf. also: mè also, 5978; gò we `uncle, 2809; hè || allás, 3919; he into, 3939 BC (he hym into A; D ↑); hè iwyš, 4023 f; hè || aboute, 4904; he òfte, 6980 f; he òyus, 7402; shè || allás, 3945; shè also, 4419; that shè vntréwe be, 7660 f.

In 1097: For-whi to euerly louere (louer BDGJn.'s) I *me excuse ABDG Cp. Jn.'s. (C cut out), e in me may or may not be elided.

Note 1.—There are no instances of elided *the* (pron. 2 pers.) or *ye* (pron. 2 pers.). For instances of hiatus with these words, see, for *the*, 3139 (thè alegye), 4100 A (the *Iuvenes*), 4299 (thè agile), 4454 (thè || obliged); for *ye*, 682 (yè emulare), 6598 (ye audience). Cf. also *the oughte*, 3106 f; *the òftè*, 3127, and see note 2, below.

Note 2.—When the word that follows is a monosyllable, elision of *me* (etc.) is not to be expected, whichever of the two words has the *ictus*. See 528 (mè || òt), 1011 (mè || and), 1102 (mè || yf), 3768 (mè || òw), 4265 (mè || ò), 5176 (mè || at), 5111 (mè || and), 5671 (mè || in), 6278 (mè || and), 6607 (mè || o); 2017 (wè oure), 2030 (dò ve òs); 90 (hè || and), 226 (hè || òa), 299 (he òrst), 326 (hè || òn); cf. 355, 377, 543, 720 || A), 1165 (hè || in), 1210 (hè || as), 1363 (hè || and), 1663 (hè and I; cf. 5545 f), 1743 (hè and), 2158 (hè || òf), 2166 (hè oyi), 2281 (hè || I), 3855 (hè || hool), 5185 (hè || ò), 4633 (hè || yf); cf. 1441, 4634 (hè || òt); cf. 2636), 6448 (hè || òl), 6646 (hè || òu), 6999 (hè || òf), 7103 f (hè || ò), 7802 (hè || òn), 8198 (hè or shè); 467 (shè ||), 660 (shè || and); cf. 2274, 2341, 5879, 6552), 937 (shè || || òf; cf. 1023, 1203), 1691 (she ought), 1808 (she is), 3829 (she || òf), 5072 (shè is), 5573 (she òn); 1811 (ne òis), 5926 AD (yè ne Ð); for *the* (2 pers.) see 585, 618, 766, 922, 2485, 2619, 5149, 7667; *for ye* see 1314, 2885, 3042, 4215, 4331, 4359, 7287, 7352, 4736.

Note 3.—In 98 A: Of ony frend to whom shè dorst make hire mone, we should omit *make* (with BCDEGCp.).

II. *Ne I* is several times reduced to a single syllable (sometimes written *Ny*). Thus,—

*Ne I* nyl forbere *yf* that ye don amys, 3015 (*Ny nyl B Cp. John's, Ne y wil D ↑*).

*Ne I* welè not serteyn breke *your* defence, 4141 CE (*Ne I wolè certeyn A, Ny wol certein B*).† Cp. reads *Ny*, but otherwise appears to agree with *A*.

† B is unmetrical: supply [*ned*].
Ne I nyl not rakle as for to greuen here, 4484 (Ne I wil C, Ny nyl BCP., Ne rakyl nel y be for to grevyn here D).

Ny say not may but in conclusioun, 7366 B (Ne I sey C, Ne sey AD). (No note in Mr. Austin's collation.)

Ne I sey not this al only for these men, 8142 (Ny sey B Cp. John's). See also 883, just quoted.

III. Ten Brink (§ 269) remarks that the elision of close -e occurs "nur vor vocalischem Anlaut, nicht vor h,;" but there seems to be no good reason why weak h should have interfered with the operation of this elision, and in one verse of the Troilus one is tempted to follow B in reading maddë for me hadde: Allas I madde ytrowed on zoure lore, 7099 B. The other MSS., however, except D, read differently: I ne haddë trowed AG; that I ne haddë trowid C; me haddë trowed D; no note in Mr. Austin's collation. Both me hadde and ne hadde make sense. If the former reading be adopted, the line means, "Would I that I had trusted myself to your counsel!" If the latter, "Alas! to think that I should not have trusted your counsel!" But ne hadde is ambiguous: it could mean, "Would that I had not trusted!" which is contrary to the obvious purport of the passage. Perhaps this explains the reading me hadde as a scribe's purblind attempt to correct what he did not understand.

—In 2017, D has: Now letę we her slope and forth our talis hokl, but ABCG omit we (no note in Mr. Austin's collation) before her and insert it before oure, having no forth.—Similarly in 3939 A reads: For this or that he hym into bedđe caste, where the correct reading is undoubtedly he into bed hym caste (so BCP.; he into bedde him cast C; For this or for that he into the bedde him cast D); and in 2413 D reads Thus to the more worthi part(e) he hym held, where ABC have no hym.

Note 1.—For hiatus before h see, e. g., 4135 (më || how), 5207 (më || hast), 5222 (më || his), 5563 (më || hath), 6947 (me hast), 7328 (më hath); 3779 (we hàn), 6757 (we han); 83 (hë hath; cf. 3667, 3917, 4402, 7464), 301 (he how), 318 (he hadde; cf. 750, 6986), 491 (he hadde; cf. 1718, 2435 f, 6086 f, 7808), 695 (he hath; cf. 1794, 2870), 2051 (he hym; cf. 3542), 3907 (he here poss. sg.), 4029 (he hère acc.), 4459 (he hym), 7455 (he here acc.; cf. 2157, 7143); 124 (shë hym), 1823 (shë here poss. sg.), 3424 (shë hym; cf. 7567), 4835 (shë || hadde), 7467 (shë hadde); 3851 (ne hov). Cf. also the hadde (4998), ye han (25, 28, 1446, 1577, etc.), ye his (5590), etc. Elision is of course out of the question in such cases as me hâté (1798), me hêpethe (4688), me holly (5106), he hïld (1288), he hêrde (2038), he hêntë (2863 f), he hêng (3921), the hêrye (3937 f, the hárme (4473), ye hêpye (1405), ye hère inf. (3774 f, 7217 f), ye hâde (6508).

Note 2.—In 7910, the reading of C: from day to day till they be in were of yeoye, makes sense, but is certainly to be rejected in favour of ben bare of ABD.—In 1972 read ye yrs A instead of ye vís CD (B has ye yis). In 4979 C ye likë is to be corrected.
IV. A remarkable case of the elision of close -e, and one which seems to indicate that the phenomenon in question is not full cethlipsis, is 2199:

Into the gardyn go we || and ye shal here. So ABCDG; no note as to Cp. John's.

V. Instances of the elision (synelisis) of close -e in other words than the monosyllables just discussed are very rare (cf. § 33).

As he that feltō pyte on euer syde, 5486 (pitie Cp., pitē hadde B, pitē felte D). Here the caesura comes after pyte. Perhaps we should scan felte pytē, but that seems not so likely. C lacks the stanza. Cf. also 2662 † C, 7462 † D.

On euery nymphe and dētē infernāl, 6205 (dye ty B, deth † C). Possibly dētē, with synaeresis.

Note.—The -e in Dane (= Daphne) seems to have been weak (cf. the rhyme Diane: Dane, K.T. 1205-6): hence we have ordinary elision in O Phobus thanck whan Dane here selven shette, 3568 (diano her self shet. D).\(^1\) No doubt the -e in Tarbe is of the same kind: *Flexippe* she Tharbe and Antigone, 1901 (flexippe & Schetarbe & Antigone C, Flexipe & she tarke and Anteigne D); Antigone hirē sister Tarbe also, 2648 (Tharbe B, Tarb C, Marbe D). So Atēte (= Allecto) in Megera Atēte and ek Thesypheν, 4686 (Megera alicte thou thesiphone D). On the other hand, we have final close -e slurred in Flexipe in the (doubtless erroneous) reading of D in 1901 (just quoted). As to these -e's cf. ten Brink, § 94.

§ 130. Elision (or slurring) of final o and final a.

I. Final o in the preposition to is treated like final -e in the definite article. It is safer to regard the elision in this case, too, as not complete cethlipsis. The elision is commonest with the infinitive.

to anaunce, 518 (tauance B, to a. D).
tassayen, 921 B (to assay[ē]n A, to asayen C, for cesyng † D);
tassaye, 7146 (tasaie B, to asaye C †, to assaie D).
to arede, 1217 (thede † B; C † D †).
to endite, 1342 (to en. CD), 1785 (tendite B; C † D †).
to entende, 1938 (tentende B; D †).
to appere, 1994 (tapere B, to apere CD).
to anyse, 2300 (tauyse B, to † vyse D).
tonfolde, 2787 B (to vnfolde AD, to onfolde C).
to abrygge, 3104 (tabregge B, to abregge CD); tabregge, 3137 f (to a. C, abregge D †); cf. also 5088, 5587.
to encres, 4177 (tenerese BC, ten=en)crece E); cf. 5588 C.
to aproche, 4538 (taproche B, ta-proche C).

\(^1\) The reading of D shows that Chaucer's caution in distinguishing *Diana* and *Daphne* in the passage cited from *The Knight's Tale* is evidence that he "knew his public."
to abyde, 4652 (tabide B, to † abyde D); tabyde, 6396 (to a. † D); cf. also 6716, 6859 C (?), 7133, 7518, 7546.
to acheue, 4741 (tacheue B, shal † cheue D).¹
to enqueren, 5672; cf. 4526 C.
to arede, 6232 (taredo B, torede C).
to amenden, 6501 (tamende B, to amendyn C, to amende D).
tenbrace, 6587 (to embrace C, to embrace D). (9-syl. verse.)
tabreyde, 6883 (to a. CD, to breyde B).
tacoye, 7145 (ta-coye C, to accoye D).
to vnlouen, 8061 (to vnloue CD).
Cf. also 1781 D (teschewe), 1986 (?) B, 2682 C, 6796 B, 7816 C.
But instances of this slur also occur when the word that follows to is not an infinitive:

Vn to ony louere and his cause auayle, 20 (D †).

For to euery wight som goodly auenture, 1366 (to euerychë C, for euery D); And his comyng vnwyst is to euery wyght, 3754 (teuery B, vnwst to euery C).

And into a closet for to auyse herë bettre, 2300 (tayse B, in a closet for to vyse D †).

Out wente anoon to Elyne and Deiphebus, 2726.

That passed was and thus he drof to an ende, 6838 (tanende B).

Examples of hiatus with to are:

to àrten hire, 388 (for to àrtyne C; B †).
tò èntrepàrten wò, 592 (intyrpartyn C).
to èche, 887 f.
to ñse, 1096 f.
to èuery louere, 1097; to èuery wight, 1273.
tò argëa, 1779 f (BCD om. to).
tò ègaste, 1986 f, is doubtfull.
to ñsen, 2123 (to ñse D).
to èrre, 5211 f.

Note 1.—For examples with monosyllables, see 14 (tò a), 1057 (thèr to || and), 2529 (to àl (alle BC) honour), 3328 (to èse inf.), 3360 (tò ì), 3462 to vs), 4814 (tò ì), 4818 (vntò ì; cf. 5187), 5779 (vntò vs).

In a few instances to suffers elision before h:
As for to honoure hire göddes ful denoute, 151 AB (CD seem wrong).

To honouren hem that hadde worthynesse, 4631.

¹ Read [to] shende in B.
² Read (be)gan in D.
³ Supply [herte] in B, [for] in C.
⁴ Dele one (hire) in A.
To honouren yow as wel as folk of Troye, 6482 (To honourë CD).\(^1\)  
Cf. also 4104 D.  
I theenk ek how he ablé is for to haue, 1821 B Cp. (I thynke ek how abele he is for to haue C, I theenk ek how he able is to haue A, I thynke eke how able he is to have D, I thynge eke howe able he is to haue G, Ek wot I wel he worthy is to haue John’s, Yit wot I weel he worthi is to haue Harl. 2392). Perhaps able is.  
Cf. also,—to his (?), 2546 C; to hir, 7666 CD;\(^2\) to hirë, 7671 C; vnto her, 3762 D; into harm, 7739 C.  
But to is the usual form before h. Thus,—to han, cf. 13, 769, 2224, etc.; to haue, cf. 50, 709, etc.; to hero (dat.), cf. 443, 2094, etc.; to herë (poss. sg.), cf. 5226, etc.; to hym, cf. 858, 998, etc.; to his, cf. 2179, 2219; vnto his, cf. 2627; etc. For cases before strong h, cf. e. g., to holde (128 f, 161 f, etc.), to herkenen (164), to helpen (836), into helle (872 f), into hallo (2255 f), to hyde, (6393 f), to haten (7442), etc.  
Note.—Sometimes a similar slur seems to take place in to, into, vnto, before a consonant; but most of the cases noticed are aberrations of the scribe, easily cured by a comparison of MSS. Thus,—to seche, 704 A; to lete, 6379 A; cf. also 1318 C, 1327 C, 2196 D, 2519 D, 2956 A, 3699 D, 3939 D, 4356 D, 6178 D, 6355 B, 6678 A, 7000 A, 7218 B, 7350 A, 7406 C, 7518 A, 7740 C, 8158 B.  
Men wolden (wold BD) wontren (-deryn C, wondur D) to se (B Cp. John’s om. to; to sen C; to se D) hym come or gon, 1453.  
To lote herë go thus vnto the Grekes ost, 5261 AB (into C; C om. thus; thus to D). No note in Austin.  

II. Elision of final -o is rare except in to:

He cursed Ioue Appollo and ek Cupide, 6570 (C om. ek).  
Of Ioue appollo of mars of swych rascaylle, 8216.  
Note.—The following cases disappear on comparison of MSS. : go away, 574 C (go wey AB, go hens D); do away, 1195 C (do wey ABD), cf. 1196 C; do on, 2039 C (don ABD), 3580 A (don B); tho and, 884 C (ABD om. and). In 1559, AD have No ywy, but we may read No wey (with B\(^3\) C Cp. John’s).\(^4\) In 8027, C reads: O immortal god quad he that mayst not deyen; ABD have no O); cf. 7424 D, where for O yrolled we should read O rolle.  

III. The Troilus affords one good instance of elision (slurring) of final -o:  
Megera. Alete. and ek Thesyphone, 4686 (Megera alyete thow thesiphone D).  

---

\(^1\) In B supply the second [as].  
\(^2\) In C, however, perhaps wrecë (p.p.) to hirë.  
\(^3\) In B supply [he].  
\(^4\) Cf. 2196, where A has now ycome, but now come (BC) is the correct reading. Cf. also 7070 D.
§ 131. Slurring of final y.

Final -y is sometimes united with the initial vowel of the following word (synclisis).

Obviously, in the case of adjectives accented on the penult, this slur can take place only when the word that follows either has no iactus or is accented on the second syllable. Thus we have: "How bysy if I loue ek most I be," 1884; and so in the case of most adjectives in -y there is no slur before an initial vowel: as,—gredy, 4600; hasty, 6229 (hastif B, hastyth † C); redy, 3372, 7327, 7733; sondry, 1112; sory, 2436, 8089; sturdy, 2465; very, 5369, 6636 (slur in D); vnwery, 1924; worthi, 1243, 1424. See also lady (§ 5), ruby (p. 94), evry (§ 79), ony (§ 79), adjectives in -ly (§ 72), adverbs in -ly (§ 84).

The commonest instance of the slur is in the phrase many a, many an: as,—This knoweth many a wys and worthi wyght, 1265 (meng a D). So also 163, 165, 166, 540, 810, 934, 1148, 1236, 1726, 1900, 3145, 3147, 3657, 3953, 3989, 4072, 4301, 4555, 4701, 5289, 5755, 6147, 6505, 6527, 6585, 6696, 6968, 7301, 7409, 7424, 7557, 7640, 7945, 8124. Variants have not been registered, for in none of the cases cited is there any doubt as to the true reading, so far as this phrase is concerned. The Troilus knows only the slurred many a; no unslurred example occurs which a comparison of MSS. does not correct (thus, e.g., 4695).

Other instances are:

And I with body and soule synke in (into CD) helle, 6216.

Charitable estatlyche lusty and fre, 7186 (D Cp. John's om. and; Scharite abele statlyche ly3t lusti & fre C; G agrees with A, except for the spelling estatliche).

I shal therof as fully excuse me, 3652 (ful BC; but Cp. John's seem to have fully).

Note 1.—Here and there one or another MS. has a slurred -y, which comparison of MSS. causes to disappear. Thus,—lady unto, 1164 A (§ 5); hardy(es) as, 7193 D; saucy and, 942 C; worthy and, 2163 C (cf. 1951 C, 4882 CD, 5160 B); very on, 6636 D; certaynly I, 1531 A (cf. 3938 C); gladly as, 592 D; hardly and (I), 2097 C; undfully as, 5668 D; wisely as, 7728 C. In 5427 A: How sholde I a fyssh without water dure, omit I.

Note 2.—In 4873 C: for which deliueryd (I. delivered) was by a parlement, omit a (with ABD Cp. John's).

A similar slur of final -ey is found in 3287 A: But yn swych cas men is nought alwey yplesed; but the correct reading is alwey plesed (so BCP; alwey plesid D; man is not † wel plesed C). In 2986, however, the preponderance of MS. authority is in favour of ay t-lyke: 
To serve (-yn CG, serve D) and ben (bene D) ay (so ABG; om. DE; C has ay ben for ben ay) I-lyke (ylike B, I-lik C, y-lyke D, I-lyke G) diligent (Cp. John's appear to agree with A).

An effect precisely similar to the slur of final -y takes place when a word in -ye (unaccented) suffers elision before a word the first syllable of which has no ictus. The instances of this phenomenon are in the Troilus confined to words in -rye like contrâyre,¹ and to the word remedye (the forms of which may be seen in full at p. 86, cf. ten Brink, § 87, Anm.).

By sort and by augurye ek trewely, 4778 (trew[e]ly B, By sort and augury eke truly D).

In consistorie among the Grekes soone, 4727.

By eche (l. his) contrarie is euery thing declared, 637 (-rye is BC).

Retorneth in his part contrarie agayn, 5665 (-rye agayn B). But the form contraire also occurs: see § 51, p. 120.

Be necessarie al seme it not therby, 5682 (necessarye al(le) D).

But necessaire occurs: see § 51, p. 120.

And som(e) so ful of furye is and despit, 3879 (furie is BCD).

Anoy smert (-e D) drede (dred[e] C) fury and ek (ek[e] D) sikenesse (seknesse C), 5507 (furye and BD, furie and C).

For which the grete (gret[e] D) furye of his penaunce, 6091 (furie of C).

In furye as doth he Ixion in helle, 6575 (-rie as B, -ry as D; In furie as thow he leye in helle C).

And God Mercuurye of me now woful wreche, 6684 (-rie of B, -rye on C; D om. now).

Into mysrié yn which I wol bywayle, 4934 (Into myn deth † C).

And certeinly in story it is yfounde, 7197 B (stori as it is founde C, story as it is founde D, storye it is yfounde Cp., storye it is founde A).

Though that I tarye a yer som tyme I mot, 4037 (tarie a BCD).

For that I tarye is al for wykked speche, 7973 (tarie is CD).

When the word that follows has the ictus, there is of course no synclisis. See examples in § 30 under cöpye, folye, partie, and in § 31 under augurye, furye. In 4915 furye and, BC have the slur, but AD have none. Of merye, mery (§ 46, p. 113) the Troilus affords no example before a vowel.

¹ In 6240 C, read filthe it for folye it.
§ 132. Weak e in two successive syllables (syncope or apocope).

Ten Brink's rule: "Enthalten zwei aufeinander folgende Silben je ein schwaches e, so verliert eines von diesen nothwendig seinen Silben- werth, sei es durch Syncope oder Apocope durchaus, sei es annähern, jedoch für das Bedürfniss der Betonung und des Verses vollkommen ausreichend durch Verschleifung" (§ 256), has been abundantly illustrated in the preceding chapter.

In the case of -ede in the preterite singular (§§ 99-105) the Troilus shows not a single exception to the rule, except perhaps in 7089: Herë (Hirë BC, Hir DG) nédëdë (neded BDG, nedit C) no (non B John's, none CG Cp.) teris for to borwe (see 146, I, b). In 129 A, dwelld[ê] yn should be wás dwelling yn. In the case of -eden in the preterite plural (§ 109), there are several exceptions (cf. ten Brink, §§ 194, 256), mükkeneden (apparently the correct reading in 4783, see § 109, I.), strëmeden (§ 109, III.), ivymeden (§ 109, III.), assêgeden, bysêgeden (§ 109, I.), comêuden, comêuden (§ 109, III.), entre- chaungedên (§ 109, IV.).

For the application of this rule in the inflection of nouns see the genitives faderes, fadres (§ 36), heuënes (§ 36, n. 1), someres, widëves, wydëves (§ 35, I.), the plurals arces (§ 38, IV.), candeles, heuënes (§ 38, V.), and maydens (§ 39, III.); and the numerals seuene (§ 67, d);¹ cf. owene (§ 53, V.), plural othere², othere gen. sg. pl. (§ 79).


The weak -e- (either not found or usually syncopated in A.S.) which, according to ten Brink (§ 61, III.), is inserted "zwischen v und Dauerlaut," and sometimes after th, is, of course, syncopated or slurred like the e's just discussed: seuenës pl. (§§ 38, V., 44), euere, neuere (§ 90), brothères gen. (§ 36), brothëren (§ 41), and fetherës pl. (§ 38, V.). The morphological value of this -e-, however, is rendered dubious by the occurrence of such spellings as fyngës pl. (§ 38, V.: fyngres A), monëthes (as well as monëthes: § 38, I.) pl., taken in connection with the tendency of some Middle English scribes to use ene (ele, ere) indiscriminately for ne and en (or n ?), etc.: see heuene, with variants, § 14, p. 42, cf. p. 38, and the C spellings chaumbere, lettere, letteris,

¹ Cf. the ordinal seuenëthe, seuenëthe (§ 53, I.).
² Cf. ten Brink, § 272.
coupelys, etc., (§§ 29, 38, V.), -ble for -ble in Romance adjectives (§ 51, II.), susterin, schilderyn (§ 41), angry for angry (562), sundery for sundry (440, 742, 957, 5174). Cf. also the next paragraph.

In native verb-forms, too, an -e is sometimes written where it has no etymological status: as,—herkenen inf. (164, cf. 1180), fortheren inf. (8070, forthren B), herkened pret. sg. (§ 101), herkeneth 3 sg. (1116), herkeneth inv. pl. (§ 118, I.); but cf. wondren (A.S. wundrian) inf. (1453, 5309, 6857), handle (A.S. handlian) inf. (5434), woundred p.p. (§ 121, III.), vnbrydled (A.S. brădliam) p.p. (3271, vnbridgele B), bytokneth 3 sg. (7876), woundreth inv. pl. (6525). 1 A similarly intrusive -e shows itself in some Romance and Latin verbs: as,—the infinitives coueren (2597), discoueren (675), recoueren (4248), delgueren (3958), and deliberen (4831), couered pret. (§ 105), the participles considered, couered, recovered, delibered, deluyered, (§ 121, VIII.); but cf. the infinitives remembreth (4470) and suffren (971, 2996, 5865), the inv. pl. suffreth (5866), the pret. remembreth (§ 105), the participles assembled, medled (§ 121, VIII.), and the adj. sucred (§ 121, X.), though in these instances, too, C usually interpolates the irrational -e.

§ 133. Apocope or syncope of weak e after an unaccented syllable which is capable of bearing an accent.

The metrical fact conveniently expressed by ten Brink (§ 257) in the rule: "Nach unbebetoner, jedoch tonfühnder Silbe muss ein schwaches e verstummen," has been abundantly illustrated in the grammatical chapter.

For apocope see housbondē, sōm tymē, oﬅ tymē, welcome (or welcomē?) (§ 2), lōuer, līere, mākerē, mōnter, rēderē (§ 7), friendship, lordship (§ 7), ansuere (§ 8), sūknesse (§ 9), felawe, wūndowe (§ 15), fortune, pursuyte (§ 21), sēruise (§ 26), māner, mūner, prefere (§ 28), gōter (§ 28, note at end) Æleyne (2532), Pândare (§ 139); cf. also angwyssh, aungel, 2 concur, curtyn, rāket, rēlyk, skūrnyssh, trāners, ëssue (§ 22). 3 This principle may, of course, also prevent the addition of an inorganic -e: see -ynge, -ynge in substantives (§ 10, III.) and participles (§ 120, III.), and cf. foreward (A.S. foreward, § 11), and the spelling exceſse (§ 32).

For syncope see the plurals sēraunntz (§ 39, I.), rēsonas, Trōians (§ 39, III.), lōuer, māneres, pōterys, prefects (§ 39, IV.), the subjunctive

1 C, however, shows wounderyn, wondere, onbrydelid, handelyn, botockenyth, wonderith.
2 Cf. ten Brink, § 221.
3 Refuyt (§ 22) can appeal to O. Fr. refuit.
"laboured (§ 113), and the participles answered (§ 121, III.), enlumyned, pinnewed (?) (§ 121, IX.).

Doubtful lines ¹ are the following:

Ymagynynge that tranaylle nor grame, 372 ABG (-ing . . . travaill & game † D, neyther trauayle nor † gaine C).

Ne remuable (remuable B, resonable D, remeveable G) fortune deface (to deface D), 6344 (cut out C).

Than wold (-e D) I of his(e (his BD) battaylles endite, 8130 (leaf cut out C).

§ 134. Apocope of weak -e after a syllable having a secondary accent (ten Brink, § 258).

Apocope of weak -e after a syllable which has a secondary accent is on the whole not common. Examples are: haselwode || there, 7537 (but, haselwode || thoughte, 6868, see § 6), prescience, 5683 (§ 24). For preservation of the -e, see scerenesse, selynesse, worthynesse (§ 9), sauegard[e] (§ 21), charitãble, couenãble, discordãble, excusãble, honoureable, remuuable, resonable (§ 51, II.) Cf. also, in the "definite" inflection, vomanlyche, forknowynge, ãmoroûse, dispitouise (§ 59, b), and superlatives like goddlyeâste (§ 59, a),—but, of course, the têmpetoûs matère, his Excellent poulesse (§ 60).

In several Romance words in which the -e is not apocopated in the interior of the verse it makes little difference whether the syllable that precedes is regarded as bearing the main or the secondary accent: infortune, orisonte (§ 21), gêntîlîse (§ 25), cîneytîse (§ 26), créature (§ 27), impossible (§§ 21, 51, II.), inuysible (§ 51, II.). For the treatment of final -es after the secondarily accented syllable, see §§ 37—39.

Note.—Ten Brink's remark that weak -e "in Wortanslaut" "nach neben-toniger Silbe" "zählt im Vers wohl in der Mehrzahl der Fälle nicht als Silbe mit; wie es scheint sogar nach Muta cum Liquida, wo Verschleifung eintreten kann" (§ 258), does not hold true of the Troilus unless elided -e be included in the reckoning.

§ 135. Apocope of weak -e immediately after the syllable bearing the main accent.

I. Ten Brink (§ 260) holds that -e never counts as a syllable (except in rhyme) in certain words and forms which he enumerates (§ 260, (a—η)). His list, however, requires modification.

(a) The accusative herê must be read as a disyllable in 7948: Biseching herê (hirê B) syn that he was true, That she woldê come, etc., ¹ Cp. John's throw no light on the scansion. In 372 Cp. has grace †; in 6344 Cp. John's agree with A letter for letter; in 8130 Mr. Austin notes no variation from A.
unless we accept hire that C (hir that D); the repetition of that is ungrammatical, however, and there seems to be no good reason for rejecting the reading of the best MSS. (Mr. Austin's collation makes no note.) In 973, Forthi some grace I hope ye here fynde (hyrë C, hire Cp., in her Y D, in hyrë to B, in hire to G), the dissyllabic form has pretty good MS. authority; besides, the word is emphatic in sense besides having an ictus.—The singular possessive hire, here, is probably never dissyllabic in the Troilus, though one or two lines are doubtful (see § 74). The plural possessive, however, seems to be fairly entitled to two syllables in: Of here teris and the herte vnswelle, 5808 (hirë B, om. † D; no note in Austin; G, which is beneath contempt in this stanza, reads: Of hir teres and the herte gan vnswelle). As a verse of nine syllables the line would certainly be no credit to its author (cf. § 146).—In 423: Mi spirit which that aught[e] yourë be (yourë C, yourës G Cp., yourës John's Hl. 2392, jyr[e]s B), yourës is doubtless right.—In 4173: For myne wordes here and-every part (so ABC, my E; no note in Austin), we have our choice between myné and an unpleasant nine-syllable verse. Alle before myne would be an easy insertion.

(β) Somë (pl.) is found once, if And somë wolde muche here mete alone, is, as it seems to be, the correct reading of 907 (see the variants, § 78).—The Troilus gives no support to the hypothesis of a "dative eeche" (see § 78).

(ε) Final -e never counts as a syllable, according to ten Brink, "in den Formen were und made nicht nur im Sg., sondern auch im Pl. bei apocopirtem -n." But the Troilus affords several examples of verë in the subjunctive singular (see 1027, 2715, 3379, 3416, 4359: § 113), and several of verë in the indicative and subjunctive plural (see 140, 1671, 1997, 3075, 5894, 6637, 8123: §§ 109, VII., 114). For dissyllabic made ten Brink would substitute always maked in the singular, maden in the plural. The substitution of maden for made depends upon the general principle that in the plural -en rather than -e shall stand before consonants,—a principle which, however probable, can hardly be regarded as well established; the substitution of maked for dissyllabic made in the Troilus would necessitate considerable tampering with good MSS. (see § 101).

(γ) That some may retain its -e as a syllable is certain (§ 6, p. 10); for vome, however, see § 2. The Troilus affords no certain example of -e pronounced in Romance words in -le in the interior of the verse (§§ 30, 126).
Observations on the Language

§ 135.

(4) In 5681 before or beforen seems necessary: Of thinges wyst (wiste BG Cp. Durh.) byforn (bifor B, before DG, byfors Cp., biforn John’s, om. Durh.) certeynly (full certeinye Durh.). 1 There appears to be necessary in: And ther (there CG) lat (lete D, lett G) vs spoken (-e D) of oure wo, 5906 (no note in Austin). In 3915, however,—That he cam there (ther BG) and (or CD) that (that that Cp.) he was born,—the reading of Cp. that that is clearly right. In 6841 we should doubtless read here beleue rather than heré beleue (see p. 204).

II. Other special instances of apocope deserve notice.

(1) The form loue, whatever its construction, shows a marked tendency to apocopate -e. Thus,—the noun (§ 8), the pres. ind. 1 sg. (§ 92, V.), the inv. sg. (§ 115, III.), the inf. (§ 119, X.).

(2) Ten Brink’s remark (§ 261) that -e is “stets silbenbildend im Plural des attributiven Adjective, wenn dieses vor seinem Substantiv steht.” (cf. his § 236) is contradicted by one line in the Troilus (1251, § 69). In this passage good condicions occurs (notice the accent, and see § 54). Cf. also, wyse men 3166 (man CD), which perhaps may be regarded as a sort of compound (the singular is written wysman in 5749 AC, wys man in C, wise man in D). Lordes olde occurs in 7824. Cf. also 4, below.

(3) When a monosyllabic adjective in the definite construction immediately precedes a substantive accented on the second syllable, the inflectional -e of the adjective is necessarily lost (see § 54). Thus,—this heigh matre (3358), youre heyghe servyce (4130), here heyghe compleynte (5467), thy’ wrong conceyte (692), my love confessioun (1613), the pleyn felicite (8181). A plural -e must also disappear under similar circumstances: of good condicions, 1251 (§ 69).

(4) In a very few phrases the constant association of an adjective with a noun seems to have resulted in the formation of a sort of compound, freed from the necessity of the “definite” inflection of the first part (see § 54). Such are good wil (his good wil, 2294), good word in the sense of commendation (my, your good word, 7444, 7985). Less certainly of this sort is this good plot, 3981. Meanwhile might be thought to belong here, but this mëne while occurs (2892) as well as in this mëne while (see § 52). Cf. also 2, above.

(5) Monosyllabic adjectives standing in the predicate do not always take -e in the plural (§ 69). Monosyllabic participles standing in the predicate seldom take -e in the plural (§ 68).

(6) For the use of allë, alle as the plural of al, see § 80.

1 The passage is not in CE.
(7) The comparative more, adj. (§ 64), subst. (§ 64), or adv. (§ 86), often loses -e.

(8) In the case of certain adverbs in -e, the possibility of a confusion with some adjectival construction makes suspicious what might otherwise be regarded as good examples of apocope; see longe, low, and cf. the Romance words cler, pleyn (§ 82).

Note.—Lyk (cf. A.S. gelice) may be due to adjective influence (§ 83); ilyke also occurs (§ 82). For righte, see § 83; for lest, see § 83, n. 2; for down, adown, see § 88, n. 1; for gruf, see § 88, n. 2: all these words have lost their -e for good and all.

(9) Verb forms in -ye lose -e more or less freely. Thus,—inf. seye (§ 119, XIII.), preyè (§ 119, X.); pres. ind. 1 sg., deye, seye, preye (§ 92, V.); pres. ind. pl. sey (§ 96, X.); subj. pl. sey (§ 112, V.); pret. ind. pl. say the, 656, sey ye, 1362 (§ 109, X.). Note also that in the inv. sg. of A.S. licgan (A.S. lige) we have ly and lyè (§ 115, V.), and in the inv. sg. of the Romance verb preyen, prey (§ 116, IV.).

(10) In as helpe me God and other idiomatic invocatory or optative phrases containing a subjunctive, the arrangement of the accents, fixed by sense and usage, brings together the subjunctive -e and another unstressed syllable after the accented root-syllable of the verb. Since the accentuation of phrases of this kind cannot be interfered with, the -e of the subjunctive disappears in Chaucer's verse. Thus,—help me God, as help (helpe) me God (Iuno, Pallas, hère Pallús), as wysly helpe me God, God help (helpe) me so, helpe me so the mone, And helpe me god so at my most[e] nede, God yeue your herte care, Ioues yeue the (me) sorwe, I bidde god so yeue yow bothe sorwe, Yet preyè I God so yeue yow right good day. So wo worth that day, etc. The aggregate of instances of apocope that come under this head is not far from thirty (see § 111, III.).

(11) In a considerable number of instances the curtailed form of the Imperative Plural loses its -e entirely (§ 118, IV.). Some of the cases may be due to an extension of the singular form to the plural or to the petrification of the singular in an idiomatic use (cf. especially lat in the periphrasis lat us with the infinitive).

(12) The form haue (§ 124, VI.) has always apocope before a consonant. Thus,—pres. ind. 1 sg., pres. ind. pl. (also han), pres. subj. sg., pres. subj. pl., inv. sg. and pl., inf. (hauen occurs once in rhyme, 4305, rh. grauè ind. 3 pl.). In the pret. ind. and subj. sg., both hadde and hadde occur (§§ 102, 113).

(13) In the imperative singular of tellen, tellè or tel is the usual form (see many examples in § 115, I.): there is no certain instance of tellè.
(14) The praeterito-praesentia and the verb *will* show considerable confusion, the singular form having sometimes intruded into the plural or even ousted the historically correct form. In the preterite, however, the *Troilus* shows no very striking proportion of forms with apocope of *-e*. See the paradigms, §§ 123, 124.

III. When the special cases discussed in I. and II. are provided for, a considerable number of examples of apocope are left. For obvious reasons the following words are not here considered: the nouns *ville*, *wil* (§ 2), *sight*, *sighted* (§ 9), *flyght*, *flyghted* (§ 14), *wey*, *weyde* (§ 14), *tryst*, *tryste*, *trust* (§ 15); the nouns already treated in §§ 7, 11, 22; nouns in *-ynge*, *-ynge* (§ 10); the adjectives already treated in § 49; *cler*, *clere* (§ 52); the adverbs *oute*, *out*, *sith*, *thanne*, *than*, *whanne*, *whan* (§ 88), *aweaye*, *aweay* (§ 89), and adjectives and adverbs in *-lough*, *-luch*, *-luche*, *-ly* (§§ 72, 84); participles in *ynge*, *-ynge* (§ 120). There remain the following instances:

(1) In nouns: 2 (a) Germanic,—*hope* † (§ 2), *wel-come* † (§ 2), *wone* † (§ 2), *erthe* † (§ 3; cf. *erthes*, § 49, n. 5), *hege* † (§ 6, only case of the word in the poem), *dore* † (§ 8), *kynde* (§ 9), *nede* (§ 9), *stret* † (§ 9), *trouthe* (§ 9), *tid* † (§ 9), *while* (§ 9), *hewe* (§ 14), *teer* † (§ 14), *yte* (§ 14), *byle* † (§ 15), *hede* (heed) (§ 15); (b) Romance,—*grace* (3) (§ 21), *nece* (§ 21; no case in rhyme), *fayre* † (§ 21), *science* † (§ 24), cf. *præscience* † (§ 24). (c) Proper names,—*Criseyde* (1774, 4969), *Dionide* * (6455), *Eleyn* (2788), *Pandare* (§ 139) *Pôliphête* * (2704).

Note 1.—In several of the nouns just cited the disappearance of *-e* may be regarded as merely a return to a form etymologically more correct. For *col*, *losse*, etc., see § 18 and cf. p. 38, note 1. The form and etymology of *ferde* (?) is too uncertain to rely on *ferd* as a genuine case of apocope (see § 15, § 121, p. 305).

Note 2.—There is no instance of the apocope in *tyrne* except in the phrases *somtyrne* and *ylke tyrne*, which, as compounds, come under the head of § 133. There is no certain instance of *herte* (§ 3); the two lines 889 and 4529 admit of a satisfactory scansion with *hert†* (see p. 6). In one verse, 3197, *weyde* (§ 3) is required if the reading of AB be followed; CD have *-e*; there is no note in Mr. Austin’s collation.

Note 3.—The case of the noun *helpe* is curious. This word occurs several times in the *Troilus*, but never in rhyme and never with *-e* in the interior of the verse (it is always *helpe*, *help*, or *helpe*, § 9). In the Canterbury

---


2 An asterisk indicates that the word in question is found in the *Troilus* in rhyme with some word in *-e*, but that it is not found with *-e* in the interior of the verse; a double-dagger indicates that the word occurs neither in rhyme nor with *-e* in the interior of the verse; a word left unmarked is found both in rhyme with a word in *-e*, and with *-e* in the interior of the verse.
Tales (see Child, § 16) it occurs but once in rhyme (260), and in that case its rhyme-word welde (A.S. hwicelde, m.) has no right to final -e; in the interior of the verse helpe is never found (in 2922 T. read helpe unto). So far as the forms of the rest of Chaucer’s poetry have been recorded, the word occurs nowhere in rhyme and only once with -e in the interior of the verse. This highly exceptional instance is Leg. G. W., 1616: Withoute death but I his helpe be, where one is tempted to think of helpe; weak substantive, formed on the analogy of hunte (A. S. hunt). (2) In adjectives a few examples of apocope besides those already discussed occur in the endings of adjectives. At the laste| the, 2009; at the laste|| this, 5034; the firste|| that, 7430; love the wers| though, 1950; hym is wors|| that, 5144; now is wors|| than, 7056; good goodly, voc., 458 (p. 128); swych thornes, 2359; swych festes, 7792.

Note.—In 5144, 7056, cited above, wors may be regarded as adverbial in construction.

(3) In adverbs and prepositions (§§ 88-89): aboute, aboute, bothe, thern, withinne, withoute, ofte (in ofte-tyme), sawe.

(4) In verbs.—Besides the cases already mentioned, apocope of -e occasionally takes place in the inflection of verbs. See pres. ind. sg. (§ 92), pres. subj. sg. (§ 110), pret. ind. sg. (see § 99, under brouhte, fullte, lefte, lyete, mette, thoughte, tolde; § 102 under sedyde, cf. subj. pl. sedyde, § 113; § 103, under highte), inv. sg. (see make, § 115, III.; byd, set, § 115, V.), inf. (§ 119, X., a considerable number of examples; see especially com, which is fond of -e; wete, dorre, § 123), p.p. (§ 122, X., rare).

Note 1.—Ten Brink’s remark (§ 261) that the -e is silent rather less often in the present subjunctive than in the present indicative does not hold good of the Troilus. In the ind. pret. sg. thoughte and sedyde seem to show a tendency to apocope, but there are not instances enough to generalize from, even if any principle other than the abrasion of frequent use suggested itself.

Note 2.—Gan (3957) and quod (4856) are merely examples of the singular form used in the plural (see § 109, X.).

Note 3.—In the case of wepte, wepte, pret. sg. (§ 103), one cannot be certain that wepte is not an error for the strong form wep, which also occurs.

IV. Apocope of -e is apparently not influenced by the quality of the consonant that begins the following word, for there is hardly a consonant before which -e is not sometimes apocopated. There are perhaps more examples before th than before any other letter, but this may doubtless be explained by the fact that a number of monosyllables, either ill adapted in general to bear an ictus or apt to lose their stress altogether when not actually emphatic, begin with th. Such are,—the definite article the; the pronouns thow, the, thin, this, that, tho; the particles that, there (relative), than, though, thurgh: see, e. g., 267, 1 Several of these places are cited merely for comparison: viz., — 376 (than perhaps has an ictus), 3162 (than has an ictus); 1950, 5144, 7056, in which the word in th, coming immediately after the cesura, may have an ictus (cf. also III., 2, above).
Observations on the Language

305, 376, 413, 495, 532, 863, 1048, 1425, 1452, 1799, 1950, 2009, 2788, 3162, 6455, 6803, 7019, 7056, 7096, 7537, 7541, 7662, 7824, 8178.

Apocope before who, which, where, whan (see, e.g., 1656, 1736, 2272, 3418, 4243, 4521) can hardly be ascribed to any other cause (though who is sometimes spelled ho, § 77). So always perhaps in cases like trowe ye (6231), yeue ye (6598), sende yow (1489), for apocope before y is not common enough to allow us to ascribe it to the "semi-vocalic" character of that sound.

Since a good many cases of apocope fall before the caesura, the recognition of the doctrine of the "extra syllable" in that situation may reduce materially the number of silent -e's in the Troilus (see § 144 for the evidence). But it is important to remember that, even if it can be established that Chaucer occasionally allowed the extra syllable before the caesura, we are not therefore justified in assuming that we have an instance of this license when its sole utility would be the preservation of a final -e. There are too many examples of undoubted apocope elsewhere in the verse to make such an inference anything but a begging of the question.

The upshot of all this appears to be that apocope, except in the case of a few words like loue, etc., must be regarded as a license for the nonce and cannot be brought under any rules but those of metrical exigency (see Child, § 92).

§ 136. Syncope or slurring of -e in final syllables when the noun accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding (cf. ten Brink, § 259).

Undoubted instances of full syncopate are perhaps rare, but, since it is seldom possible to distinguish between full syncopate and slurring (ten Brink’s "Verschleifung") with certainty, it seems best to discuss the phenomena under a single head. The sign of syncopation (-e-) has been used for convenience, but without any intention of implying full syncopate in all cases.

(a) -es: in the plural, loueres (§ 39, IV.); in the possessive pronoun heres (but also heres, yourës, § 74). For -es, -s, in adverbs, see § 91.

(b) -est in pres. ind. 2 sg.: lyst (jaces), seist, seyst, spekest, and

1In 2272, 3418, 4243, 4521, however, the word in wh, coming immediately after the caesura, may have an ictus.
probably rennest,\(^1\) are genuine (§ 93, II.); flest and sleest are not to the point; in 8154 the question is between steppes and seest or steppes and seest (§ 93, II., note), but the former gives much the smoother verse.—est in pret. 2 sg. is almost always fully sounded: in 4944 perhaps woldes is to be read (see the variants, § 124, II., note); in loudest, 3562 (ist CD, § 106), read loudest (rather "verschleifung" than full syncope).

Note.—Possible cases of syncope in the superlative ending -est are: myn alderleuest lord, 3081 (-e C), and myn alderleuest lady ([myn] aldyr louęlest \(\dagger\) C), 6939: in both of which either leuest or leueste satisfies the metre. Compare the extraordinarily common syncope in this ending in the Elizabethan dramatists.

(c) -eth: for syncope in the ind. 3 sg., see § 94, II. (forms like abit, halt, lyst, in § 95); for syncope in the ind. 3 pl. in -eth, see § 97; for syncope in the inv. pl., see § 118, II. (cf., however, the curtained inv. pl. in -e, -e, § 118, III., IV.).

(d) For syncopated weak preterites in -de, -te, and unsyncopated weak preterites in -de, -ed, see §§ 99—105. Pairs are dwelte (§ 114), and dwelled (§ 99), kyste and cussed (§ 99), made and maked (§ 101), sighte and siked (sighed) (§ 105). A. S. andswarode appears before consonants as ansvernede, ansvernede, ansvernèd, before vowels and h as ansvernede, ansvernèd, ansvernèd, ansvernèd (§ 101), the last form before a syllable that has the ictus. In Romance verbs aspyde and cride (§ 104) are assured by rhyme; cride, cried occur before vowels, and cryede is found in the plural (see §§ 109, VIII., IX., 114); paste (§ 104) is assured by rhyme and passed by the subj. sing. passed before a vowel (§ 113); preyde is assured by rhyme, but we have preyede hem, and this suggests the correction of praydè here (see § 104).—In verbs that make their preterite in -ed (-de) exclusively, syncope (or slur) of this ending is rare: louedè || that occurs, however, in 1071 (§ 101), but louède, louèd is the usual form; cf. also louède ek (4991), louède hym (2928), lokèd into (2312; but lokèd he, 2833), leuède || yn (5155, if the verse is 9-syl.), lynèdo || vnto (subj., 6242); likèd wel (2129) is perhaps not quite secure (§ 101).—For weak perfect participles, see in general, § 121. Worth notice are afered and ferd (§ 121, I.), maked, maad and mad (§ 121, III.); abaysshed (4075), abayst || and (2936) (§ 121, VII.); purueyéd alle (5670), purueyéd || certaynly (5714), purueyéd || but (5668) (cf. § 121 IX.); cried || than (5249). I-loued the (594) occurs, and, before vowels or h

\(^1\) In 6211, where John's reads Troye ay rennest (smoother, perhaps, but lacking in authority).
are found—beloved || (131), mysbeleved (3680), shewed (7812). In 6947 werreyed || on is doubtless the correct reading (see under Synizesis). Note pleyēd tyraunt (2325); vntyd in (§ 121, IV.). For wont, wonéd 'accustomed'; wonéd 'dwell,' see § 121, III.

Note,—In the preterites flickered, opened, etc. (§ 101), we should read rather -cred, -ened than -cred, -ened (§ 132), and so in covered, etc.

(e) -en. Syncope is regular in the participles born, shorn, sworn, torn (§ 122, V.), lorn (§ 121, IV.), slayn (§ 122, XII.), seyn 'seen' (§ 122, XIII.); instances of -en before vowels, as fallen, grown, are of course suspicious, and may almost always be reduced to the elided form (falle, etc.) by comparison of MSS. (§ 122, V.). In the infinitive seyn (cf. the gerund to seyne) syncope is regular, but seyen also occurs (§ 119, XIII.); as to hauen, han, hauë, hauë, see § 124, VI.; for infinitives in -en before consonants (no sure instance) and before vowels or h, see § 119, V. In the pres. pl. of seyn, seyn is common (§ 96, V.), but seggen also occurs (§ 96, I.), cf. liggen (§ 96, I., III.); for han, see § 124, VI.; for arn, see § 124, I.; for the plurals of shal and wil, see §§ 123, VII, 124, II.; for plurals in -en before vowels, see §§ 96, V., 109, V. For the treatment of adverbs in -en, see §§ 88, 89.

These final -en's are all inflectional, but other final -en's may suffer syncope (or be slurred) under similar conditions, i.e. when they are immediately preceded by the accented syllable, and when the following word begins with a vowel (or weak h). Final -ene, under the same conditions, loses -e by elision and, thus becoming indistinguishable from final -en in sound, is treated like -en with regard to slurring. It is accordingly difficult to ascertain what the full forms of the Modern English heaven, welkin, own (proprius), etc., were in Chaucer's language, — whether -en, -nē, -n, or even -enē (see pp. 38, 42, 126). A similar uncertainty prevails with respect to -er, -re, -el, -le, -em, -me (see below).

The question between full syncope and slurring in the case of -en is often very nice. When -n is written (as in born, sworn), there is of course no doubt; but when -en (-ene) is written, no certain conclusion can be arrived at. Of the different ways in which it is phonetically and metrically possible to read -en before a vowel (or weak h), that seems preferable which, allowing the -e- to disappear, makes the -n vocalic and retains it at the end of its word as a very light "extra syllable." This method seems almost certain for lines in which the cæsura falls directly after the -en, particularly if the cæsura coincides
with an insistent pause in the sense. Ten Brink (§ 272) takes the
ground that -en should be emended to elided -e when the latter is
possible: "Ueberall da, wo tonloses u apocopirt werden kann, wird
man besser solche Apocope and in Verbindung damit Elision als
Verschleifung annehmen, so beim Part. Perf. Pass. mancher Verba,
und durchweg beim Inf. und dem Plur. Präs. oder Prät. des verbi
finiti." This seems too sweeping. There is nothing against the -en
slur a priori, and Chaucer certainly had no objection to it, for, if our
texts be manipulated throughout in accordance with the rule suggested
by ten Brink, there will still remain cases enough in which the -en
slur, or something precisely the same in its effect on the ear, must be
left undisturbed (see heuene, heuen, or heune, § 14), to say nothing of
kindred phenomena with regard to el, -le, -er, -re, -me, -em (below).
There seems to be no good reason, then, why Chaucer should always
have preferred elided -e to slurred -en in forms in which, as in most
infinitives, for example, a choice was open to him. True, the evidence
of the best MSS. is that he usually preferred the elided -e; but there
is no antecedent probability of a rigid rule; indeed, it does not seem
unlikely that now and then his ear may have been better satisfied by
the fuller form, especially, one might conjecture, before the cesura.
Nothing short of an autograph MS., however, can ever settle such
questions as this.

(f) -er.—Final -er may be slurred when the following word begins
with a vowel (or weak h). Whether this slur amounts to full
syncope of -e must be left undecided. For convenience, the mark
of syncope (ﬃ) has been used, but with no intention of necessarily
implying anything more than ten Brink’s "Verschleifung" (§
272). Examples of both slurred and unslurred -er have been
given in the Grammatical Chapter: see feuer (p. 55), brother
(p. 62), tender (p. 121), other (§ 79), symber, wonder (§ 18, p. 61),
fader, moder, suster, dother (§ 18, pp. 62, 63), color, corne,
daunger, dyner, leysier, quarter, soper, squier (§ 34, I., p. 90), other,
eyther, neyther (§ 79), ferther (§ 86). Here belong the comparative
adjectives leuere (§ 64, p. 135), hardere, hotter, leuere, wyseere,
leure (ibid.), and the comparative adverbs leuere, rathere, ferther,
leuere, rathere (§ 86); for the proper ending of these words in
Chaucer is -er not -ere. As to the comparative adjective and
adverb bettre (better), one may hesitate whether to put it here or in
the next paragraph, but the classification is of no consequence for
our present purpose (for forms and slurs, see §§ 64, 86, observing
the variants under *bet*, pp. 135, 136). Cf. also the variants under *manner*, the reduced form of *manère* (§ 28, p. 82). *Euer* and *neuer* may be placed here or in the next paragraph: for a full discussion of their behaviour before vowels and consonants, see § 90. *Anger* perhaps belongs here (§ 19: read *anger*?): it is not slurred in the *Troilus*. For *after*, *whider*, *yonder*, *other* or *neither*, *whether*, see note at end of § 86. *Ouer* before consonants (except *h*) regularly counts as two syllables (cf. 2598, 2634, 7508; *ouer-theart*, 3527); but before a vowel or *hys*, *hym*, a slur is common, as: *ouer* *vs*, 4269; *ouer his*, 2756 (on † D); cf. 386, 3970, 4638, 5062, 5734; see also 2170, where *cæsura* intervenes: And radde it *ouer* || and gan the lettre folde AB. But we have also *ouër al* (=überall), 921 f (*ouer alle B, oueral C; D †*) (: in general: I shal) (cf. 5689 † B), and, on the other hand: There is in loue some cloud is *ouer that sonne*, 1866 (*ouere B, -er † the C, some cloudis in † that sumne D*), and And that the moné hath lordship *ouer the nyghtes*, 4598 (*-ere B; D †*) (cf. 243 † f C). In 1259, 1488, we are hardly to read *vnder* before consonant: instead, we may read *lyue* for *lyueth* in 1209 and *growe* for *grown* in 1488.

Note.—An interesting line is: *For al so syker as thow lyst here by me* (sekyr C), 2076. Here it would be impossible to tell whether one should read *sykér as* or *sykër as*, if it were not for the rhymes *tyme* and *pryme*.

Under the circumstances defined at the beginning of the last paragraph, *-re*, *-ere*, are reduced to *-re* (by elision), *-ere* (by elision and syncope), and are thus slurred with the following word, producing the same effect as the slurring of *-er* (last paragraph). As before, the precise nature of the slur (or syncope) cannot be determined. The uncertainty in scribes' spelling between *-re* and *-er* (*-ere*) renders impossible a rigid distinction between the words that belong here and those that belong in the preceding paragraph. Examples both of slurred and unslurred *-re* and *-ere* have been given in the Grammatical Chapter: see *answere* (§ 8); *chaumbre*, *-er, iaspre, lettre, ordre, poudre* (§ 29); *louere* (§ 7, p. 11); and, for unslurred forms before vowels, *chaumbre, ordre* (§ 29), *endere, fyndere, [harpouer,] holdere, louere, lyere, makere* (§ 7). Compare the proper name *Cassandre* (=Cassandra): *Cassandre Eleyne or ony of the frape*, 3252 (Cassaudir C); *Cassandre hym gan right thus hys drem expounde*, 7819 (Cassandre bygan B, Cassaudere hym gan ryzt thus expounde C)\(^1\); *That called was cassandre ek* (om. BC) *al aboute*, 7814 (cassaudere C.)\(^2\) Of slurred

\(^{1}\) A is no doubt right. No note in Mr. Austin's collation.

\(^{2}\) No note in Mr. Austin's collation.
verb forms the following will serve as instances: why suffre ich it, 6403 (suffere C); if that ye suffre hym, 3705 (gif [that] ye suffere hym C); and ye suffre hym, 3723 (suffere C); How may ye suffre alas it be repelled (repeles † A), 4956 (sufferyn that it be C); I shal vel suffre into the tenthe day, 6260 (suffere C); suffyre vs, 5865 B; And if that you remembre I am Calkas, 4735; deliuere it subj. 3 sg., 7321; ne iompre ek inv. sg., 2122 (iumpere C); perseuere yu inv. sg., 951; deluyere here (eam) inv. sg. or inf., 8106 (deliuer hire B); And gan to motre I not what trevely, 1626 (motere C); recouere a blysee inf., 3023; recouere another inf., 5068 (rekeuere a nother C); mokre and inf., 4217 (moke C, moke A).

(g) Final -el, -le are treated in the same way as final -er, -re (see f, above). Thus,—yuel apayed, 649 AB (C †); yuele (adv.) as, 6601 A (-el B); cf. yuel subst. (§ 18, p. 62), where the cases of slurs before consonants are, as indicated, easily corrected by comparison of MSS. For lytel, muchel, see § 48. For words in -le, see netle (§ 3) temple (§ 14), ensample, moeble peple, title, vncele (§ 21), egle, table (§ 21). Romance adjectives in -el (§ 51, n. 1, p. 121); bridle (inv. sg.) alwey, 4477 (-del C, -del D); iangle (ind. 3 pl.) of, 1885 (-ele C, ianglyn of D); rakle (inf.) as, 4484 (-ele C; D †). Cf. dewel haue (p. 54), epistol hem (p. 55).

Note.—Apparent cases of slur or apocope like -er, -re, -ere, before consonants (not h) are almost always easily corrected by comparison of MSS. For examples, see the variants under lettre (§ 29), bet (§ 64, cf. 481 D), yonder (§ 86, note at end). Cf. And I ther (om. C) after gan rome (roman B) to and fro, 1601; Nentendement considere no tounge telle, 6355 (see readings of ten MSS. in § 144). In the latter case, at least, we must allow the “syllable before the caesura.” For apparent slurs of -el before consonants, to be corrected by comparison of MSS., see variants under yuel (§ 18).

(h) -em (or -me). See botme it, § 14, p. 39.

§ 137. The treatment of interior weak -e- (“schwaches e zwischen dem Haupton und dem Nebenton,” ten Brink, § 262) varies, sometimes in the same word. Thus,—

(a) In compounds, whether Germanic or Romance: lodesterre (§ 2), vodebynde (§ 3), feldéfare (§ 5), lechecraft (§ 6), stoundenemele (§ 9), mylnéstoncs (§ 12), lettégame (§ 15), sauégarde (§ 21), but forward (§ 11), stedéfast (§ 49, n. 3); (b) in nouns in -esse (§ 9): kyndénesse, rulénesse, but fieblénesse (read febless, see § 25, I.); (c) in adjectives and adverbs in -les (§§ 49, n. 5, 85): botéles, dredéles, drinhéles, endéles,
helëles, hertëles, knottèles, makëles, nedëles, restëles, rothëles, specchëles, sterëles, causëles, dountëles, gracëles, gîtëles and gîltëles (cf. lyghtëles, vertules) ; (d) in adjectives and adverbs in -ly, -lich, -liche (§§ 72, 84): byhouëly, hastëly, hertëly and herëly, makëly, namëly, softëly and softly, sternëlyche, trevelëly and tvrelëly (trevely), vnkyndëly, dignëliche, fermëly, formëly, larëly, nicëly, richëly, secundëlich, straungëly, but erthëly, nedëly, nedly (cf. helply, lowly, lowly, febëly) 1; (e) adjectives in -ful: blysful (p. 147), drefful (pp. 119, 130), 2 fulleste (p. 132), sorwëful, sorwëful (pp. 119, 130, 147), but once, perhaps, sorwëful (5393) ; (f) nouns and “gerunds” in -ynge, -ynge (§ 10): festenynge, rekenynge, cheteryngse, slomeryngse, titerynge, wonderynge, but tokenynge, whysprynge (p. 31) ; (g) Romance nouns in -ment (§ 34) : accusëment, auisëment, elëment (cf. the plural, p. 104), entendiëment, iuggëment, parlëment, sentëment ; (h) Romance nouns in -aunce (§ 23), -aunt (§ 34, IV.), -once (§ 24): deliyneraunce, desseueraunce, disauenaunce, orderunaunce, perseueraunce, sustenaunce, difference, remenaunce, but remenaunt (cf. remembraunce) (cf. mount€naunt[n], 2792 C ‡ ; rememb[e]raunce, 7807 ‡ C) ; (i) Romance nouns in -ie (§ 30): baudery[e], freneisye, poësye, poëtrie, prophesie (cf. the plural, p. 103), remédye and remédye, trecherye, but nouellye ; (k) miscellaneous English words: euërich, euëry(?), euery, euerychon (§ 79), heuënyssh (§ 49, n. 3), cf. scrwynyssh (§ 84, n. at end), nëthëles (§ 86), fëlawship (§ 7) ; (l) miscellaneous Romance and Latin words: collateral (p. 149), funeral, general (p. 122) but generally (§ 84, II.), cheual[e]rous (p. 122), frenëtyk (p. 148), appetit (§ 34, VII.), conquerour (§ 34, II.), sorceresse (§ 25, II.; cf. dewyneresse), diëtë, nicëtë, but sureté, seurstë (§ 33), souvereyn (p. 122) and souvereyn (pp. 131, 134) (cf. souvërejnëtë, § 126). On the forms April, Aperil, Aprille, see § 32, n. 3, p. 88.

Note 1.—Interior -e- has given place to -in- in nyghtynge (§ 3), A.S. nithëgale.

Note 2.—Lovëly, sunnëlich, heuëntichë (§ 72) are false readings.

Note.—Of interior e’s due merely to the scribe (and of course not pronounced) many may be found among the variants registered in the Grammatical Chapter. Such are fremëschipe (§ 7), gladdeness, goodeness, sikeenenesse, wittenesse (§ 9).

§ 138. Syncope of other vowels than -e- and of consonants is rare (cf. ten Brink, § 263).

(1) The nicety of the question between bileue and bleue ‘manëre’ may be seen in the following lines. In all of them bleue may be read without doing violence to the measure, but in 6019 alone is bleue

1 Hardëly is for hardly.
2 Cf. dreffully, nedfully (§ 84).
compulsory, in 6841 here bileue is certainly more probable than here bleue (see p. 204), and in 1820 nomore . . . bileue is at least quite as satisfactory as namorë . . . bleue.

And whanne (when B) hem leste nomore || lat hem bileue, 1820 A (bileue B; CD have an entirely different line; Austin notes leue from E, but registers no variants from Cp. John’s).

And ever y wight han (haue CD) liberte (liberteis C) to bleue, 6019 (bleue CD; no note in Austin).

Intendeestow that we shul here (her D) bleue, 6841 (beleue CD Harl. 2392; no note as to Cp. John’s).

Syn (sythe D) that (om. D) we (3e C) seyden (-e CD) that (om. C) we wold (wolde CD John’s) to bleue, 6854 (beleue CD Harl. 2392).

Or al the nyght they most (moste Cp., mosten John’s, muste D, muste hem for they most C) bleuen there, 7543 (bleuen B, bleue C, bleue D Harl. 2392).

Another doubtful case is 4207, in which we must choose between bilynne (A.S. blinnan) and hiatus:

Of swiche (swich B, whiche C, wych D) sikes koude he (om. B) nought blynne (so ACD, bilynne B; no note in Austin).

(2) Of the A.S. bi lîfe the usual form in the Troilus is blyue, which occurs frequently (§ 88); but in

Thow shalt gon over (to) nyght and that blyue, 2598 (belyue C, bylyve E, as blyue D Hl. 2392; Cp. John’s appear to agree with A),

belyue (bylyue) is doubtless correct.

(3) The noun errand (A.S. ërende) occurs but once in the Troilus, in v. 1157, where the MSS. vary as to its form: erand was A, herand B, ernde D (Cp. John’s appear to agree with A; the leaf is cut out of C); cf. § 7.

(4) The treatment of rauysslien by the Troilus MSS. is interesting. In 5299, 5305, 7258, we have our choice between rauysshen (with syncope or slur) and rauysshe (with elision).

To (Go BC) rauysshe (rauyshe B, rauysch C, rauisshe D) here ne (om. C) kanstow (canst thou CD) not for shame, 5192 (stanza om. in Cp.; no variation noted from John’s).

To rauysshen (rauasche C, rauissh D, rauysshe John’s) hire but yf hereself it (om. C) wolde, 5299.

To rauysshen (rauasche C, rauissh D) here syn (sithe that D) thow hast not ben there, 5305 (no note in Austin).
That \textit{rauysshen} (rauisshe D, he raussch shal C) he shal yow with his speche, 6136 (no note in Austin).

From hen[ne]s (hennes B, henys C) forth the \textit{rauesshynge} of a (to rauysshen any B Cp. John's, to rauch ych any C, to rauissh any D) queene, 7258.

Cf. the verbal noun \textit{râueshyn}g (p. 29), \textit{râuysshîng} (p. 30).

(5) Other more or less certain instances of syncope (or slur) of vowels are seen in:

And \textit{finally} (fynali B, finially C, fynally G, final D) cause of wo that ye (the C, thow D) endure, 682 (no note in Austin).

Ne scryuenyssh (stryuenyshh B, coryously C, scryvenlish D, skryuenyscher G) or (ne C) \textit{craftily} (craftyliche C, crafty D Cp., craftili G) thow it (om. CE) wryte, 2111.

Vp to (Vnto G) the (om. B) \textit{holughnesse} (holughnesse B, halownesse G) of the seuenthe (seveneth G) spere, 8172 (cut out of C; stanza not in D; no note in Austin).

Lord trowe (trow B) ye a \textit{coueytous} (covetours D) or (om. CD) a (om. D) wrecche, 4215 (stanza not in G; no note in Austin).

Ye bothe for the \textit{seson} || and for the feste, 168 (BC om. the second for; D reads and eke for; no note in Austin). (Cf. 7275 C).

And yn here \textit{bosom} || the lettre doun he thraste, 2240 (And in her bosom doun the lettre cast D; no note in Austin).

O olde \textit{wholson} || and mysbyleued (myslyued B, mysbeleyyd C, mysleyyd D) man, 4992 (no note in Austin).

Note.—In \textit{Maugre Polydamas} or \textit{Monestoe}, 4713, we should doubtless read \textit{Mônestêd} (trisyllable) rather than \textit{Polydamas}: the movement of 4715, which rhymes with 4713, seems to be conclusive: \textit{Polyte or eck the Troian dawn Rapheo} (cf. also 4716). For \textit{Pândarys}, \textit{Pândryr}, when those forms occur, we should doubtless read \textit{Pândare}, \textit{Pândâre}, with elision or apocope of -\textit{e} (see § 139).

(6) Syncope \textit{th} of is certain in \textit{wher=whether} : \textit{wher}, 2348 (whel[r] A, wher(e) C), 2736 (wher(e) C), 2908 (wher(e) C), 3888 (wher(e) B, whether \textit{\dagger} C, wher D \textit{\dagger}), 5493 A (ther \textit{\dagger} B, wheider D \textit{\dagger}; stanza not in C), 5824 (whether \textit{(?)} C \textit{\dagger}, wheither D \textit{\dagger}), 6356 (wher(e) B); \textit{wher(e)}, 270 (C \textit{\dagger}, whethir \textit{\dagger} D);\textsuperscript{1} \textit{whether} (monosyl.), 2551 B (wher C, whether \textit{?} AD); cf. 7663 \textit{\dagger} D. In 7098 A \textit{wher} should be \textit{whether} (emended by Furnivall). In 2348, 2736, 5824, 6356, a vowel or weak \textit{h} (he, hym) follows, so that \textit{whether} would be possible (§ 136, \textit{f}), but 270, 2908, 3888, 5493, in all which consonants follow, are decisive. So far as the \textit{Troilus} is concerned, the syncopated form

\textsuperscript{1} The scribe of C mistook \textit{where} for the adverb of place.
"wher" seems to be confined to the unstressed part of the foot, but one cannot be certain of this, since it usually begins the verse (270, 2736, 2908, 3888, 5493, 5824, 6356).—For other, or, see note at the end of § 86.—Other words in -ther occasionally syncopate or slur -e- when the following word begins with a vowel or weak h, but there is no evidence that they lose th: see § 136, f. In 5309 C read whedyr thou art gon for whedyr thou art thus gon; in 372, the reading of C, neythor, which, if correct might suggest syncope of th, is pretty certain to be wrong.

(7) For the few instances in which euere or neuere before a consonant (not h) counts for but a single syllable, see § 90. We have no certain means of knowing whether there was syncope of -v- in these cases; if so, we should expect to find readings like ere, nere or er, ner (cf. where, wher, for clipped whether). A trisyllabic foot, however, seems more likely than ten Brink’s eur, neur, in spite of paraunter for parauenture and mysaunter for mysauenture (see § 27).

(8) The exclamatory benedite occurs three times in the Troilus, each time as a trisyllable: 780 f ( : be inf.), 3599 f ( : he), 3702. In 780 the spelling is bëndistë in B, bëndistë in Cp. John’s, beneëstë in C. This seems to settle the pronunciation of the trisyllabic clipped form as bëndistë rather than bencite (Child, § 96; Skeat, Prioresses Tale, etc., p. 141; ten Brink, § 263) or bendcite (ten Brink, ibid.). The dissyllabic benste (Towneley Myst., pp. 85, 99, quoted by Mützner, Poesie, p. 109) might come through bendistee as well as through bencite. (Cf. also Kölbing on Ipomadon A 4480 (p. 421), A. Kaufmann, Trentalle Sancti Gregorii, p. 55, Erlanger Beitr., No. 3).

(9) In one instance, comprehende, inf., is perhaps shortened to comprende: As muche ioye (ioy D) as herte (hert D) may (myght D) complende, 4529 (comprehende BCG, comprehend D, comprende Cp. John’s).

(10) Desesperir, despeyr (§ 34, VII.), desesperaunce (1615 f), despeyred p.p. (36 f, 42, 779), occur in the Troilus. There is naturally some confusion in spelling: thus A reads desespeyred in 36, 42, and desespered in 779, though the metre shows that the shorter forms are right; and C reads desperaunce in 1615, where the metre requires desesperaunce, A desper in 1091, where the metre requires desesperir.

§ 139. Apocope of consonants (cf. ten Brink, § 264).

I. Apocope of -n in verb-forms has already been referred to in § 133, e. See the material in the Grammatical Chapter under Present
Observations on the Language


II. On the so-called apocope of -eth in the Imperative Plural, see § 118.

III. Many proper names have lost a final -s, sometimes with further change of form (cf. ten Brink, § 264). The following list is thrown together for convenience, with no attempt at classification.1

Achille, 8169 f (-H D) (: wille n.); Achille thorough, 7922 (-es BCD).

But,—Achilles, 3216; Achillès, 1501 f (: douteles).

Adoön, 3563 (Adon BCD). [Adonis.]

Amète, 664 f (: bete inf. A.S. bétan).

Arge, 7168 f (: large); Arge, 7297. [Argos.] But,—Argus [the guardian of Io], as Argus eyed, 6121.

Déiphèbe, 8015, 8017 (Deyphèbe C). But,—Déiphèbus (before vowels, h, and consonants), 2487, 2493, 2507, 2510, 2528, 2571, 2581 (Déphèbus † D), 2634, 2686, 2778, 2787, 3068; Déiphèbus, Déphebus (before vowels, h, and consonants, and in rhyme) 2483, 2565 f, 2627, 2643, 2654, 2696 f, 2726 f, 2760, 3046 f (D †), 3063.

Dlomède, Dýomède, 6378 f (: blede inf.), cf. 6546 f, 7387 f, 7404 f, etc.; -e, 6409, 6469, etc.; -e he, 8120; -e here (gen. sg.), 7880; -e hane (ind. 2 pl.), 8040 (Diamede C); Dlomède || that, 6455 (Dý- B).

Dite, 146 f (Dyte CD) (: write pres. ind. 3 pl.). [Dictys.]

Horaste, 3639 f (: his laste); -e, 3648 (-ast D, -este C). [Orestes, cf. § 125.]

Iuuenál, 4859 (-H D).

Lukan and, 8155 (-can BD).

Mercûyre (trisyllable), 3571 (Mercure B, -ie C, -y D), 8190 A (-ie B); Mercûyre || of, 6684 (-ie B, Mercûyre † trisyl. D).

Mýda, 4231. [Midas.]

Omèr ||, 8155; Òmer or2, 146 (Omere C, Homere D).

Ouýde, 8155 (Oulde D).

Pandârè, 610 f (: care n.), 3445 †, 3947 f, etc.; Pandâré (before consonants), 2292 (-dâris C), 2360 (-dârus C), 2500 (-dârus C; D †), etc.; Pandârè (before vowels), 1063; Pandârè || herkène,

1 A consonant (not h) follows unless the contrary is noted. The list gives the forms of ABCD.

2 A of †.
§ 139. of Chaucer’s Troilus.

658 (-dàris C); Pandàre, 4397 (-dàrus C, d[à]re D), 5244 (-dàr answer[w] D), cf. 829, 1002, 1152, 2136, etc., etc.; Pandàre, 3471 (-dàrus C, -dàrè D), 5468 (-dàrè BD); Pàndare, 736 (-dàrys C †), 1038, cf. 1030, 2577, 2761, etc.; Pàndare || here (adv.), 868 (-dàrys C); Pàndare || herde, 876 (-dàrys C); Pàndare, 582, (Pàndàrè ‡; C †), 2646 (-dàrus C), 2957 (-dàrus C), cf. 5015, 5303, 6644; Pàndàre || I, 1044; Pàndàre || and, 5747 (Pàndàrus C, Pandàre in || BCp. John’s). But,—Pàndarûs, 618f (-is C), 1178f, 1205f, 1514f (-is C), etc.; Pàndarûs (before consonants), 1142 (-dàre D), 1170 (-dàris C, -dàrè D), cf. 761, 2024, 2227, 2311, etc.; Pàndarûs (before vowels), 1191 (-è C), 2022 (-è D), etc.; Pàndàrus (before h), cf. 6917, 6920, etc.; Pàndàrus (before consonants), 1575 (-dàris C, -dàrè D), cf. 2178, 8072; Pàndàrus hym, 2337 (-dàre D), cf. 2059 (he), 3050 (it)1; Pàndàrus || alweŷ, 2437 (-dàre B, -dàrûs || was C, -dàrè || was D); Pàndàrus || and, 932 (-dàrûs C, -dàrè D); Pandàrus || that, 3604 (Pàndàrûs BC, Pandàrè D).

Pôlyphète, Pôlyphète, 2552f (Polyfète D) (: swete 1 sg. : plete inf.), 2701f (: spete inf.); Pôlyphète || they, 2704 (-phètè || gun[ne] they ‡ D).


Polîyte, 4715 (Polîte B, Pôlyte D).

Pryàm may, 5583 (Priàm BC; D †); Pryàm (before consonants), 4804 (Priàm B, Priàm(us) D; C †)3; Pryàm (before vowels), 3633 (Priàm B, Priàme C), cf. 5868, 6647, 7589;4 Pryàm his, 4801 (Priàm BC, Priàm(us) ‡ here (gen. pl.) D). But,—Pryàmûs was, 4719 (Priàmus BD); Priàmus || and, 6055.

Quyrûne, 4687f (Qwyrine D) (: pyne n. : fyne inf.).

Santìppe, 4714 (Sartîpe ‡ D). [Xanthippus.]

Saturne, 3558f (: disturne inf. : turne inf.); -e, 3467 (D †) (first word in verse).

Stace, 8155f (: pace inf. A, space BD).

Virgile, 8155 (first word in verse).

A remarkable line is :

Virgile Ouyde (Ouide D) Omer Lukán (-can BD) and (or D) Stace, 8155 (cut out of C; no note in Austin).

1 Or, Pàndarûs it is.
2 Polymyte (Polymyt B, Polymites D) and many a (om. C) man to (al to C) skathe (no note in Austin).
3 First word in the verse.
4 Read saue-garde[c] in A.
§ 140. Synaeresis (cf. ten Brink, § 266).

In proper names: Synoûs (6210), Troûlus (568, 596, 834, 871, 1768, 2027, 2751, 3330, 3681 (?), 6035, 7404, 7483; but Troûlus is the usual form). Besides Crisedû (passim), Crisedê (1774, 4969), and Crisedê (169 f), there occur Crisedû (2509, 2729) and Crisedê (1734). Deû in Deiphèbus (Deiphèbus, Deiphèus, Deiphèbe) always makes one syllable in the Troûlus (see references in § 139, s.v.). Phetôn, 7027, was to be expected. There is no knowing how Chaucer pronounced the name of Pyrous, one of the sun’s team: the word occurs in 4545: That Piros (Pirors B, Pirus C †, Pirous D, Pyrous G; no note in Austin) and the swyte stedes thre.—Obeysaunce (with synaeresis of -ey-) is given by ten Brink as the only form of this word in Chaucer; but obeysaunce occurs in 3320.—In hêynous (2702) there is no synaeresis.

§ 141. Diaeresis (cf. ten Brink, § 267).

In Greek proper names in -eûs: Tideûs, Tydeûs, 6451, 7166 f (Thèdeûs C), 7295 (Thèdeûs C), 7843 f (thidîûs C), 7856 (thèdeûs C), 7864, 8109 f; Tûreûx, 1154 (Tûreux † B, Thèreûs D); Cappûneûs (7867) (Campûneûs D). Oénonû, 654 f (oonûme B, senome † C, Tûnome † D) is curious.

Note 1.—She told ek how Tydeûs (Tideûs BD, Cithidës † C) or she stente, 7848, and Tydeûs (Tideûs BD, Thedeûs C) some that down descended is, 7877, suggest the pronunciation Tideûs. The readings are not suspicious, and Mr. Austin’s collation contains no note on either line.—In the Hous of Fame, Orphëus (1203) occurs, and in B. Dukh, 569 Orpheus (dissyl.), but the Troûlus has only the latter (5453).—Imenûs (4100) is for Hymnæus.

Note 2.—In 4036 A sour is an error: the correct reading is sucre.

§ 142. Synizesis (ten Brink, § 268).

The Romance dissyllabic vowel combinations -ia-, -iav-, -ie-, -iou-, -uau-, -ue-, -ouw-, regularly retain their dissyllabic character in the Troûlus. Thus, -ia- in celestial (972, 976 f, 6203 f); special (260 f, 894 f, 974 f, 1048 f); marcial (6331 f); -iav- in alliaunce (4588 f);

1 MS. iou with sign of contraction (expand ioues or iouis f).
1 Var. Troûlus.
§ 142.]
of Chaucer's Troilus. 385

variance (5647 f, 7125 f, 8033 f); -ie- in audience (4732 f, 5207 f, 6598 f); conscience (554 f); experience (4125, 7620 f); pacience (7760); prescience (5649, 5660, 5683, 5726 f); supience (515 f); science (67, 7618 f); pacient (1083, 2984 f, 6249); Ariëte (6254 f, 7553 f); quite, qüete (p. 72); -iou- in abusio¹ (5652 f, 5722); affeccion, -iou (296 f, 4206, 4432 f, 4815); attricioun (557 f); auxsyous (6737 f (-ionys C)); champaion (2512); compassion (50 f, 467 f, 3245); complexities (6732 f); conclusion, -yon, -iou (466 f, 480 f, 1344 f, 2385 f, 4868 f, C, 5114 f, 5946 f, 7128 f, 7366 f, 7673 f); condicion, -iou (3659, 7194 f, 7330 f); confessioun (1613 f); confusion, -iou (4785 f, 4848); consolacioun (708 f); constellacioun (5407 f); correcioun (4174 f); curacioun (791 f); deliberacion (3361 f); destruction (141 f); denuocioun (187 f, 555 f); diffusioun (3138); discrecioun, dyscression (3736, 4176 f, 4868 f); disgression (143 f); disposition, -iou (1611 f, 6365 f, 7906 f); dyminucion (4177 f); entencion, -iou, -ioun (52 f, 211 f, 345 f, 683 f, 1343 f, 1380 f, 7130 f); execution (3363 f, 6367 f); illusioun (3883 f); illusions (6731 f); impressioun (298 f); impressions (6735 f (expressionony C)); mencion (7966); mocioun (5953 f); oppressioun (2503 f); opynion, -yon, -ioun, -you (347 f, 710 f, 790 f, 2382 f, 5115 f, 5650 f, 5657, 5687, 5692, 6157, 7221 f; passion, -iou (3882 f, 5367); permutacion (7904 f); possession (2504 f); presumpcion (213 f); proporcion (7191 f); protestacion, -iou (1569 f, 5951 f); redempcioun (4770 f); regioun (5405 f); reprehension (684 f); repressioun (3880 f); reuelacion (6729 f); salucioun, sauacioun (464 f, 1466 f, 1571 f, 1648 f, 6044 f (-cyone C)); suspicioun (1646 f, 8010 f); tribulacion (7351 f); delicious (6806); enuyous, ényous (1751, 1942, -2496, 4542); gracious (885 f); melodious (6940); religious (1844 f); -uau- in continuance (2919); -we- in casuel (5081); cruel, cruwel (9, 1422, 1427, 1520, 3224, 4292, 4537, 4687, 4756, 4958, 5492, 5506, 5846, 5851, 5854, 6962, 7085, 7259, 7831, 7897, 8048, 8114, 8124); cruelte, cruwelle (586 f, 1076 f, 5434 f); cruwellyche (5966, cf. 8119); mevet (6557); grovel (3553 (gruvel B, grewel D)); -uow- in vertuous (254, 891 (-fyous C)); voluptuous (6235 (-enous C)),

But there are a few cases of synizesis. Thus,—opnyon, -you (5635, 5700, 5702); entencioun (6995 f D; cf. 681 f C); furious² (1521 D; read furryes); voluptuous² (6235 C); signifiauncé (6725 f,

¹ The rhymes adoun, doun, ioun, show that the proper spelling of these words is in -iou. Other rhymes are lyon, preson, enchesoun, sermon, compareyon, Lameadoun.
² Easily corrected by comparison of MSS. so that the synizesis disappears.
Observations on the Language

7810; prescience (5673, 5724); perpetually (4596); preciously 1 (5252 C). In 1090, D reads tempuestuōs (for -tuōs?) but the true reading is tempestoūs. In corageus (7163 f) and vèngeaunce (8071) the e after g is not pronounced.

Of classical proper names Cynthia, -ea (6270, 7381), Lolliau, Lollyus (394 f, 8016 f), Leōn (6575), Palladion (153 f; cf. Palladiōn[e]'s feste, 161) occur without, Layus (1186), Palladion (164) with synizesis; cf. Mercurye, below. Monesteō, Rupheō, Phèbusē, rhyme with each other (4713, 4715, 4716).

The superlatives of adjectives of -y show no synizesis: frendlyeste, goodlyest[e], thristieste, worthiest, e (§§ 57, a, 59, a, 70, a). Synizesis occurs in the comparative adverb gladlyer (8140), but not in the comparative adjectives frendliour (885), wortheir (251).

In words in which the accented syllable is followed by -ie, -ien, -ied, -yngē, the i may become consonantal: in the case of -ie this synizesis is necessary in the interior of the verse. Thus augurye, contrārye (noun) (cf. § 51), consistōrie, furiye, letuārye, memōrie, Mercuāye, mysērie, stōrie, victōrie, omēlyye, parōlyye, tregēdie (§ 31); the plurals aduersāries, contrāries, furiyes, ladyes (so the genitive, § 36), stōries, victories (p. 103); mērye (p. 113); contrārye adj. (§ 51), transitōrie (3669 f). So also in the verb forms: pres. ind. 1 sg. herye (3793 f: merye pl.), warye (7741 f: contrarye); pres. ind. 3 pl. carye (7105 f: letuarye); inf. taryen (2104, 2707 f), varyen (2706 f), waryen (2704 f), vnbodye (7913 f: parodye); perf. part. yburyed (2396), heryed (4599, 4655), iheried, yheried (2849, 4614), 2 taried (2824, 7499, 7712). Astonyed and astoned (p.p.) both occur 2 (see 1512, 1688, 3931, 8091). In one instance the p.p. heried has three syllables: hérīed (4098). Forms in -yngē occur both with and without synizesis: buryngē (i.e. buryngē), tāryngē; hēriyngē, tāryyngē (see § 10). In 7225 we have tāriēth. In How thow me hast waryed on every side, 6947 (weryed BC, weryhed D, werreide G; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation), 3 werreyyd is no doubt the correct reading). 4

Note 1.—In ladyes ten Brink (§ 257) prefers syncope ladyes: see the variants in § 38, VII., above. Cf. also enimys and prophésies (?) (ibid.).

Note 2.—Ten Brink’s remark (§ 268) that seur (O. Fr. seūr) is always monosyllabic in Chaucer, seems to be true; but asērainece occurs (7622 f).

1 For loveliest, 6939 C, read least.

2 Cf. yhereyd, 2058 A (yhered BD, ihered C).

3 BG omit on, which should be supplied.

4 Compare the context, especially victorie and spille.
§ 143. Miscellaneous slurs and contractions.

This is is occasionally reduced to one syllable and written this. Thus,—1448 (this is D), 3778 (this seyd (is) D), 5552 (this is C, thus † D), 5855 (in A read haue ye for haue), 5936 (C †), 6514 (be † this C); this is, 419 † D, 5965 † C, 7357 † C. (Cf. Child, § 96; ten Brink, § 271; Skeat, Minor Poems, p. 304.)

For nas, nere, nil, nodde, see § 124; for noot, nyste, see § 123.
Is it and it is are both found in the Troilus: there seems to be one trustworthy example of each:

What wonder is it though he of me haue ioye, 1834. In this line ABD have is it (i.e. is 'it'), C indicates the pronunciation by by reading ist. (There is no note in Austin.) Cf. also what wonder ist, 6425 C, where ABD read is. In 6949, C has ist for is it, but the line is incorrect in this MS. Similarly was it for was it occurs in 3209 C, where, however, was it should be restored. These last two examples, though worthless as readings, have their value in determining the nature of the slur in 1834.

Ek (Eke G) som tyme it is a craft to seme fle (flee G), 747 ABG (Ek it is a craft for summe sumtyme to fle C, Eke it is craft to seme sle D; no note in Austin).

Note 1.—In What nede were it this preyere for to werne, 4773 AB (cut out of C; D †; no note in Austin), we may choose between nede were it and nede were it.

Note 2.—A considerable number of slurred its and is's disappear on a comparison of MSS. Thus,—telle it the, 599 C; be it, 2060 C (cf. 7293 C); is it (†), 1435 A; as it was, 3295 A; do it redresse, 6403 A; may it not, 7926 (cf. 2242 C †); help it, 1405 D; no thing it turnith, 1883 D; I wil it sow (?), 2289 C; can it, 5553 D; if it so be, 7059 C; when that it is ago, 1880 B (or that it is); seith it is (or it is) told, 3638 C; soth it is (or it is) seyd, 4054 C (cf. 6117 D); that it is (or it is) a folyc, 6688 D; certis it is (or it is) non, 6771 C; it is of, 7038 A; now it is wors, 7056 A; that is, 1431 D; ther is, 3707 D, 4570 D, cf. 3872 C; now is, 3389 A; weye is, 1702 A; what is, 681 C; wo yt, 694 C; lowe is, 6307 D; counselt it is this, 7655 D.

Thow art is slurred once:

Thow art (Thart B Cp. John's, Thu art C, Thou art D) wys (wys(e) B, wis(e) D) ynowh forthi do nought amys, 4471. Here the reading Thart found in B Cp. John's is particularly noteworthy.

Not so certain is the slur of at in

The grete sweigh (swough B, swey C, sweyf D, swigh G) doth (makith C) it to (om. G, than D) come (falle C, fal D) ul (om.
D) at onys (ones BDG), 2468 (no note in Austin). Here it is possible that either to (with G) or al (with D) should be omitted, in spite of the weight of MS. authority.

Of the running together of I (he, she) nē into Inv' (etc.), the Troilus affords no good example: see y nē dar(e), 2946 D (I dar ABC); I nē wolde, 5899 C (nolde AD, nold B) (cf. 1023 f C) ; he nē kyst, 812 C (AB om. ne); he nē may, 2212 C (he may ABD); sche nē wil, 6719 C (nyl AB, niH D). See Child, § 96; ten Brink, § 272, and Compl. to Pite, n. to v. 105, p. 177.

For at the B occasionally writes atte. Thus,—atte laste, 1230 B, 5097 B; att[e] laste, 916 B; atte lest, 7313 B; atte meeste, 7310 B; atte fulle, 209 B; see § 53. Cf. attother, 5096 B (at the other AC, at other D †); the tother side, 7050 A (that other BCD). Atton(e), 3407 f B (at oon A, at on C, at on(e) D), is different. In 7732 C, for at the wriyng read at writyn. In the phrase at erste (§ 54, n. 2) the readings are interesting,—at erst[e] AC, at erste BCD; att erst D †, atte erst[e] G: the reading of G suggests the conjecture that in firste vertu (§ 54, n. 2) the demonstrative the has been swallowed up by the preceding that (conjunction),—that the, that the, that.

Note 3.—A considerable number of miscellaneous slurs disappear on comparison of MSS. Thus,—I am, 720 A, 967 C, 1516 C, 2198 A, 4490 D; I haue, 6460 B, cf. 1384 A, 7549 B; thow hast (?) , 5153 D; he hast, 3917 C; ye haue, 5958 A, cf. 5469 B, 5538 C; ye wille, 6188 D; prei him, 2536 C; therefore as, 680 A (cf. 1321 C, 2268 D, 2341 A, 5031 C (!), 5562 D); lete us goo, 6888 D; in his armes, 4029 D (!), 5881 D; 1 now in a, 1550 B (cf. 363 D, 850 C, 1290 D (!), 1320 † D, 7658 D); the in thyn, 5306 C (D ?) ; here an ensample, 4863 A; down of here, 6876 A (cf. 474 C, 1004 D, 1945 D, 2052 A, 2263 D, 3855 D, 5346 C, 6513 C, 6733 D, 6790 C, 7275 C, 7825 A); and ye shal, 7665 A (cf. 7629 D); plànate or a, 5429 D; sorce or on, 641 C; wcll for I, 613 C (cf. 1692 D, 3151 D, 3689 B, 5320 D, 6124 D, 7128 A); 2 nate at a bene, 6726 D; and at after none, 7493 D; can not thankes, 3840 C; yow with, 3474 D. So in apparent examples of slurred that; 3 whil that (quasi schillt), 468 CD; so that (quasi so), 2247 D; think that at (quasi thinkt) 2824 A; wcll that this (quasi wcll), 2994 A; cr that he (quasi cr'), 4435 A; when he that (quasi whan'), 7516 A; cf. 1437 B, 2805 C, 3073 C, 3208 A, 5138 D, 5279 C †, 5350 A, 5986 C, 6035 AB, 6170 † C, 6180 D, 6483 D, 7073 B, 7541 D, 7662 C, 8051 D. In 953 the right reading is doubtless he that parted is (John's ?) rather than he that departed (AB) with slur of that. So also in apparent examples of slurred and: All day for lone and in swich a maner cas, 1542 C; cf. 1239 C, 1941 C, 2184 D, 2604 C, 3651 D, 4212 C, 4232 C, 4586 D, 5770 C, 6615 D (!), 7151 D; see also the apparent slur of than in leuer(e) than ben, 7287 B. In 6139 C I

1 In 1037 A, 4047 C, the slur on his, in his may be avoided, if Troilus be read as a dissyllable (§ 140); but in both lines his is an interpolated word.
2 In 2582 no one will hesitate between What wolt thou seyn if I for Ælwyn sante, and for Ælwyn.
3 In most cases the corruption consists in the insertion of a superfluous that.
schal ben has the time of two syllables (cf. Scotch *'se*), but the line is manufactured by the corrector of C.

Note 4.—It is just possible that in 4168, 4984, the scribe of B intended thought for a shortened *though* that.

Note 5.—Through (A.S. *purh*) is variously spelled (*thurgh, thorough, thour*, etc.), but is always monosyllabic, except perhaps in 7846: *Thorugh* (Thurgh B, Of C, Thurgh D) his (hire C, om. D) wol I yow (om. Cp.) telle. Now and then one or another MS. seems to make the word disyllabic elsewhere, but comparison affords an easy correction (see the MSS. in 1444, 4130, 4738, 7132).

§ 144. The extra syllable before the cæsura.

In many verses of the *Troilus* the retention of an unaccented syllable (-e, *-eth*, etc.) before the cæsura would convert a masculine cæsura into a feminine, and produce the phenomenon known as the extra syllable before a cæsural pause (cf. Skeat, *Prioresse Tale*, pp. lxi ff.; ten Brink, § 307, 3). In these cases (with the rarest exception) it is possible to reduce the verse to the normal movement by apocope -e or by syncopating the vowel of the syllable in question (-*eth*, etc.). In the Grammatical Chapter apocope has accordingly been assumed for such cases (in accordance with my own conviction); but, since the question cannot be regarded as settled, it is perhaps worth while to give a special section to the matter. In the following list the aim has been to enumerate all verses which the advocates of the extra syllable theory could reasonably adduce in support of their contention. Examples in which the verse may be made regular by eliding -e (i.e. in which the word after the cæsura begins with a vowel or weak h) have of course been left out of account.1 The readings of D have been disregarded throughout the section, and the same is true of trivial variations, except when they concern the point under consideration.

I. Cases of -e.

I. Weak nouns (§§ 2, 3):

This litel spot of *erthe* || that with the se, 8178 (erth B).

But now of *hope* || the kalendes bygynne, 1092.

For neuer sith the *tyme* || that she was born, 1228 (tyde C; B om. the).

Right in that selue *wyse* || soth for to seye, 3197 (C om. for).

So *bole* (§ 15, p. 47):

Right yn the white *bole* || so it bytydde, 1140 (bool B); similarly 4901.

1 Such are 14, 44, 88, 107, 116, 118, 160, 176, 180, 189, 224, etc., etc.
Observations on the Language

Note 1.—In 889, read rather herte || semeth than herte || semeth; in 6823, rather herte || bereth than herte bereth.

Note 2.—For wil or wilfe (sbst.) before a pause, see 228, 861, 1564, 3465, 4862, 8000 (cf. p. 4).—The pleye / occurs as the first foot of 5528, but see p. 9. Cf. also Wel-come my knyght / || my pes / my suffisaunce, 4151, where there is of course no caesura after wel-come.

II. Masculine nouns having -e or -a in A.S. (§ 6):
He loketh forth by hegge / || by tree / by greue, 7507 (hegge B, hegis ‡ C, hegges D, hege G). Better,—forth || by. As to the form hegge, see p. 10.

From haselwode || there Ioly Robyn pleyde, 7537.
Tydeus some / || that doun descended is, 7877. See p. 10, where ten
Brink's remark (§§ 260, 261) on some is corrected.

III. Feminines in A.S. -u (§ 8):
And seyde || here in this closet dore || withoute, 3526.¹
Here at this secre trappe dore || quod he, 3601.
To scornen loue || which that so soone kan, 234.

Blyssyd be loue || than kan thus folk concute, 308. Other instances
of loue || with the caesura after the second foot may be seen in 16,
46, 436, 677, 744, 1129, 1759, 1789, 1823, 1866, 1912, 3014, 3359,
3622, 4103, 4158, 4433, 4830, 5084, 5243, 5761, 6296, 6314, 6844,
7443, 8039. So perhaps, 518: Of hem that loue lysed febely for to
auaunce. Cf. also 3851 ‡ A.

At which the god of loue || gan (to) loken rowe, 206 (BCCp. John's
om. to).

Kan he wel speke of loue || quod she I preye, 1588 (of loue || I sow
preie C ‡).

Ayens the god of loue / || but hym obeye, 6530. So perhaps, But al
so cold yn loue || towards the, 523 (or,—cold || yn); Thow koudest
neuere yn loue || thyn selueng wysse, 622 (or,—neuere || yn); I that
haue yn loue || so ofte assayed, 646; My name of trouthe yn loue ||
for euere mo, 7418 (d'Lambda C) (or,—trouthe || yn).

In loue || for which yn wo || to bedde he wente, 1147.

Of loue || that made hire herte fressh and gay, 2007 (Of loue wich that
made his herte gay C).

For loue || that every other day || I faste, 2251.

In loue || but as his suster hym to plese, 2309 (second caesura after
suster ?).

To feffe with || youre newe loue || quod he, 8052.

Note.—In For goddes loue what seith it tellit it vs, 1181, scan it || rather than
loue ||. In Refuseth not to loue for to be bonde, 255, scan not ||. In Aquyte

¹ Cf. And they that layen at the dore withoute, 3587 (lay A, leye C).
of Chaucer's Troilus.

hym wcl for goddes love quod he, 2235, and Bysechung hym for goddes love that he, 3004, the cesura is after the second foot, but there is also a pause after love.—Made louse withinue hire (hir G) for to myne, 1762 ABCG, appears to be a 9-syl. verse; D reads Made love within her hert for to myne (there is no note in Mr. Austin's collation).—In 4586, 4587, Love that (with a pause in the sense after love) begins the verse.

IV. Monosyllabic feminine nouns with long stem-syllable (§§ 9, 11):

On his byhalue || which that vs alle sowle sende, 2819. But perhaps we should read (with GCp.) : On his half which that soule vs alle sende (see variants, p. 17, under halue).

But to thyn help || yet somwhat kan I seye, 672 (helpè || sumwhat C).

(Or,—help yet || !)

Ne to thyn owen help || do bysynesse, 795 (helpe C).

To fynde vnto oure helpe || the beste weye, 5934 (help B).

God for thi might || so leue it wel to fare, 7322. Cf. 8151.

Withouten neede || there I may stonde in grace, 1799.

And hast [the] lesse neede || to countrefete, 2617 (ABC om. the, but GCp. John’s have it ; B om. to ; C inserts to before countrefete).

For now is neede || sestow not my destresse, 2888.

I shal to morwe at nyght || by est or west, 7114. Cf. 7544.

But so nyl not an ok || when it is cast, 2474. Cf. 2420.

In thus good plit / || lat now non heuy thought, 3981. Similarly 4396.

And of my speed || be thyn al that sweetnesse, 1036 (speede / B).

Thow be my speed || fro this forth and my muse, 1094 (speede / B).

(Or,—forth ||.)

And men cryede in the strete || se Troylus, 1697.

Thenk (that) al swych taried tild || but lost it nys, 2824 (BC om. that ; C has on for al).

And have my tround || but thow it fynde so, 831 (trouthè || but thou fynde it so C).

And be my tround || the kyng hath sones tweye, 1255.

And al the while || which(e) that I yow deuyse, 3277 (C om. yow).

A woful wight || to han a drery feere, 13 (see p. 33).

That in this wold || ther nys so hard an herte, 5802. Cf. 6308, 7085, 8060. So also :

And by my thryft || my wendyng out of Troye, 6292 (thrifte B). Cf. Now by my thryft (thryfte B) quod he that shal be sene, 3713, where the caesura comes after he.

Note 1.—Several of the examples just cited have little or no significance; see § 11. The same may be said of lines in which a verbal noun in -ege, -ege (§ 10) is followed by the caesura or a strong pause : see 1089, 4808.

Note 2.—In 4061, And now swetnesse || semeth the more swet(e), the is
clearly to be omitted (with BCCp. John’s): otherwise, we should probably read sweetness || someth.

V. Masculine and neuter nouns that sometimes take an irrational -e or a dative -e (§ 14).

In several instances in which a dative -e might perhaps be expected to occur, but in which the caesura directly follows, no -e is pronounced (and sometimes none is written). That most of these instances have no significance, however, will be seen by comparing them with the idioms discussed on pp. 36-37.

Vp on his bed || but man so sore grone, 1642 (bedde / B).

He softe into his bedde || gan for to slynke, 4377. Cf. 5017, 5395, 6644, 6657, 6772. In 1152 a-bedde || loses its -e by elision or apocope before half.

Hath right now put to flyght || the Grekes route, 1698.

For ay the ner the fyr || the hotter is, 449.

Wel neigh doun of (on † A) here hors || she gan to sye, 6545.

But by thi lyf || be war and fast eschuwe, 2103 (or,—war || ?).†

Lest yn this town || that folkes me dispise, 6002 (folk[es] C). Cf. 7486, 7517.

Out of the wey / || so priketh hym his corn, 219 (woye C). Cf. 2388, 6864, 7025.

Monosyllabic neuters with short stem-syllable stand on a somewhat different footing (see p. 38, n. 1):

But at the yate || there she sholde oute ryde, 6395 (see p. 46).

Thorough more wode and col || the more fyr, 2417 (cole C, colé || more B, or col || the Cp. John’s). (See p. 54.)

But al that losse || ne doth me no dishese, 4751 (los B; cut out of C; no note in Mr. Austin’s collation). (See p. 58.)

The same may be said of hewe (p. 42) and tere (p. 45):

It shewed in his hewe || bothe euuen and morwe, 487 (hewe || on C).

For every teer || which that Criskeyd asterte, 3912 (tere B).

Compare also weye, wey (but see p. 46):

For which that weye || for ought I kan espye, 6131 (wey B; om. † C).

Note.—It is perhaps worth mentioning that the two instances in which bow, bourgh occurs as a monosyllable, are before the caesura (the other cases are in the phrase to bowe); see p. 39.

VI. Ferdé, hedé (§ 15); smert (p. 64):

Whi sholde thanne of fered || thyn herte quake, 5269 (for ferd C). (Or,—thanne || ?).²

† In 7637, scan rather day || than with lyf ||.

² Cf. 6073, where the right reading is perhaps for-fered (pp.) || out (for fered ACp., for férdé || out B, for fer C †).
Now taketh heed || for it is for to done, 7266 (heed / B).

The proper form of the noun smert seems to have no -e (see p. 64):
Ney ded for smert || gan bresten out to røre, 5035 (smerte B). In
6780 smert is perhaps a verb (= smerteth) : if so, the caesura follows
harm.

VII. Romance nouns which have a right to -e (§§ 21, 22):
As man / bryd / beste / || fissh / herbe and grene tre, 2852 (best B).
A broch || that he Crisoyde yaf || that morwe, 8024 (broche B ; C †).
Was there noon other broche || yow lyste let, 8051 (broch B). In
8053 scan rather : But thilke broche that I || with terys wete, than
broche ||. The caesura of 4212 : But we I wot a broche gold of
asure, is not quite certain (broche || ?).

To morwe. || allas. that were a fayre || quod he, 3692 (fair B, fayr C).
Yf that I hadde grace || for to do so, 3770 (gracie haul || B ; C om.
grace †).
And seyde Nece || who hath arayed thus, 2272 (nece || ho C).
And seyde Nece || se how this lord can knele, 3804 (B † ; nece || how
C).
But alwey good[e] nece || to stynte his wo, 1468 (goode nece || alwoy
to C).

In 1340 read nece || alwey (with BCCp. John’s) instead of nece || lo A.
That in science || so expert was that he, 67.
That prescience || put falllyng necessarie (l. necessaire), 5683.

God wot the text || ful hard is soth to fynde, 4199 (tixt † is C).

Note 1.—Ioye ||, 4478, suffers elision before halt. In 4535 : This ioye ||
may not yurete ben || with inke, we should perhaps cut out the prefix y-
(with BC John’s), but Cp. has i-writen. In 6098, read ioye || and the
amorous daunce.

Note 2.—The reading is doubtful in 5504 : Payne torant (burnement † C)
pleynt (pleynte B, om. C) wo and (om. BCp. John’s ; and eC C) distresse.

Note 3.—In 4592 : Bynd this acord || that I have told and tellt (acorde B),
acord may be referred to the corresponding O. Fr. form (see p. 74). Pres-
in the sense of crowd never has an -e in the Troilus (see p. 74).

Note 4.—In Touchynge thi letter || that theow art wys ymowch, 2103, we may
omit that with BC (no note in Mr. Austin’s collation). In Forjaef and
with here vencle || gan for to pleye, 4420, we may omit for before to with
BC (no note in Mr. Austin’s collation).

Note 5.—In 2917 sire (first word in the line and followed by the usual
vocative pause) apocopates its -e (syr B)

VIII. Proper names :
Vnto Crisyele || that heng here hed ful lowe, 1774.
And folwe alwey Crisyele || thi lady dere, 4969 (or, —alwey ||).
This Diomede || that ladde here by the bridel, 6455.
And Poliphete || they gonnen thus to waryen, 2704.
Cf. Pandare || which that sente was || from Troylus, 5468 A.
Particularly noteworthy is:
Fro Meleagret || that made the bor to bled, 7878 (Meleagre B, meliagre C; no note in Mr. Austin’s collection).

IX. More (sbst. and adv., §§ 64, 86), worse (adj., § 64):
Nor axen more || that may do yow disese, 1232.
By god I shal nomore || com here this wyke, 1515.
For euere more || myn herte lust to reste, 1915 (mo BC). Similarly 4243, 4946.

Withoue more || to (is † B) Troylus yn thei went, 2751.
I kan no more || but that I the wole serue, 3232. Similarly 4035, 4115, 4156, 4654, 7731.
There was no more || to spoken (l. skippen with BECP. John’s; schepe C) nor to trauce, 3532. (Or,—skippen || t.)
He dar nomore || come here ayen for shame, 6130 (nomor B).

Note 1.—In And if I more dorste prey yow as now, 2521 (dorste prey e as now C), read probably dorste prey[e] rather than dorste prey[e]. In For ay thurst I (I prestes † C) the more that I it dryneke, 406, the position of the caesura is probably more ||.

Or loue the vers || though wrehches on it crien, 1950.
That hym is wors || that is fro wele ythrowe, 5144.
For now (it) is wors || than euere yet I wende, 7056 (BC om. it).

Note 2.—The construction in 5144 and 7056 may be perhaps be regarded as adverbial (§ 86).

X. Monosyllabic adjectives in the “definite” use (§ 53):
That at the laste || the dede slep hire hente, 2009.
But at the laste || this woful Troylus, 5034.
Til at the last || this sorwful wyght Criseyde, 5914 (laste BC).
Al be I not the firste || that dide amys, 7430.

Note.—In 3407 the laste || suffers elision before herof.

XI. The plural of monosyllabic adjectives and perfect participles (§§ 67-70):
Hath lordes olde / || thorugh which withinne a throwe, 7824 (old C).

In the following instances the adjective is in thepredicate and the subject refers to a single person (cf. § 69, b):
Now be not wroth || my blod my nece dere, 1679.
And ben so loth || to suffren hym yow serue, 2996.
Now beth al hol || no lengere ye ne pleyne, 3010.
Ye ben to wys || to do so gret folye, 3709 (C has swich for so gret).
And beth wel war || ye do no more amys, 4022.
And ye so feyr || that eueriich of hem alle, 6533.

Note.—In If ye be swych || youre beaute may not streche, 1426, ye refers to Criseyde, and swichè would be surprising (swichè || B).
In the two examples of al that follow, we cannot be quite certain that we are dealing with a plural (see § 80):
This is a word for al || this Troylus, 4502.
And of the furys al || she gan hym telle, 7861 (furys also ? C).
Perhaps we should read als.

Note 2.—In Crisyeyle which that ait these thynges say, 2350 (al B ; C †), and
Crisyeyle which that alle these thynges herde, 3641 A, perhaps the only caesura is after Crisyeyle.
3225 perhaps runs: And this || yn alle the temples || of this town. 7857 may be scanned She told ek || al the prophesies
by herte (al B, al the profecy ‡ C).

Monosyllabic perfect participles (§ 68):
Of wommen (whom † men C) lost || thorugh fals and foles bost, 3140.
O nece pes || or we be lost || quod he, 3937. (Or,—nece ||.)
Now be ye (sing. in sense) kaught. || now is there but we twye, 4049.
This wordes (om. C) seyl (seyde BC) || she on here armes two, 5573.
Of things that ben wyst || byfore that tyde, 5739 (wiste B; cut out in C).

XII. The pronoun hire, here, dat. acc. sg. (pp. 152-3).
Since hire is seldom or never disyllabic in the interior of the verse, cases of apocope before caesura present no interest. Such may be seen in 315, 370, 443, 454, 2307, 3497, 4820, 4827 (herè || do A), 5089, 5100, 5149, 5192, 5299, 5305, 6480, 7599; cf. also 7948 (see p. 153).

XIII. Adverbs.
For the reason just mentioned, no interest attaches to here, there before caesura (cf. § 89): examples may be seen in 187, 2904, 4844, 6111, 6542, and perhaps in 4658. Whanne in : But ryght as whanne || the sonne shyneth bright, 1849 (when B, whan C) (see § 88) is also of no account. More interesting are: And namelyche || my dere herte ye, 5996 (nameliche B, namely C); Secundelich || ther yet deyneth noon, 2826 (secound[e]ly B, secundeli C) (§ 84). In the following the constructions are not certainly adverbial:
For hygh and low || withouten ony drede, 3260 (see § 82, n. to lowe).
This short and pleyne || theffect of my message, 5552 (pleyn C).

XIV. Present Indicative of Verbs (§ 92, V.) :
But wel I rede || that by no maner weye, 495.
As thus I mene || that ye wolde be my stere, 4133 (mene || ze wol ze
BCp., menë || wil ze C).
Wherfor I seye || that from eterne yf he, 5640.
I seye || that yf the oppynion || of the, 5692 (or,—yf || ?).
So how I deye || ye ny1 me not rescowe, 6594 (dye B; αλλως C).
Compare the plural:

§ 144. of Chaucer's Troilus.
For which men say || may nought disturbed be, 1707 (seyne B, seyn C).

XV. Present Subjunctive of Verbs (§ 111):
But if that I consente || that it so be, 413 (BC om. so).
And yf the lyke || than maystow vs saluwe, 2101.
Wher so yow lyste || by ordal or by oth, 3888 (list B, Whether 3e wolde C).
And yf she write / || thou shalt ful soone (soon B) see, 7662 (And zif that sche write thow shcat some se C).
Or yf you lyst || no manere vpon me se, 7751 (3e lust no more C).

Note.—In the case of the impersonal lyst it is not always possible to
distinguish the apocopated subj. 3 sg. from the syncopated ind. 3 sg.
See the following verses, in which the verb in question is followed by t.e
cesura : 1407, 2245, 2865, 3215, 3215, 6295, 7960, 7780, and cf. § 95.

XVI. Weak Preterites (§§ 99, 102):
Or he me tolde || who myght ben his leche, 1656 (told / who myghete
B, told ho my3te C). (Or, perhaps,—tolde || who myghte).
That to hire seluen she seyde || who (ho C) yaf me drynke, 1736.
And gan to iape and seyde || lord so ye swete, 2028 (seydë || lord 3e
smete † C).
For which she thoughte || that loue al come it late, 3310 (tought B).
(Or perhaps better,—love ||.)
What that she thought || whan that he seyde so, 3418 (thought[e] ||
when B, thou3te || whan C ; BC om. the second that).
For wel he thoughte || ther was noon other grace, 5614.
Abedde brought || whan that hem bothe lest, 4521 (C om. hem).

Note 1.—In 4367 : He seyde farewel myn herte and dere swete,¹ the cesura
is of course after farewel, but there is a pause in the sense after seyde.
Note 2.—In 5486 : As he that felte pyte (pittie Cp.) on every syde, felte
pyte || on (with a slur of the final -e in pyte) is more probable than felte ||
pyte on.²—In 7088 : So tendrely she wepte || bothe ewe and morwe, we
cannot be sure that wep (strong pret.) is not what Chaucer wrote (§ 103).
In 4998 : That I the hadde (subj.) || where as I wolde in Troye, BCCp.
John's omit as.
Note 3.—For answerede, etc., see II., v., n. 2, below.
Note 4.—The reading made || in 312, is not supported by any MS. (see
variants, p. 245).

Compare also :
As she best bowde / || she gan hym to disporte, 2758 BCp. (§ 123,
IV.).

As Crassus dide || for his affectis wronge, 4233 (§ 124, IV.).

XVII. Imperatives:

¹ Instead of herte and dere swete read dere herte swete with BCp. John's. C has
dere h. s. without my.
² As he that pite hadde B; cut out of C.
Go *loue*. || for old(e) ther wil no wight of the, 1481. (§ 115, III.)

And *sey* || thou mayst no lengere || vp endure, 2603 (seye B, sei C). (§ 115, V.)

Now spek / now *prey* / || now pitously compleyne, 2584 (*sing.*) (preye B, preye || and † C). (§ 116, IV.)

Now *vnderstonde* || for I yow nought require, 1443 (B † om. nought; vndyr-stond C). (§ 118, IV.)

And seyde *awake* || ye slepen al to longe, 1630. (§ 118, IV.)

Now *stynle* || that ye no longere || on it honge, 2327 (§ 118, IV.)

And seyde atodke || ye slepen al to longe, 1630. (§ 118, IV.)

Now *tijnte* || that ye no longere || on it honge, 2327 (§ 118, IV.)

XVIII. Infinitive (§ 119, X.):

A man to *loue* || til that hym lyst to leuo, 686 (C \ om. that).

Nomore to *speke* || for trusteth wel that I, 2511 (C has of this for to speke).

Now doth hym *sitte* || now gode nece dere, 3817 (hardly,—now ||). But BCGCp. John’s omit the second now ; D has it.

I may here have || right sone douteles, 4764. (§ 124, VI.)

That it shal *come* / || but they seyn that therofer, 5661. Similarly 5662.

That thing to *come* || be purueyd trevely, 5717. Similarly 5726.

I moste *come* || for wheder sholde I gon, 6023 (com C).

Than nal [s]he *come* || that may me blisse brynge, 7021.

She wolde *come* || ye but she nyst[e] whanne, 7791.

So myght I *wene* || that thynges alle and some, 5730.

The folk wol *wene* || that thou for cowardys, 6775 (seyn † C).

The existence of the monosyllabic infinitive form *seyn* (§ 119, XIII.) makes the following examples inconclusive:

That is to *seye* || for the am I becomen, 3095 (seyne C). Similarly 3126 (seyn B, seine C).

This dar I *seye* || that trouthe and diligence, 4139 (seyn C). Similarly 4779 (seyn C).

The gerundial forms to *sen*, to *seyn*, and to *don* are too common elsewhere in the verse to make the following examples before the caesura of any significance (§ 119, XIII.):

He was to *sen* || fulfild of heigh prowessse, 1717. Cf. 3384, 3910, 4972.

That is to *seyn* || that I foranye al this, 4020 (say C). Similarly 6037 (seyne C), 7261 (seyne C).

And soth to *seyn* || she nas nat al a fo, 1769 (say C).

That what to *done* || for ioye vnethe he wyste, 4095 (don B).
II. CASES OF UNACCENTED TERMINATIONS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

I. -eth in the pres. ind. 3 sg. (cf. § 94, II.): 1
Fro whennes cometh || my walyng (wele t C) and my pleynte, 408. Whan that it cometh || but wylfully it weylen (weyuen BC, which is right), 1369. That ofte ycleped cometh || and endeth peyne, 5166. Much more energetic than ycleped || cometh. For al that cometh || comth by necessite, 5620 (not in C). Nough[t] that it comth (comes B) || for it purueyed is, 5715 (not in C). Whan (Til C) that she cometh (come C) || the which (and that C) shal (may C) be right[t] sone, 6754. Cf. also 7516. Wher it bycometh || lo no wyght on it sporneth, 1882. Men seyn || the suffraunt overcometh || parde, 6246 (C t). (Or perhaps,—suffraunt ||) Ek wostow how it fareth || on (of BC) som seruice, 956. And yet me of-thynketh (mathynketh B) || that this auaunt me (may B) asterte (sterete B), 1043 (cut out of C). Whan that hym (om. B) thenketh (om. B) || a womman bereth (berth B) here heighe, 1486. That wher he cometh (comth B) || he pryss and thank hym geteth, 1461. Which that myn vncle svereth (swerth B) || he mot be ded, 1739. Al that now loueth || asoner sholde lepe, 4605. Criseyde loueth || the sone of Tydeus, 8109 (cut out of C).

Note 1.—So perhaps in 1292 : To suche as hym thenketh || able for to thrayne, but the casura may as well come after able.

Note 2.—There are no certain examples in the inv. pl. owing to the instability of the ending in that form (§ 118), but note : But yet (om. C) I seye arysset || and lat vs dauencc, 1306 (perhaps,—seye || arysset). The same may be said of the pres. ind. 3 pl. in -eth (§ 97) : see As ony men that lyueth (-en B, leyn C) || under the sonne, 1259, and Which that men clepeth (-yn C) || the (om. BC) wode ialousye, 7576. Lyth 3 sg. (§ 94, III.) and seyth 3 sg. (§ 94, II.) and 3 pl. (§ 97) have, for obvious reasons, not been taken into account.

1 Seyth ind. sg. (§ 94, II.) and pl. (§ 97) has been left out of account.
II. -est:
Thorough Troye renneست || ay (om. C) downward to the see, 6211.

Note.—Lyst, scyst have been left out of account (see § 93).

III. -en:
Thenne wolde I hopeю || the rathere for to spede, 865 (hope rathere C).
That men hem wrien (wren B) || with asshen[n] (asshen B, asschin C)
pale and dede, 1624.
I kan not trowen || that she (om. B) wol write ayen, 7661 (trowe ||
sche C).
Ne yf she kan here-seluen (self BC) || distorben it, 5765.
For examples before a vowel or h, see § 136, e.

Note.—In the examples before a consonant, it is of course possible to read -e for -en (here-self for here-seluen; in the examples before vowels, -e (elided).

IV. -es :
(i.) In the plural:
Both of his ioies (ioie B Cp., ioy D) || and of his cares colde, 264.
The sg. ioie is probably right.
By alle the othes || that I haue to yow sworn(e), 1384 (BCD om. to).
The omission of to (BCD) gives othēs || that. Cp. John's appear to have to.
To make amendes (amend B, an † ende C, amendis D) || of so cruel a
dede, 1427. No note in Austin: amendes is probably right.
It is oon of the thyngeys (-is CD) || that (om. BCp.) furthereth most,
2453 (D has that)
In gentil hertes || ay redy to repaire, 2847 (C cut out). D om. ay,
but Cp. John's agree with A.
Swynch argumentz (-t3 B, -tis CD) || ne (om. CD) ben not worth a bene,
4009. (No note in Austin). Cf. 466.
That elementes (-t3 B, -tis C) that ben so discordable, 4595.
The ambassiatours (Thembassadours B, Theem-bassatourys C) || to
Troye streyght thei (om. B) wente, 4802.
Thembassadours (The embassadours C) || ben answered for fynal, 4807.
Theschaunge (The chaunge C) of prisoners (presoneris C) || and al this
nede, 4808.
O ye loveres (-ers B, -eris C) || that heythe vpon the whiel, 4985.
So gan the peynes || here hertes for to twyste, 5791 (peyne B, peine D ;

4αλλωγ C †). (No note in Austin.)
Of al the (that B) londes (lond BC, londe D) || the sonne on shyneth
shene, 5901. (No note in Austin.)
His enemys (enemyis C) || and in here hondes falle, 6615.
Observations on the Language

Note.—In some of the lines just quoted it will be observed that the reading is doubtful.—In 7839, read sykes sore || adown rather than sore sykes || adown. In 8154, the question is between steppes || and seest or steppes and seest: the latter scansion gives a more satisfactory line. Knees is of course a monosyllable in 8025 (knees || and) and 3922 (knees || and).

(ii.) -es gen. and adverbial:
Shal han me holly heres || til that I deye, 5106 (C †). See § 74.
Ther aynes (aøyen B, azen C) || answere I thus anoon, 1454.
Thenk here ayens (a($)en B) || whan that the sturdy ok, 2465.
Or she vs bothe at ones || er that ye wende (at onys || or), 2961.
So as we shulle togederes || euere dwelle, 5984 (shal togideres B, That we schal eueremore togedere d[w]elle C).
He hadde in herte always (alwayes B, alwoy C) || a manere drede, 6415.

Note.—The variability of form in adverbs in -es (§ 91) renders most of the examples given above of little significance in the question of the extra syllable.

V. -ed in the perfect participle; -ede in the preterite:
Ful wel beloved / || and wel men of here tolde, 131.
As he was woned (wont BC) || and of hym self (seluyn C) to (om. C) iape, 3397. Cf. woned || to, 4697. See § 121, III
Thow mysbelued || and (om. C) enuous folye, 3680.
For when men han wel cried || than wol they rowne (let hem rowne C), 5249.
That ben purveyed || but nedely as they seyn, 5668 (not in C).
That ech(e) hym louede (loued B) || that loked on his face, 1071.
And ay the peple cryede (cried C) || here cometh oure ioye, 1728.
I that louede (hauede C) || yn lust and in plesaunce, 5155.

Ne (And B) though I lyyede (-ed B) || vnto the worldes ende, 6242.

Note 1.—In 6947 werreyed should doubtless be read (warved A, werved BC, host me werreyed D, haste me werreyde G): How thow me hast werreyed || on (om. DG) cuery syde. (Austin makes no note.)

Note 2.—Wherever the pret. sg. of answeren occurs in the form answerèd before cæsura and the word after the cæsura begins with a vowel or weak h, we may read rather answerèd than answerèd: there is then no question of the extra syllable (see, e.g., 3767, 3974, 4019, 5351, 6777, 7491, 7533), For answerède ||, cf. 4498, 5042, 5783, 7638; for answerède ||, cf. 1964 (†). 6688.

In one line, however, the retention of a light extra syllable before the cæsura seems to be unavoidable, if the reading of the best MSS. is to be followed:

Nentendement 1 considere 2 || ne 3 tonge 4 telle, 6358.5

1 So AECp. John's Selden B 24; Nintendement Durh.; Ne entendement D Phillipps 8252; Ne † mendement B.
2 So ABcp. John's; considere D, consider Durh. Seld.; consider Ph.; considered † E.
4 tovy Durh.; tony Seld.
5 Non † tendement nor tonge considere or tell Harl. 2392. Leaf cut out of C.
Cf. And I ther (om. C) after || gan rome (roman B) to and fro, 1601 (rome ?).

Less certain than 6358 (for slurs are easy) are:
What wonder is it (ist C) || though he of me haue ioye, 1834. For ist see § 143.

And yn here bosom || the lettre doun he thraste, 2240 (And in her bosom doun the lettre cast D; no note in Austin).

Ye bothe for the seson || and for the feste, 168 (BC omit the second for; D reads and eke for; no note in Austin).

O olde vnholsom || and mysbsyleued (myslyued B, mysbeleuyd C, mysleuyd D; no note in Austin) man, 4992.

Compare:

And to Pandarus (-ris C, Pandare DCp. John's) || he (om. B) held vp bothe his hondes, 2059.

But to Pandarus (-dare BD) || alwey was (was alwey C) his recours (cours † D), 2437 (no note in Austin.)

And thow Symoys || that as an arwe clere, 6210.

Note.—In 2059, 2437, we are of course to read Pandare (with elision): on the forms of this name, see § 139.—Chaucer apparently pronounced Symoys as a dissyllable with the accent on the ultima, making oy a diphthong (§ 140).

§ 145. Some interest attaches to the treatment of the following unaccented final syllables before the cæsura:
(1) Consonant + -le, -me, -ne, -re; (2) -ne, -re, preceded by weak -e-; (3) -el, -en, -er; (4) -we (-ewe, -owe, -ow); (5) -y, -ye. When one of these syllables stands before a cæsura which is followed by an unstressed syllable beginning with a vowel or weak h, it is of course easy to scan the line as a normal verse by depriving of syllabic value (by elision, syncope, or slurring) the syllable (or syllables) immediately preceding the cæsura. Thus in He seyde he hadde a feuer || and ferde amys, feuer may syncopate the vowel of the final syllable; in He seyde o lettre || a blysful destine, lettre may elide its final -e; in But like a dredful louere || he seyde this, louere may syncopate one e and elide the other, and so on. On the other hand, it may be maintained that the preferable way to scan such verses is to admit the extra syllable before the cæsura.

Note.—I have used the terms syncope and elision above merely because they are short and convenient. In strictness, we cannot speak of lettre as eliding its -e or of feuer as syncopating its -e, unless we are ready to maintain that Chaucer's ordinary pronunciation of lettre was really lettre and not letter or lette and that his ordinary pronunciation of feuer was really fever and not fevre or fev. and these are theses which few would
undertake to demonstrate. Exactly what the quality of the "extra syllable" would be in each case, if the verse is to be scanned so as to admit an extra syllable, is of course also a question that depends on the normal Chaucerian pronunciation of the words in hand. See the remark of Skeat, Prioresses Tale, 4th ed., p. lxii, and cf. § 136.

1. Consonant + -le, -me, -ne, -re. (For heuene, see II., below.)

Variations in spelling are seldom recorded.

For al be that his moeble || is hym by-raft, 6122.

Among the peple || as who seyth alwed is, 3110. Cf. 1731, 4845.

In thilke large temple || on every syde, 185. Cf. 3382.

Out of the temple || al esilyche he wente, 317. Cf. 162.

Withinne the temple || he went hym forth pley[i]nge, 267. Cf. 5609 (in which insert, with Cp. John's, al before allone).

The[r] for a title || he gan hym for to borwe, 488.

Vs from visible || as who seyth alwed is, 3110. Cf. 1731, 4845.

Ne I nyyl not rakle || as for to greuen here, 4484.

Note 1.—A remarkable line is 7186: Charitable / estatlyche / lusty and fre (see the variants given in § 146, 1).

Note 2.—In 3031 C, for merikele || I, read meruaile || I.

That to myn herti botme (om. ↑ A) || it is i-sounded, 1620 B (boteme it is foundit ↑ C).

And nere it that I wilne || as now tabregge, 3137.

Into a chaumbre || and fond how that he lay, 1641. Cf. 5394 (?).

Into the grete chambre || and that yn hye, 2797. Cf. 5016.

And to the chambre || here (the C) wey than (om. C) han thei nomen, 6877.

Right as oure first[e] lettre || is now an a, 171.

And seyde lettre || a blysful destene, 2176. Cf. 2232, 7761 (?).

At wrytynge of this lettre || I was on lyue, 7732. Cf. 2146, 2178.

Note 3.—In 2091 the sense seems to make A lettre || in which I wolde here telle[n] how imperative in preference to A lettre in which || I. So in 7963: 

Youre lettre || and how that ye requeren me. Cf. 
The poudre in which myn herte ybrend shal torne, 6672.

In feith youre ordre || is ruled in good wyse, 336.

For pity of myn aspre || and cruwel peyne, 5509.

Note 4.—In That called was Cassandre ek at aboute, 7814, ek is by no means a secure reading. In 2314 the position of the caesura is dubious:

Of iaspre vpon a quysshon gold ybete.

Ye may the bettre || at ese of herto abyde, 6013.

And gan to motre || I not what trew[e]ly (-ely BC), 1626.

And if that yow remembre || I am Calkas, 4735.

I shall wel suffre || vnto the tenthe day, 6260.

For euere, neuer, leuere, deluyere, see under II., below.
II. -ene, -ere. (Some of the words under this heading are here considered rather because they are spelled -ere in good MSS. than because they have any right to both e's.) Variations in spelling are seldom recorded.

It was an heuene || vpon hym for to se, 1722. Cf. 4093 (A †). Thou hast in heuene || ybrought (brouȝt C) my soule at reste, 4441.

It was an heuene || his words for to here, 4584.
And seyde he hadde a feuer || and ferd (ferde al C) amys, 491.
Sey that thi (om. C) feuer || is wont the for (om. C) to take, 2605.
As of a feuer || or othere gret(e) syknesse, 4055. For the spelling of the word (which rhymes with keuere inf.), see § 18.

Forwhi to every louere || I me excuse, 1097.
But as a dreful louere || he seyde this, 2130 (louëren || seyde he C).
That hadde I leuere || vnuyst for sorwe dye, 2594. (Or, vnuyst ||.)
Me were leuere || a thousand fold to dye, 3416. See § 54.

Amonges alle these othere || in general, 893.
Here to delguere || I holden haue my pes, 4762.
He spak and called euere || yn his compleynte, 541 (euere he callyd / C).
(Or,—called ||?)
I who seygh euere || a wysman faren so, 5749. (Or,—wysman ||.)
Ne herd I neuere || and what that was his mone, 1643. Cf. 1522, 2954 (neuere || how), 4375, 4763 (?).
I may not slepe neuere || a Mayes morwe, 2183. Cf. 2623, 6243, 6317 (?), 7198.

They spoken || but they bente neuere || his bowe, 1946.

III. -el, -en, -er. (For bettre, see I. ; for feuer, feuere, see II.)
But tho bygan a lytel || his herte vnswelle, 6577 (his herte a lite B).
For goddes spoken || in amphibologies, 6068.
For thei proceden (-e B, -yn C) || of thi malencolye, 6723.
And thus thei (om. C) wolden (-e BC) || han brought hem self a lofte, 915.

For what to spoken (-e B, spek C) || and what to holden inne, 387.
Or nyl not heren || or trowen how it ys(se), 1013 (here / B, heryn C).
And gan to casten (caste B) || and rollen vp and down, 1744.
Shal I not louen (-e B) || in cas yf that me lyst (l. leste), 1843.
Lat no wight ryseyn (rise B) || and heren ofoure speche, 3598 (Let hem not rysyn and heryn ooure speche C).
As for to loken (looke B, loke C) || vpon an old romaunce, 3822.
And thus shal Troye turnen (torne B, turne C) || in (to B, tyl C) asshen dede, 4781.
Ne koude he sen her laughen (-e B) || or make (-en B) ioye, 7144 (hyre se laughe ne make C).

For which she may yet (sit may C) holden (-e BC) || al here byheste, 7554.

Who shal now trowen (-e BC) || on ony other (l. othes with BC) mo, 7626.

And art now fallen (-e BC) || yn som deuocioun, 555.

Til crowes feet ben growen (grow B) || vnder youre eye, 1488 (hem waxen for ben growen C).

Thanne yf I ne hadde spoken (speke C) || as grace was, 5895.

Criseyde comen and therwith ban he synge, 6867.

To bere the wel to morwe (-w C) || and al is wonne, 2583. Cf. 3690 (?).

He straught a morwe || vnto his nece wente, 3394. Cf. 7555.

That neuere was yn sorwe || or (or in C) som distresse, 641. Cf. 530 B (right reading), 3932, 4527, 5171, 5541, 6540, 7405.

So lef this sorwe || or platly he wol deye, 5586. Cf. 1, 5743, 6821, 6895, 6921, 7012, 8107.

He was no narwe (harde C) || ymaked (ymasked B, imaskid C) and yknet, 4576.

Gan hym saluwe (salue B, seluyn † C) || and womanly to pleye, 2753.

Saue a pilwe (-wo B, pillowe D, pilowe G) || I (om. C) fynde nought (mouhte elles G) tenbrace (to embrace C, to embrace D, to embrace G), 6587. Read probably pillow || rather than pilwe || (which makes the verse 9-syl.).

V. -y, -ye:

Wher is my lady || vnto (to B) hire folk seyde he, 1164 (C cut out).

This knoweth many || a wys and worthi wyght, 1265.
That Ector with [ful] (ful B) many || a bold baroun, 4695 (C cut out.) Thorough girt with many || a (om. BC) wyd and blody wounde, 5289. Ye god wot and fro many || a worthi knyght, 6696 (C has so hath for fro).

I shal therof as fully (ful BC) || excuse (-en Cp.) me, 3652. Fully is probably right.

Note.—Casura has been assumed between many and a in 1265, 4695, 5289, 6696, with some hesitation.

By sort and by augurye || ek trewely (trewly B), 4778.

In consistorie || among the Grekes soone, 4727 (C cut out).

For which the grete furye || of his penaunce, 6091. Cf. 4915 BC.

In furye || as doth he Ixion || in helle, 6575 (αλλως C).

And god Mercurye || of me now woful wrecche, 6684.

Be necessarie || al seme it not therby, 5682 (C cut out). Necessaire is also possible (see § 51).

For that I tarye || is al for wykked speche, 7973.

Here may be put the interesting verse:
In to the gardyn go we || and ye shal here, 2199.

VERSES LACKING THE UNACCENTED PART OF THE FIRST FOOT
(“9-SYLLABLE VERSES”).

§ 146. The occurrence in Chaucer of heroic verses lacking
the unaccented part (the senkung) of the first foot
can no longer be doubted.

Such verses may be conventionally called “nine-syllable verses”
even when, from ending in a feminine rhyme, they actually contain
ten syllables. The material here collected is arranged in four lists.

List I. (meant to be exhaustive) contains those verses of the Troilus
which are either certainly nine-syllable verses or which must at least
be seriously reckoned with before being otherwise scanned. Some of
the verses in I. may easily be emended so as to run regularly, and in
some of these a variant reading actually anticipates the emendation;
but it seemed better to include in I. a few verses that might have
been put in II. than to run the risk of excluding any which might
with an appearance of reason claim a place in the list. Under the
heading Ib are collected a number of verses which (in MS. A) might
be scanned as of nine syllables, but may better be scanned as of ten.

List II. contains verses which in A must be read as nine-syllable
verses, but which are easily corrected by a comparison of MSS.
List III. contains a number of verses in which A is restored to order by the insertion of a single letter (or syllable) required or justifiable by grammar or usage. Some other MS. or MSS. will usually be found to furnish the required form. At the end of this list are given references for a number of similar lines from other MSS.

List IV. contains specimens of lines absolutely unmetrical in A, but curable in the same manner as the lines in III.

For the lines quoted at length in these four lists, ABCDG have been used throughout, and all the significant Cp. and John's variants recorded in Mr. Austin's collation have been registered. When no note is made of the reading of Cp. or John's, it is to be inferred that Mr. Austin records no such variants.

I.

For (for why D) it were (were here C) a long (-e B) disgression (discrecioun BG, discrecioun C, digressioun D), 143 A. Mr. Austin notes the reading of Harl. 2392 (For whi it were of to long discuscioun), but gives no other variants. The reading of either C or D makes a normal verse: here may have been accidentally dropped on account of its similarity to the preceding word were. For it were || a long, with lyrical cæsura, hiatus, and disyllabic were (§ 135, e) is very unlikely.

Of this kynges sone of which I tolde, 261 ABCG. D reads As of, etc. Shewed (Schewed C) wel that men myght (myȝtyn C) yn here gesse, 286 ABG (She þ shewyd D).

First to hide (-en BCp., -yn C) his desir in (al in D) muwe, 381 (First he hid his desire in mewe G; in the margin of G, in another hand, are the words "al for to hide," a reading which, with the change of hide to hiden, would make the verse regular).

That the (al the D) Grekes as the (om. G) deth hym dredde, 483 (That the grekys hym as of the deth drede C; Harl. 2392 seems to read aH for the before Grekes: no other note in Austin).

That the hote fyr of loue hym brende (for brende G), 490 (stanza om. in D).

I wolþ partyn with the al thyyn peyne, 589 ABCDG.

Loue ayens the (om. C) which (wheche G) who-so defendeth, 603.

Louë would cause hiatus: besides, this word is usually mono-syllabic (§ 8).

I that haue yn loue so ofte assayed (asaied G, asayde B), 646.

Dorcestow (Dorestow G, Trist thow D) that I telle (tolde BCp.
John's, told hyre C, told it D, tolde it G) in hire eere, 767. Probably read tolde it (or hire).

Twenty wynter that (er that G) his lady wyste (wist D, not \dagger wyst C), 811.

Of (And of CDE) that word toke (took Cp. John's) hede (hed CDG) Pandarus, 820. And of is perhaps best.

Were it for my suster al thi sorwe, 860 ABCDG.

Next (-e B) the foule (foul D) netle rough and thikke, 941.

Alderfirst (Aldirfirst Cp. John's) his purpos for to wynne, 1062 ABDG (C cut out).

Of the sege (segee B) of thebes while (whil BD) hem leste, 1169 AG (C cut out).

How (How that G) the bisshop (bysshope G) as the bok kan (gan DG) telle (telleth for can telle C), 1189. G makes the measure normal.

Now (And Cp.) good (goode BG, myn C, my good D John's Harl. 2392) em for goddes loue I prey, 1394. Read good\dote em (with hiatus) or my goode em.

Ther ayenis (a\$eyn B, a\$en C, ayens D, a\$ens G, a\$eins Cp.) answer\e I thus anoon, 1454.

For his loue which (-e B, wheche G, om. D) that vs bothe made (mode B), 1585 (CD have love of god instead of his loue). If ten Brink's "lyrical cesura" be allowed, the same may be read For his l\dote \lue || which th\dote, etc.; but loue is seldom a dissyllable (§ 8).

Who sey euere (-er D) or this so (or this euere so C) dul a man, 1633 ABG. If ten Brink's "lyrical cesura" be allowed, the verse may be read Wh\dote sey \doteuer || or this, etc. (for eu\dert before a vowel, see § 90).

And (\dote CD, A E) lord (-e E) he (she D, how he C, as he G, so be E) was glad and wel bygon, 1682. No doubt a word has dropped out in the best MSS. between lord and he. Cp. John's appear to agree with A.

Made loue withinne (within D) hire (her hert D) for to myne, 1762 ABCG. With lyrical cesura and dissyllabic lou\dote (see last example but one), the verse might run M\dote\dote \dote (or M\dote\dote\dote\dote) lou\dote || withinne hire, etc. The reading of D (which would make the verse normal if herte be substituted for hert) lacks authority.

I am one (oon BCp., on CG) the (of the C) fairest (fayreste BC) out of (ought of G, with-outyn D) drede, 1831. The reading of C looks like a corruption in the interest either of modesty or the more usual
Observations on the Language

idiom, but may be right: at any rate, it decidedly helps the metre. Fayrêsté does not help much.

Fro the skarmuch (scarmich B, charmys C, scarmysshe D, scarmuch G) of the whiche I tolde, 2019. Fro the skarmùch[ë] | of the, etc., would be highly improbable and no great improvement.

Sire (Sir B) my nece wole (wol B, wele C, wel G) do wel by the, 2042. In spite of the fact that the vocative sire is usually monosyllabic in Chaucer, we should doubtless read sire here and save the verse.

Of (Ry3t of C, Right of D) myn owene (own B, owne D) hond (-e BD) write here (hire C, her D) right (om. D) now (how D), 2090 AG. Perhaps Right should be restored (cf. 2140).

Were hisे (his BDG) nayles poyneted (-ede C, -es B) neuere so sharpe, 2119.

If (3if it C, If it D) youre (jour D) wille (wil D) be (were D) as I yow preyde, 2687 ABG. Yourë is unlikely (§ 74). The insertion of it (with CD) seems best.

Pleynly (-lich B, -liche GCp.) al (om. D) at ones they (al thei D) here (her D) hyghten (behighten E), 2708. Hardly Pleynlichë âl, etc., with hiatus?

Dred[ë]les (Dredeles BCCp., And dredles E) it clere was (cler was C, was clere D) in the wynd, 3368 AG. And dred[ë]les, which would make the verse normal, has only the indifferent authority of E.

With a (om. G) certayn of here (her D, hir G, hire Cp.) owene (own B, owne D) men, 3438. Herë owéné seems highly improbable (see § 74).

Here noyse of reynes (rayn D, reyn G, reyne Cp.) nor of thondre, 3504 ABC. Herë noyse || of reynes, with lyric caesura and hiatus, does not commend itself as likely.

Shul (Shal B, Schal C, Shul DG) youre wommen slepen wel and softe, 3509. Yourë is improbable (§ 74). Perhaps we should read shullen (§ 123, VII.).
Reson wil (wol B, wele C, wyl D, wole G) not that I speke of (on C) shep (slep BG, slepe CD), 4250. No note in Mr. Austin’s collation, though it seems incredible that Cp. John’s have the absurd shep of A. One might conceivably scan: Reson wil not that I || speken of slep.

Thonkyng (Touchinge D, Thankyng G) loue he (she BCp.) so wel here (hir D) bysette, 4394. Thonkyng e lōue || he so wel, etc., with lyric cæsura, hiatus, and dissyllabic lōue, is not probable. Thonkyng e lōue is perhaps possible, but -ynge in the interior of the verse is highly suspicious, whether in noun or participle (§§ 10, 120, III).

With the shete and wax for shame al (om. D) red, 4412 ABCG.

Lyrical cæsura would give With the shētē || and wāx, etc.

At whiche (At which B, Atte which D, Atte whiche G) day was taken Antenor, 4712 (C cut out). An unbearable verse if scanned with nine syllables. Taking a hint from DG may we perhaps read Atte for (At the) whiche day?

Which that drawn (drawn B) forth the sonnes char (-e BDG), 4546. Loue hym made (made hym G) al (alle G) prest to don hyre byde, 4824 ABCD. Loue hym is very doubtful.

Ector (H[ec]tor D) which (-e G, with C) that wel (-e BDG) the Grekis herde, 4838.

Of (O C) this (thilke D, ye ilke C) woful soule that thus crieth, 4979 ABG. Perhaps we should read Of thilke; ye ilke (C) is no doubt due to confusion between y and p.

I that leuede (hauede C, leued D, loued G) yn lust (loue C) and in plesance, 5155 (stanza not in Cp.). With lyrical cæsura this would run I that leuede || yn lust, etc.

Helpeth hardy man (men C) to (vnto B) his emprise, 5263 ADG.

Wende (-en BG) that she wepte and syked (syzede C) sore, 5378.

By which (whiche D, swiche G) reson (resoun Cp.) men may wel y-se (I se John’s), 5710 AB (not in C).

Of here (hire B, hir G, om. D) teris and the herte vnswele (vnsweH D, gan vnswele G), 5808. Shall we read herē (here possessive plural, see § 74)? Emendation (with the help of G) is easy: Of teris and the (or here) herte gan vnswele.

And ther (there CG) lat (lete D) vs spoken of oure wo, 5906 AB. Therē seems to be inevitable: the word is emphatic (§§ 89, 135, η).

May ye not (nou3te G, not than C) ten (x D) dayes thanne (then G, om CD) abyde, 5990 AB. Read moved for may (§ 123, VIII.)?
Of vs sely Troians (Troian D, Troilus † C) but yf routhe (je roughte † G), 6152 AB.

Thries (Thrieʒ Cp.) hadde (had DG) al (alle BD, aH G) with his (hise Cp., hir John’s) bemes clere (so ABG Cp. Durham, shene D Selden, cleene John’s, clene Phillipps), 6372 (C cut out). Thriès haddè || al with, with lyrical cæsura and hiatus, is unlikely. It is barely possible that allè (plural, referring to snowes in the next line) is right, and that we may read Thriès hadde allè || with his, etc.

Passynge (Passing D) al (alle G) the valey (valeye B) fer (ferre G) withoute, 6430 AC.

Thaqueyntaunce (The aquyntau[n]se C, The acquentauns D, The acqueyntaunce G) of these (this BC, thes D) Troians (Troyans B, Troylus † C, Troianaues D) to (for to C) chaunge, 6485. Though C alone has for to chaunge, yet that seems to be the correct reading.

Hath his lady gon (gone D, forgon C, gone 3ee G) a fourtenyght, 6697 AB.

Go (So D) we pleye (pley CD) vs in som (somme DG) lusty rowte, 6765 AB. With lyrical cæsura we might scan Gô we pleyen || vs in, but it will not do to separate the reflexive us from its verb.

Charitable (Scharite † abele C) estatlyche (statlyche C, estalich † D, estateliche G) lusty (lyʒt lusti C) and (om. DCp. John’s) fre, 7186 AB. With lyrical cæsura the line might run: Chàritàblè || estàtych(e) lusty and (or om. and) fre: charîtablè estâtlych would not be a real hiatus. It satisfies the ear quite as well, however, to elide -e in charitable and make the cæsura after estatlyche: we have then a pretty sonorous 9-syl. verse.

Tendre (-dry C) herted (herte C) slydynge (-yng CD) of corage, 7188 ABG.

Trewes (Trew B) as stel in ech condicion, 7194 ACDG. Hiatus? Sholde (-en BGCP. John’s) spille a quarter of a (1 D) tere, 7243 AC.

With lyrical cæsura the verse might run shôlden spilên || a qùarter, etc.

Trusteth wel (-e G) and vnderstondeth me, 7250 ABCD. An easy emendation would be to insert me before wel.

Polymyte (Polymyʒt C, Polymites D) and many a (om. C) man to (al to C) skathe, 7301 ABG. Shall we read Polymytès || and †

Cf. Polymytès, 7851 f, rhyming with Ethyoclès and Thebès (§ 139).

Graunted on the morwe (morowe G) at his requeste, 7312 ABCD.

For to speke (-en BCp., -yn John’s) with hym at the leste (atte leste BG), 7313 ACD.
For to sen (se CD, sene G) yow in aduersite, 7446 AB.
Ferthere (Forther B, Further D, Ferther G) than (thanhe B) this (the BCDG) story (storie B) wol (wele C) deuyse, 7457.
I comende hire wysdom (witte D) by myn hood, 7514 ABCG.

And that (that that C) loues (lys C, Ioue D) of (hadde of C) his purueyaunce; 7809 ABG. Is it possible that that that is right? With that Iouys cf. the well-known that god. Hadde (C) is wrong.

Of the (a G) stronge (strong Cp.) bor with (with his C) tuskes (toschhis C) stoute, 7817 ABD.

Wrak (Venged D, Wroughte G) here in a wonder cruwel wyse, 7831 ABC.

Thorugh (Thorwgh B, Thurgh D, Thoroughe G, Of C) his hire moder wol I yow (om. GCp.) not (naught Cp.) telle, 7846.

At (Atte G) a scarmych (-e B, scharmoth C, scarmissh D, scarmusch G) ech of hem slowh other, 7871.

Peyneth here on ladyes for to lye, 7887 ABCDG. Peyneth hire on ladyes, etc., with lyrical caesura, hiatus, and dissyllabic here, is very improbable.

Of his loue I haue seyd (seide G) as (that D) I kan, 8132 AB. Of his Iouë || hauë, etc., with lyrical caesura, hiatus, and dissyllabic loue is very improbable.

I b.

Some lines in A that might perhaps be scanned as of nine syllables may better be scanned as of ten.

But the Troìanë (troyan BCG, troyanys D) gestes as they felle, 145. For Troìanë, see §§ 59, b, 70.

Al this Pandarë || yn his herte (-t D) thoughte, 1063. Pandare is the reading of ABDEGCp. John's Phillipps; Durh. has Pandar; Harl. 2392 has Al this tho Pandare in herte thoht; cut out in C. Hiatus may be avoided by reading Pandarùs (cf. §§ 126, 139). Cf. Pàndarè || I, 1044, where we may read Pàndarùs || I.

Cryseyde (Criseyda B, Cresseide C, Creseide G, Cryseyd anon D) gan al his (the D) chere aspien, 1734. Read Cryseydë, or rather Cryseydë (§ 140) ; cf. 2509, 2729, below.

Al (As D) wolde (wold BD) I that noon (no man CD) wyste (weste C, wist DG) of this thought, 1830. Unless no man be preferred to noon, read, with hiatus, Al wolde I that noon wyste of, etc. (rather than woldë I and wyste of) (cf. § 126). Criseyda (Criseyde B, Crisseyde C, Creseide G, Of Cryseyd D) my
frend he seyde (seyd D) yis, 2509. Mr. Austin’s notes the reading of E: Criseide my frende pandare he seid sir yis, but gives no other note on the line. Read Criséyda and cf. 1734 above, 2729 below. So heynous (haynous DG) that men myghte (might D, myght G) on it spete, 2702 ABC. Read, of course, heynous (§ 140).

Criseda (Criseide C, Criseide D, Creseide G) my lady that is here, 2729 AB. Read Criséyda, and cf. 1734, 2509 above.

Now thanne (than B, om. DG) thus (this D) quod she I woldé (wold D) hym preye, 2966.

So secret (secrete BD, discret G) and of (in D) swych (such DG) obeysaunce (obseruaunce D), 3320. Read secret and obeysaunce (§ 140).

For myne (my E) wordes here and every part, 4173 (stanza om. in DG). Read perhaps mynë (§ 74).

Love that with an (a E) holsom (holesome E) alliaunce, 4588 ABCG (not in D).

Love that knetteth (endythe C, kennyth E) lawe (law E) of (om. E, and BCp.) companye, 4590.

Nought (Nouȝte G) rought (rouȝte CG) I wheder (whidere B, whider G, whedirwarde D, whedyr that C) thow woldest (wilt D) me (om. D) stere, 4944. The readings of C and D lack authority. A may perhaps be read: Nought rought I wheder thow || woldest me stere, (cf. ten Brink’s remark on the separation of subject from verb by caesura, § 313), or, with hiatus and with syncope of -est in woldest:

Nought rought[§] I || wheder thow woldest me stere.

Every thing (thyng B, thinge G) that sounded into badde (harde † G), 6338 AD (C cut out).

In a vessel that men clepeth (clepe D, callyn C) an (om. C) vrne, 6674. One has little temptation to read vessel and clepeth.

Here nedede (neded BDG, nedit C) no (none CG Cp., non John’s) teris for to borwe, 7089. As a 9-syl. line, the verse would be unendurable, and nonë is surely not Chaucerian; it is probably best to read nedëdën (plural influenced by teris, which, indeed, may even be regarded as the subject, for to borwe serving as a sort of complement). Cf. § 132.

Yong fresche (fresshe BG, frosch C, freisshe D) strong and (om. C) hardy (om. C) as (as a D) lyon, 7193. Read fresshë, by-form of fressh ($49$), though this is the only case in which the form occurs in the Troilus.

I fynde ek (-e G) in storyes (storyies C, the stories B) ellys (elë C)
where, 7407. An impossible 9-syl. verse: read fyndē ek (with hiatus) or the storyes (with B).

How myght (myȝte CG) I (om. B) than (thanne C, then G) do (don BC Cp. John’s, done G) quod Troylus, 7652 AD. Read thannē don || quod (§ 88).

Euerych (-y CD, -ich G) ioye or (om. D) ese (crese D) in (is in C, in to D) his contrarye, 7742 A.

Tydeus sone that doun (-e DG) descended is, 7877. Read Tydēus (§ 141).

Come (Com B) I Wolfe (wolde C, wil D) but yet in swich disioynt, 7981. Lines which in A might be read as of nine syllables as they stand, but which in that MS. are so corrupt as not to make sense (e. g., 400, 1928, 2720, 2925, 6326; cf. 2575, 5206) are of course not considered.

II

In this list are included a number of verses in which A has nine syllables, but which are easily corrected by comparison of MSS.

For loue of the whan thou torneste ofte, 196 ADG. BCCp. have ful before ofte.

Or hastow remors of conscience, 554 A. BCDG have som before remors. Mr. Austin notes that Harl. 2392 has som, but registers no other variants in this line.

If thei (men D John’s) ferd (-e BGCp., seide John’s) yn (with D) loue as men don here, 1124 (C cut out). BDGCp. John’s have that after if, which restores the metre.

Ywys vnclē quod she grant mercy, 1324 ABG. CD have myn before vnclē. Mr. Austin notes that Harl. 2392 and Harl. 4912 have myn, but registers no other variants in this verse.

In which ye may se youre face a morwe, 1490 ABCD. GCp. John’s read which (wheche G) that for which.

Eke I knowe of long (-e BDG) tyme agon, 1807. Read And ek: BCDCp. John’s have the And.

Chese (And chese BECp., And sches C, And ches John’s, And these t G) if thow wolt synge or (om. C) daunce (daunce synge G) or lepe, 2040. And ches is of course right.

Worth (-e C, Lepe E, worth thow BCP, worthe thou D, wurthe thou G) vp on a courser right a non, 2096. Worth thow is of course right. But wel wot I (I wot C) yow (thow BG, thou D, that thow C) art now (om. D) yn (in a D) drode, 2589.

And hast lasse (the lesse D, the lasse GCp. John’s) nede to (om. BD,
the to C) countrefete, 2617. Read the lasse nedε to (or, possibly omit to).

He rong hem a (hem out a ECp., hem out a G John's, hym out a B) proces lyk a belle, 2700 AC (He rong out the processe as a belle D). And lord so (so that BGCp. John's, how that C, so as D) his herte gan to quappe, 2899.

And to (And I to CEG, And y to D) han (have DG) right as yow lyst comfort, 2978 AB. Mr. Austin notes the reading of E, but registers no other variants in this line.

And what mischaunce (myschauns C, mischief yet D) in this world (-e B) yet (ther D, set ther BCP., yet ther John's, set† er G) is (this† G), 3132. Read yet ther is.

How this (the Cp., is this CDE John's) candele in the (this G) straw (-e E) is (om. CDE Jn's.) falle (yfaH D, I-falle John's, fall E), 3701. The right reading is: How is this candle in the straw yfalle.

That he cam (come C) there (ther BG) and that (that that Cp.) he was born, 3915. ABCDG all omit one of the that's and Cp. seems to be the only MS. that has both of them; yet both are needed by the construction as well as by the metre.

So thenk (thynkith C, thinketh DE, thyng G, thynk that B, thenk that Cp.) thowgh (om. C) that I vnworthi be, 4128. Thenk that though that is probably right.

Were (3t were C, 3it were D) it so that I wist (wiste BG, woste C) outrely (outerly B, outerely C, vttirly D, entirely G), 4328. Either 3et were or wistē (with hiatus).

Who-so seth yow knoweth (knowe C) yow ful lite, 4410. BDGCp. John's have O before who-so (D reads: O ho seeth 3ou knoweth 3ou but a lite).

For wistow (wistist thou C, wysterstow Cp. John's, wist thou D) myn herte (hert D) wel Pandare, 4486 ABG. Wististow is of course right.

Of here (his D) comynge (-yng DG) and (and ek CD, and eke G) of his (here D) also, 4517 AB.

That (They Jn's.) maden (makkeden B, makeden Cp. John's, madyn CD) the (alle the C, al the D) walles (waH C) of the toun, 4783 AG. Makkeden is doubtless right; al seems to be a scribe's insertion to make metre.

In o (oone D) thyng (-e B) were and (and in BCDGCp. John's) noon (none G) other wyght, 5070.

Nay (Nay nay D Harl. 2392) god wot (woote B, wote DG; in CE
John's Harl. 4912 the line begins Nay Pandarus instead of Nay god wot) nought (not C, nouth D, noȝte G) worth (worthi B) is al thi (this CD Harl. 2392) red, 5160. Nay nay god wot seems to be right. Cp. omits the stanza.

Quod (Quod tho BG) the thridde (thrid G) I hope ywys (iwisse I hope D) that she, 5353 (C reads The threde answerede I, etc.).

Right a[s] (That right as BDCp. John's, That riȝte as G) when I wot ther is a thing, 5735 A (C cut.out).

Com Pandare (Pandarus C, Pandar G) and (in and BGCp. John's) seyde as ye may here, 5747.

For myn honour yn swych (suge D, swiche G) aventure, 5991 AC. BGCp. John's Harl. 2392 have an after swych.

For (For when B, For whan DG, ffor whan Cp. ffor when John's) he saugh (saught John's) that she ne myghte (-t BD John's) dwelle, 6361 (C cut out).

Saue a pilwe (pilwo B, pillowe D, pilowe G) I (om. C) fynde nought (not C, nauȝt elles G) tenbrace (to embrace C, to enbrace D, to embrace G), 6587. Read pillow rather than pilwe (cf. § 145, IV.).

For tendresse (tendrenesse B John's, tendirnesse Cp., tenderesse G, the tendirnesse D) how (e G) shal she this (ek C, eke D) sustene, 6605.

That vnnenthe (wel vnneneth B, wel onethe C, weft vnnenethe D, wole vnnenthe G) it (vs D) don shal (schal don C, done shalH DG) vs (om. D) duresse, 6762.

As seyden bothe the (om. C) meste and (and ek BC, and eke DG) the (there C) leste, 6803.

Shal (Ne shal BD, Ne schalle G, He schal C) he (om. C) neuere thryue (-yn C, -en Cp. John's) out of drede, 7122.

How he may best with short (shortest BDG John's Harl. 2392, schort C) taryinge, 7137. Intolerable as a 9-syl. verse.

As konnyng (e B) as (and as B Cp. John's) parfit (e BG, tharfit C, perfite D) and as kynde, 7333.

So wel (e G) for hym self he (he for hym self BCp. John's, he for hym seluen G) spak (e G) and seyde, 7396 ACD. He for hym seluen is no doubt right.

For she sory (so sory CDGCp. John's) was for (om. B) here vntrouthe, 7461.

But why (om. D) lest (lest that Cp. John's, liste that B, leste that D) this lettre founden were, 7965. Intolerable as a 9-syl. verse.
Other lines of a similar character, when the correction is certain on comparison of MSS., are the following (in some cases the verse begins with a word or syllable that we should expect to have no accent or ictus: these instances are marked by old-style verse numbers): 652, 690, 764, 1091, 1124, 1372, 1457, 1480, 1923, 1932, 2044, 2087, 2138, 2150, 2194, 2575, 2902, 3082, 3123, 3193, 3405, 3431, 3546, 3564, 3655, 3789, 3864, 4045, 4111, 4160, 4522, 4695, 4842, 5182, 5314, 5329, 5341, 5363, 5403, 5840, 6053, 6384, 6878, 7519, 7843, 7865, 7978, 8098; cf. 7368.

III.

In some lines the insertion of a single letter (usually weak -e or -e- justified or required by grammar or usage) restores a normal line. That ought[e] (auȝte C, oughte John's, owghte Cp.) wel ben (wel to ben CG, be wele D) oure opynyoun, 710.

Stond fast[e] (faste CCp.) for to good part (-e Cp.) hastow rowed, 962. For dred[e]les (dredeles CCp. John's) me were leuere (lever to DG) dye (dethe † C), 1027. Cf. 1270, 3844, 4738, 5940, 6156, 7245, 8103, 8118.

I rought[e] (roughte BCp. John's, rouȝte C, roght D) nought though that (om. C) she stode and herde, 1032.

To good[e] (goode BC) mot it turne of yow I mette, 1175 (see § 14).

In whom that (om. G) all[e] (alle Cp., euery DE), vertu lyst abounde, 1244 (C †). All[e] is surely right, see § 80, III. (cf. especially 1848, 1918, 1930, 6311).


Thus gilt[e]les (gilteles BCG) than haue ye fysshed faire, 1413. Cf. 7447.

O (B inserts thou above the line) cruel god o dispitous[e] (dispitouse B, dispituse C, dispetous G) Marte, 1520.

Ye douȝ[e]les (douteles CG, doutelees Cp., trewly B) quod she myn vncele dere, 1579 AD.

She thought[e] (thouȝte C) wel (ek C, ferst D) that (this C) Troylus persone, 1786.

Be drynk[e]leses (drynkeles CCp., drenkynlees B) for alwey as I gesse, 1803.

Men moste[n] (miste C, must D, most G) axe (axen C, ask D) of (at BCGCp.) seyntes if it is, 1979.
Quod Pandarus loke[e] (loke B, loke DG, loke that C), alwey ye (3e alwey C) fynde, 2194.

And sent[e] (sente Cp., sent to D) you this lettre here by me, 2208.

Out of dislaym[e]s (desdayns B, disdaynys C, desdaynys D, disdaynes GCp., desdaigne John’s) prison but a lyte, 2302.

Al soft[e]ly (softely BCD) and thederwardes (thiderward BCCp., thidirward E, thidirward D) gan (gan he D) bende, 2335.

Yet of (for E) hym self (my selfe E) no thyng (-0 B) nold I (ne wolde I GCp.) neither of (him selfe JIT) wold (wylt JIT of him self wolde I no thyng rech C, JIT of him self wolde I no thyng rechhe D = A with wold for nold), 2558.

The line is restored by reading either hym seluen or ne wolde I.


Tell[le] (Tell G, Tel me CD) which (-e G) thow wylt of euerychone, 3254. Read either tellē (which is not so common as tel, see § 115) or tell me.

So help[e] (helpeth BEp. helpeth C, helpith D) to this werk that is bygonne, 3577.

With (which † B) pite[e]te (piete BCP., pete C) so wel repressed is, 3875.

As she that iust[e] (iuste BCD) cause hadde hym to tryste, 4069.

Nought (Now C, Noo E) swych[e] (swiche B, such C, suche E) sorwful (sorwful C, sorrowful E) sykes as men make, 4203 (wanting in DG).

God myght[e] (myghte B, myȝte C, miȝt D, myght G) not a (oo D, o G) poynyt my (of my D) ioyes eche, 4351.

Why nylt (nylte G) thi (thyn C, the John’s, thou D) self (seluen BG John’s, selue C, om. D) helpen (helpe to D, help to John’s) don (doone D, to G) redresse, 5190. Read thi seluen (stanza om. in Cp.). Cf. 5253.

And nam[e]ly (namely BGD, namelich C) syn (sythe C, sithe D) ye two (ye bothe tuo0 D) ben al oon, 5254. Cf. 6220.

Graunt (-e BG) mercy (mercie G) good[e] (goode BCP., god DG, iwys goode C) myn (myne DG) ywys (om. C) quod she, 6322.

Fro then[nes]forth (tennes forth B, thennes forth Cp. John’s, thennes riȝte forth G) he rideth vp and down, 6924. For similar cases cf. 3009, 6970, 7016, 7034, 7248, 7258, 8080; see also § 91, a.v.v. hennes, theannes, whannes.

Lord whe[the]r (whether BCG, whethir D) yet thou thenke (thow thy[n]ke ȝet B, thou thanke ȝit C, thou thinkist yet D, thou ȝitt F E
Observations on the Language [§ 146.]

thenke G) vpon (on CG) Criseyde, 7098. For whether wher, see § 138, 6.
Shal knot[te]les (knotteles C, knottles D) thorough (thour C, oute D, thoroughge G) out (oute G, of D, om. C) here (hir DG) herte slyde (glyde C, glide D), 7132.
Hardy testyf (testis B, testy D) strong (-e DG) and (om. D) che-
ual[e]rous (chialrus B, chyualrous DG), 7165.
He shal no terme fynd[en] (fynden BG, fynde C, finde D) out of drede, 7453.
Hym self (seluen B, selue C) lyk (-e BD) a pylgrym (pilgryme D) to
degyse (disgise C, disguise D, desgise Cp.), 7940 (not in G). Read
hym seluen.
The which[e] (whiche CDG) cote (cote armur D) as telleth Lollius, 8016. Cf. 8187.
And shuld[en] (sholden BCp. John's, shulden E) al our e herte on
heuene caste, 8188 (not in D).
For other examples (some harsh enough) see 1797, 2041, 3323, 4080, 4646, 5018, 5226, 5248, 6285, 6320, 6383, 6535, 6595, 6930, 7018, 7153, 7171, 7710, 7854, 8100.
Of instances in which this or that MS. (not A) has a verse that might,
in its present condition, be scanned (though sometimes very harshly)
as of nine syllables, but that is easily corrected by a comparison of
MSS., the following will serve as examples. The necessary correction
is often very slight, consisting sometimes merely in a single final -e.
fore C) my (A John's have my, BCDG omit it) lord (-e G) if
my (om. Cp.) seruyse or I, 430, in which A and John's alone show
both my's.

IV.

A large number of lines absolutely unmetrical as they stand in A,
and quite incapable of being read as verses of nine syllables, admit
of the simple cure just mentioned: the addition or insertion of a single letter (or two letters), usually e (final or interior), required or allowed by grammar or usage. Samples are:
This is the right[e] (ry3te C) lyf that I am inne, 1936.
For Pandarus (-re D) and sought[en] (soughten BGCp. John’s, sou3te C, soghtyn D) hym ful faste, 2022.
And don (do on CG, do ↑ down D) thyn hod (-e B) thi needes sped[de] (spedde BCE) be, 2039. Cp. apparently has sped. On the plural participle spedde, see § 68.
Wolde on (vp on CD) the best[e] (beste BCCp.) sounded (sowned BGCP, sowned C, sownyd D) ioly (om. G) harpe (hare ↑ B), 2116.
Read the bestes sowned (§ 87); the best ysoeverd would also be possible.
For whi men seyth impression[e]s (impressyons B, impressiou[n]s C) lyghte, 2323.

Thow shalt gon ouer (to D) nyght and that (om. G) b[e]lyue (belyue C, bylyve E, as blyve D Harl. 2392), 2598. On belyue, blyue, see § 138, I.

Of thing[es] (thynges BCp., thingis D, thinges G John’s) which that folk (-es John’s) on wondren (wondre on John’s) so, 2874.
Herynge here come and short[e] (schorte C, shorte Cq, for John’s) for to syke, 2900.

Nyl I nought swere although he lay[e] softe, 3284. No -e in laye in ABCDG; no note in Austin.
Was euere ylik[e] (yhold B, ilik C, ylyk D, alike G) prest and dyligent, 3327.
And they that lay[en] (layen BCp., leye C, lyen D, leyn G) at the dore withoute, 3587.
Hane ye no care hym lyst[e] (list BG, liste C, lest D) not to slepe, 3908.

Hadde of hym take here thought[e] (thou3te C) tho no fere, 3986.
When she his trowthe and clene entent[e] (entente B, entent clene D) wyste, 4071.
And syn (sithe C, sythe D) thow list myn argument[e]s (-ment CG, -mentes D) blame (to blame BCDG John’s), 5189. Perhaps we should read argumentz and to blame; but argumentes is an unobjectionable form (§ 39, I).
But shortly lest this tales soth[e] (sothe BCDG) were, 5333.
She herd hem ryght as though she then[ne]s (tennes B, thense D, thennes GCp. John's) were, 5357 (Sche herde rizt noust thow sche there were C). (Cf. 6766, 6852.)

Cryseyde ful of sorwful (sorweful C, sorwefuH D, sorwefuH G, sorweful John's) pite (piete Cp.), 5393. Read either sorweful or piete.

Or elles things that puruey[e]d (-ueyed BJohn's, -ueid D, -veide G, -veyed Cp.) be, 5718 (C cut out).

And thanne (than BD, that G) at (att D, atte G) erst[e] (erste BDCp.) shal we ben (best D) so (om. D) fayn, 5983. (See §§ 54, n. 2, 143.)

Than (Thanne B, There C, Then G) shal (shalle G) no mete or (ne C) drynk[e] (drynke G) come (com B) in me, 5437.

For which Pandare (-dar DG) myght[e] (my3te CG) not restreyne, 5534.

The gold [y]tressed Phebus heighe on loftte, 6371 (cut out in C). The correct reading must be the gold ytressed Phebus, but the MSS. do not have it: goldtressed is in ABCp. John's (separatim in B), gold tressid in Phillips 8252 Harl. 2392, gold tresses in Selden B 24; D has the diverting lection The Auricomus tressed Phebus, due, of course, to the intrusion of a gloss (Harl. 2392 has the gloss auricomus over the reading gold tressid, and sol over phebus); in the readings of E (goldetressed), Durham (golde tressed), and G (golde dressed), perhaps the lost y- may be discerned.

Whan Diomede on hors[e] (horse CD) gan hym dresse, 6400.

But syn (sithen G) of fyn[e] (fyne BD, om. G) force I (it † G) not aryse, 6784.

Whan he was there (ther BD) as (that C) no (om. BG) wight (man CD, nought B, nou3te G) myght[e] (myght hym BJohn's, my3t hym C, might him D, my3te hym G) here, 6827. Probably (with Furnivall) we should supply hym in A.

The lettres ek that she of old[e] (olde BDG) tyme, 6833. C stops the line at sche, but the corrector has added of tym tyme.

Intendestow that we shul here (her D) b[t]eue (belcue CD Harl. 2392. bileue G), 6841.

With soft[e] (softe CG, loftte † D) voys he of his lady dere, 6999.

Conseyued hath myn hertes pur[e]te, 7961 (pette C, pietee Cp.). (Not in G.)

To com ayen which (C) yet (om. C) [ne] (ne BCp. John's) may not be, 7964. C stops the verse with not, and the corrector adds yet be.

Other examples may be seen in 1351, 1838, 2064, 2440, 2469, 2488, 2525, 2667, 2874, 3169, 3194, 3351, 3456, 4089, 4183, 4445, 4451,
§ 146.] of Chaucer's Troilus. 421

4476, 4505, 4709, 4737, 5064, 5188, 5298, 5489, 5560, 5813, 6194, 6543, 6715, 6854, 7011, 7080, 7172, 7175, 7231, 7272, 7308, 7539, 7543, 7566, 7578, 7619, 7726, 7791, 7849, 7884, 8087, 8093.

On the whole matter of "nine-syllable verses," see the excellent monograph of M. Freudenberger, _Ueber das Fehlen des Auftakts in Chaucers heroischem Verse_, Erlanger Beiträge, 1889.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

p. 2, s.v. hosbonde. On the shortening of o in A.S. -bōnda (husbonda, -banda, Chron. 1048), see Manly, p. 2.

p. 2, s.v. stere. The causes of the M.E. confusion of form between A.S. stēora 'gubernator,' and stēor 'gubernaculum,' are doubtless more or less complex; but one of them is perhaps the tendency (which has gone so far in Modern English) to give to the names of implements, etc., the form of nomina agentis (cf. boiler, cultivator, governor, generator, pipe-cleaner, mower, etc., etc.; in America one even hears a dining-car occasionally spoken of as a diner). Cf. also Manly, p. 3.

p. 3, s.v. tyme. On somtyme, ofte tyme, cf. § 133.

p. 3, s.v. wele. The Laȝamon forms are accidentally omitted (L. wel wele, L.a wele, wcella, wella, weole, weal).

p. 4, s.v. wrecche. For L. wrecche read L.a wrecche, etc.

p. 5, s.v. blase. For blâse read blâse.

p. 6, s.v. myte. On this word see Skeat, Trans. Philol. Soc. for 1888-90, p. 305. I see no evidence that the M. L. G. word ever replaced the A.S. mite in English. The most that can be said is that it influenced its meaning.

p. 8, wodebynde was put here with considerable hesitation. Both A.S. wudubind, wudebind, and wudebinde occur, apparently as nominatives, in glosses (see Wrt.-W., 137/5, 418/25, 556/39).


p. 9, I feel great doubt whether feldefare and felofor have anything to do with each other.

p. 10, s.v. ache. Insert the A.S. form ðecce.

p. 10, s.v. sone. See this article in Studies and Notes in Philology and Literature, published under the Direction of the Modern Language Departments of Harvard University, II, 1 ff. (on suum, see p. 7).

p. 14, s.v. loue. As further instances of loue, cf. 16, 46, 234, 677, 1762, 3004, 3359, 3622, 3851 Æ, 4158, 4830, 5084, 5761, 6530, 7443 (old-style figures indicate that the caesura follows loue).

p. 15, s.v. shame. Insert L.a scone, scome, scame; L.b same, seame.

p. 17, s.v. chyste. Klæber, Das Bild bei Chaucer, 1893, p. 392, has an ingenious but futile note in this passage.

p. 18, s.v. help, note But cf. "Sir, thine help now on hast!" Arthour and Merlin, ed. Kölbing, 1736, "O now thyn help thy socour and releef," Hoccleve, Male Regle, 55, Minor Poems, ed. Furnivall, p. 27; with which may be compared such phrases as thin ore!

p. 31, s.v. benche. Insert L. dat. benche.

p. 31, s.v. bok. Insert L. boc.

p. 31, s.v. forward. Insert L. forward, forwarde, etc.

p. 34, s.v. game. Insert L.a before game.

p. 36, § 14, l. 6. Serin is of course neuter, as is indicated below, s.v.

p. 38, § 14, n. 1. The explanation of this -e in neutrers with short stem-syllable as derived from -u of the plural is Zupitza's (Anzeiger f. d. Alterthum, II, 11).

p. 41, s.v. fyre. On the form fere see Skeat, On Chaucer's Use of the Kentish Dialect (Chaucer Soc. Essays).

p. 47, § 15. For myte, see § 3, p. 6 (cf. Additions and Corrections).

p. 48, s.v. felawe. Add felawe (before caesura), 696 (felowe B, felwe D).

p. 48, ferde. The comparison with M.H.G. gevärde seems to have little value. The history of the English word is very obscure, and its form doubtful (cf. p. 392).

p. 51, § 16. For kne, see pl. knees, kneis (knowes), § 39, V., p. 105, and the phrase on knowe, § 14, p. 42.

p. 52, l. 1, first word. For bodig read body.

p. 52, § 18. In our uncertainty as to the etymology of A.S. craft, it would perhaps have been better to put this word among the o-stems.

p. 52, § 18. Among the neut. o-stems insert soot.

p. 60, § 18. Insert,—soot (A. S. sót, u.), 4036 f BCp. John's (sot CD, so A) (: in hire foot, in his fote A, in his foote D). The correct reading is sucre be or soot. A took soot for the adj. (see § 46, p. 113) and wrote sour for sucre.

p. 63, § 19, s.v. cros. On this word, see now the New English Dictionary.


p. 73, § 21. Add : sclae, 3233 † B (read knaue).

p. 79, s.v. heirdesse. I transcribe a passage from advance sheets of Professor Skeat's essay On Chaucer's Use of the Kentish Dialect, p. 662 :

We . . . also find the rime words wirdes, hirdes, in Troil. iii. 617, which would rime in any dialect; and I draw special attention to this passage, because the latter word is wrongly explained in Morris, and omitted in Stratmann, though it was solved by Tyrwhitt in the last century. The passage is:

'We, O, Fortune, executrice of wirdes,
O influences of this hevenes hye!
Soth is that, under god, ye ben our hirdes,
Though to us bestes been the causes wrye.'

The Campsall MS. writes wyerdes, hyrdes; but all that we are concerned with are the A.S. forms. Wirdes is the pl. of wyrd, fate; but hirdes is not a plural at all. It is the feminine of hirde, A.S. hyrde, a shepherd. The word ye is merely the polite substitute for thou ;
and the person addressed is the goddess Fortune, who is here said to be our shepherdess. Morris's explanation of 'guardians' is clearly to be rejected. It may seem strange that Chaucer should adopt -es as a feminine suffix instead of the more usual -esse; but the context clearly demands it; and we thus have a bright light thrown upon l. 15 of the *Envoy to Scogan*, where the form goddes is rhymed with forbode is. The comparison of these two passages clears up both of them." Professor Skeat's explanation of this passage from the *Troilus* (3459 ff.) seems inadmissible; certainly it is not clearly demanded by the context. *Hirdes* = shepherds or herdsmen (bestes in the next verse carries out the figure); the influences of the stars are apostrophized as well as Fortune, whence the plural, which may refer either (a) to Fortune and influences, or (b) to influences alone. The latter interpretation is perhaps better. The influences of the stars are the shepherds or herdsmen, who, under God, control us mortals, who, like the beasts of the field, cannot perceive the causes of what the shepherds force us to do.—I have never been able to accept Professor Skeat's interpretation of goddes as = goddesse *(Minor Poems, p. 389)* in *Envoy to Scogan*, 15. All the seven gods ('the brighte goddes sevne," 3) may be regarded as feeling the blasphemy against one of their number, or, if this will not do, this goddes may perhaps refer to Cupid and Venus. It is unnecessary to remark, in connection with the former and preferable of these two explanations, that this (pl.) is often used in Chaucer with little difference of meaning from that of the definite article (cf. O. Fr. ces). ¹

p. 86, § 31, s.v. contrary. Add : cf. also 418, 637, 645 (pl. see p. 103), and cf. the adj. (§ 51, p. 120); cf. also § 142.

p. 87, § 31, n. at end. Add : Cf. 6684 (§§ 131, 139, 145, V.).

p. 89, § 33, s.v. soueraynté. The correct form for this line (3013) seems to be : souereynité (see §§ 126, 137).

p. 89, § 33, n. 1. Add : For pärde (i.) (ii.) cf. 1040, 1451, 2493, 2608.

p. 89, § 33, n. 2. On benedictice cf. § 138, 8.

p. 90, l. 4. For nouns in -ion, -ioun, see § 142.

p. 92, s.v. crois. See now the *New English Dictionary*, s.v. cross.

p. 93, § 34, s.v. pes. For pes interjectionally used cf. 753 : pes and cry no more (pes BD, lyœ † style and cryœ no more C).

p. 97, § 35, l. 3. For past, read part.


p. 113, s.v. merye. On the forms of this word in Chaucer, see Skeat, *On Chaucer's Use of the Kentish Dialect*, p. 661.


p. 120, § 51, s.v. contraire. Cf. §§ 31 (p. 86), 38, VII. (p. 103), and 142.

p. 122, § 52, s.v. souereyne. Add : But,—thilké soueyren (dissyl.) puruceaunce, 5732 (souereyn D); cf. §§ 63, 137.

p. 122, § 52, n. 3, l. yenult. See Metrical Chapter, § 142.

p. 123, l. 13. Add (for 1766) : seueneth the A.

p. 127, § 54, n. 2. As to alle, cf. § 143, where it is suggested that in

firste vertu the demonstrative the has been swallowed up by the preceding that (conjunction). The quotation from Rom. Rose, 13117-21, II, 48, should probably be replaced by "Virtutem primam esse puta compesere linguam," Disticha Catonis, i, 3; cf. Kittridge, Modern Language Notes, VIII, 465.

p. 138, § 67. Add, as a note : The adj. pl. ynowe (with elided e) occurs in 3141 (inow B, ynow D), 4769 (inow B, ynow D), 5523 (inowgh B, inow C, ynow D); see the adj. sing. there is art ynow || for, 5928 (ynough B, inow CD), cf. 7357 C. As a subst. (i.) bef. consonants, ynowgh, 912 (inow B, inow C, ynow D), ynowh, 6177 (inowgh(e) B, inow C, inow D); (ii.) before vowels, ynowgh, 881 (inow C, ynow D),

ynowe, 5904 (ynowgh B, inow CD).

p. 151. In Wherof artow (ertow B, art(e) thou D) quod Pandare (-dar D) than amayed, 5303 (Whereto quod pandaratus art thou thus amayed C; no note in Austin), the ietus falls on -ow in artow. In

Thenk ek how Parys hath that is thy brother
A lowe and whi shaltow not have a nother,

5270-1 (shaltow(e) B, schuldist † not han another C, shukle nat † I have a nother D; no note in Austin), -ow in shallow certainly has both the ietus and the sense-accent. Perhaps we should read theow in both these instances.

p. 165, § 79, s.v. oon. In : And for a soth they tellen .xx. Iyes, 6069, a apparently = one.

p. 176, § 82, s.v. hote. Cf. hadde icht (I CD) it so hote, 5245 f B Cp. D (for hote A, so hote C), where so hote is surely the correct reading (no note as to John’s).

p. 189, § 85, at end, n. 5. The Northern use of til for to (of space or direction) is occasionally found : see 128 B, 506 C, 1273 C, 1999 AB, 2271 C, 2431 C (till(e) B), 2438 AB, 4423 AB, 4781 C ; on-tyl, 354 C (vn-til B, vn-to AD). [Var. BC tyl.] In all these cases til stands before a vowel or weak h. In 2215 f D, seyl hym till (still unde still') is a very bad reading. For through, etc., see p. 389 (and Additions).

p. 221, l. 1. See also § 111, III., n. 1, p. 266.


p. 246, second line of § 102. For second, read third.

p. 248, § 103. It is unlikely that, in Til in a temple he fonde hym at allone, 5609 (fonde AC, fonde BD, fownde John’s; ABCD om al, Cp. John’s have it), fownde is to be referred to W.S. weak preterite fonde, though John’s has the spelling fownde.
Additions and Corrections.

p. 303, l. 14. For V. read IV.
p. 389, § 143, at end, n. 5. For thoughgh, thurgh, thurgh, monosyllabic, cf. 998, 1853, 2402, 2417, 2421, 2425, 2858, 2926, 3089, 3140, 3443, 3629, 4060, 4130 4455, 4566, 4656, 4680, 4829, 7922, 7923, etc.

[Advance-sheets of Professor Skeat's paper On Chaucer's Use of the Kentish Dialect reached me in time to be of assistance in preparing the Additions and Corrections. Professor Skeat's edition of the Troilus, however, did not appear in time for me to use it in any part of these Observations. This note is added at the last moment, in the proof, to prevent possible misapprehensions.

G. L. K.]
RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON & BUNGAY.